



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 3433 08231399 4

363

*The*  
*Gordon Lester Ford*  
*Collection*  
*Presented by his Sons*  
*Winthrop Chauncey Ford*  
*and*  
*Paul Leicester Ford*  
*to the*  
*New York Public Library.*











Washington C. Ford

A. nos 1856 v. 1

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE  
USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY  
*Third Edition*  
E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD.

---

ONE HUNDREDTH EDITION.

REVISED WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS,

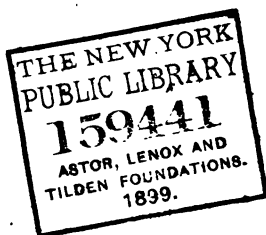
BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

---

BOSTON:  
PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER.

NEW YORK: A. S. BARNES & Co.

1870.



---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1887,  
BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

NOV 1887  
CLERK  
MASS.

## P R E F A C E .

---

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating inflected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.



The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes.

Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthoëpy will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition of

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hickie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar, translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such

of its materials, as were suited to my purpose. In most cases his ideas have been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modified as to suit the general plan of my work. In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction. In the sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to grammatical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S. Greene of Brown University. To the sources already specified I must add the Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this Grammar. The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc., are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School Dictionary. To these references I will only add, that such other notes relating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate, Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received. I cannot indeed venture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say that since its first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

R. A. ANDREWS.

*New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1834.*

# CONTENTS.

ORTHOGRAPHY.		Page.
Letters .....	9	
Division of letters.....	10	
Diphthongs.....	10	
Punctuation.....	10	
ORTHOËPY.		
Continental pronunciation.....	11	
English pronunciation.....	11	
Sounds of the letters .....	11	
— of the vowels.....	11	
— of the diphthongs.....	12	
— of the consonants.....	13	
Quantity of syllables.....	14	
Accentuation.....	15	
Latin accents.....	15	
English accents.....	16	
Division of words into syllables....	16	
ETYMOLOGY.		
NOUNS.....	19	
Gender.....	20	
Number.....	22	
Cases.....	23	
Declensions.....	23	
First declension.....	25	
Greek nouns.....	26	
Second declension.....	26	
Greek nouns.....	29	
Third declension.....	29	
Formation of nom. sing.....	30	
Rules for the gender.....	33	
oblique cases.....	36	
Greek nouns.....	45	
Fourth declension.....	45	
Fifth declension.....	47	
Declension of compound nouns..	47	
Irregular nouns.....	48	
Variable nouns.....	48	
Defective nouns.....	49	
Redundant nouns.....	54	
Derivation of nouns.....	56	
Composition of nouns.....	60	
ADJECTIVES.....	61	
Adjectives of the first and second declensions.....	62	
Adjectives of the third declension	64	
Rules for the oblique cases....	67	
Irregular adjectives.....	69	
Defective adjectives.....	69	
Redundant adjectives.....	69	
Numeral adjectives.....	70	
Comparison of adjectives.....	74	
Irregular comparison.....	75	
Defective comparison.....	76	
Derivation of adjectives.....	78	
Composition of adjectives.....	81	
PRONOUNS.....	82	
Substantive pronouns.....	82	
Adjective pronouns.....	83	
Demonstrative pronouns.....	83	
Intensive pronouns.....	85	
Relative pronouns.....	86	
Interrogative pronouns.....	87	
Indefinite pronouns.....	88	
Possessive pronouns.....	89	
Paternal pronouns.....	90	
Pronominal adjectives.....	90	
VERBS.....	91	
Voices.....	91	
Moods.....	92	
Tenses.....	93	
Numbers.....	95	
Persons.....	95	
Participles, gerunds, and supines	95	
Conjugation.....	96	
Table of termination.....	98	
<i>Sum</i> .....	100	
<i>Prosum</i> , <i>Possum</i> , etc.....	102	
First conjugation.....	103	
Second conjugation.....	108	
Third conjugation.....	111	
Fourth conjugation.....	116	
Deponent verbs.....	120	
Remarks on the conjugations..	121	
Periphrastic conjugations.....	123	
General rules of conjugation...	124	
Formation of second and third roots.....	125	
First conjugation.....	125	
Second conjugation.....	129	
Third conjugation.....	131	
Fourth conjugation.....	139	
Irregular verbs.....	140	
Defective verbs.....	145	
Impersonal verbs.....	147	

	Page.		Page.
Redundant verbs.....	150	Protasis and apodosis.....	268
Derivation of verbs.....	152	Subjunctive after particles.....	269
Composition of verbs.....	154	———— after <i>qui</i> .....	275
Particles.....	155	———— in indirect questions.....	278
<b>ADVERBS</b> .....	155	———— in inserted clauses.....	279
Derivation of adverbs.....	160	Imperative mood.....	281
Composition of adverbs.....	162	Infinitive mood.....	282
Comparison of adverbs.....	163	Participles.....	293
<b>PREPOSITIONS</b> .....	163	Gerunds and gerundives.....	296
Prepositions in composition.....	167	Supines.....	299
<b>CONJUNCTIONS</b> .....	170	Adverbs.....	300
<b>INTERJECTIONS</b> .....	176	Prepositions.....	303
		Conjunctions.....	304
		Interjections.....	306
		Arrangement.....	306
		Arrangement of words.....	306
		———— of clauses.....	310
		Analysis.....	312
		Parsing.....	313
<b>SYNTAX.</b>		<b>PROSODY.</b>	
Sentences and Propositions.....	177	Quantity.....	319
Subject.....	178	General rules.....	319
Predicate.....	181	Special rules.....	322
Apposition.....	183	First and middle syllables.....	322
Adjectives.....	184	Derivative words.....	322
Relatives.....	189	Compound words.....	324
Demonstratives, etc.....	193	Increment of nouns.....	325
Reflexives.....	198	Increment of verbs.....	329
Nominative.....	200	Penults and antepenults.....	331
Subject-nominative and verb.....	200	Final syllables.....	336
Predicate-nominative.....	205	Versification.....	341
Genitive.....	206	Feet.....	341
Genitive after nouns.....	206	Metre.....	342
———— after partitives.....	211	Verses.....	342
———— after adjectives.....	214	Figures of prosody.....	343
———— after verbs.....	216	Arsis and thesis.....	346
———— of place.....	221	Cæsura.....	347
———— after particles.....	222	Different kinds of metre.....	347
Dative.....	222	Dactylic metre.....	347
Dative after adjectives.....	222	Anapaestic metre.....	350
———— after verbs.....	225	Iambic metre.....	351
———— after particles.....	230	Trochaic metre.....	353
Accusative.....	231	Choriambic metre.....	354
Accusative after verbs.....	231	Ionic metre.....	355
———— after prepositions.....	237	Compound metres.....	356
———— of time and space.....	239	Combination of verses.....	356
———— of place.....	240	Horatian metres.....	357
———— after adjectives, ad- verbs and interjections.....	241	Key to the odes of Horace.....	359
Subject-accusative.....	242		
Vocative.....	243	<b>APPENDIX.</b>	
Ablative.....	243	Grammatical figures.....	361
Ablative after prepositions.....	243	Tropes and figures of rhetoric.....	363
———— after certain nouns, adjectives and verbs.....	244	Roman mode of reckoning time.....	367
———— of cause, etc.....	246	———— money, weight, etc.....	370
———— of price.....	252	Abbreviations.....	374
———— of time.....	252	Different ages of Roman literature.....	374
———— of place.....	254	Writers of the different ages.....	375
———— after comparatives.....	255		
———— absolute.....	258	<b>INDEX</b> .....	378
Connection of tenses.....	261		
Indicative mood.....	263		
Subjunctive mood.....	265		

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters ;
2. To its pronunciation ;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words ;
4. To the construction of its sentences ;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography ; the second, Orthoëpy ; the third, Etymology ; the fourth, Syntax ; and the fifth, Prosody.

---

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a ; B, b ; C, c ; D, d ; E, e ; F, f ; G, g ; H, h ; I, i ; J, j ; K, k ; L, l ; M, m ; N, n ; O, o ; P, p ; Q, q ; R, r ; S, s ; T, t ; U, u ; V, v ; X, x ; Y, y ; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.

3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.

4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *c* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form ; as, *K* or *Kal* for *Kalendas* or *Calendas*, the Calends.

5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

## DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y.*
- The consonants are divided into
- |                     |                              |                     |                       |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| {                   | Liquids, . . . . .           | <i>l, m, n, r.</i>  |                       |
|                     | {                            | Labials, . . . . .  | <i>p, b, f, v.</i>    |
|                     |                              | Palatals, . . . . . | <i>c, g, k, q, j.</i> |
|                     |                              | Linguals, . . . . . | <i>t, d.</i>          |
|                     | Sibilant, . . . . .          | <i>s.</i>           |                       |
|                     | Double consonants, . . . . . | <i>x, z.</i>        |                       |
| Aspirate, . . . . . | <i>h.</i>                    |                     |                       |

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs*.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, wo, uu*, and *yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

## PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz.  $\sim$ ,  $\cdot$ ,  $\ast$ ; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute ( $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ), the grave ( $\grave{\phantom{a}}$ ), and the circumflex ( $\circ\grave{\phantom{a}}$ ). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis ( $\ddot{\phantom{a}}$ ) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *ǣr*, the air. It is used principally with *ae, ai*, and *oe*.

## ORTHOËPY.

### § 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England. Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

#### THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long. Thus,

Short ä, as in hat.	Long ö, as in no.
Long ä, as in father.	Short ü, as in tub.
Short ë, as in met.	Long ü, as in full.
Long ë, as in there.	æ or œ, as e in there.
Short i, as in sit.	au, as ou in our.
Long i, as in machine.	eu, as in feudal.
Short ô, as in not.	ei, as i in ice.

**REMARK.** These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

#### THE ENGLISH METHOD.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation. See § 14 and 15. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

### OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

#### I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

*pæ'-ter, de'-cēt, vī'-rus, tō'-tus, tū'-ba, Ty'-rus*; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal, metre, vital, total, tutor tyrant*.



1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa*, *a-pis'-tō-la*, *a-cer'-bus*, *Pal-a-mā'-des*; pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E*, *o*, and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *u'-su-i*.

3. (a.) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui*, *au'-di*, *le-gā'-ti*.

REM. 1. The final *i* of *sibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(b.) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (*fa'-be-us*), *phi'-los'-ō-phus* (*phē-los'-ō-phus*).

Exc. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i-dō'-ne-us*, or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *fl-ē'-bam*.

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

*mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *fus'-tis*, *cyg'-nus*, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet*, *seldom*, *finish*, *copy*, *lustre*, *symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart*; as, *qua'-dro*, *quad-ra-gin'-ta*, *quar'-tus*. In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part*; as, *par-ti-ceps*, *ar'-ma*; except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-ci'-da*.

Exc. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ig'-nes*, *au'-des*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, *il'-los*, *dom'-i-nos*.

Exc. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam*, *post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus*.

Exc. 5. *E*, *i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir*; as, *fer*, *fert*, *fer'-ti-lis*; *hir*, *hir'-cus*, *myr'-tus*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Ae* and *oe* are always diphthongs unless separated by *dis-resia*. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *ae'-tas*, *oes'-tas*, *pe'-na*, *oes'-trum*.

1. *Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*, *Troia*, *Harpyia*; pronounced *Mā'-ya*, *Pom-pe'-i-us*, *Tro'-ya*, *Har-py'-ya*.

REMARK 1. *Ei*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hei*, *em'-neis*.

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum*, pronounced *laws*, etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *eu* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-la-us*.

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Orpheus* (or'-phuse), *Euphrates*.

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of Latin nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except *moner*; as, *ur'-co-us*, *me'-us*, *me'-um*, *e'-um*. In other situations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-ró'-pa*, *Thé'-seus*, *e'-heu*.

4. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, etc.; as, *lin'-gua*, *quē'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quō'-tus*, *ē'-quus*. They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, when monosyllables, is pronounced like *ui*, and by some like long *i*.

### III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

#### C.

*C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *æ*, and *eu*; as, *ce'-do*, *ci'-bus*, *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ'-lum*, *ceu*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *cru'-dus*, *lac*.

1. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta* (kar'-tah), *machina* (mak'-ē-nah).

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah), *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

#### G.

*G* has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *æ*; as *ge'-nus*, *ag'-tis*, *Gy'-ges*, *Gæ'-tū'-li*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratic* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

#### S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. (*æ*) When *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* (per'-she-a).

## 14 QUANTITIES OF PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

(b.) But when *si* or *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh*; as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah), *Sa-ba'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-ah).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh*; as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): as *Sosia*, *Theodosia*, *Lysias*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *c*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trabs*, *hi'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-si'-ra*, *mi'-ser*, *ma'-sa*, *re-si'-u-um*, *cau'-sa*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans*; as, *trans'-e-o*.

## T.

§ 12. 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (sul-pish'-e-us).

Exc. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*a*) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; as, *Sal-lu'-ti-us*, *Brut'-ti-i*, *Sex'-ti-us*: (b) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon*; as, *Euryt'-ion*, *Amphic'-ty-on*; and (c) in old infinitives in *er*; as, *flec'-ti-er*, for *flec'-ti*.

## X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as, *Xenophon* (zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

Exc. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *inexhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *pevus* (pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a), *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mae-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-vus*, *ime'-sis*, *Cie'-si-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *anteponult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 232–301: but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position*, as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, i. e. either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purposes of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a vowel.

## OF ACCENTUATION.

### I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ 14. 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (^), composed of the acute and the grave, i. e. of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pīx, ēī, pārs; dōs, jās, spē*.

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pā'ter, mā'ter, pen'-na*.

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rō-mā, mē-sē, lū-cē, jū-ris*; if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hō-mō, dē-us, Rō-mā* (abl.), and *ar'-tē*, in which *a* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; but if it is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-i-nus*.

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

Exc. Vocatives of the second declension in *i*, instead of *ie*, from nominatives in *ius*, and genitives in *i*, instead of *ii*, are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gil-i; Va-lē'-ri, in-gē'-ni*. So, also, the compounds of *facio* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fā'-ciū, tep-e-fā'-ciū*.

§ 15. If the penult is common, the accent, in prose, is upon the antepenult; as, *vol'-ū'-cris, phar'-tē'-tra, iū'-tē'-que*; but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their penult in prose; as *u-nū'-us, is-tū'-us*.

**REM. 38.** All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circumflex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum*, *sub'-e-o*.

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que*, *ne*, *ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,\* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta*, *il'-ā-que*; *vī'-rum*, *vi-rum'-que*.

## II. OF ENGLISH ACCENTS.

**§ 16.** Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termination of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin accent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like manner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pā'-ter*, *mā'-ter*, *ser-mō'-nes*, *dem'-i-nis*; *pe-ric'-ū-lum*, *con'-ju-ra'-ti-o*, *op'-por-tu'-ni-tā'-tes*, *ex-er'-ci-tā'-ti-on'-i-bus'-que*.

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod'-e-rā'-tus*, *tol'-e-rab'-i-lis*.

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon'-stra-ban'-tur*, *ad'-o-les-cen'-ti-a*.

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'-e-ra'-ti-ō'-nis*, *tol'-e-ra-bil'-i-ō'-rem*, *ex-er'-ci-tā'-ti-ō'-nis*.

## DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

### VOWELS.

**§ 17.** Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

**REMARK.** In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diphthong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

### CONSONANTS.

#### SPECIAL RULES.

**§ 18.** **REMARK.** The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19-23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H*, when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mī'-hi*, *trā'-hē-re*, *co'-hors*, *co'-hor-tā'-ti-o*.

\* These are *te*, *met*, *pte*, *ce* *cine*, and *dem*; as, *tute*, *egūmet*, *meappte*, *hicce*, *hiccine*, *ideme*.

2. *Ch*, *ph*, and *th*, in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chil'-les*, *Ach'-ra-dí-na*, *Neph'-tí-le*, *Té-thys*.

3. *Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u*, and *bl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Æg'-le*, *Ag-lau'-rus*, *At'-las*, *ath-let'-i-cus*;—*Pub'-li-us*, *Pub-lic'-tí-la*, *re-pub'-li-ca*.

4. In writing syllables, *x*, when standing alone between two vowels, is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *sax'-um* (sak'-aum); *ax-il'-la* (ak-sil'-lah); *ex-em'-plum* (eg-zem'-plum); *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us).

## GENERAL RULES.

### I. SIMPLE WORDS.

#### § 19. A.—A single Consonant between two Vowels.

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, between the *last two vowels* of a word, or between the vowels of any two *unaccented syllables*, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pá-ter* and *au'-tem*; *th* in *á-ther*; *cl* in *Hí-er'-tí-cles*; *q* in *á-qua*; *cr* in *á-cris* and *vol'-tí-cris*; *chr* in *á-chras*; *r* in *tol'-e-ra-bil'-i-us*; *m* in *ei''-y-mo-ló-gi-a*; *l* in *am''-bu-lá-tó-ri-us*; and *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o*. Respecting *ch* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tí-thí* and *sí-thí* are commonly excepted.

§ 20. 2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, *before the vowel* of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tín'-e-ra*, *d* in *ti-dé'-to*; *th* in *á-the'-ri-us*; *cl* in *Eu-clí'-des* and *Her''-a-clé'-a*; *gr* in *a-gres'-tis* and *a-gríc'-tí-la*; *pr* in *ca-pre'-tí-lus*; *q* in *a-qua'-ri-us*; and *phr* in *Eu-phrâ'-tes*.

§ 21. 3. A single consonant *after the vowel* of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *m* in *dom'-tí-nus* and *dom''-tí-na'-ti-o*; *t* in *pat'-e-ra*; *th* in *Scyth'-i-a*; and *q* in *aq'-ui-la* (ak'-we-lah), and *Aq''-ui-tá'-ni-a* (ak''-we-tá'-ne-ah).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac'-rí-ter*, *ac''-rí-mó-ni-a*; *tr* in *det'-rí-men'-tum*; *pr* in *cap'-rí-pes*, *cap''-rí-má'-tus*, *phl* in *Paph'-la-go'-ni-a*; and *phr* in *Aph''-ro-dít'-i-a*. Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

### EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES.

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y*, must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

Thus, *d* in *ra'-dī-us*, *ta'-dī-um*, *me'-dī-d'-tor* *r* in *ha'-re-o*, *cu'-ry-d'-tes* *ch* in *bra'-chi-um*; *q* in *re'-qui-es*, *re'-qui-es-co* *tr* in *pa'-tri-us*, *E-no'-tri-a* and *r* and *l* in *ce'-re-a'-li-a*.

✓ Exc. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus*, *au'-re-us*; *cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus*; *gl* in *ju'-glans*; and *pl* in *Nou'-pli-us*, *du'-pli-co*, and *du'-pli-ca'-ti-o*. Cf. § 18, 2.

## § 22. B.—Two Consonants between two Vowels.

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be separated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā'-nus*; *rv* in *ca-ter'-va*; *sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens*; *nn* in *an'-nus*; *phth* in *aph'-tha*; *cch* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac'-cha-na'-li-a*; and *thl* in *ath-lē'-ta*.

## C.—Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor*, *ad-emp'-ti-o*; *str* in *fe-nes'-tra*; *mpl* in *ex-en'-plum*; *rthr* in *ar-thri'-tis*.

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum*.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the component parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab-es'-se*, *in'-ers*, *cir'-cum-er'-ro*, *su'-pér-est*, *sub'-i-tus*, *præ-ter'-e-a*, *trans'-i-tur*, *sub'-stru-o*. So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel; as, *prod'-e-o*, *red'-e-o*, *sed-il'-i-o*.

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word; as, *def'-ē-ro*, *dil'-i-gens*, *be-nev'-o-lus*, *præs'-to*, *eg'-ō-met*;—*po'-tes*, *po-tes'-tis*, *an'-i-mad-ver'-to*, *ve'-ne-o* (from *venum*, *eo*), *mag-nan'-i-mus*, *am-bā'-ges*, *lon-gæ'-vus*.

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes into which words are divided in reference to their significance are called *Parts of Speech*.

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

4. The first four are *inflected*; the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles*, are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns*; but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. 1. To verbs belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*; verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

## NOUNS.

§ 26. 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar*; *Rōma*, Rome; *Tibēris*, the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hōmo*, man or a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *leo*, a lion; *mendacium*, a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercitus*, an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercitus*, *gens*, *juventus*, *multitudo*, *nobilitas*, *plebs*, *populus*, *turba*, *vis*, and *vulgus*.

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete*, in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma*, *hōmo*, *populus*, *ferrum*.

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cibus*, food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.



## GENDER.

§ 27. 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because, though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. MASCULINES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ēquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Aquillo*, the north wind; *Aprilis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic\* Atlas*, *hæc Ida*, *hoc Soracte*.

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insula*, *fabula*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

*Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Samos*, the name of an island; *Eunuchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *trum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *trum*; four in *o*, *nis*, viz. *Trusino*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Turas*, and *Candopus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *trum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispul* and *Gadur* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *rōbur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50), with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Styrax* and *unēdo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

\* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

**§ 30.** COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *pārens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

Adolescens, a youth.	Exsul, an exile.	Palumbes, a wood-pigeon.
Affinis, a relative by marriage.	Grus, a crane.	Pārens, a parent.
Ales, a bird.	Hospes, a guest, a host.	Par, a mate.
Antistes, a chief priest.	Hostis, an enemy.	Præses, a president.
Auctor, an author.	Index, an informer.	Præsul, a chief priest.
Augur, an augur.	Infans, an infant.	Princeps, a prince or princess.
Bos, an ox or cow.	Interpres, an interpreter.	Serpens, a serpent.
Cānis, a dog.	Jūdex, a judge.	Sacerdos, a priest or priestess.
Civis, a citizen.	Juvēnis, a youth.	Satelles, a life-guard.
Cōmes, a companion.	Martyr, a martyr.	Sus, a swine.
Conjux, a spouse.	Miles, a soldier.	Testis, a witness.
Consorts, a consort.	Municeps, a burgess.	Vātes, a prophet.
Conviva, a guest.	Mus, a mouse.	Verna, a slave.
Custos, a keeper.	Nēmo, nobody.	Vindex, an avenger.
Dux, a leader.	Obses, a hostage.	
	Patruēlis, a cousin.	

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

Conjux, atque pārens, princeps, patruēlis, et infans,  
Affinis, vindex, jūdex, dux, miles, et hostis,  
Augur, et antistes, juvēnis, conviva, sacerdos,  
Muni-que-ceps, vātēs, adolescens, civis, et auctor,  
Custōs, nēmo, cōmes, testis, sus, bōs-que, cānis-que,  
Pro consorte ūtri par, præsul, verna, satelles,  
Mus-que obses, consors, interprēs, et exsul, et hospes.

**§ 31.** 1. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2. The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

Artifex, an artist.	Fur, a thief.	Lātro, a robber.
Auspex, a soothsayer.	Hēres, an heir.	Libēri, children.
Eques, a horseman.	Hōmo, a man or woman.	Pēdes, a footman.

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advēna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

**§ 32.** 1. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

Copīæ, troops.	Opēræ, laborers.	Vig' æ, watchmen.
Custodiæ, guards.	Prōles, } offspring.	
Excubiæ, sentinels.	Subōles, }	

2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, <i>a buffoon.</i>	Mancipium, }	Scortum, }
Auxilia, <i>auxiliaries</i>	Servitium, }	Prostitulum, }
	} <i>a slave.</i>	
	} <i>a prostitute.</i>	

3. (a.) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor*, etc.; the feminines in *a* or *trix*; as, *cōquus, cōqua*; *magister, magistra*; *lēno, lēna*; *inventor, inventrix*; *tibicen, tibicina*; *āvus, avia*; *rex, regina*; *poēta, poētria*.

(b.) So also in some names of animals; as, *ēquus, ēqua*; *gallus gallina*; *leo, lea* and *leāna*. Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca*.

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dāma, talpa, tigris, colūber* and *colūbra*, etc.

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *corvus*, a raven, are masculine; *aquila*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas, nefas, nihil, gummi, pondo*.
2. Names of letters; as, *o longum*, long *o*. But these are sometimes feminine, *littera* being understood.
3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning; as, *pater est dissyllābum*; *pater* is dissyllabic.
4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively; as *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell; *hoc diu*, this (word) *diu*.

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 92.

## NUMBER.

§ 35. 1. (a.) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(b.) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*,—which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

## PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

## CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

*Cases* are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ 37: 1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb; as, *ego scribo, I write. Caius dicit, Caius says.*

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession*, and many other relations, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive case*; as, *Vita Cæsaris*, the life *of* *Cæsar*, or *Cæsar's* life.

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as, *Ille mihi librum dedit*, He gave the book *to* *me*.

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation*, and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions *with, from, in, or by.*

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti*, i. e. the uninflected cases; and the others, *casus obliqui*; i. e. the oblique or inflected cases.

## DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension*.

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *us*, and in the fifth in *ei*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.

## TERMINATIONS.

*Singular.*

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
		M. N.	M. N.	M. N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ā,	ūs, ēr, ūm,	ōr, etc. ě, etc.	ūs,	ūs,
<i>Gen.</i>	ae,	i,	is,	ūs,	ei,
<i>Dat.</i>	ae,	ō,	i,	ui,	ei,
<i>Acc.</i>	ām,	ūm,	ēm, (im), ě, etc.	ūm,	ēm,
<i>Voc.</i>	ā,	ě, ēr, ūm,	ōr, etc. ě, etc.	ūs,	ēs,
<i>Abl.</i>	ā,	ō.	ě, (i.)	ū.	ě.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	ae,	i,	ā,	ēs, ā, (iā),	ūs,	uā,	ēs.
<i>Gen.</i>	ārūm,	ōrūm,		ūm, (iūm),	uūm,		ērūm,
<i>Dat.</i>	is,	is,		ibūs,	ibūs, (ūbūs),		ēbūs,
<i>Acc.</i>	ās,	ōs,	ā,	ēs, ā, (iā),	ūs,	uā,	ēs,
<i>Voc.</i>	ae,	i,	ā,	ēs, ā, (iā),	ūs,	uā,	ēs,
<i>Abl.</i>	is.	is.		ibūs.	ibūs, (ūbūs).		ēbūs.

*Remarks.*

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous. See §§ 55, 58, 62, 66.

2. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, always ends in *n*.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural always end alike.

5. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural always end alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is*; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bus*.

7. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, always ends in *s*.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, always end in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root or *crude form*, is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The root of a *declined* word may be found by removing the termination of any of its oblique cases. The case commonly selected for this purpose is the genitive singular.

11. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 41. Nouns of the first declension end in *ā*, *ē*, *ās*, *ēs*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

Latin nouns of the first declension end only in *a*. They are thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	mū'-sā, a muse;	Nom.	mu'-sae, muses;
Gen.	mu'-sae, of a muse;	Gen.	mu-sā'-rūm, of muses,
Dat.	mu'-sae, to a muse;	Dat.	mu'-sīs, to muses
Acc.	mu'-sām, a muse;	Acc.	mu'-sās, muses.
Voc.	mu'-sā, O muse;	Voc.	mu'-sae, O muses,
Abl.	mu'-sā, with a muse.	Abl.	mu'-sīs, with muses.

In like manner decline

Au'-la, a hall.	Lit'-ē-ra, a letter.	Sa-git'-ta, an arrow.
Cu'-ra, care.	Lus-cin'-i-a, a nightingale.	Stel'-la, a star.
Ga'-le-a, a helmet.	Mach'-i-na, a machine.	Tō'-ga, a gown.
In-sū'-la, an island.	Pen'-na, a feather, a quill.	Vī'-a, a way.

NOTE. As the Latin language has no article, appellative nouns may be rendered either with or without the English articles *a*, *an*, or *the*, according to their connection.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 42. 1. Names proper and appellative of men, as, *Sulla*, *Anna*; *poeta*, a poet; *nauta*, a sailor; and names of rivers, though ending in *a*, are masculine: § 28, 1 and 2. But the following names of rivers have been used as feminine: viz. *Albula*, *Allia*, *Druentia*, *Garumna*, *Himēra*, *Matrōna*, *Mosella*, *Trebia*. *Lēthe* is always feminine.

*Ossa* and *Ēta*, names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, *dāma* in Virgil and Statius, and *talpa* in Virgil, are masculine.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 43. *Genitive singular*. 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; as, *aula*, gen. *aulāi*.

2. *Familia*, after *pāter*, *māter*, *filius*, or *filia*, usually forms its genitive in *as*; as, *mater-familias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias* or *familiārum*. Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

*Genitive plural*. The genitive-plural of patronymics in *es*, of several compounds in *cōla* and *gēna*, and of some names of nations, is sometimes, especially in poetry, formed in *um* instead of *ārum*; as, *Æneādum*, *Cælicōlum*, *terrigēnum*, *Lapīthum*. So *amphōrum*, *drachnum*, for *amphorārum*, *drachmārum*.

*Dative and Ablative plural*. The following nouns have sometimes *abus* instead of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural, especially when it is necessary to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension having the same root; as, *filiis et filiabus*, to sons and daughters.

*Dea, a goddess.*  
*Filia, a daughter.*

*Equa, a mare.*  
*Mula, a she mule.*

The use of a similar termination in *anima, astina, liberta, nata, conserva*, and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē, ās*, and *ēs*, and some also in *ā*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *ā* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e, as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	N. Ē-nē'-ās,	N. An-chī'-ēs,
G. Pe-nel'-ō-pēs,	G. Ē-nē'-as,	G. An-chī'-as,
D. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	D. Ē-nē'-as,	D. An-chī'-as,
Ac. Pe-nel'-ō-pēn,	Ac. Ē-nē'-ām or ān,	Ac. An-chī'-sēn,
V. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	V. Ē-nē'-ā,	V. An-chī'-sē or ā,
Ab. Pe-nel'-ō-pē.	Ab. Ē-nē'-ā.	Ab. An-chī'-sā or ē.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al'-o-e, <i>aloe</i> .	Ti'-ā'-ras, <i>a turban</i> .
E-pit'-ō-me, <i>an abridgment</i> .	Co-mē'-tes, <i>a comet</i> .
This'-be.	Dy-nas'-tes, <i>a ruler</i> .
Bo'-rē-as, <i>the north wind</i> .	Pri-am'-i-des, <i>a son of Priam</i> .
Mī'-das.	Py-rī'-tes, <i>a kind of stone</i> .

1. Most proper names in *es*, except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en*, and in the vocative both *es* and *e*. See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ās* into *ā*; as, *Atrides*, *Atrida*, a son of Atreus; *Persees*, *Persa*, a Persian; *geomētres*, *geomētra*, a geometrician; *Circe*, *Circa*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*; *grammatica*, *grammatica*, grammar; *rhetorice*, *rhetorica*, oratory.—So also *tiāras*, *tiāra*.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr, ir, ūs, ūm*, *es, on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er, us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

#### SINGULAR.

<i>A lord.</i>	<i>A son-in-law.</i>	<i>A field.</i>	<i>A kingdom.</i>
N. dōm'-i-nūs,	gē'-nēr,	ā'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
G. dom'-i-nī,	gen'-ērī,	ā'-grī,	reg'-nī,
D. dom'-i-nō,	gen'-ērō,	ā'-grō,	reg'-nō,
Ac. dom'-i-nūm,	gen'-ērūm,	ā'-grūm,	reg'-nūm,
V. dom'-i-nē,	gē'-nēr,	ā'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
Ab. dom'-i-nō.	gen'-ērō.	ā'-grō.	reg'-nō.

## PLURAL.

N. dom'-i-ni,	gen'-ē-ri,	a'-gri,	reg'-nā,
G. dom-i-nō-rūm,	gen-e-rō-rūm,	a-grō-rūm,	reg'-nō-rūm,
D. dom'-i-nis,	gen'-ē-ris,	a'-gris,	reg'-nis,
Ac. dom'-i-nōs,	gen'-ē-rōs,	a'-gris,	reg'-nā,
V. dom'-i-ni,	gen'-ē-ri,	a'-gri,	reg'-nā,
Ab. dom'-i-nis	gen'-ē-ris.	a'-gris.	reg'-nis.

## Like dominus decline

An'-i-mus, the mind.	Fō'-cus, a hearth.	Nū'-mō-rus, a number.
Clip'-e-us, a shield.	Gla'-di-us, a sword.	O-ce'-ā-nus, the ocean.
Cor'-vus, a raven.	Lū'-cus, a grove.	Trō'-chus, a trundling-hoop.

**NOTE.** Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 3.

§ 47. A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; as, *armiger*, -ēri, an armor-bearer; *Lucifer*, -ēri, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul'-ter, an adulterer.	Li'-ber, Bacchus.	Pu'-er, a boy.
Cel'-ti-bēr, a Celibertian.	Lib'-ē-ri, (plur.), children.	Sō'-cer, a father-in-law.
I'-ber, a Spaniard.	Pres'-by-ter, an elder.	Ves'-per, the evening.

*Mul'-ci-ber*, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A'-per, a wild boar.	Li'-ber, a book.	Al-ex-an'-der.
Aus'-ter, the south wind.	Ma-gis'-ter, a master.	Is'-ter.
Fā'-ber, a workman.	On'-ā-ger, a wild ass.	Teu'-cer.

2. *Vir*, a man, with its compounds, and the patritial *Trēvir*, (the only nouns in *ir*), are declined like *gener*.

## Like regnum decline

An'-trum, a cave.	Ex-em'-plum, an example.	Præ-sid'-i-um, a defence
A'-tri-um, a hall.	Ne-go'-ti-um,* a business.	Sax'-um, a rock.
Bel'-lūm, war.	Ni'-trum, natron.	Scep'-trum, a sceptre.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

Abyssus, a bottomless pit.	Dialectos, a dialect.	Miltos, vermilion.
Alvus, the belly.	Diphthongus, a diphthong.	Phārus(os), a light-house.
Antidōtus, an antidote.	Dōmus, a house, home.	Plinthus, the base of a column.
Arctos(us), the Northern Bear.	Erēmus, a desert.	Vannus, a corn-fan.
Carbāsus, a sail.	Hāmus, the ground.	

2. Greek nouns in *odus* (ἡ ὄδος), and *mētros*, are likewise feminine; as, *synōdus*, an assembly; *diamētros*, a diameter.

\* Pronounced ne-go'-she-um. See § 12.



§ 50. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

<i>Acanthus</i> , bear's-foot.	<i>EBtilus</i> , an elder.	<i>Rribus</i> , a blackberry-bush.
<i>Amarantus</i> , amaranth.	<i>Helleb6rus</i> , hellebore.	<i>Tribulus</i> , a caltrops.
<i>Asparagus</i> , asparagus.	<i>Intibus</i> , endive.	
<i>Calamus</i> , a reed.	<i>Juncus</i> , a bulrush.	And sometimes
<i>Carduus</i> , a thistle.	<i>Raphanus</i> , a radish.	<i>Amaracus</i> , marjoram.
<i>Damus</i> , a bramble.	<i>Rhamnos</i> , buck-thorn.	<i>Cytisus</i> , snail-clover.

*Oleaster* and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

<i>Beryllus</i> , a beryl.	<i>Chrysoprasus</i> , chrysoprase.	So also,
<i>Carbunculus</i> , a carbuncle.	<i>Opalus</i> , opal.	<i>Pyr6pus</i> , gold-bronze.

*Chrysolithus*, *chrysolite*, and *smaragdus*, an emerald, are doubtful.

Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1; as, *mea Glycerium*, Ter.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium*, parsley; *aconitum*, wolf's bane.

*Canopus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abidus(os)* is doubtful.

Names of countries and towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter; as, *Ilium* or *Ili6n*; *Exb6t6na*, *6rum*.

§ 51. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

<i>Balanus</i> , a date.	<i>Grossus</i> , an unripe fig.	<i>Phaselus</i> , a light vessel.
<i>Barbitos</i> , a lute.	<i>Pampinus</i> , a vine-leaf.	

*Atomus*, an atom, and *colus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

*Pelagus*, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter.

*Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular*. When the genitive singular ends in *i*, as poets frequently contract it into *i*; as, *ingenti*, for *ingeniti*.

*Vocative singular*. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu*, *populus Alb6nus*. Liv.

Proper names in *us* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius*, *Hor6ti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*.

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *us*, including patrials and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *Delius*, *Delie*; *Tirynthus*, *Tirynthie*; *Laertius*, *Laertie*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *6rum*: § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *jug6rum*, *modium*, *talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deum*, *lib6rum*, *Danaum*; etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um*—as, *Achiaom*. Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.

*Deus, a god, is thus declined :—*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> de'-us,	<i>N.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,
<i>G.</i> de'-i,	<i>G.</i> de-ō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> de'-o,	<i>D.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is,
<i>Ac.</i> de'-um,	<i>Ac.</i> de'-os,
<i>V.</i> de'-us,	<i>V.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,
<i>Ab.</i> de'-o.	<i>Ab.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is.

*Jēsus*, or *Iēsus*, the name of the Savior, has *us* in the accusative, and *e* in all the other oblique cases.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 54. 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; but sometimes both forms are in use; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus*; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*; *Teucros*, *Teucer*. In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus*; as, *Codrus*, *hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucrus*.

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Barbiton, a lyre.</i>
<i>N.</i> Dē'-lōs,	Andrō'-ge-ōs,	<i>N.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>G.</i> Dē'-li,	An-dro'-ge-ō, or i,	<i>G.</i> bar'-bi-ti,
<i>D.</i> Dē'-lō,	An-dro'-ge-ō,	<i>D.</i> bar'-bi-tō,
<i>Ac.</i> Dē'-lōn or ūm,	An-dro'-ge-ō, or ōn,	<i>Ac.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>V.</i> Dē'-lē,	An-dro'-ge-ōs,	<i>V.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>Ab.</i> Dē'-lō.	An-dro'-ge-ō.	<i>Ab.</i> bar'-bi-tō.

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum*; but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *es*, as, *canephōrēs*.

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *ē* (*ou*); as, *Menandrē*. Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ōn*, instead of *ōrum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places; as, *Georgicōn*; *Philōnōn arē*. Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 8), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu*; but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *ēos*, dat. *ēi* (contracted *ēi*), acc. *ēē* or *ēd*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 806, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelāgus* (Greek *πῆλαγος*, *ec*) has an accusative plural *pelāgē* for *pelagea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *i* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 78, Rem.—*Panthūs* occurs in Virgil, *A.* 2, 822, as the vocative of *Panthūs*. Cf. § 81.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns; viz. *ma i y, ān, in, ōn, ūn, ēr, ūr, ys, eus, 2x, inx, ynx*, and plurals in *e*.

*Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.*

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

**§ 56.** The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *s* be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, etc. so *ars*, gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus*, gen. *opëris*, root *opër*, dat. *opëri*, etc.

RULES FOR FORMING THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE ROOT.

I. Roots ending in *c, g, b, m, p; u, t, d*, and some in *r*, add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trādis*, *trabs*; *hiēmis*, *hiems*; *gruis*, *grus*.

REMARK 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepōtis*, *nepos*; *laudis*, *laus*; *floris*, *flos*. So *lovīs*, *bos*, drops *v*.

REM. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x*; as, *vocis*, *vox*; *regis*, *rex*. So *us* forms *x* in *niris*, *nix*. Cf. §§ 3, 2, and 171, 1.

REM. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t*, is commonly changed to *ē*; as, *pollicis*, *pollex*; *calūbis*, *calebs*; *principis*, *princeps*; *comitis*, *comes*. So *ā* is changed to *ē* in *aucūpis*, *auceps*.

REM. 4. Short *ē* or *ō* before *r* in neuters is changed to *ā*; as, *genēris*, *genūs*; *tempōris*, *tempūs*.

REM. 5. Short *ē* before *r* is changed to *i* in the masculines *cinēris*, *cinis*; *cucumēris*, *cucumis*; *pulvērīs*, *pulvis*; *vomērīs*, *vōmis*.

REM. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rūpis*, nom. *rūpes*; gen. *auris*, nom. *auris*.

REM. 7. A few neuters add *ē* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rētē*, *rētis*; *māris*, *mārē*.

II. To roots ending in *l* and *n*, to some in *r* and *s*, and to those of most neuters in *t*, no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animālis*, *animal*; *canōnis*, *cānon*; *honōris*, *hōnor*; *assis*, *as*.

REMARK 1. Final *ōn* and *in* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *e* in the nominative; as, *sermōnis*, *sermo*; *arundīnis*, *arundo*.

REM. 2. Final *in* in the roots of neuters becomes *ēn* in the nominative; as, *fluminis*, *flumēn*. So also in the masculines, *occen*, *pecten*, *tibicen* and *tubicen*.

REM. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ē* between them in the nominative; as, *patris*, *pīter*; *imbris*, *imber*. Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

REM. 4. Short *ō* is changed to *ā* in *ebōris*, *ēbār*; *femōris*, *fēmār*; *jecōris*, *jēār*; and *robōris*, *rōbār*.

REM. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *it* becomes *ut* in the nominative; as, *poemātis*, *poēma*; *capitis*, *caput*.

REM. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of them in the nominative; as, *fellis*, *fel*; *farris*, *far*; *assis*, *as*; *beasis*, *bes*.

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> *	*	<i>N.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>G.</i> is,	is,	<i>G.</i> ūm, (iūm),	ūm, (iūm),
<i>D.</i> ī,	ī,	<i>D.</i> ībūs,	ībūs,
<i>Ac.</i> ěm, (īm),	*	<i>Ac.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>V.</i> *	*	<i>V.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>Ab.</i> ě, (ī).	ě, (ī).	<i>Ab.</i> ībūs.	ībūs.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

*Hōnor, honor ; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ho'-nor, ✓	ho-nō'-res,
<i>G.</i> ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>V.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-i-bus.

*Rūpes, a rock ; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>G.</i> ru'-pis, ✓	ru'-pi-um,
<i>D.</i> ru'-pi,	ru'-pi-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
<i>V.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>Ab.</i> ru'-pe.	ru'-pi-bus.

*Ars, art ; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>G.</i> ar'-tis, ✓	ar'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> ar'-ti,	ar'-ti-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
<i>V.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> ar'-te.	ar'-ti-bus.

*Sermo, speech ; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>G.</i> ser-mō'-nis, ✓	ser-mō'-num,
<i>D.</i> ser-mō'-ni,	ser-mon'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>V.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-i-bus.

*Turris, a tower ; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> tur'-ris, λ	tur'-res,
<i>G.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
<i>D.</i> tur'-ri,	tur'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> tur'-rim, rem,	tur'-res,
<i>V.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> tur'-ri, or re.	tur'-ri-bus.

*Nox, night ; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> nox, ✓	noc'-tes,
<i>G.</i> noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> noc'-ti,	noc'-ti-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
<i>V.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> noc'-te.	noc'-ti-bus.

*Miles, a soldier ; com. gen.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>G.</i> mil'-i-tis, λ	mil'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> mil'-i-ti,	mi-lit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> mil'-i-tem,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>V.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> mil'-i-te.	mi-lit'-i-bus.

*Pāter, a father ; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>G.</i> pa'-tris, λ	pa'-trum,
<i>D.</i> pa'-tri,	pat'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
<i>V.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>Ab.</i> pa'-tre.	pat'-ri-bus.

\* Pronounced ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um. See § 12.

*Sēdile, a seat; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>G.</i> se-dī'-lis,	se-dil'-i-um,
<i>D.</i> se-dī'-li,	se-dil'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>V.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>Ab.</i> se-dī'-li.	se-dil'-i-bus.

*Carmen, a verse; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>G.</i> car'-mī-nis,	car'-mī-num,
<i>D.</i> car'-mī-ni,	car-min'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>V.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>Ab.</i> car'-mī-ne.	car-min'-i-bus.

*Iter, a journey; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ī'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> i-tin'-ē-ris,	i-tin'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> i-tin'-ē-ri,	it-i-ner'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ī'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> ī'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> i-tin'-ē-re.	it-i-ner'-i-bus.

*Lāpis, a stone; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> lā'-pis,	lap'-ī-des,
<i>G.</i> lap'-ī-dis,	lap'-ī-dum,
<i>D.</i> lap'-ī-di,	la-pid'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> lap'-ī-dem,	lap'-ī-des,
<i>V.</i> lā'-pis,	lap'-ī-des,
<i>Ab.</i> lap'-ī-de.	la-pid'-i-bus.

*Virgo, a virgin; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>G.</i> vir'-gī-nis,	vir'-gī-num,
<i>D.</i> vir'-gī-ni,	vir-gin'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> vir'-gī-nem,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>V.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> vir'-gī-ne.	vir-gin'-i-bus.

*Animal, an animal; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ān'-i-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>G.</i> an-i-mā'-lis,	an-i-mā'-li-um,
<i>D.</i> an-i-mā'-li,	an-i-mal'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>V.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>Ab.</i> an-i-mā'-li.	an-i-mal'-i-bus.

*Opus, work; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ō'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris,	op'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,	o-per'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re.	o-per'-i-bus.

*Cāput, a head; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-ī-ta,
<i>G.</i> cap'-ī-tis,	cap'-ī-tum,
<i>D.</i> cap'-ī-ti,	ca-pit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-ī-ta,
<i>V.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-ī-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> cap'-ī-te.	ca-pit'-i-bus.

*Poëma, a poem; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>G.</i> po-em'-ā-tis,	po-em'-ā-tum,
<i>D.</i> po-em'-ā-ti,	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis,
<i>Ac.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>V.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> po-em'-ā-te.	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis.

## RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28-34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

## MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, *os*, and *n*, are masculine; as,

*sermo*, speech; *dolor*, pain; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pes*, a foot; *admon*, a rule.

## Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio*, reason; *legio*, a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io*; as, *binio*, *trinio*, etc., except *unio*, unity, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine, as, *arundo*, a reed; *imāgo*, an image. So also *grando*, hail. But *comēdo*, a glutton; *unēdo*, the arbuté tree; and *harpāgo*, a grappling-hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo*, the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupido*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Ciro*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine; as, *ēcho*, an echo. *Bubo*, the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 462.

## Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Laser*, a water plant, and *tüber*, the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Siser*, skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter:—

Acer, a maple-tree.	Papāver, a poppy.	Tüber, a swelling.
Cadāver, a dead body.	Piper, pepper.	Über, a teat.
Cīcer, a vetch.	Sīler, an osier.	Ver, the spring.
Iter, a journey.	Spinther, a clasp.	Verber, a scourge.
Lāser, assafœtida.	Süber, a cork-tree.	Zingiber, ginger.

## Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine: *ādor*, spelt; *aquor*, the sea; *marmor* marble; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

## Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.

1. The following are feminine:—

Compes, a fetter.	Quies, and Requies, rest.	1 ēges, a mat.
Merces, a reward.	Inquies, restlessness.	
Merges, a sheaf of corn.	Sēges, growing corn.	

2. *Ales*, a bird; *cōmes*, a companion; *hāspes*, a guest; *interpres*, an interpreter; *miles*, a soldier; *obses*, a hostage; *prases*, a president; and *satelles*, a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

*Exceptions in OS.*

3. *Arbor*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *eos*, the morning; and rarely *nepos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *bos* are common, § 80; *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *epos*, epic poetry; and *mélōs*, melody.

*Exceptions in N.*

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*gluten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on* are feminine—*aëdon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *icon*, an image; and *stachon*, tussilage.

## FEMININES.

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; as,

*ætas*, age; *nubes*, a cloud; *avis*, a bird; *chlamys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trahis*, a beam; *pax*, peace.

*Exceptions in AS.*

1. *Mas*, a male, *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisible into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adamas*, adamant. So also *Melas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcas* and *Nomas* are common.—2. *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fas* and *nēfas*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *dis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a meat-pie; *bucrus*, a species of herb.

*Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.*

3. *Acināces*, a scimitar, and *cōles* or *cōlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *palmes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoëthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepenthes*, and *panāces*, Greek words, are neuter.

*Exceptions in IS.*

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Ornis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Amnis*, a river; *cinis*, ashes; *finis*, an end; *clānis*, the haunch; *cānis*, a dog; *fūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cinēres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fines*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

*Anguis*, a snake.

*Corbis*, a basket.

*Tigris*, a tiger.

*Callis*, a path.

*Pollis*, fine flour.

*Torquis*, a chain.

*Canālis*, a conduit pipe.

*Pulvis*, dust.

*Contubernālis*, a comrade.

*Scrōbis*, a ditch.

3. The following are masculine:—

*Axis*, an axle.

*Cenchris*, a serpent.

*Follis*, a pair of bellows.

*Aquālis*, a water-pot.

*Collis*, a hill.

*Fustis*, a club.

*Cassis*, a net.

*Cucūmis*, a cucumber.

*Glis*, a dormouse.

*Caulis*, or } a stalk.

*Ensis*, a sword.

*Lāpis*, a stone.

*Cōlis*,

*Fascis*, a bundle.

*Lemures*, pl., spectres.

Mensis, a month.	Sanguis, blood.	Sentis, a brier.
Mugilis, a mullet.	Sēmis, or	Sodālis, a companion.
Orbis, a circle.	Semissis,	Torris, a firebrand.
Piscis, a fish.	Bessis, } compounds	Unguis, a nail.
Postis, a post.	Ocentussis, } of as.	Vectis, a lever.
Quiris, a Roman.	Decussis,	Vermis, a worm.
Samnis, a Samnite.	Tressis,	Vōmis, a ploughshare.

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine; as, *Dis*, Pluto; *Anūbis*, an Egyptian deity; *Tigris*, the river Tigris; *Aprilis*, April. See § 28.

### Exceptions in YS.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hályx*, *Othrys*. See § 28, 2 and 3.

### Exceptions in S preceded by a consonant.

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps*, a bird-catcher; *chālybs*, steal; *cliens*, a client; *elops*, a kind of fish; *ēpops*, a hoopoe; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *mērops*, a kind of bird. *Rūdēns*, a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (a.) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens*, scil. *amnis*; *occidens* and *oriens*, scil. *sol*; (b.) compounds of *dens*—*tridens*, a trident, and *bidens*, a two-pronged mattock;—but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine; (c.) the parts of *as* ending in *ns*; as, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dodrans*, and *decians*.

3. The following are common or doubtful:—

Adeps, grease.	Seps, a kind of serpent.	Serpens, a serpent.
Forceps, pincers.	Scrobs, a ditch.	Stirps, the trunk of a tree.

*Animans* an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

### Exceptions in X.

§ 65. 1. AX. *Anthrax*, cinnabar; *cōrax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *drūpax*, an ointment; *stīrax*, a kind of tree; *thōrax*, a breast-plate; and *Atax*, the river Aude, are masculine; *Itmax*, a snail, is common.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fax*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nox*, *proex*, (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex*, which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cārex*, *ūlex*, *mūrex*, *pellēx*, and *vīlex*. *Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex*, a fish-pickle; *cortēx*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *obex*, a bolt; and *silex*, a flint, are doubtful: *stnēx*, an old person; *grex*, a herd; *rūmēx*, sorrel; and *pūmēx*, pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

3. IX. *Cūlix*, a cup; *fornix*, an arch; *phanix*, a kind of bird; and *spādix*, a palm-branch, are masculine: *lūrix*, the larch-tree; *perdix*, a partridge; and *vārix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *ēsox*, names of fishes, are masculine.

5. UX. *Trādūx*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *cālyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; *dryx*, a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx*, as *Eryx*, are masculine. *Onyx*, a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardōnyx*, a precious stone; also, *calx*, the heel, and *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx*, when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *dēcunx*, *duonx*, parts of *as*, are masculine.



## NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, ar, ur, us*, and *men*, are neuter; as,

*diadema*, a crown; *rete*, a net; *hydromeli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *vectigal*, revenue; *caput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat; *pectus*, the breast; and *flumen*, a river.

## Exceptions in L, C, and E.

*Magil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Praneste* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

## Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *ailar*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

## Exceptions in US.

1. *Lepus*, a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πούς), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagopus*, a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us*, having *utis*, or *utis*, in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

3. *Pecus*, *-utis*, a brute animal, and *tellus*, the earth, are feminine. *Pessimus*, and *Selinus*, names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus*, a crane; *mus*, a mouse; and *sus*, a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus*, sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 68. 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is*, in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us*.

## A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *utis*; as, *di-a-dē-ma*, *di-a-dem'-d-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mā-tis*, an opinion.

## E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *re'-te*, *re'-tis*, a net; *se-dē'-le*, *se-dē'-lis*, a seat.

## I.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hydrom'-ē-ti*, mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-t-tis* in the genitive.

## O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *onis*; as, *ser'-mo*, *ser-mō'-nis*, speech; *pā'-vo*, *pa-vō'-nis*, a peacock.

REMARK. Patricians in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macēdo*, *ōnis*; but some have *ōnis*, as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 3d exception to increments in *O*, § 287.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *tnis*; as, *a-run'-do*, *a-run'-dē-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go*, *i-mag'-t-nis*, an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo*, *ādo*, *āgo* and *māgo*; and three trisyllables—*comēdo*, *unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, have *ōnis*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns, also, have *tnis*:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, a man; *nēmo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

*Cūro*, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Neris*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien*, and *Neriēnes*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ās*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didus*, dat. *Dido*, etc.; *Argo*, *-us*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido*, *Didōnis*.

## Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *yois*; as, *misy*, *misjos*, or, by contraction, *misys*.

## C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *c* are *d'-lec*, *a-lē'-cis*, fish-brine, and *lac*, *lac'-tis*, milk.

## L. N. R.

Nouns in *l*, *n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul*, *con'-sū-lis*, a consul; *cā-non*, *can'-ō-nis*, a rule; *hō-nor*, *ho-nō-ris*, honor.

So, *An'-i-mal*, *an-i-mā'-lis*, an animal.

*VI'-gil*, *vig'-i-lis*, a watchman.

*TY'-tan*, *Ti-tā'-nis*, *Titan*.

*SI'-ren*, *Si-rē'-nis*, a Siren.

*Del'-phin*, *del-phī'-nis*, a dolphin.

*Cal'-car*, *cal-cā'-ris*, a spur.

*Car'-cer*, *car'-cē-ris*, a prison.

*A'-mor*, *a-mō-ris*, love.

*Gut'-tur*, *gut'-tū-ris*, the throat.

*Mar'-tyr*, *mar'-tū-ris*, a martyr.

## Exceptions in L.

*Mel*, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*, making *fellis* and *mellis*.

## Exceptions in N.

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *tnis*; as, *flū'-men*, *flū'-mē-nis*, a river; *glū'-ten*, *glū'-tē-nis*, glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *tnis*:—*osceus*, a bird which foreboded by its notes; *pecten*, a comb; *tibicen*, a piper; and *tubicen*, a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *ōn* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon*, *Laomēdon-tis*. Some in *in* and *yn* add *is* or *os*; as, *Trāchin*, or *Trāchyn*, *Trachinis* or *Trachynos*.

## Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pā'-ter*, *pa'-tris*, a father. So also *imber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber*, *Octōbris*.

But *crâter*, a cup; *ôtter*, a savior; and *lîter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hêpar*, the liver, *hêpâtis*; *Lar* or *Lavr*, *Lartis*; *tier*, a journey, has *tiêrîs* from the old nominative *itîner*; *Jupîter* *Jôis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *oris* in the genitive:—*ûur*, ivory; *fêmur*, the thigh; *jêcur*, the liver; *rôdur*, strength.

*Fêmur* has also *feminis*, and *jêcur*, *jecinôris*, and *jocinôris*.

## AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *âtis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tâ'-tis*, age; *pi'-ê-tas*, *pi-e-tâ'-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mâs*, a male, *mâris*; *vas*, a surety, *vâdis*; and *vâs*, a vessel, *vâis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anâtis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *âdis* or *âdos*, and the neuters in *âtis*; as, *adâmas*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampas*, *-âdis*, a lamp; *Pallas*, *-âdis* or *-âdos*; *bucêras*, *-âtis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nômas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *âdis*. *Mêlas*, the name of a river, has *Mêlânis*.

## ES.

§ 73. 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *ûis*, *êtis*, or *ëtis*; as, *rû'-pes*, *rû'-pis*, a rock; *mî'-les*, *mîl'-t-is*, a soldier; *ê'-ges*, *seg'-ê-tis*, growing corn; *qui'-es*, *qui-ê-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *is*, *ei* or *-i*; and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *is* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *âtis* are,

*Ales*, a bird.  
*Ames*, a fowler's staff.  
*Antistes*, a priest.  
*Cæspes*, a turf.  
*Cômes*, a companion.  
*Eques*, a horseman.  
*Fômes*, touchwood.

*Gurges*, a whirlpool.  
*Hospes*, a guest.  
*Limes*, a limit.  
*Merges*, a sheaf of corn.  
*Miles*, a soldier.  
*Palmes*, a vine-branch.  
*Pêdes*, a foot-soldier.

*Poples*, the ham.  
*Satelles*, a lifeguard.  
*Stipes*, the stock of a tree.  
*Termes*, an olive bough.  
*Trâmes*, a by-path.  
*Vêles*, a skirmisher.

3. The following have *êtis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indêges*, a man deified; *interprez*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sêges*, a corn-field; and *têges*, a mat.

4. The following have *êtis*:—*Obes*; *Ores*, a Cretan; *ûbes*, a caldron; *mag-nes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquiês*, restlessness; and *tâpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *êtis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chrêmes*, *-êtis*, or *-is*. *Dâres*, *-êtis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obes*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *tâis*. *Hêres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *êdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *êdis*.

Exc. 2. *Cêres* has *Cerêris*; *bes*, *beasis*; *præz*, *prædis*; and *æz*, *ovis*.

## IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *ai'-ris*, the ear; *â-vis*, *â'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ōris* :—*clais*, ashes; *pulvis*, dust; *vomer* or *vomer*, a ploughshare. *Cucumis*, a cucumber, has *ōris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *lōis* :—*cupis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cupis*, a point; *lapis*, a stone; and *prœmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *lōis* :—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *itis* :—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Gūs*, a dormouse, has *gūris*.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ies* or *eos*, (*ies* or *æes*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (a.) verbals in *is*; as, *basis*, *mathesis*, etc. (b.) compounds of *polis* (πόλις); as, *metropōlis*, *Neapōlis*, etc.; and (c.) a few other proper names, as *Charybdis*, *Lachæris*, *Syriz*, etc. In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemasis*, *Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *idos* (ιδος), form their Latin genitive in *idis*; as, *agis*, *aspis*, *ephemēris*, *pyramis*, *tyrannidis*, *Ætidis*, *Iris*, *Nertis*, etc. *Tigris* has both *is* and *idis*; and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *idis*.

3. *Chōris* has *Charitis*; *Salāmis*, *Salaminis*, and *Simōis*, *Simœntis*.

#### OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flo-ris*, a flower; *nē-pos*, *ne-pō-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris* :—

*Flos*, a flower.

*Lābos* or *lābor*, labor.

*Os*, the mouth.

*Glos*, a husband's sister.

*Lēpos* or *lēpor*, wit.

*Ros*, dew.

*Hōnos* or *hōnor*, honor.

*Mos*, a custom.

*Arbos* or *arbor*, a tree, has *ōris*.

The following have *ōtis* :—

*Cos*, a whetstone.

*Monocēros*, a unicorn.

*Nēpos*, a grandchild.

*Dos*, a dowry.

*Rhinocēros*, a rhinoceros.

*Sacerdos*, a priest.

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bōvis*; and *os*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ōis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*; *Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos*, *cētos*, *ēpos*, *mēlos*.

#### US.

§ 76. 1. Nouns in *ūs* form their genitive in *ēris* or *ōris*; as, *gēnus*, *gen-ēris*, a kind; *tem-pus*, *tem-pō-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ōris* are, *ācus*, (chaff), *facus*, *fūnus*, *gēnus*, *glōmus*, *lātus*, *mānus*, *ōtus*, *ōnus*, *ōpus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scēlus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *viscus* and *vulnus*. In early writers *pignus* has sometimes *pignēris*.

3. Those which make *ōris* are, *corpus*, *dēcus*, *dedōcus*, *factus*, *fēnus*, *frigus*, *lēpus*, *litus*, *nēmus*, *pectus*, *pēcus*, *pēnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ūs* have *ūdis* :—*incūs*, an anvil; *pālūs*, a morass; and *subecūs*, a dove-tail. *Pēcūs*, a brute animal, has *pecūdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis* :—*juventūs*, youth; *sālūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, slavery; *virtūs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *as* have *aris*; as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, broth; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *tus*, frankincense; except *grus*, and *sus*, which have *gruis*, and *suis*; and *rhus*, which has *rhois* or *roris*. *Tellus*, the earth, has *telluris*; and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Liguria*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πύς) have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripōdis*, a tripod; *Œdipus*, *ōdis*; but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *antis*; as, *Amāthus*, *Anathematis*. So *Trapēsus*, *Opus*, *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*.

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ei* or *-i*. Cf. § 64, 5.

## YS.

§ 77. 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *gis* (contracted *gs*), or, as in Greek, *yos* (*voc*); as,

*Cotys*, gen. *Cotysis* or *Cotys*; *Tithys*, *-gis* or *yos*. So *Atys*, *Olyps*, *Eriangys*, *Halye*, *Othrys*. A few have *gis*; as, *chiknye*, *chlamydis*.

## S preceded by a consonant.

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trā-bis*, a beam; *hi-ems*, *hi-ē-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *ds*, *ms*, and *ps*; as, *scrobs*, *hiems*, *serps*, change *s* into *is*; except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *gryphis*.

REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *\*cāpio* have *ipis*; as, *princeps*, *principis*. a prince. But *auceps* has *aucūpis*.

(2.) Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, as, *puls*, *gens*, *ars*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *as* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, foliage: *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *libripens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns*, a town of Argolis, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

## T.

§ 78. 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *tis*. They are, *cāput*, the head, gen. *cap-tis*; and its compounds, *occiput* and *sinciput*.

## X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *xs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s*; as, *vox* (*vocs*) *vō-cis*, the voice; *lex* (*legs*) *lē-gis*, a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *formax*, *formācis*, except *fax*, *fācis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *thōrax*, *thorācis*; a few have *ācis*; as, *chōrax*, *cordācis*; and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis*; as, *Astyanax*, *Astyanactis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *icis*; as, *jūdex*, *judācis*; *obex* has *obīcis* or *objicis*; and *vibex*, *vibicis*. *Nex*, *prex*, (nom. obs.), *rēnex* and *fenīsex* have *ēcis*; *ālex*, *narthez*, and *vervez* have *ēcis*, and *fax*, *fācis*. *Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis*; *aquilex* and *grex* have *īgis*; *rēmex* has *remīgis*; *sēnex*, *sēnis*; and *supellex*, *supellectīlis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ix* have *icis*; as, *cervix*, *cervicis*; and less frequently *icis*; as, *calix*, *calicis*. But *nix* has *nivis*; *strix*, foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *is* have *igis*; as, *Bitūrix*, *Danubrix*, etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ōcis*; as, *vox*, *vōcis*; but *Cappadox* has *Cappadōcis*; *Allobrox*, *Allobrogis*; and *nox*, *noctis*.

(5.) Of nouns in *ux*, *crux*, *dux*, *trādux*, and *nox* have *ūcis*; *lux* and *Pollux*, *lūcis*.—*Conjux* has *conjūgis*, *frux* (nom. obs.) *frūgis*, and *fauz*, *faucis*.

(6.) *Yx*, a Greek termination, has *ycis*, *ycis*, or *ygis*, *ygis*. *Onyx* and *sar-  
dāyx*, in which *x* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 3, 2) have *ychis*; as, *ōnyx*, *onychis*.

## DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte dītus*. Varro in Gellius. So are *festi*, Cic. and Liv.; and *jūre* for *jūri*. Liv.

## ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(a.) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative.

(b.) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin nouns in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *im*, and some Greek nouns have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im*; as, *Hispanis*, *Tiberis*, *Anubis*; so also *Albis*, *Athēsis*, *Batis*, *Arar* or *Arāris*, *Bilbilis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Syrtis*, etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*. *Scaldis* has *in* and *em*, and *Liris*, *im*, *in*, and *em*. *Liger* has *Ligērim*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

Amussis, a mason's rule.	Mephitis, foul air.	Sināpis, mustard.
Būris, a plough-tail.	Pelvis, a basin.	Sitis, thirst.
Cannābis, hemp.	Rāvis, hoarseness.	Tussis, a cough.
Cucūmis, (gen. -is), a cucumber.	Secūris, an axe.	Vis, strength.

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em* :—

Febris, a fever. Puppis, the stern. Restis, a rope. Turris, a tower.

But these have *em*, and rarely *im* :—

Bipennis, a battle-axe.	Nāvis, a ship.	Sementis, a sowing.
Clāvis, a key.	Præsēpis, a stall.	Strigilis, a flesh-brush.
Messis, a harvest.		

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim*; and *crātim* from *crates*, as found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

## Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

1. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampādis* (Greek -δός) *lampāda*; *chlām̄ys*, *chlām̄ydis*, *chlām̄ydem*, or *-yia*; *Helicon*, *Helicōnis*, *He'icōna*.

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive—*Trōs*, *Trōis*, *Trōem*, and *Trōa*, a Trojan; *hērōs*, a hero; and *Mīnos*, a king of Crete.—*Aēr*, the air; *aitēr*, the sky; *delphīs*, a dolphin; and *paan*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *aēra*, *aitēra*, *delphina*, *paāna*. *Pas*, a god, has only *a*.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *m*; sometimes in *idem*; *Pāris*, *Parīdis*; *Parim*, or *Paridem*.

Exc. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *m*; as, *Elīs*, *Elīdis*; *Elin* or *Elīdem*. So *tigris*, gen. *is* or *īdis*; acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin*.

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, gen. *os*, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *Charybdis*, (gen. Lat. *-is*, Gr. *-os*), acc. *Charybdīm* or *-in*; *Hālys*, *-is* or *-yos*, *Hālym* or *-yn*. So *rhūs*, gen. *rhōis*, has *rhūm* or *rhūn*.

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus*, gen. *ēi* and *ēs*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*. See § 54, 6.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles*, *Achillen*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*; *Sophōcles*, *Sophōclen*. Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *ētem*, *ēta*, or *em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chrētes*, *Thāles*.

## VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

### § 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Tēthys*, *Tethy*; *Melampus*, *Melampru*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *e*, after the first declension; as, *Socrātes*, *Socrāte*. § 45, 1.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

### § 82. The ablative singular commonly ends in *e*.

Exc. 1. (a.) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedīle*, *sedīli*; *animāl*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*.

(b.) But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hēpar*, the liver; *jūbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; *sal*, salt. *Rēte*, a net, has either *e* or *i*; and *māre*, the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. (a.) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; *Tibēris*, *-im*, *i*; *December*, *Decembri*; *Aprilis*, *Aprili*.

(b.) But *Batis*, *canabīs*, and *sināpis*, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, has *tigrīde*; as a river it has both *Tigrīde* and *Tigri*.

Exc. 3. (a.) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre* or *turri*.

(b.) So *Elīs*, acc. *Elīdem* and *Elin*, has *Elīde* or *Elī*. But *restis*, and most Greek nouns with *īdis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Pāris*, *īdis*, *īde*.

Exc. 4. (a.) Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *familiaris*, a friend; *natalis*, a birthday; *sodalis*, a companion; *trirēmis*, a trireme.—Participles in *as*, used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative, but *contīnens* has *i*.

(b.) When adjectives in *i* become proper names, they always have *e*; as *Juvénalis*, *Juvénale*. *Affinis* and *amicus* have generally *e*; as *have* always *juvenis*, a youth; *rodus*, a rod; and *volucris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. (a.) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:—

Amnis,	Collis,	Ignis,	Paras,	Supellex,
Anguis,	Convallis,	Imber,	Postis,	Tridens,
Avis,	Corbis,	Mugilis,	Pagil,	Unguis,
Billis,	Finis,	Orbis,	Sordes,	Vectis,
Civis,	Fustis,	Ovis,	Sors,	Vesper.
Classis,				

(b.) *Occiput* has only *i*, and *rurs* has either *e* or *i*; but *rurs* commonly signifies from the country, and *rursi*, in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i*.

(c.) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage; so, *Anzuri* and *Lacedemóni*, and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Cusidus* has *i*, and very rarely *e*.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Alys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. I. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes*, *rūpes*:—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i*, have *ia*; as, *caput*, *capita*; *sedūle*, *sedilia*; *rēte*, *retia*. *Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia*.

1. Some Greek neuters in *es* have *ē* in the nominative plural; as, *mēlos*; nom. plural, *mele*; (in Greek *μῆλα*, by contraction *μῆλα*). So *Tempe*.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

II. The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedūle*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nūbes*, *nubium*; *hostis*, *hostium*.

Exc. *Cinis*, *juvenis*, *fōris*, *mugilis*, *prōles*, *struces*, and *vātes*, have *um*; so oftener have *apis*, *strigilis*, and *volucris*; less frequently *mensis*, *sēdes*, and, in the poets only, *ambāges*, *cāedes*, *clādes*, *vepres*, and *calestis*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *gens*, *gentium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx*, *sphinx*, and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um*.

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um*, but the following have *ium*; *dos*, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os* (*ossis*), *fauz*, (nom. obs.) *nix*, *nox*, *strix*, *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*; so also *fur* and *ren*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*, but sometimes *um*; as, *cliens*, *clientium* or *clientum*, *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*.



(1.) Other nouns in *us* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *celas*, *celātum* or *celatium*. *Pendēs* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*cāro*, *compes*, *linter*, *imber*, *āter*, *venter*, *Samnis*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insūber*. *Fornax* and *pālus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gigas*, *gigantum*; *Arabs*, *Arabum*; *Thraz*, *Thracum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammatōn*; *Metamorphōsis*, *-eōn*. The patrician *Maleōn* also is found in Curtius, 4, 13.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mānes*, *manium*; *calītes*, *calitum*; *ilia*, *ilium*; as if from *madnis*, *cales*, and *ile*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia* *Saturnaliaum*; but these have sometimes *orum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alitum*. See § 322, 3.

## DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *bābus*, by contraction, for *boībus*; *sus* has *sūbus* by syncope, for *suius*. § 322, 5, and 4.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poēma*, *poemātis*, or *poematibus*.

Exc. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *herotāis*; *herotsi*, or *herotsin*. Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphosēsi*.

## ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs*, *ā*, *iā*.

Exc. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partīs* or *partēs*.

Exc. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *as* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs*, *lampādas*. So also *hēros*, *herōis*, *herōas*, and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form; as, *Brigantias*, *Allobrōgas*.

*Jupiter*, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Ju'-pl-ter,	N. vis,	vi'-res,
G. Jō'-vis,	G. vis,	vir'-i-um,
D. Jō'-vi,	D. —	vir'-i-bus,
Ac. Jō'-vem,	Ac. vim,	vi'-res,
V. Ju'-pl-ter,	V. vis,	vi'-res,
Ab. Jō'-ve.	Ab. vī.	vir'-i-bus.

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension :—

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abt.</i>
<i>S.</i>	Lampas,	{ -adis, -ados, }	-adi,	{ -adem, -ada, }	-as,	-ade.
<i>PL</i>	-ades,	-adum,	-adibus,	{ -ades, -adas, }	-ades,	-adibus.
<i>S.</i>	Hēros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	{ -ōem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
<i>PL</i>	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oibus,	{ -ōes, -ōas, }	-ōes,	-oibus.
	Chēlysa,	{ -ŷis, -ŷos, }	-ŷi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ŷe or y.
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -ios, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ēa, -ēn, }	-es, -ē,	-e or -i.
	Orpheus,	-ēos,	-ēi,	-ēa,	-eu,	See § 54.
	Aēr,	-ēris,	-ēri,	-ēra,	-er,	-ēre.
	Didō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

<i>Fructus, fruit.</i>		<i>Cornu, a horn.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	<i>N.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
<i>G.</i> fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tu-ūm,	<i>G.</i> cor'-nūs,	cor'-nu-ūm,
<i>D.</i> fruc'-tu-i,	fruc'-tī-būs,	<i>D.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nī-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> fruc'-tūm,	fruc'-tūs,	<i>Ac.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
<i>V.</i> fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	<i>V.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
<i>Abt.</i> fruc'-tū.	fruc'-tī-būs.	<i>Abt.</i> cor'-nū.	cor'-nī-būs.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, <i>a song.</i>	Fluc'-tus, <i>a wave.</i>	Se-nā'-tus, <i>the senate.</i>
Cur'-tus, <i>a chariot.</i>	Luc'-tus, <i>grief.</i>	Gē'-lu, <i>ice. (in sing.)</i>
Ex-er'-ci-tus, <i>an army.</i>	Mō'-tus, <i>motion.</i>	Vē'-ru, <i>a spit.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine :—

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Dōmus, <i>a house.</i>	Mānus, <i>a hand.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>

*Olus*, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *Idus*, the Ides, are also feminine. So *noctus*, by night, found only in the ablative singular.

*Pēnus*, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sēcus*, sex, is neuter; see § 94. *Spēcus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

*Anna, nātus, socrus*;—*cornus, laurus*, and *quercus*. *Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. *Dōmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> ,
G. <i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mī</i> ,	<i>dom'-u-ūm</i> , or <i>do-mō'-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>dom'-u-i</i> , or <i>do'-mō</i> ,	<i>dom'-i-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>do'-mūm</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mōs</i> ,
V. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> ,
Ab. <i>do'-mō</i> .	<i>dom'-i-būs</i> .

(a.) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domi* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(b.) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *figus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pēnus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(c.) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*. Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

REMARK 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>frutuēs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,
G. <i>fructūs</i> , <i>-ūs</i> ,	<i>fructuūm</i> , <i>-ūm</i> ,
D. <i>fructui</i> , <i>-ī</i> ,	<i>fructulbūs</i> , <i>-ūbūs</i> , or <i>-ībūs</i> ,
Ac. <i>fructuēm</i> , <i>-ūm</i> ,	<i>fructuēs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,
V. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>fructuēs</i> , <i>-ūs</i> ,
Ab. <i>fructuē</i> , <i>-ī</i> .	<i>fructulbūs</i> , <i>-ūbūs</i> , or <i>-ībūs</i>

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *amīs*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senātī*; *tumultus*, *tumultī*. Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Lacus</i> , a lake.	<i>Pēcu</i> , a flock.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.

*Genu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *strus*, a spit, have *ibūs* or *ūbus*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined:—

*Res, a thing.*

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēa</i> ,
G. <i>rē-i</i> ,	<i>rē-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>rē-i</i> ,	<i>rē-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>rēm</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
V. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
Ab. <i>rē</i> .	<i>rē-būs</i> .

*Dies, a day.*

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>dī-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī-ēs</i> ,
G. <i>dī-ē-i</i> ,	<i>dī-ē-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>dī-ē-i</i> ,	<i>dī-ē-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>dī-ēm</i> ,	<i>dī-ēs</i> ,
V. <i>dī-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī-ēs</i> ,
Ab. <i>dī-ē</i> .	<i>dī-ē-būs</i> .

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or in *i*, instead of *ei*; as, gen. *dīe* for *dīei*, Virg.; *fide* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plēbi* for *plēbēi*, Liv.—dat. *fide* for *fidei*, Hor., *perniciē*, Liv., and *perniciū*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabīēs* contracted for *rabīeis*, after the third declension, is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies*, *effigies*, *cluvies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species*, *spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, *quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family. Cf. § 43, 2.

*Singular.*

N. V. <i>res-pūb'-lī-ca</i> ,
G. D. <i>re-i-pūb'-lī-caē</i> ,
Ac. <i>rem-pūb'-lī-ca-m</i> ,
Ab. <i>re-pūb'-lī-ca</i> .

*Plural.*

N. V. <i>res-pūb'-lī-caē</i> ,
G. <i>re-rūm-pūb'-lī-caē-rūm</i> ,
D. Ab. <i>re-būs-pūb'-lī-cis</i> ,
Ac. <i>res-pūb'-lī-cae</i> .

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>N.</i> ju-jū-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>N.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>G.</i> ju-ris-ju-ran'-di,		<i>G.</i> ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>D.</i> ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,		<i>D.</i> ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>Ac.</i> ju-jū-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>Ac.</i> ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>V.</i> ju-jū-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da.	<i>V.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>Ab.</i> ju-ro-ju-ran'-do.		<i>Ab.</i> ma-tre-fa-mil'-i-as, etc.

**NOTE.** The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is variable, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

#### *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *Avernus*, *Dindymus*, *Ismārus*, *Massicus*, *Mānālus*, *Pangæus*, *Tartārus*, *Taygētus*; plur. *Averna*, etc.

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

*jōcus*, a jest; plur. *jōci*, or *jōca*;—*lōcus*, a place; plur. *lōci*, passages in books, topics, places; *lōca*, places;—*sibīlus*, a hissing; plur. *sibīla*, rarely *sibīli*;—*intūbus*, endive; plur. *intūbi* or *intūba*.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *carbāsus*, a species of flax; plur. *carbāsa*, very rarely *carbāsi*, sails, etc., made of it;—*Hierosolyma*, -a, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolyma*, -a, -um.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as, *cælum*, heaven; plur. *cæli*;—*Elysium*; plur. *Elysii*;—*Argos*; plur. *Argæ*. So *sicer*, neut., plur. *sicres*, masc.

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

*frēnum*, a bridle; plur. *frēni* or *frēna*;—*rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or, more rarely, *rastra*;—*pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillāres* or *pugillaria*.

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as, *epūlum*, a feast; plur. *epūla*;—*balneum*, a bath; plur. *balnea* or *balnea*;—*nundānum*, a market-day; plur. *nundina*, a fair.

7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural

*Gen.* or *abus.* or *delicium*, delight; plur. *delicia*.

*Heteroclites.*

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as,

nom. and acc. *jugērum*, an acre; gen. *jugēri* or *jugēris*; abl. *jugēro* and *jugēre*; plur., nom., and acc. *jugēra*; gen. *jugērum*; abl. *jugēris* and *jugeribus*.

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; as, *vās*, a vessel; plur. *vāsa*, *drum*. *Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *ancilōrum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa*, *-drum*, properly comes from *vāsum*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vās*, *vāsis*, became obsolete.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are *pondo*, a pound; most nouns in *i*; as, *gummi*, gum; foreign words; as, *Aaron*, *Jacob*: *sēmis*, a half; *git*, a kind of plant; the singular of *mille*, a thousand; words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*; if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk:—

\**Abactus*, acc. pl.; a driving away.

*Accitu*, abl.; a calling for.

*Admissu*, abl.; admission.

*Admonitu*, abl.; admonition.

*Es*, not used in gen. pl.

*Affātu*, abl.; an addressing;—pl. *affātus*, -ibus.

*Algu*, nom.; *algum*, act.; *algu*, abl.; cold.

*Ambāge*, abl.; a going around;—pl. entire.

\**Amissum*, acc.; a loss.

*Aplustre*, nom.; and acc.; the flag of a ship;—pl. *aplustria*, or *aplustra*.

*Arbitrātus*, nom.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; judgment.

*Arcessitu*, abl.; a sending for.

*Astu*, nom., acc.; a city.

*Astus*, nom.; *astu*, abl.; craft;—*astus*, acc. pl.

*Cacoēthes*, nom., acc.; a custom;—*cacoētae*, nom. pl.; -e, and -es, acc. pl.

*Canities*, nom. -em, acc.; -e, abl.

*Cētos*, acc.; a whale;—*cēte*, nom. and acc. pl.; *cetis*, dat.

*Chāos*, nom. acc.; *chao*, abl.; *chaos*.

*Cassem*, acc.; *casse*, abl.; a net;—pl. entire.

*Circumspectus*, nom.; -um; -u; a looking around.

*Coactu*, abl.; constraint.

*Cœlite*, abl.; pl. entire; inhabitants of heaven.

\**Commūtātum*, acc.; an alteration.

*Compēdis*, gen.; *compēde*, abl.; a fetter;—pl. *compēdes*, -ium, -ibus.

*Concessu*, abl.; permission.

*Condiscipulātu*, abl.; companionship at school.

*Crātim*, or -em, acc.; -e, abl.; a hurdle;—pl. *crātes*, -ium, -ibus.

*Cupressu*, abl.; a cypress.

*Daps*, nom., scarcely used; *dāpis*, gen. etc. pl. *dapes*, -ibus; a feast.

\**Dātu*, abl.; a giving.

*Derisus*, -ui, dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; ridicule.

Despicatui, *dat.*; *contempt.*  
 Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; a *legal process*;—dicas, *acc. pl.*  
 Dicis, *gen.*; as, dicis gratiā, *for form's sake.*  
 Ditiōnis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *power.*  
 Diu, *abl.*; *in the day time.*  
 Divisui, *dat.*; a *dividing.*  
 Ebur, *ivory*;—not used in the plural.  
 \*Efflagitātū, *abl.*; *importunity.*  
 \*Ejectus, *nom.*; a *throwing out.*  
 Epos, *nom.* and *acc.*; an *epic poem.*  
 Ergo, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *for the sake.*  
 Essēdas, *acc. pl.*; *war chariots.*  
 Evectus, *nom.*; a *carrying out.*  
 Fax, *drags*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fāmē, *abl.*; *hunger.*  
 Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen., dat.,* and *abl. pl.*  
 Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; *right.*  
 Fauce, *abl.*; *the throat*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Fax, a *torch*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fel, *gall*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Feminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; *the thigh*;—*pl. femina, -ibus.*  
 Flictu, *abl.*; a *striking.*  
 Fōris, *nom.* and *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a *door*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*; -te, *abl.*; *chance.*  
 \*Frustratui, *abl.*; a *deceiving.*  
 Frux, *fruit*, *nom.* scarcely used;—*frūgis, gen., etc.*  
 Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; *lightning.*  
 Gausāpe, *nom., acc., abl.*; a *rough garment*;—*gnusāpa, acc. pl.*  
 Glos, *nom.*; a *husband's sister.*  
 Grātes, *acc. pl.*;—*gratibus, abl.*; *thanks.*  
 Hebdomādam, *acc.*; a *week.*  
 Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen., dat.,* and *abl. pl.*  
 Hippomānes, *nom.* and *acc.*  
 \*Hir, *nom.*; *the palm of the hand.*  
 Hortātu, *abl.*; an *exhorting*;—*pl. hortatibus.*  
 Impētis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a *shock*;—*pl. impetibus.*  
 Incitas, or -a, *acc. pl.*; as, *ad incitas redactus, reduced to a strait.*  
 \*Inconsultu, *abl.*; *without advice.*  
 \*Indultu, *abl.*; *indulgence.*  
 Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is, *abl.*; *sacrifices to the dead.*  
 Infittias, *acc. pl.*; a *denial*; as, *ire infittias, to deny.*  
 Ingratiis, *abl. pl.*, (used *adverbially*); *against one's will.*  
 Injussu, *abl.*; *without command.*  
 Inquies, *nom.*; *restlessness.*  
 Istar, *nom., acc.*; a *likeness.*

Interdiu, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *in the day time*  
 \*Invitātū, *abl.*; an *invitation.*  
 Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *derision.*  
 Jōvis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl. Jovea.*  
 Jugēris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an *acre*;—*pl. jugēra, -um, -ibus.*  
 Jussu, *abl.*; *command.*  
 Lābes, a *spot*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Lūcu, *abl.*; *day-light.*  
 \*Ludificatui, *dat.*; a *mockery.*  
 Lux, *light*, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Mandātū, *abl.*; a *command.*  
 Māne, *nom., acc.*; *mane, or rarely -i, abl.*; *the morning.*  
 Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen., dat.,* and *abl. pl.*  
 Mēlos, *nom., acc.*; *melo, dat.*; *melody*;—*mēlo, nom., acc. pl.*  
 Mētus, *fear*, not used in *gen., dat.,* and *abl. pl.*  
 Missu, *abl.*; a *sending*;—*pl. missus, -ibus.*  
 Monitū, *abl.*; *admonition*;—*pl. monitus.*  
 Nātū, *abl.*; *by birth.*  
 Nauci, *gen.*, with *non*; as, *homo non nauci, a man of no account.*  
 Nēfas, *nom., acc.*; *wickedness.*  
 Nēmo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and the *pl.*  
 Nepenthes, *nom., acc.*; an *herb.*  
 Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*;—*nēces, nom., acc. pl.*  
 Nihil, or *nihillum, nom.* and *acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *nothing.*  
 Noctu, *abl.*; *by night.*  
 Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *marriage.*  
 Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice, or -jice, *abl.*; a *bolt*;—*pl. ōbices, -jicibus.*  
 Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; an *interposition*;—*pl. objectus.*  
 Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *pretext.*  
 Opis, *gen.*; ōpem, *acc.*; ōpe, *abl.*; *help*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Oppositu, *abl.*; an *opposing*;—*pl. oppositus, acc.*  
 Opus, *nom., acc.*; *need.*  
 Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Panāces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an *herb.*  
 Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Peccātū, *abl.*; a *fault.*  
 Pecūdis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -a, *abl.*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Pelāge, *acc. pl.* of *pelāgus*; *the sea.*  
 Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; *permission*  
 Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *fishing.*

Pix, *pitch*; pices, *acc. pl.*  
 Pondo, *abl.*; in *weight*. Cf. § 94, 1.  
 Præci, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *prayer* -  
 -*pl. entire*  
 Præcer; *nom.*; -em, *acc.*; a *peer*; -*pl.*  
 entire.  
 Promptu, *abl.*, *readiness*.  
 Pus wants *gen. dat.* and *abl. pl.*  
 Relatum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *recital*.  
 Repetundarum, *gen. pl.*; -is, *abl.*; *money taken by extortion*.  
 Rogatu, *abl.*; a *request*.  
 Ros, *dew*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Rus, *the country*, wants *gen., dat., and*  
*abl. pl.*  
 Satias, *nom.*; -atem, *acc.*; âte, *abl.*; *satiety*.  
 Sæcus, *nom.*, *acc.*; *sex*.  
 Situs, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *situation*; -situs, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*  
 Situs, *nom.*; -ûs, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u,  
*abl.*; *rust*; -situs, *acc. pl.*  
 Sol, *the sun*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Sordis, *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e and -i, *abl.*; *filth*; -*pl. sordes*, -ium, etc.  
 Spontis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; of *one's own*  
*accord*.  
 Suboles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*

Suppetias, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; *sup-*  
*plices*.  
 Tâbum, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *cor-*  
*rupt matter*.  
 Tempe, *nom. acc. voc. pl.*; a *vale* in  
*Thessaly*.  
 Tus wants *gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
 Venui and -o, *dat.*; um, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*;  
*sale*.  
 Veprem, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a *brier*; -*pl.*  
*entire*.  
 Verbëris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a *stripe*; -*pl.*  
 verbëra, um, Ibus.  
 Vesper, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -e, -i, or -o,  
*abl.*; *the evening*.  
 Vespë, *nom.*; -am, *acc.*; -â, *abl.*; *the*  
*evening*.  
 Vici, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e,  
*abl.*; *change*; -*pl. entire*, except *gen.*  
 Iirus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -us, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*;  
*poison*.  
 Vis, *gen. and dat. rare*; *strength*; *pl.*  
 vires, -ium, etc. See § 85.  
 Viscus, *nom.*; -ëris, *gen.*; -ëra, *abl.*;  
*an internal organ. pl. viscëra*, etc.  
 Vocatu, *abl.*; a *calling*; -vocatus, *acc.*  
*pl.*

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the nouns which want the plural, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconitum, <i>wolfbane</i> , <i>p</i> .	Ævum, <i>age, lifetime</i> , <i>p</i> .	Balaustium, <i>the flower of</i> <i>the pomegranate</i> .
Adorea, <i>a military re-</i> <i>ward</i>	Album, <i>an album</i> .	Balsâmum, <i>balsam</i> , <i>p</i> .
Aër, <i>the air</i> , <i>p</i> .	Allium, <i>garlic</i> , <i>p</i> .	Barathrum, <i>a gulf</i> .
Es, <i>brass, money</i> , <i>p</i>	Amicitia, <i>friendship</i> , <i>p</i> .	Callum, <i>hardened skin</i> , <i>p</i>
Æther, <i>the sky</i> .	Argilla, <i>white clay</i> .	Câlor, <i>heat</i> , <i>p</i> .
	Avëns, <i>oats</i> , <i>p</i> .	



Carduus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Cāro, *flesh*, p.  
 Cēra, *wax*, p.  
 Cestus, *a girdle*.  
 Cicuta, *hemlock*, p.  
 Cœnum, *mud*.  
 Contagium, *contagion*, s.  
 Crœcum, *saffron*.  
 Crœcus, *saffron*, p.  
 Cruor, *blood*, p.  
 Cūtis, *the skin*, p.  
 Diluculum, *the dawn*.  
 Ebur, *ivory*.  
 Electrum, *amber*, v.  
 Far, *corn*, p.  
 Fel, *gall*, p.  
 Fervor, *heat*, p.  
 Fides, *faith*.  
 Fîmus, *dung*.  
 Fûga, *flight*, p.  
 Fûmus, *smoke*, p.  
 Fûror, *madness*, p.  
 Galla, *an oak-apple*, p.  
 Gêlu, *frost*.  
 Glarea, *gravel*.  
 Gloria, *glory*, p.  
 Glastum, *wood*.  
 Glûten, *or*  
 Glutînum, *glue*.  
 Gypsum, *white plaster*.  
 Hêpar, *the liver*.  
 Hespêrus, *the evening star*.  
 Hîlum, *a little thing*.  
 Hordeum, *barley*, p.  
 Hûmus, *the ground*.  
 Indôles, *native quality*, p.  
 Ira, *anger*, p.  
 Jûbar, *radiance*.  
 Jus, *justice, law*, p.  
 Justitium, *a law vacation*.

Lac, *milk*.  
 Lætitia, *joy*, p.  
 Langnor, *faintness*, p.  
 Lardum, *bacon*, p.  
 Lâtex, *liquor*, p.  
 Lêtum, *death*.  
 Lignum, *wood*, p.  
 Lûnus, *mud*.  
 Liquor, *liquor*, p.  
 Lues, *a plague*.  
 Lûtum, *clay*, p.  
 Lux, *light*, p.  
 Macellum, *the shambles*.  
 Mâne, *the morning*.  
 Marmor, *marble*, p.  
 Mel, *honey*, p.  
 Meridies, *mid-day*.  
 Mors, *death*, p.  
 Munditia, *neatness*, p.  
 Mundus, *female ornaments*.  
 Muscus, *moss*.  
 Nectar, *nectar*.  
 Nêmo, *no man*.  
 Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.  
 Nihîlum, *nîhil, or nil, nothing*.  
 Nitrum, *natron*.  
 Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.  
 Omâsum, *bullock's tripe*.  
 Opium, *opium*.  
 Palea, *chaff*, p.  
 Pax, *peace*, p.  
 Pênium, *and*  
 Pênus, *provisions*, p.  
 Piper, *pepper*.  
 Pix, *pitch*, p.  
 Pontus, *the sea*.  
 Prolubium, *desire*.  
 Pûbes, *the youth*.  
 Pulvis, *dust*, p.

Purpûra, *purple*, p.  
 Quies, *rest*, p.  
 Ros, *dew*, p.  
 Rûbor, *redness*, p.  
 Sabûlo and  
 Sabûlum, *gravel*.  
 Sal, *salt*.  
 Sâlum, *the sea*.  
 Sâlus, *safety*.  
 Sanguis, *blood*.  
 Scrupûlum, *a scruple*, p.  
 Senium, *old age*.  
 Siler, *an asier*.  
 Sinâpi, *mustard*.  
 Siser, *skirret*, p.  
 Stitis, *thirst*.  
 Sol, *the sun*, p.  
 Sôpor, *sleep*, p.  
 Specimen, *an example*.  
 Spûma, *foam*, p.  
 Sulfur, *sulphur*, p.  
 Supellex, *furniture*.  
 Tâbes, *a consumption*.  
 Tâbum, *corrupt matter*.  
 Tellus, *the earth*.  
 Terror, *terror*, p.  
 Thÿmum, *thyme*, p.  
 Tribûlus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Tristitia, *sadness*.  
 Ver, *spring*.  
 Vespêra, *the evening*.  
 Vêternus, *lethargy*.  
 Vigor, *strength*, p.  
 Vinum, *wine*, p.  
 Virus, *poison*.  
 Viscum, *and*  
 Viscus, *bird-lime*.  
 Vitrum, *wood*.  
 Vulgus, *the common people*.  
 Zingiber, *ginger*.

§ 96. (b). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acroceraunia, Baiaë,  
 Amyclæ, Ceraunia,  
 Artaxata, Ecbatana,  
 Athênæ, Esquilæ,

Fundi,  
 Gabii,  
 Gâdes,  
 Gemoniæ,

Loeri,  
 Parisii,  
 Philippi  
 Puteoli,

Sûsa,  
 Syracusæ,  
 Thermopylæ,  
 Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in i properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the singular, and also some, marked s, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, *records*.  
 Adversaria, *a memorandum-book*.  
 Estiva, *sc. castrorum quarters*.

Alpes, *the Alps*, s.  
 Annâles, *annals*, s.  
 Antæ, *door-posts*.  
 Antes, *rows*.  
 Antiæ, *a forelocus*.

Apinæ, *trifles*.  
 Argutiaë, *whiticisms*, s.  
 Arma, *arms*.  
 Artus, *the joints*, s.  
 Bellaria, *sweetmeats*.

Bigæ, a two-horse chariot, s.	Induviæ, clothes.	Palearia, the awl, s.
Braccæ, breeches.	Ineptiæ, fooleries, s.	Pandectæ, the pandects
Branchiæ, the gills of fishes.	Inferi, the dead.	Parietinæ, old walls.
Brevia, shallow places.	Inferiæ, sacrifices in honor of the dead.	Partes, a party, s.
Calendæ, the Calends.	Insecta, insects.	Pascua, pastures, s.
Cancelli, balustrades.	Insidiæ, an ambuscade, s.	Penâtes, household gods, s.
Câni, gray hairs.	Iusta, funeral rites.	Phalæreæ, trappings.
Cassēs, a hunter's net, s.	Lactes, small entrails, s.	Philtra, love potions.
Caulæ, sheep-folds.	Lamenta, lamentations.	Pleiâdes, the Pleiads or seven stars, s.
Celêres, the body-guard of the Roman kings.	Lapidinæ, a stone quarry.	Postêri, posterity.
Cibaria, victuals, s.	Latebræ, a hiding place, s.	Præbia, an amulet.
Clitellæ, a pack-saddle.	Laurices, young rabbits.	Præcordia, the diaphragm, the entrails.
Codicilli, a writing.	Lautia, presents to foreign ambassadors.	Primitiæ, first fruits.
Coelites, the gods, s.	Lemures, hobgoblins.	Proceres, nobles, s.
Crepundia, a rattle.	Lendes, mis.	Pugillaria, or -ares, writing-tablets, s.
Cunabûla, a cradle.	Libêri, children, s.	Quadrigæ, a team of four horses, s.
Cyclâdes, the Cyclades, s.	Lucêres, a division of the Roman cavalry.	Quirites, Roman citizens, s.
Declmæ, tithes, s.	Magalia, cottages.	Quisquiliæ, refuse.
Diræ, the Furies, s.	Majôres, ancestors.	Reliquiæ, the remains, s.
Divitiæ, riches.	Mânes, the shades, s.	Salebræ, rugged roads, s.
Druides, the Druids.	Manubiæ, spoils of war.	Salinæ, salt pits.
Dryâdes, the Dryads, s.	Mapalia, huts, s.	Scalæ, a ladder, s.
Epulæ, a banquet, s.	Minaciæ, and	Scatebræ, a spring, s.
Eumenides, the Furies, s.	Minæ, threats.	Scôpæ, a broom.
Exoubiæ, watches.	Minôres, posterity.	Scrûta, old stuff.
Exsequiæ, funeral rites.	Mœnia, the walls of a city, s.	Sentes, thorns, s.
Extæ, entrails.	Multitiæ, garments finely wrought.	Sponsalia, espousals.
Exuviæ, spoils.	Munia, official duties.	Stativa, sc. castra, a stationary camp.
Facetiæ, pleasantry, s.	Naiâdes, water-nymphs, s.	Supêri, the gods above.
Feriæ, holidays, s.	Nâres, the nostrils, s.	Talaria, winged shoes.
Fides, a stringed instrument, s.	Natâles, parentage.	Tenebræ, darkness, s.
Flabra, blasts.	Nâtes, the haunches, s.	Tescæ, rough places.
Frâces, the lees of oil.	Nômæ, corroding sores or ulcers, s.	Thermæ, warm baths.
Frâga, strawberries, s.	Nônæ, the nones of a month. § 826, 1.	Tormina, colic-pains.
Gemini, twins, s.	Nûgæ, jests, nonsense.	Transtra, seats for rowers, s.
Gênæ, cheeks, s.	Nundinæ, the weekly market.	Tricæ, trifles, toys.
Gerræ, trifles.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Utensilia, utensils.
Grâtes, thanks.	Obliuia, forgetfulness, s.	Valvæ, folding doors, s.
Habênæ, reins, s.	Officiæ, cheats, s.	Vepres, brambles, s.
Hiberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.	Optimâtes, the aristocratic party, s.	Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
Hÿâdes, the Hyades, s.		Vindiciæ, a legal claim, s.
Idus, the ides of a month.		Virgulta, bushes.
Ilia, the flank.		
Incunabûla, a cradle.		
Indutiæ, a truce.		

§ 97. The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

Ædes, -is, a temple.	Bônium, a good thing.	Castra, a camp.
Ædes, -um, a house.	Bôna, property.	Comitum, a part of the Roman forum.
Aqua, water.	Carcær, a prison.	Comitia, an assembly for election.
Æquæ, medicinal springs.	Carcêres, the barriers of a race-course.	Copia, plenty.
Auxilium, aid.	Castrum = castle.	
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.		

Copias, <i>troops, forces.</i>	Impedimentum, <i>a hinderance.</i>	Natālis, <i>a birthday.</i>
Cupedia, -æ, <i>daintiness.</i>	Impedimenta, <i>baggage.</i>	Natāles, <i>birth, lineage.</i>
Cupediæ, -arum, <i>and</i>	Litēra, <i>a letter of the alphabet.</i>	Opēra, <i>work, labor.</i>
Cupedia, -orum, <i>dainties.</i>	Litræ, <i>an epistle.</i>	Opēræ, <i>workmen.</i>
Facultas, <i>ability.</i>	Lūdus, <i>pastime.</i>	Opis, <i>gen. power.</i>
Facultates, <i>property.</i>	Lūdi, <i>public games.</i>	Opes, -um, <i>means, wealth.</i>
Fastus, -ūs, <i>pride.</i>	Lustrum, <i>a morass.</i>	Plāga, <i>a region, tract.</i>
Fastus, -uum, <i>and</i>	Lustra, <i>a haunt or den of wild beasts.</i>	Plāgæ, <i>nets, toils.</i>
Fasti, -orum, <i>a calendar.</i>	Mos, <i>custom.</i>	Principium, <i>a beginning.</i>
Fortūna, <i>Fortune.</i>	Mōres, <i>manners.</i>	Principia, <i>the general's quarters.</i>
Fortūnæ, <i>wealth.</i>	Nāris, <i>a nostril.</i>	Rostrum, <i>a beak, prow.</i>
Furfur, <i>bran.</i>	Nāres, <i>the nose.</i>	Rostra, <i>the Rostra.</i>
Furfures, <i>dandruff.</i>		Sal, <i>salt.</i>
Gratia, <i>favor.</i>		Sāles, <i>witticisms.</i>
Gratiæ, <i>thanks.</i>		

§ 98. The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

Æquora, <i>the sea.</i>	Hymenæi, <i>marriage.</i>	Pectōra, <i>the breast.</i>
Alta, <i>the sea.</i>	Ignes, <i>love.</i>	Reditūs, <i>a return.</i>
Animi, <i>courage.</i>	Inguina, <i>the groin.</i>	Regna, <i>a kingdom.</i>
Auræ, <i>the air.</i>	Iras, <i>anger.</i>	Rictūs, <i>the jaws.</i>
Carinæ, <i>a keel.</i>	Jejunia, <i>fasting.</i>	Robōra, <i>strength.</i>
Cervices, <i>the neck.</i>	Jūbæ, <i>a mane.</i>	Silentia, <i>silence.</i>
Colla, <i>the neck.</i>	Limina, <i>a threshold.</i>	Sinūs, <i>the bosom of a Roman garment.</i>
Cōmæ, <i>the hair.</i>	Litræ, <i>a shore.</i>	Tædæ, <i>a torch.</i>
Connubia, <i>marriage.</i>	Mensæ, <i>a service or course of dishes.</i>	Tempōra, <i>time.</i>
Corda, <i>the heart.</i>	Nenise, <i>a funeral dirge.</i>	Terga, <i>the back.</i>
Corpōra, <i>a body.</i>	Numina, <i>the divinity.</i>	Thalāmi, <i>marriage or marriage-bed.</i>
Crepusculā, <i>twilight.</i>	Odia, <i>hated.</i>	Tōri, <i>a bed, a couch.</i>
Currūs, <i>a chariot.</i>	Ora, <i>the mouth, the countenance.</i>	Tūra, <i>frankincense.</i>
Exsilia, <i>banishment.</i>	Oræ, <i>confines.</i>	Via, <i>a journey.</i>
Frigōra, <i>cold.</i>	Ortus, <i>a rising, the east.</i>	Vultus, <i>the countenance.</i>
Gaudia, <i>joy.</i>	Otia, <i>ease, leisure.</i>	
Gramina, <i>grass.</i>		
Guttūra, <i>the throat.</i>		

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (a.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbores*, a tree: (b.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*,; gen. *tigris*, or *-idis*; a tiger.
2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-ūs*; a laurel.
3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.
4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, -a, and *senectus*, -ātis; old age.
5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.
6. In declension and gender; as *pēnus*, -i or *ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pēnus*, -oris, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spēcus*, -ūs or -i, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.
7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, -a, fem. and *mendum*, -i, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

- Acinus, -um, and -a, a berry.  
 Adagium, and -io, a proverb.  
 Admonitio, -um, and -us, *is*, a reminding.  
 Æthra, and æther, the clear sky.  
 Affectio, and -us, *is*, affection.  
 Agamemno, and -on, Agamemnon.  
 Alabaster, tri, and pl. -tra, *drus* on alabaster box.  
 Alimonia, and -um, alimient.  
 Alluvio, and -es, a flood.  
 Alvearium, and -ære, a bee-hive.  
 Amaracus, and -um, marjoram.  
 Amygdala, and -um, an almond.  
 Anfractum, and -us, *is*, a winding.  
 Angiportum, and -us, *is*, a narrow lane or alley.  
 Antidotus, and -um, an antidote.  
 Aranea, and -us, i, a spider.  
 Arar, and Araris, the river Arar.  
 Arbor, and -os, a tree.  
 Architectus, and -on, an architect.  
 Arcus, -us, and i, a bow.  
 Attagæna, and -gen, a moor-hen.  
 Avaritia, and -ies, avarice.  
 Augmentum, and -men, an increase.  
 Baccar, and -aris, a kind of herb.  
 Baculus, and -um, a staff.  
 Balteus, and -um, a belt.  
 Barbaria, and -ies, barbarism.  
 Barbitus, and -on, a harp.  
 Batillus, and -um, a fire-shovel.  
 Blanditia, and -ies, flattery.  
 Buccina, and -um, a trumpet.  
 Bura, and -is, a plough-tail.  
 Buxus, and -um, the box-tree.  
 Cæpa, and cæpe, an onion.  
 Calamister, tri, and -trum, a crimping-pin.  
 Callus, and -um, hardened skin.  
 Cancer, cri, or éris, a crab.  
 Canitia, and -ies, hoariness.  
 Cæpus, and cæpo, a capon.  
 Carrus, and -um, a kind of waggon.  
 Cassida, and -cassis, a helmet.  
 Catinus, and -um, a bowl, dish.  
 Chirographus, and -um, a hand-writ'ng.  
 Cingula, -us, and -um, a girdle.  
 Clipeus, and -um, a shield.  
 Cochlearium, -ar, and -ære, a spoon.  
 Colluvio, and -ies, filth.  
 Commentarius, and -um, a journal.  
 Compages, and -go, a joining.  
 Conatum, and -us, *is*, an attempt.  
 Concinnitas, and -tudo, neatness.  
 Consortium, and -io, partnership.  
 Contagium, -io, and -es, contact.  
 Cornum, -us, i, or *is*, a cornel tree.  
 -tos, i, and -um, a kind of shrub.  
 Cratæra, and crater, a bowl.  
 Crocus, and -um, saffron.  
 Crystallus, and -um, crystal.  
 Cubitus, and -um, the elbow.  
 Cupiditas, and -pido, desire.  
 Cupressus, i, or *is*, a cypress-tree.  
 Delicia, and -um, delight.  
 Delphinus, and delphin, a dolphin.  
 Dictamnus, and -um, dittany.  
 Diluvium, -o, and -ies, a deluge.  
 Dömus, i, or *is*, a house.  
 Dorsus, and -um, the back.  
 Duritia, and -ies, hardness.  
 Effigia, and -ies, an image.  
 Elegia, and -on, i, an elegy.  
 Eléphantus, and -phas, an elephant.  
 Epitöma, and -e, an abridgment.  
 Esseda, and -um, a chariot.  
 Evander, dri, and -drus, Evander.  
 Eventum, and -us, *is*, an event.  
 Exemplar, and -ære, a pattern.  
 Ficus, i, or *is*, a fig-tree.  
 Fimus, and -um, dung.  
 Frëtum, and -us, *is*, a strait.  
 Fulgetra, and -um, lightning.  
 Galërus, and -um, a hat, cap.  
 Ganen, and -um, an eating-house.  
 Gausäpa, -es, -e, and -um, friese.  
 Gibba, -us, and -er, éri, a hump.  
 Glutinum, and -ten, glue.  
 Gobius, and -io, a gudgeon.  
 Grammatica, and -e, grammar.  
 Grus, gruis, and gruis, *is*, a crane.  
 Hebdömäda, and -mas, a week.  
 Hellebörus, and -um, hellebore.  
 Hönor, and hönos, honor.  
 Hyssöpus, and -um, hyssop.  
 Ilios, -um, and -on, Troy.  
 Incestum, and -us, *is*, incest.  
 Intubus, and -um, endive.  
 Jugulus, and -um, the throat.  
 Juventa, -us, ätis, and -as, youth.  
 Læbor, and læbos, labor.  
 Lacerta, and -us, a lizard.  
 Laurus, i, or *is*, a laurel.  
 Lëpor, and lëpos, wit.  
 Ligur, and -us, äris, a Ligurian.  
 Lupinus, and -um, a lupine.  
 Luxuria, and -ies, luxury.  
 Mæander, -dros, and -drus, Mæander.  
 Margarita, and -um, a pearl.  
 Materia, and -ies, materials.  
 Medimnus, and -um, a measure.  
 Menda, and -um, a fault.  
 Modius, and -um, a measure.  
 Mollitia, and -ies, softness.  
 Momentum, and -men, influence.  
 Mügil, and -ilis, a mullet.  
 Mulciber, éri, or éris, Vulcan.

Mulcra, and -um, a milk-pail.  
 Munditia, and -ies, neatness.  
 Muria, and -ies, brine or pickle.  
 Myrtus, *i* or *ūs*, a myrtle.  
 Nardus, and -um, nard.  
 Nāsus, and -um, the nose.  
 Necessitas, and -ūdo, necessity.  
 Nequitia, and -ies, worthlessness.  
 Notitia, and -ies, knowledge.  
 Oblivium, and -io, forgetfulness.  
 Obsidium, and -io, a siege.  
 Œdīpus, *i*, or *ōdis*, *Œdipus*.  
 Ostrea, and -um, an oyster.  
 Palātus, and -um, the palate.  
 Palumba, -us, and -es, a pigeon.  
 Papyrus, and -um, papyrus.  
 Paupertas, and -ies, poverty.  
 Pāvus, and pāvo, a peacock.  
 Pēnus, *i*, -ōris, or *ūs*, and pēnum, *pn* -visions.  
 Peplus, and -um, a veil.  
 Perseus, *ei*, or *eos*, *Perseus*.  
 Pileus, and -um, a hat.  
 Pinus, *i*, or *ūs*, a pine-tree.  
 Pistrīna, and -um, a bake-house.  
 Planitia, and -ies, a plain.  
 Plāto, and Plāton, *Plato*.  
 Plebs, and plēbes, *ei*, the common people.  
 Porrus, and -um, a leek.  
 Postulātum, and -io, a request.  
 Præsepia, -ium, -es, or -is, and -e, a stable.  
 Prætextum, and -us, *ūs*, a pretext.  
 Prosapia, and -ies, lineage.  
 Rāpa, and -um, a turnip.  
 Requies, *ētis* or *ēt*, rest.  
 Rēte, and rētis, a net.  
 Reticūlus, and -um, a small net.

Rictum, and -us, *ūs*, the open mouth.  
 Sævitia, -ūdo and -ies, ferocity.  
 Sāgus, and -um, a military cloak.  
 Sanguis, and sanguen, blood.  
 Satrāpes, and satraps, a satrap.  
 Scabritia, and -ies, roughness.  
 Scorpīus, -os, and -io, a scorpion.  
 Segmentum, and -men, a piece.  
 Segnitia, and -ies, sloth.  
 Senecta, and -us, old age.  
 Sequester, *tri*, or *tris*, a trustee.  
 Sesāma, and -um, sesame.  
 Sibilus, and -a, *ōrum*, a hissing.  
 Sināpi, and -is, mustard.  
 Sīnus, and -um, a goblet.  
 Spārus, and -a, *ōrum*, a spear.  
 Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.  
 Stramentum, and -men, straw.  
 Suffimentum, and -men, fumigation.  
 Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit, stage.  
 Suppārus, and -um, a linen garment.  
 Supplicium, -icamentum, and -icatio, a public supplication.  
 Tapētum, -ēte, and -es, tapestry.  
 Tenērītas, and -tūdo, softness.  
 Tergum, and -us, *ōris*, the back.  
 Tiāra, and -as, a turban.  
 Tignus, and -um, a beam, timber.  
 Tigris, *is*, or *idis*, a tiger.  
 Titānus, and Titan, *Titan*.  
 Tonitruum, and -trus, *ūs*, thunder.  
 Torāle, and -al, a bed-covering.  
 Trābes, and trabs, a beam.  
 Tribūla, and -um, a threshing sledge.  
 Vespēra, -per, *ēri* and *ēris*, the evening.  
 Vinacēus, and -a, *ōrum*, a grape-stone.  
 Viscus, and -um, the mistletoe.  
 Vulgus, masc. and neut., the common people.

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *a*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*. See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēna*; *Thēbe* and *Thēbe*.

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ 100. Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

### I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes:—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(a.) Masculine patronymics end in *ides*, *ides*, *ādes*, and *īdes*.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *Priāmus*, *Priāmidēs*; *Agamemnōn*, gen. *ōnis*, *Agamemnōnidēs*.

(2.) Nouns in *ūs* and *clēs* form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *Atrēs*, *Atridēs*; *Herācles* (i. e. *Hercules*), *Heraclidēs*.

REM. 1. *Enīdes*, in Virg. A. 9, 658, is formed in like manner, as if from *Enēūs*, instead of *Enēas*.

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ādes*, as *Enēās*, *Enēādēs*; *Hippōtēs*, *Hippōtādēs*.

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *īdes*; as, *Thestius*, *Thestīdēs*; *Amphitryō* (gen. *ōnis*), *Amphitryonīdēs*.

REM. 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *īdes*; as, *Anchises*, *Anchistādēs*.

(b.) Feminine patronymics end in *is*, *ēs*, and *ias*, and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *īdes*, *ēs* to *ides*, and *ias* to *īdes*; as, *Tyndārus*, masc. *Tyndarīdes*, fem. *Tyndāris*; *Nēreus*, masc. *Nereūdes*, fem. *Nereīs*; *Thestius*, masc. *Thestīdēs*, fem. *Thestias*.

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *ine*, or *ione*; as, *Nerīne*, *Acrisiōne*, from *Nereus* and *Acrisius*.

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country; and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

*Trōs*, a Trojan man; *Trōas*, a Trojan woman; *Macēdo*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Trōja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *hōmo*, *civis*, etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive; as, *liber*, a book; *libellus*, a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ulus*, *ŭla*, *ŭlum*, or *cŭlus*, *cŭla*, *cŭlum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c*, *g*, *d*, or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ulus*, *a*, *um* to the root; as, *arŭla*, *servŭlus*, *puerŭlus*, *scutŭlum*, *cornicŭla*, *regŭlus*, *capitŭlum*, *mercedŭla*; from *ara*, *servus*, *puer*, *scŭtum*, *cornix*, (*-icis*), *rex*, (*rēgis*), *caput*, (*-itis*), *merces*, (*-ēdis*).

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *s* or *i*, instead of *ulus*, *a*, *um*, add *ŭlus*, *a*, *um*; as, *filioŭlus*, *glorioŭla*, *horredoŭlum*; from *filius*, *gloria*, *horreum*.

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, form diminutives by contraction in *ellus*, *a*, *um*, and some in *illus*, *a*, *um*; as, *ocellus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, *lucellum*; from *ocŭlus*, *asina*, *liber*, *lucrum*; and *sigillum*, *tigillum*, from *signum*, *tignum*.

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cŭlus*, (or *icŭlus*), *a*, *um*.

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r*, or in *os* or *us* from roots ending in *r* annex *cŭlus* to the nominative; as, *fratercŭlus*, *soror*.

*cŭla ocellum, corpusculum*; from *j-ŭter, ŭter, ŭs, (ŭris), corpus, (-ŭris)*.—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *ignicŭlus, nubecŭla, diecŭla*; from *ignis, nubes, dies*.

8. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *ŭlus* to the root; as, *ponticŭlus, coticŭla, ossicŭlum, versicŭlus, cornicŭlum*; from *pons, cos, ŭs, (ossa), verus, cornu*.

4. Primitives in *o*, (*inis* or *ŭnis*), in adding *cŭlus, a, um*, change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u*; as, *homuncŭlus, sermuncŭlus*; from *homo* and *sermo*; and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncŭlus, domuncŭla*; from *avus* and *dŭnus*.

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *ulus*, as, *equuleus, aculeus*; from *equus* and *acus*; and a few also in *io*; as, *homuncio, senectio*, from *homo* and *ŭnex*.

2. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellŭlus*, from *asellus*; sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncŭlus, homullus*, and *homuncio*; from *homo*; and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *ramuscŭlus*, from *ramor*.

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ramuncŭlus, scamŭlus*, from *rama* and *scamnum*.

4. (a.) An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

*Cypŭto*, one who has a large head: so *naso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento*, one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks, a broad forehead or long chin; from *cŭpus, nŭsus, labia, bucca, frons*, and *mentum*.

(b.) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *luchio*, an actor; *pellio*, a furrier; from *lŭchus*, and *pellis*.

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium*, colleagueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium*, and *ministerium*; from *collĕga, servus, sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *ionium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; so *vadimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium*; from *testis, vŕs (vŕdis), pŕter*, and *mŕter*.

7. The termination *etum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercetum, laurĕtum, olivetum*, from *quercus, laurus*, and *oliva*.

So, also, *asculetum, dumĕtum, myrtĕtum*, and by analogy *sacĕtum*. But some drop *e*; as, *corectum, salictum, virgultum*, and *arbutum*.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *aviarium*, an aviary; *plantarium*, a nursery; from *avis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *ile*, added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovile*, a stall for oxen; so *caprile, ovile*; from *bŕs*, an ox, *cŕper*, a goat, and *ŭvis*, a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.

## II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 101. 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *tas, itŭlo, ia, itia* or *ities, ĕdo*, and *imŕnia* to the root of the primitive

2. Abstracts in *itas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupiditas*, *teneritas*, *celertitas*, *crudelitias*, *ferocitas* ; from *cupidus*, *tener*, *celer*, *crudelis*, and *ferox*.

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *itas* ; as, *pistias*, from *pisus* ; and when it ends in *t*, as only *i* is added ; as, *honestas* from *honestus*.

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *itas* is dropped ; as, *libertas*, *juventas*, from *liber*, *juvénis*. In *facultas* and *difficultas*, from *facilis*, *difficilis*, there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u*.

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *us*, instead of *itas* ; as, *servitus*, *juventus*, from *servus* and *juvénis*. See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *itudo* are formed from adjectives in *us*, and some from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations ; as, *magnitudo*, *altitudo*, *fortitudo*, *acritudo*, from *magnus*, *altus*, *fortis*, *acer*. Polysyllabic adjectives in *us*, generally form their abstracts by adding *itudo* instead of *itudo* to their root ; as, *consuetudo*, from *consuetus*.

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy*), are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination ; as, *clementia*, *constantia*, *impudentia*, from *clemens*, *constans*, *impudens*. But some adjectives in *us* and *er*, including verbals in *cundus*, likewise form their verbals in *ia* ; as, *miseria*, *angustia*, *facundia*, from *miser*, *angustus*, *facundus*.

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ities* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is* ; as, *justitia*, *tristitia*, *duritia*, and *durities*, *segnitia* and *segnities*, from *justus*, *tristis*, *durus*, and *segnis*.

6. A few abstracts are formed in *edo*, and a few in *imonia* ; and sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective ; as, *acritas*, *acritudo*, *acredo*, and *acrimonia*, from *acer*. In such case those in *itudo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *itas*.

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

### III. FROM VERBS.

## § 102. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal* nouns.

The following are the principal classes :—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root ; as, *amor*, love ; *favor*, favor ; *moror*, grief ; *splendor*, brightness ; from *amo*, *faveo*, *moreo*, and *splendo*.

2. (a.) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root ; as, *colloquium*, a conference ; *gaudium*, joy ; *exordium*, a beginning ; *exitium*, destruction ; *solatium*, consolation ; from *colloquor*, *gaudeo*, *exordior*, *ezeo* and *solor*.

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ela*, *imonia*, or *imonium*, to the first root of the verb ; as, *querela* and *querimonia*, a complaint ; *suadela*, persuasion ; from *queror* and *suadeo*.

4. (a.) The terminations *men* and *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action ; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo*, *flumen* from *fluo*, *agmen* from *ago*, *solamen* from *solor*, *documentum* from *dóceo*, *blandimentum* from *blandior*.

(b.) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable ; as, *ago*, (*agimen*,) *agmen* ; *faveo*, (*föivmentum*,) *föivmentum*.



(c.) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use ; as, *atramentum*, ink ; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *atrāre*, to blacken.

5. (a.) The terminations *ūlum*, *būlum*, *cūlum* ; *brum*, *crum*, *trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance ; as, *cingūlum*, *opercūlum*, *venabūlum*, *ventilābrum*, *fulcrum*, *spectrum*, from *cingo*, *opērio*, *vēnor*, *ventilo*, *fulcio*, *spēcio*.

(b.) Sometimes *cūlum* is contracted into *clum* ; as, *vinculum* for *vincūlum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum* ; as, *rostrum*, from *rōdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations ; as, *arātrum*, *stabūlum*, *cubicūlum*, from *aro*, *sto*, and *cābo*.

(c.) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns ; as, *acetabūlum*, a vinegar cruet ; *turibūlum*, a censer ; from *acētum* and *tus*.

6. (a.) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb ; as, *adjutor*, *adjutrix*, an assistant ; *fautor*, *fautrix*, a favorer ; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror ; from *adjūvo* (*adjūt-*), *fāveo* (*faut-*), *vinco* (*vict-*). They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form is less common than the masculine, and when the third root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix* ; as, *tondeo* (*tons-*) *tonstrix*.

(b.) Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns ; as, *viator*, a traveller ; *janitor*, a door-keeper ; from *via* and *janua*. In *meretrix* from *mereo*, *i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(c.) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root ; as, *conviva*, a guest ; *advēna*, a stranger ; *scriba*, a scribe ; *erro*, a vagrant ; *bibo*, a drunkard ; *comēdo*, a glutton, from *convivo*, *advēnio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ūs*) to the third root of a verb ; as, *actio*, an action ; *lectio*, reading ; from *āgo* (*act-*), *lēgo* (*lect-*) ;—*cantus*, singing ; *visus*, sight ; *usus*, use ; from *cāno* (*cant-*), *video* (*vis-*), *utor* (*ūs-*).

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb ; as, *concurſio* and *concurſus*, a running together ; *mōtio* and *mōtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ura* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action ; as, *positura*, position ; *vincitura*, a binding together ; from *pōno*, and *vincio* ; and the termination *ela* has sometimes the same meaning ; as, *querēla*, complaint ; *loquēla*, speech, from *queror* and *loquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *orium*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed ; as, *auditorium*, a lecture-room ; *conditorium*, a repository ; from *audio* and *condo*.

## COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

### § 103. Compound nouns are formed variously :—

1. Of two nouns ; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rūpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive ; as, *senatusconsultum*, a decree of the senate ; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer ; in others, both parts are declined ; as, *respublica*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb ; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *fācio* ; *fidicen*, a harper of *fides* and *cāno* ; *agricola*, a husbandman, of *āger* and *cōlo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinotium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox*; *millepēda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pēs*.

In *duumvir*, *triumvir*, *decumvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *i*; as, *artifex*, *rupicapra*, *agricola*, etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quingennium*, of *quinque* and *annus*; *magnanimus*, of *magnus* and *animus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nēfas*, wickedness; *nēmo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *homo*. So *biduum*, of *bis* and *dies*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *incuria*, want of care, of *in* and *cūra*. So *intervallum*, an interval; *præcordia*, the diaphragm; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a low seat; *superficies*, a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *ignobilis*, *illeptus*, *imprudens*, *irrumpe*, of *in* and *nobilis*, *leptus*, etc. See § 196.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 104. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality; as, *bōnus*, good; *albus*, white; *amicus*, friendly.
2. State or condition; as, *fēlix*, happy; *dives*, rich.
3. Possession; as, *herilis*, a master's; *patrius*, a father's.
4. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *tōtus*, entire; *parvus*, small.
5. Number; as, *ūnus*, one; *secundus*, second; *tot*, so many; *quot*, as many. These are called *numerals*.
6. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *bimus*, of two years; *trimestris*, of three months.
7. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicius*, near; *aërius*, aerial; *terrestris*, terrestrial.
8. Material; as, *aureus*, golden; *fagineus*, beechen; *terrēnus*, earthen.
9. Part; as, *nullus*, no one; *aliquis*, some one. These are called *partitives*.
10. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpinas* of *Arpinum*. These are called *patrials*.
11. Diminution; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *miser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.
12. Amplification; as, *vinetus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *auritus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.
13. Relation; as, *avidus*, desirous of; *mēmor*, mindful of; *insuetus*. These are called *relatives*.
14. Interrogation; as, *quantus*? how great; *qualis*? of what kind; *quot*? how many? *quotus*? of what number? These are called *interrogatives*; and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives*.
15. Specification; as, *tālis*, such; *tantus*, so great; *tot*, so many. These are called *demonstratives*.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*; that in *er* like *gēner* or *āger*; the feminine always like *māsa*; and the neuter like *regnum*.

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *editer*, *-āra*, *-ārum*, full ends in *er*, and *s* declined like *gēner*.

*Bōnūs, good.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bo'-nūs,	bo'-nā,	bo'-nūm,
<i>G.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nī,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nō,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nō,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nūm,	bo'-nām,	bo'-nūm,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nē,	bo'-nā,	bo'-nūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nō.	bo'-nā.	bo'-nō.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nā,
<i>G.</i>	bo'-nō-rūm,	bo'-nā-rūm,	bo'-nō-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nōs,	bo'-nās,	bo'-nā,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nā,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.

In like manner decline

Al'-tus, <i>high.</i>	Fī'-dus, <i>faithful.</i>	Lon'-gus, <i>long.</i>
A-vā'-rus, <i>covetous.</i>	Im'-prō-bus, <i>wicked.</i>	Plē'-nus, <i>full.</i>
Be-nig'-nus, <i>kind.</i>	In-ī'-quus, <i>unjust.</i>	Tac'-ī-tus, <i>silent.</i>

REM. 2. Like *bōnus* are also declined all participles in *us*; as,  
A-mā'-tus. Am-a-tū'-rus. A-man'-dus.

Rem. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*. Hor. *Meus* has both *mi* and *meus*.

REM. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *um* instead of *rum*; as, *crassitūde binūm digitūrum*. Plin.

3. Tēner, *tender*.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	te'-nēr,	ten'-ĕ-rā,	ten'-ĕ-rūm,
<i>G.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rī,	ten'-ĕ-ræ,	ten'-ĕ-rī,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rō,	ten'-ĕ-ræ,	ten'-ĕ-rō,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rūm,	ten'-ĕ-rām,	ten'-ĕ-rūm,
<i>V.</i>	te'-nēr,	ten'-ĕ-rā,	ten'-ĕ-rūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rō.	ten'-ĕ-rā.	ten'-ĕ-rō.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rī,	ten'-ĕ-ræ,	ten'-ĕ-rā,
<i>G.</i>	ten-e-rō-rūm,	ten-e-rā-rūm,	ten-e-rō-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ris,	ten'-ĕ-ris,	ten'-ĕ-ris,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rōs,	ten'-ĕ-rās,	ten'-ĕ-rā,
<i>V.</i>	ten'-ĕ-rī,	ten'-ĕ-ræ,	ten'-ĕ-rā,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ris.	ten'-ĕ-ris.	ten'-ĕ-ris.

In like manner are declined

As'-per, <i>rough</i> .	Lā'-cer, <i>torn</i> .	Pros'-per, <i>prosperous</i> .
Ex'-ter, <i>foreign</i> .	Lī'-ber, <i>free</i> .	Sā'-tur, <i>full</i> .
Gib'-ber, <i>crook-backed</i> .	Mī'-ser, <i>wretched</i> .	

So also *alter*, except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semifer* and the compounds of *géro* and *féro*; as, *laniger*, *opifer*.

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospérus*, and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; as,

*Piger, slothful.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pī'-gēr,	pī'-grā,	pī'-grūm,
<i>G.</i>	pī'-gri,	pī'-græ,	pī'-gri,
<i>D.</i>	pī'-grō,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grō,
<i>Ac.</i>	pī'-grūm,	pī'-grām,	pī'-grūm,
<i>V.</i>	pī'-gēr,	pī'-grā,	pī'-grūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	pī'-grō.	pī'-grā.	pī'-grō.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pī'-gri,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grā,
<i>G.</i>	pī'-grō-rūm,	pī'-grā-rūm,	pī'-grō-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	pī'-gris,	pī'-gris,	pī'-gris,
<i>Ac.</i>	pī'-grōs,	pī'-grās,	pī'-grā,
<i>V.</i>	pī'-gri,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grā,
<i>Ab.</i>	pī'-gris.	pī'-gris.	pī'-gris.

## In like manner decline

Æ'-gor, <i>sick</i> .	Mā'-cer, <i>lean</i> .	Scā'-ber, <i>rough</i> .
A'-ter, <i>black</i> .	Nī'-ger, <i>black</i> .	Si-nis'-ter, <i>left</i> .
Crē'-ber, <i>frequent</i> .	Pul'-cher, <i>fair</i> .	Tē'-ter, <i>foul</i> .
Glā'-ber, <i>smooth</i> .	Rū'-ber, <i>red</i> .	Vā'-fer, <i>crafty</i> .
In'-tē-ger, <i>entire</i> .	Sā'-cer, <i>sacred</i> .	

*Deater*, right, has *-tra*, *-trum*, and less frequently *-tēra*, *-tērum*.

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *i*, in all the genders:—

<i>Alius</i> , another.	<i>Tōtus</i> , whole.	<i>Alter</i> , <i>-tēra</i> , <i>-tērum</i> , the other.
<i>Nullus</i> , no one.	<i>Ullus</i> , any.	<i>Uter</i> , <i>-tra</i> , <i>-trum</i> , which of the two.
<i>Sōlus</i> , alone.	<i>Unus</i> , one.	<i>Neuter</i> , <i>-tra</i> , <i>-trum</i> , neither.

To these may be added the other compounds of *ūter*,—namely, *uterque*, each of two; *utercumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, etc.—also, *alterūter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*. See § 183, 4.

*Nullus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ullus*, and *ūnus* are thus declined:—

	Masc.	Singular. Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ū'-nūs,	ū'-nā,	ū'-nūm,
<i>G.</i>	u-nī'-ūs,*	u-nī'-ūs,	u-nī'-ūs,
<i>D.</i>	u'-nī,	u'-nī,	u'-nī,
<i>Ac.</i>	u'-nūm,	u'-nām,	u'-nūm,
<i>V.</i>	u'-nē,	u'-nā,	u'-nūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	u'-nō.	u'-nā.	u'-nō.

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *alius*.

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tēner*, and *ūter* and *neuter* like *piger*.

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bōnus*, *tēner*, or *piger*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined:—

*Acer*, sharp.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ā'-cēr,	ā'-crīs,	ā'-crē,
<i>G.</i>	a'-crīs,	a'-crīs,	a'-crīs,
<i>D.</i>	a'-crī,	a'-crī,	a'-crī,
<i>Ac.</i>	a'-crēm,	a'-crēm,	a'-crē,
<i>V.</i>	a'-cēr,	a'-crīs,	a'-crē,
<i>Ab.</i>	a'-crī.	a'-crī.	a'-crī.

\* See § 15.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ā,</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>a'-cri-ūm,</i>	<i>a'-cri-um,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ūm,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ac'-rī-būs,</i>	<i>ac'-rī-būs,</i>	<i>ac'-rī-būs,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ā,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ā,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ac'-rī-būs.</i>	<i>ac'-rī-būs.</i>	<i>ac'-rī-būs.</i>

In like manner are declined the following;—

<i>Al'-acer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Pa-lus'-ter, marshy.</i>	<i>Sil-ves'-ter, woody.</i>
<i>Cam-pes'-ter, campaign.</i>	<i>Pe-des'-ter, on foot.</i>	<i>Ter-res'-ter, terrestrial.</i>
<i>Cel'-ē-ber, famous.</i>	<i>Pū'-ter, rotten.</i>	<i>Vol'-ū-cer, winged.</i>
<i>E-ques'-tor, equestrian.</i>	<i>Sa-lū'-ber, wholesome.</i>	

To these add names of months in *-ber*, used as adjectives; as, *Octōber*, etc. (cf. § 71), and *cēler*, swift, which has *celēris*, *celēre*; gen. *celēris*, etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volūcer fama*. Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is*; as, *collis silvestris*, Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volūcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined:—

*Mitis mild.*

		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>mi'-tis,</i>	<i>mi'-tē,</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>mi'-tēs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-ā,*</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mi'-tis,</i>	<i>mi'-tis,</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>mit'-i-ūm,*</i>	<i>mit'-i-ūm,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mi'-ti,</i>	<i>mi'-ti,</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mi'-tēm,</i>	<i>mi'-tē,</i>	<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mi'-tēs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-ā,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>mi'-tis,</i>	<i>mi'-tē,</i>	<i>V.</i>	<i>mi'-tēs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-ā,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mi'-ti.</i>	<i>mi'-ti.</i>	<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs.</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs.</i>

In like manner decline

<i>Ag'-i-lis, active.</i>	<i>Dul'-cis, sweet.</i>	<i>In-col'-ū-mis, safe.</i>
<i>Rrē'-vis, short.</i>	<i>For'-tis, brave.</i>	<i>Mi-rab'-i-lis, wonderful.</i>
<i>Cru-dē'-lis, cruel.</i>	<i>Grā'-vis, heavy.</i>	<i>Om'-nis, all.</i>

*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*.

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us*, *a*, *um*. See § 116.

§ 110. (a.) All comparatives, except *plus*, more, are thus declined:—

\* Pronounced *wish'-e-a*, etc. See § 12.

Mitior,\* milder.

Singular.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
G.	mit-i-ō'-rīs,	mit-i-ō'-rīs,
D.	mit-i-ō'-rī,	mit-i-ō'-rī,
Ac.	mit-i-ō'-rēm,	mit'-i-ūs,
V.	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
Ab.	mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī.	mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī.

Plural.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
G.	mit-i-ō'-rūm,	mit-i-ō'-rūm,
D.	mit-i-or'-ī-būs,	mit-i-or'-ī-būs,
Ac.	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
V.	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
Ab.	mit-i-or'-ī-būs.	mit-i-or'-ī-būs.

In like manner decline

A'-ti-or, higher.	Dul'-ci-or, sweeter.	Gra'-vi-or, heavier.
A'-da'-ci-or, bolder.	Fe'-lic'-i-or, happier.	Pru-den'-ti-or, more prudent.
B'-s'-vi-or, shorter.	Fe-ro'-ci-or, fiercer.	U-be'-ri-or, more fertile.
Cru-de'-li-or, more cruel.	For'-ti-or, braver.	

Plūs, more, is thus declined :—

Singular.		Plural.
N.		N.
N.	plus,	N. plū'-rēs,
G.	plū'-rīs,	G. plu'-ri-ūm,
D.	plū'-rī,	D. plu'-ri-būs,
Ac.	plus,	Ac. plū'-rēs,
V.	plū'-rēs,	V. plū'-rēs,
Ab.	(plū'-rē, obs.)	Ab. plu'-ri-būs.

So, but in the plural number only, complēres, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l*, *r*, *s*, or *x*, and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined :—

Fēlix, happy.

Singular.

M. & F.	N.
N.	fe'-lix,
G.	fe-li'-cīs,
D.	fe-li'-cī,
Ac.	fe-li'-cēm,
V.	fe'-lix,
Ab.	fe-li'-cē, or -cī.

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-or*, etc. See § 12.

*Plural.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lio'-i-ā,*
<i>G.</i> fe-lic'-i-ūm,*	fe-lic'-i-ūm,
<i>D.</i> fe-lic'-i-būs,	fe-lic'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,
<i>V.</i> fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,
<i>Ab.</i> fe-lic'-i-būs.	fe-lic'-i-būs.

*Præsens, present.**Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>G.</i> præ-sen'-tis,	præ-sen'-tis,
<i>D.</i> præ-sen'-ti,	præ-sen'-ti,
<i>Ac.</i> præ-sen'-tēm,	præ'-sens,
<i>V.</i> præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>Ab.</i> præ-sen'-tē, or -ti.	præ-sen'-tē, or -ti.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i> præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,†
<i>G.</i> præ-sen'-ti-ūm,	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,
<i>D.</i> præ-sen'-ti-būs,	præ-sen'-ti-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,
<i>V.</i> præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,
<i>Ab.</i> præ-sen'-ti-būs.	præ-sen'-ti-būs.

*In like manner decline*

— Au'-dax, -ācis, <i>bold.</i>	Par'-ti-ceps, -ipis, <i>par-</i>	Sol'-lers, -tis, <i>skared.</i>
— Com'-pos, -ētis, <i>master of.</i>	ti-cipant.	Sos'-pes, -itis, <i>safe.</i>
— Fē'-rox, -ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>	Præ'-pes, -ētis, <i>swift.</i>	Sup'-plex, -icis, <i>sup-</i>
— In'-gens, -tis, <i>huge.</i>	Prū'-dens, -tis, <i>prudent.</i>	pliant.

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens*; as, A'-mans. Mō'-nens. Rē'-gens. Ca'-pi-ens. Au'-di-ens.

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in *us*, *a*, *um*; see § 116.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 78) some have *-ētis*; as, *hōbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, and *tēres* — *inquires* and *locuples* have *-ētis*; — some have *-itis*; as, *dīves*, *sopes*, and *super-*  
*pes*; — some have *-icis*; as, *dēses*, and *rēses*; — *bīpes*, and *trīpes* have *-pēdis*; — *pūbes*  
*etās pubēris*, and *impūbes*, *impubēris* and *impūbis*.

\* Pronounced *fe-lis'-e-um* etc See § 10, *Exc.*, and § 7, 3, (b.)

† Pronounced *præ-sen'-she-a*, etc



2. *Compos* and *impos* have *-ōtis*, and *exos*, *exossis*.—*Exles* has *exlēgis*, *pernos* has *pernoctis* (§ 78), *præcox*, *præcōcis*, and *redux*, *reducis*.—*Cælebs* has *cælibis* (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercūtis*, and *vetus*, *vetēris*. Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *cāput*, have *-cipitis*; as, *anceps*, *præceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *cāpio* have *-ipis*; as, *particeps*, *participis*.—Those in *cora*, compounds of *cor*, have *-cordis*; as, *concora*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mēmor* and *immēmor* have *-ōris*.

### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *cæleste*, and *perenns* are found in Ovid, and *cognomine* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i*; but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, dēses, discolor, hospes, impos, impubes, juvenis, locuples, pauper, princeps, pūber or pūbes, sēnex, sospes, superstes, tricorpor, tricuspis, and tripes.

Exc. 3. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

Anceps, concors, discors, hēbes, immēmor, iners, ingens, inops, mēmor, par, præceps, recens, repens, vigil, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

REM. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Cællus, and *præcipe* in Ennius.

REM. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; when used of persons, it has *e*.

### NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL

§ 114. 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vetus*, old, and *uber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *eis*, instead of *es*. Cf. § 85, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *fācio*, *cāpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *cēler*, *compar*, *cicur*, *dives*, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vigil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium*. The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium*; as, *cælestum*, Virg. Ovid, etc.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

## § 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

## DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (a.) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following:—

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, consors, degēner, dives, impos, impubes, industrius, inops, insons, invitus, juvenis, locuples, mēmor, pauper, particeps princeps, pūber, or pūbes, rēdux, sēnex, sons, sospes, superstes, supplex, tricorpor, vigil.

(b.) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6, (a.)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender:—

Concōlor, dēses, hēbes, perpes, rēses, tēres, versicōlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi*, temperate; *nēquam*, worthless; *sāt* or *adīs*, sufficient; the plurals *aliquot*, *tōt*, *quōt*, *totidem*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*. Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (b.)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases:—

*Bilicem*, acc.; doubly-tissued. *Cetēra*, *cetērum*, the rest, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Decemplicem*, acc.; tenfold. *Exspes*, nom.; hopeless. *Inquies*, nom.; -ētem, acc.; -ēte, abl.; restless. *Mactus*, and *macte*, nom.; *macte*, acc.; honored; -macti, nom. plur. *Necesse*, and *necessum*, nom., acc.; necessary. *Plus*, nom., acc.; pluris, gen.; more; -pl. plūres, -a, nom. acc.; -ium gen.; ibus, dat., abl. Cf. § 110. *Postēra*, *postērum*, coming after, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Pōtis*, nom. sing. and pl., all genders; able. *Pōte*, nom. sing., for potest; possible. *Septemplicis*, gen.; -ce, abl.; seven-fold. *Siremps*, and *sirempse*, nom. and acc., alike. *Tantundem*, nom. acc.; tantidem, gen.; tantandem, acc.; so much. *Trilicem*, acc.; trebly-tissued; trilices, nom. and acc. pl.

## REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

*Acclivis*, and -us, *r*, ascending.  
*Auxiliāris*, and -ius, auxiliary.  
*Bijūgis*, and -us, yoked two together.  
*Declivis*, and -us, *r*, descending.  
*Exanimis*, and -us, *r*, lifeless.  
*Hilāris*, and -us, cheerful.  
*Imbecillis*, *r*, and -us, weak.  
*Impubes*, and -is, *r*, -is or -ēris, not grown up.  
*Inermis*, and -us, *r*, unarmed.  
*Infrēnis*, and -us, unbridled.

*Inquies*, and -ētus, restless.  
*Joculāris*, and -ius, *r*, laughable.  
*Multijūgis*, *r*, and -us, yoked many to gether.  
*Opulens*, and -lentus, rich.  
*Præcox*, -cōquis, and -cōquus, early ripe.  
*Proclivis*, and -us, *r*, sloping.  
*Quadrijūgis*, and -us, yoked four to gether.  
*Semianimis*, and -us, half alive.

Semiarmis, and -us, *half armed*.  
 Semisomnis, and -us, r, *half asleep*.  
 Singularis, and -ius, *single*.

Sublimis, and -us, r, *high*.  
 Unanimis, r, and -us, *unanimous*.  
 Violens, r, and -lentus, *violent*.

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *satur* and *-bris*, *coluber* and *-bris*. Cf. § 108, R. 1.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* 'How many?' They are,

1. Unus,	<i>one.</i>	I.
2. Duo,	<i>two.</i>	II.
3. Tres,	<i>three.</i>	III.
4. Quattuor,	<i>four.</i>	III. or IV.
5. Quinque,	<i>five.</i>	V.
6. Sex,	<i>six.</i>	VI.
7. Septem,	<i>seven.</i>	VII.
8. Octo,	<i>eight.</i>	VIII.
9. Nōvem,	<i>nine.</i>	VIII. or IX.
10. Dēcem,	<i>ten.</i>	X.
11. Undēcim,	<i>eleven.</i>	XI.
12. Duodēcim,	<i>twelve.</i>	XII.
13. Tredēcim,	<i>thirteen.</i>	XIII.
14. Quatuordēcim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	XIII. or XIV.
15. Quindēcim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	XV.
16. Sedēcim, or sexdēcim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	XVI.
17. Septendēcim,	<i>seventeen.</i>	XVII.
18. Octodēcim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	XVIII.
19. Novendēcim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	XVIII. or XIX.
20. Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	XX.
21. Viginti unus, or unus et viginti, }	<i>twenty-one.</i>	XXI.
22. Viginti duo, or duo et viginti, etc., }	<i>twenty-two.</i>	XXII.
30. Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>	XXX.
40. Quādrāginta,	<i>forty.</i>	XXXX. or XL.
50. Quinquaginta,	<i>fifty.</i>	L.
60. Sexaginta,	<i>sixty.</i>	LX.
70. Septuaginta,	<i>seventy.</i>	LXX.
80. Octoginta, or octuaginta,	<i>eighty.</i>	LXXX.
90. Nōnāginta,	<i>ninety.</i>	LXXX. or XC.
100. Centum,	<i>a hundred.</i>	C.
101. Centum unus, or centum et unus, etc., }	<i>a hundred and one</i>	CI.
200. Dūcenti, -æ, a,	<i>two hundred.</i>	CC.
300. Trēcenti, etc.,	<i>three hundred.</i>	CCC.
400. Quadringenti,	<i>four hundred.</i>	CCCC. or CD.
500. Quingenti,	<i>five hundred.</i>	DC. or D.
600. Sexcenti,	<i>six hundred.</i>	DC. or DC.
700. Septingenti,	<i>seven hundred.</i>	DCC. or DCC.
800. Octingenti,	<i>eight hundred.</i>	DCCC. or DCCC.
900. Nongenti,	<i>nine hundred.</i>	DCCCC. or DCCCC.
1000. Mille,	<i>a thousand.</i>	CLD. or M.
2000. Duo millia, or bis mille, }	<i>two thousand.</i>	CISCID. or MM.

5000	Quinque millia, or quinquies mille,	} five thousand.	100.
10000	Decem millia, or decies mille,		CC100.
50000	Quinquaginta millia, or quinquages mille,	} fifty thousand.	1000.
100000	Centum millia, or centies mille,		CCCL000.

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnus*.

For the declension of *unus* and *trēs*, see §§ 107 and 109.

*Duo* is thus declined:—

	Plural.		
X	M.	F.	N.
	N. dū'-o,	du'-o,	du'-o,
	G. du-ŏ'-rum,	du-ŏ'-rum,	du-ŏ'-rum,
	D. du-ŏ'-bus,	du-ŏ'-bus,	du-ŏ'-bus,
	A. du'-os, or du'-o,	du'-as,	du'-o,
	V. du'-o,	du'-o,	du'-o,
	Ab. du-ŏ'-bus.	du-ŏ'-bus.	du-ŏ'-bus.

REMARK 1. *Duorum*, *duarum*, are often contracted into *duam*, especially in compounds; as, *duamvis*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una nuptia*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So also, when it takes the signification of "alone" or "the same"; as, *uni Ubis*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (a.) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*; thus, *decem et tres*, *decem et novem*, or, omitting *et*, *decem novem*. *Octodécim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(b.) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*, *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac*, *atque*, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodeviginti*, *undeviginti*, etc. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (a.) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia*: as, *decem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia*; as, *decies centēna millia*, a million; *centies centēna millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies, scil. centēna millia*.

(b.) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodēcim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

#### 6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(a.) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(b.) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one*; V. *five*; X. *ten*; L. *fifty*; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(a.) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(b.) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

(c.) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIO, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO, or, by contraction, D.

(d.) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (O) to IO makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO marks *five thousand*; and IOOO, *fifty thousand*.

(e.) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of O, to the number CIO, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIOO denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIOOO, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO, signified *two hundred thousand*, etc.

(f.) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ . denotes *three thousand*;  $\overline{\text{X}}$ ., *ten thousand*.

§ 119. II. Ordinal numbers are such as denote order or rank, and answer to the question, *Quotus*? Which of the numbers? They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bōnus*; as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. Distributive numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quotēni*? How many apiece? as, *singuli*, one by one, or, one to each; *bini*, two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bōnus*, except that they usually have *um* instead of *orum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties? How many times?* —

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1. Primus, <i>first</i> .	Singŭli, <i>one by one</i> .	Semel, <i>once</i> .
2. Sēcundus, <i>second</i> .	Bini, <i>two by two</i> .	Bis, <i>twice</i> .
3. Tertiŭs, <i>third</i> .	Terni, <i>or trini</i> .	Ter, <i>thrice</i> .
4. Quartus, <i>fourth</i> .	Quaterni.	Quāter, <i>four times</i> .
5. Quintus, <i>fifth</i> .	Quini.	Quinquies.
6. Sextus, <i>sixth</i> .	Sāni.	Sexies.
7. Septimŭs, <i>seventh</i> .	Septēni.	Septies.
8. Octāvus, <i>eighth</i> .	Octōni.	Octies.
9. Nōnus, <i>ninth</i> .	Novēni.	Novies.
10. Dēcimŭs, <i>tenth, etc.</i>	Dēni.	Dēcies.
11. Undecimŭs.	Undēni.	Undecies.
12. Duodecimŭs.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
13. Tertiŭs decimŭs.	Terni dēni.	Terdecies.
14. Quartus decimŭs.	Quaterni dēni.	Quatuordecies.
15. Quintus decimŭs.	Quini dēni.	Quindecies.
16. Sextus decimŭs.	Sēni dēni.	Sedecies.
17. Septimŭs decimŭs.	Septēni dēni.	Decies et septies.
18. Octāvus decimŭs.	Octōni dēni.	Duodevicies.
19. Nōnus decimŭs.	Novēni dēni.	Undevicies.
20. { Vicesimŭs, or { vigesimŭs. }	Vicēni.	Vicies.
21. Vicesimŭs primŭs.	Vicēni singŭli.	Semel et vices.
22. Vicesimŭs secundŭs.	Vicēni bini, etc.	Bis et vices, etc.
30. { Tricesimŭs, or { trigesimŭs. }	Tricēni.	Tricies.
40. Quādragesimŭs.	Quadragēni.	Quadrages.
50. Quinquagesimŭs.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquages.
60. Sexagesimŭs.	Sexagēni.	Sexages.
70. Septuagesimŭs.	Septuagēni.	Septuages.
80. Octogesimŭs.	Octogēni.	Octoges.
90. Nonagesimŭs.	Nonagēni.	Nonages.
100. Centesimŭs.	Centēni.	Centies.
200. Dūcentesimŭs.	Ducēni.	Ducēties.
300. Trēcentesimŭs.	Trecēni, or trecentēni.	{ Trecenties, or { tricēties. }
400. Quadringentesimŭs	{ Quadringēni, or { quadringentēni. }	Quadringēties.
500. Quingentesimŭs.	Quingēni.	Quingēties.
600. Sexcentesimŭs.	Sexcēni, or sexcentēni.	Sexcenties.
700. Septingentesimŭs.	Septingēni.	Septingēties.
800. Octingentesimŭs.	Octingēni.	Octingēties.
900. Nongentesimŭs.	Nongēni.	Nongingēties.
1000. Millesimŭs.	{ Millēni, or { singŭla millia	Millies.
2000. Bis millesimŭs.	{ Bis millēni, or { bina millia. }	Bis millies.

§ 120. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. (a.) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertiŭs decimŭs*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *decimŭs et tertiŭs*, or *decimŭs tertius*.

(b.) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimŭs*, *unus et tricesimŭs*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimŭs*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimŭs quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimŭs*.

(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, etc. to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodevicesmi*, etc., *undevicesmi*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *bina nuptia*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quintus*, *septenus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodeviginti* and *undequadrages* are found.

### § 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotiplex*? They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *fēlix*; as,

Simplex, *single*.

Dūplex, *twofold*, or *double*.

Triplex, *threefold*.

Quadrūplex, *fourfold*.

Quintiplex, *fivefold*.

Septemplex, *sevenfold*.

Decemplex, *tenfold*.

Centūplex, *a hundred fold*.

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *dūplus*, *a, um*, twice as great; so *tripulus*, *quadrūplus*, *octūplus*, *decāplus*. They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *binus*, *a, um*, two years old; so *trimus*, *quadrīmus*, etc. Also, *biennis*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadriennis*, *quinquennis*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biduus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium*, *triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum*, *triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quōtus*, of what number? *quōtēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot*, *totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia*, *tertia*, *quarta*, etc. Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , *dimidia pars*;  $\frac{1}{3}$ , *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ , etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duæ*, *tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bōnus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opācus*, dark, denote *variable* attributes; but *æneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

3. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest; *mitissimus*, mildest.

REM. 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the same object as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

REM. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

REM. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or rather'; as, *vixit liberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9

REM. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amicus carissimus*, a very dear friend.

§ 123. 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *minus*, less; *minime*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minime jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as, *amarus*, bitter; *subamarus*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *aeque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *habet, aequae ac pecus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 124. 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive. Cf. § 127, 1.

2. The terminational comparative ends in *ior*, *ior*, *ius*; the terminational superlative in *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; high, higher, highest. *mitis*, *mitior*, *mitissimus*; mild, milder, mildest. *felix*, (gen. *felicis*), *felicior*, *felicissimus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

Acc'-tus, *strait*.

Car'-rus, *dear*.

Doc'-tus, *learned*.

Cru-dē'-lis, *cruel*.

Fer'-ti-lis, *fertile*.

Lē'-vis, *light*.

Cā'-pax, *capacious*.

Clē'-mens, (gen. -tis) *merciful*.

In'-ers, (gen. -tis), *sluggish*.

# IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rimus* to that termination; as, *acer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrimus*.



In like manner, *pauper*, *pauperrimus*. *Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterissimus*, from the old collateral form *veter*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *lissimus* to the root:—

<i>Facilis</i> ,	<i>facilior</i> ,	<i>facillimus</i> ,	<i>eas.</i>
<i>Difficilis</i> ,	<i>difficilior</i> ,	<i>difficillimus</i> ,	<i>difficult.</i>
<i>Gracilis</i> ,	<i>gracilior</i> ,	<i>gracillimus</i> ,	<i>slender.</i>
<i>Humilis</i> ,	<i>humilior</i> ,	<i>humillimus</i> ,	<i>low.</i>
<i>Similis</i> ,	<i>similior</i> ,	<i>simillimus</i> ,	<i>like.</i>
<i>Dissimilis</i> ,	<i>dissimilior</i> ,	<i>dissimillimus</i> ,	<i>unlike.</i>

*Imbecillus* or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

3. (a.) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *facio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens*:—

<i>Beneficus</i> ,	<i>beneficentior</i> ,	<i>beneficentissimus</i> ,	<i>beneficent.</i>
<i>Honorificus</i> ,	<i>honorificentior</i> ,	<i>honorificentissimus</i> ,	<i>honorable.</i>
<i>Magnificus</i> ,	<i>magnificentior</i> ,	<i>magnificentissimus</i> ,	<i>splendid.</i>
<i>Munificus</i> ,	<i>munificentior</i> ,	<i>munificentissimus</i> ,	<i>liberal.</i>
<i>Maleficus</i> ,	—————,	<i>maleficentissimus</i> ,	<i>hurtful.</i>

(b.) Adjectives in *dicens* and *völens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *völus* are more common; as,

*Maledicens* or *dicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *slanderos.*

*Benevölens*, or *-völus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *benevolent.*

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

<i>Dexter</i> ,	<i>dexterior</i> ,	<i>dextimus</i> ,	<i>right.</i>
<i>Extëra</i> , ( <i>fem.</i> )	<i>exterior</i> ,	<i>extrëmus</i> , or <i>extimus</i> ,	<i>outward.</i>
<i>Postëra</i> , ( <i>fem.</i> )	<i>posterior</i> ,	<i>postrëmus</i> , or <i>postimus</i> ,	<i>hind.</i>
<i>Infërus</i> ,	<i>inferior</i> ,	<i>infirmus</i> , or <i>imus</i> ,	<i>below.</i>
<i>Supërus</i> ,	<i>superior</i> ,	<i>suprëmus</i> , or <i>summus</i> ,	<i>above.</i>

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postëra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extëra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:—

Bönus,	melior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mälus,	pëjor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	mäjor,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	little,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plurimus,	} much,	more,	most.
Multa,	—	plurima,			
Multum,	plus,*	plurimum,			
Nëquam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	worthless, etc.		
Frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus,	frugal, etc.		

REM. 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:—

<i>Citior</i> , <i>cittimus</i> , <i>nearer</i> .	<i>Prior</i> , <i>primus</i> , <i>former</i> .
<i>Deterior</i> , <i>deterimus</i> , <i>worse</i> .	<i>Propior</i> , <i>proximus</i> , <i>nearer</i> .
<i>Interior</i> , <i>intimus</i> , <i>inner</i> .	<i>Ultior</i> , <i>ultimus</i> , <i>farther</i> .
<i>Ociior</i> , <i>ociissimus</i> , <i>swifter</i> .	

\* See § 110.

## 2. Right want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissimus, *skilful*.  
 Inclutus, inclutissimus, *renowned*.  
 Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible*.  
 Invitus, invitissimus, *unwilling*.  
 Meritus, meritissimus, (very rare,) *deserving*.

Par, parissimus, (very rare), *equal*.  
 Persuâsus, persuasissimus (neuter)  
*persuaded*.  
 Sâcer, sacerrimus, *sacred*.

## 3. Right have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Apricus, apricissimus, *sunny*.  
 Bellus, bellissimus, *fine*.  
 Cômis, comissimus, *courteous*.  
 Diversus, diversissimus, *different*.

Falsus, falsissimus, *false*.  
 Fidus, fidissimus, *faithful*.  
 Nôvus, novissimus, *new*.  
 Vêtus, veterrimus, *old*.

## 4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young*.  
 Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic*.  
 Alâcer, alacrior, *active*.  
 Ater, atrior, *black*.  
 Cæcus, cæcior, *blind*.  
 Dêses, desidior, *inactive*.  
 Diurnus, diurnior, *lasting*.  
 Infinitus, infinitior, *unlimited*.  
 Ingens, ingentior, *great*.  
 Jejûnus, jejunior, *fasting*.  
 Juvênis, junior, *young*.  
 Licens, licentior, *unrestrained*.  
 Longinquus, longinquier, *distant*.  
 Opimus, opimior, *rich*.

Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping*.  
 Prônus, pronior, *bending down*.  
 Proturvus, proturvior, *violent*.  
 — sequior, *worse*.  
 Propinquus, propinquier, *near*.  
 Salutâris, salutarior, *salutary*.  
 Sâtis, sufficiens; satius, *preferable*.  
 Sâtur, saturior, *full*.  
 Sênex, senior, *old*.  
 Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody*.  
 Sinister, sinisterior, *left*.  
 Supinus, supinior, *lying on the back*.  
 Surdus, surdior, *deaf*.  
 Têres, teretior, *round*.

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvênis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus nâtu*, youngest; and that of *sênex* by *maximus nâtu*, oldest. The comparatives *minor nâtu* and *major nâtu* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *is, iis, âis*, and *bis*, have no terminational superlative.

## 5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(a.) Adjectives in *bundus, imus, imus* (except *divinus*), *orus*, most in *ous*, and in *us* pure (except *-quus*.) Yet *arduus, assiduus, egregius, exiguus, industrius, perpetuus, pius, strenuus*, and *vacuus*, have sometimes a terminational comparison. So, dropping *i*, *noxior, innoxior, sobrior*.

(b.) The following—*almus, calvus, cæcus, cæcur, claudus, degêner, delirius, dispar, egênus, impar, impius, invidus, lâcer, mêmor, mîrus, nûcus, præcox, prædus, rûdis, salvus, sospes, superstes, vulgâris*, and some others.

§ 127. 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *mâgis*, more, and *maxîme*, most; as, *idoneus*, fit; *magis idoneus, maxîme idoneus*.

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admodum, aliquanto, apprîme, bêne, imprimis, multum, oppido, perquam*, and *valde*, and also by *per* compounded with the positive; as, *difficilis*, difficult; *perdifficilis*, very difficult. To a few adjectives *præ* is in like manner prefixed; as, *prædûrus*, very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, still, or yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by

prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, *longe nobilissimus*; *longe melior* *hæc* *multo facilius*; *multo maxima pars*.

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicero vel optimus oratorum Romanorum*. *Quam maximum potest militum numerum colligit*, quam doctissimus, extremely learned; quam *celerissime*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, *Quantis maximis potuit itineribus contendit*.

NOTE 2. *Unus*, with or without *omnium*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego fimo omnium plurimum scior*. *Cic. Urbem unam mihi amicissimam declinavi*, *Id.* It is used in like manner with *excello*.

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beatus*, happier than we. *Cic. Ante alias pulchritudine insignis*, most beautiful. *Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, Ante alios pulcherrimus omnes. Virg.*

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jugum*, *sonnus*, *gêro*, and *fêro*, and many others.

## DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes:—

1. (a.) The termination *êus*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aurus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *lignus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virginæus*, maidenly; from *aurum*, *argentum*, etc. See § 9, Rem. 8.

(b.) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus*; as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(c.) The termination *inus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantinus*, of adamant; *cedrinus*, of cedar; from *adamas* and *cedrus*. So, also, *ênus*; as, *terrêneus*, of earth, from *terra*.

(d.) The termination *êus* or *ius* (Greek *ιος*), and also *teus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achilleus*, *Sophocleus*, *Aristotelius*, *Platonius*; *Pythagoreus* and *Pythagoricus*; *Homertus* and *Homericus*. Names in *ias* make adjectives in *iêus*; as, *Archias*, *Archidiêus*. Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *êus* or *ius* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellia* or *-êa*, a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (a.) The terminations *âlis*, *âris*, *ârius*, *ilîs*, *atlis*, *icius*, *teus*, *ius*, *êus*, and *uus*, denote 'belonging', 'pertaining' or 'relating to'; as, *capitâlîs*, relating to the life; from *capo*

So *comitiālis*, *regālīs*; *Apollināris*, *consulāris*, *populāris*; *argentarius*; *civīlis*, *hostīlis*, *juvenīlis*; *aquatilis*, *fluvīatilis*; *tribunicus*, *patricius*; *bellicus*, *circens*, *Germanicus*; *accusatorius*, *imperatorius*, *regius*; *Hectorēus*; *caninus*, *equinus*, *ferinus*, *masculinus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *argentum*, *civis*, etc.

(b.) The termination *ilis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostīlis*, hostile; *puerilis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

(c.) The termination *inus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of animals, and other living beings.

8. The termination *arius*, as a substantive, scil. *fāber*, etc., generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriarius*, *statuarius*; from *corium* and *status*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *dens* and *lentus* denote abundance, fulness; as, *animus*, full of courage; *fraudulentus*, given to fraud; from *animus* and *frans*. So *lapidus*, *vinus*, *portus*, *turbulentus*, *sanguinolentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *i*, but sometimes *e*.

NOTE.—Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ulus*, *cūlus*, etc., in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicūlus*, sweetish; from *dulcis*. So *lentulus*, *micellus*, *parvulus*, etc. See § 100, 8, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes formed from comparatives; as, *majorculus*, *duriusculus*, somewhat great, somewhat hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *paucus*, viz *pauzillus* and *pouzillulus*; and from *bonus*, (*bēnus*) are formed *bellus* and *bellulus*.

6. (a.) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *patrial* adjectives in *ensis*, *inus*, *as*, and *anus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

(b.) Thus from *Cannæ* is formed *Cannensis*; from *Sulmo*, *Sulmonensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis*, *circensis*. But *Athēna* makes *Athēnsis*; and some Greek towns in *ia* and *ēa* drop *i* and *e* in their adjectives; as, *Antiochenis*, *Nicomedenis*.

(c.) Those in *inus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Aricinus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*; *Latium*, *Latius*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *inus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*.

(d.) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Capēna*, *Capēnas*.

(e.) Those in *anus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albanus*; *Rōma*, *Romānus*; *Cūma*, *Cumānus*; *Thēba*, *Thēbānus*; also from some of the second declension; as, *Tusculum*, *Tusculānus*; *Fundī*, *Fundānus*;—*font*, *fontānus*; *mons*, *montānus*; *urbs*, *urbānus*; *oppidum*, *oppidānus*.

(f.) Adjectives with the terminations *ānus*, *iānus*, and *inus* are formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullānus*; *Tullius*, *Tullianus*; *Jugurtha*, *Jugurthinus*.

(g.) Greek names of towns in *pōlis* form *patrial* adjectives in *politānus*; as, *Neapōlis*, *Neapolitānus*.

(h.) Greek names of towns generally form *patrials* in *ius*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhōdus*; *Lacedæmon*, *Lacedæmonius*;—but those in *a* form them in *aus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissæus*; *Smyrna*, *Smyrnceus*.

(i.) From many *patrials*; as, *Britannus*, *Gallus*, *Afer*, *Persa*, *Arabs*, etc. adjectives are formed in *teus* and *ius*; as, *Britannicus*, *Gallicus*, *Africus*, *Persicus*, *Arabicus*; so *Syprus*, *Syrius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

*alātus*, winged *barbātus*, bearded; *galeātus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared; *præ-turrītus*, turreted, *cornūtus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris*, *e*.

8. The termination *aneus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

§ 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

*errābundus*, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *morior*, equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*.

(a.) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimābundus*, weeping profusely.

(b.) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *puclibundus* and *lascivibundus*.

(c.) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verecundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

*algidus*, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

*congruus*, agreeing, from *congruo*; so, *assiduus*, *nocuus*, *innocuus*:—*irriguus*, well watered; *conspiciuus*, visible; from *irrigo*, *conspicio*.

4. (a.) The terminations *ilis* and *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

*amabilis*, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placabilis*, easy to be appeased; *agilis*, active; *ductilis*, ductile; from *amo*, *crēdo*, *plāco*; *āgo*, *dūco*. They are rarely active; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, *fertilis*; *aer per cuncta meatilis*. Plin.

(b.) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *t*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *t* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

(c.) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexilis*, *flexibilis*; *coctilis*, *coctibilis*, from *flecto* (*flex-*), etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *fingo* (*fict-*), etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

*audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax* rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor*, *rapio*.

7. The termination *ivus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb. *Ivus*, denote *ivus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo*.  
to the life; & in art.

8. Verbals in *-v* and *-trix*, (see § 102, 6, (a.)), are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercitus*, *victrices litéra*. In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victōres*, *victrices*, *victricia*. So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospita* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectives*; as, *āmans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastinus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postērus*, subsequent, from *post*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *cāper* and *pes*; *ignicōmus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *cōma*.

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short *i*, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 108, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivagus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vāgus*. So *lucifugus*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *corniger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gēro*; *lētifera*, bringing death—of *lētum* and *fēro*. So *carnivorus*, *causidicus*, *ignivomus*, *lucifugus*, *particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquævus*, of the same age—of *æquus* and *ævum*; *celeripes*, swift-footed—of *cēler* and *pes*. So *centimānus*, *decennis*, *magnanimus*, *misericors*, *unanimis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgeminus*, a hundred-fold; *multicavus*, having many cavities; *quintusdecimus*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *breviloquens*, speaking briefly—of *brēvis* and *loquor*; *magnificus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *fācio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualicumque*, *quocumque*, *uterque*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *maledicax*, slanderous—of *māle* and *dicax*. So *antemeridiānus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *beneficus*, beneficent—of *bēne* and *fācio*; *malevolus*, malevolent—of *māle* and *volo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *āmens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *consors*, *decolor*, *deformis*, *implūmis*, *inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concavus*, concave; *infidus*, unfaithful. So *improvidus*, *percārus*, *prædices*, *subalbidus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continuus*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo*; *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus*, *promiscuus*, *subtilis*, *superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it, as, *imprūdēns*—of *in* and *præteus*. See § 196; and cf. § 108, R. 2.

## PRONOUNS.

§ 132. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, <i>I</i> .	Hic, <i>this, the latter</i> .	Suus, <i>his, hers, its, etc.</i>
Tu, <i>thou</i> .	Is, <i>that or he</i> .	Cujus? <i>whose?</i>
Sui, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	Quis? <i>who?</i>	Noster, <i>our</i> .
Ille, <i>that, the former</i> .	Qui, <i>who</i> .	Vester, <i>your</i> .
Ipee, <i>himself</i> .	Meus, <i>my</i> .	Nostras, <i>of our country</i> .
Iste, <i>that, that of yours</i> .	Tuus, <i>thy</i> .	Cujas? <i>of what country</i>

3. *Ego, tu*, and *sui*, and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego, tu*, and *sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns*. They are a species of appellatives (§ 23, 3,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, and *cujus*, have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui*, from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

*Singular.*

N. ē'-gō, <i>I</i> .	tū, <i>thou</i> .	
G. me'-ī, <i>of me</i> .	tu'-ī, <i>of thee</i> .	{ su'-ī, <i>of himself, herself, itself</i> . sib'-ī, * <i>to himself, etc.</i> sē, <i>himself, etc.</i>
D. mī'-hī, <i>to me</i> .	tīb'-ī, * <i>to thee</i> .	
Ac. mē, <i>me</i> .	tē, <i>thee</i> .	
V. ———	tū, <i>O thou</i> .	
Ab. mē, <i>with me</i> .	tē, <i>with thee</i> .	sē, <i>with himself, etc.</i>

\* See § 19, 1, Etc.

*Plural.*

N. <i>nōs, we.</i>	<i>vōs, ye or you.</i>	
G. { <i>nos'-trum</i> } <i>of us.</i>	<i>ves'-trum or</i>	<i>su'-i, of themselves.</i>
	<i>ves'-tri,</i>	
D. <i>nō'-bis, to us.</i>	<i>vō'-bis, to you.</i>	<i>sib'-i, to themselves.</i>
Ac. <i>nōs, us.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>	<i>sē, themselves.</i>
V. _____	<i>vōs, O ye or you.</i>	
Ab. <i>nō'-bis, with us.</i>	<i>vō'-bis, with you.</i>	<i>sē, with themselves.</i>

REMARK 1. *Mi* and *mi* are ancient forms for *mīti*. So *min'* for *mīnīna*, Pers. 1, 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *mei* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *pes*; as, *egōmei*, I myself; *mīti-meī ip̄si*, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tūi* or *tutemet* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tūtē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, intensive, *me* and *te*, for *me* and *te*, and *mei* and *tis* for *mei* and *tu*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrūm*, *nostrārūm*, and *vestrōrūm*, *vestrārūm*. Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostrī*, *vestrum* and *vestrī*, see § 212, E. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mēcum*, *nobiscum*, etc. Cf. § 136, E. 1.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, indefinite, possessive, and patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille, iste, hic, and is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>il'-lē,</i>	<i>il'-lā,</i>	<i>il'-lūd,</i>	<i>il'-li,</i>	<i>il'-læ,</i>	<i>il'-lā,</i>
G. <i>il-lī'-us,*</i>	<i>il-lī'-us,</i>	<i>il-lī'-us,</i>	<i>il-lō'-rum,</i>	<i>il-lā'-rum,</i>	<i>il-lō'-rum,</i>
D. <i>il'-li,</i>	<i>il'-li,</i>	<i>il'-li,</i>	<i>il'-lis,</i>	<i>il'-lis,</i>	<i>il'-lis,</i>
Ac. <i>il'-lum,</i>	<i>il'-lam,</i>	<i>il'-lūd,</i>	<i>il'-lōs,</i>	<i>il'-lās,</i>	<i>il'-lā,</i>
V. <i>il'-lē,</i>	<i>il'-lā,</i>	<i>il'-lūd,</i>	<i>il'-li,</i>	<i>il'-læ,</i>	<i>il'-lā,</i>
Ab. <i>il'-lō.</i>	<i>il'-lā.</i>	<i>il'-lō.</i>	<i>il'-lis.</i>	<i>il'-lis.</i>	<i>il'-lis.</i>

\* See § 15, 1.



*Iste* is declined like *ille*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic,	hæc,	hœc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hū-jūs,	hū-jūs,	hū-jūs,	hō-rum,	hā-rum,	hō-rum,
D. huic*,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hœc,	hōs,	hās,	hæc.
V. hic,	hæc,	hœc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hœc.	hæc.	hœc.	his.	his.	his.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is,	e'-ā,	id,	i'-i,	e'-æ,	e'-ā,
G. ē-jūs,	ē-jūs,	ē-jūs,	e-ō-rum,	e-ā-rum,	e-ō-rum,
D. e'-i,	e'-i,	e'-i,	i'-is or e'-is,	i'-is or e'-is,	i'-is or e'-is,
Ac. e'-um,	e'-am,	id,	e'-ōs,	e'-ās,	e'-ā,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. e'-ō.	e'-ā.	e'-ō.	i'-is or e'-is.	i'-is or e'-is.	i'-is or e'-is.

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *ollī* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illas* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hi*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *eii* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *itibus* for *is*, in Plautus; *ea*, fem., for *ei*, and *eabus* for *is*, in Cato.

REMARK 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecca*; *eccilla*, *eccillud*; acc. sing., *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccillum* (by syncope *ellum*), *eccillam*; *eccistam*; acc. plur., *eccos*, *ecca*.

REMARK 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste* *hic*, and *ille* *hic*; or, as some say, of *iste* *ce*, and *ille* *ce*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

*Istic* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is'-tic,	is'-tæc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	N. —	is'-tæc,	—
Ac. is'-tunc,	is'-tanc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	Ac. —	—	is'-tæc.
Ab. is'-tœc.	is'-tæc.	is'-tœc.			

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce*, *huncce*, *hancce*, *hucce*, *hice*, *hæce* or *hæc*, *horunc*, *harumce*, *harunce*, or *harunc*, *hosce*, *hasce*, *hiscæ*; *illiusce*, *illæce*, *illosce*, *illasce*, *illisce*; *istæce*, *istisce*; *ejusce*, *isice*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istaccine*, *istoscine*; *illiccine*, *illancine*.

REM. 5. *Mōdi*, the genitive of *mōdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronouns, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *hujusmōdi* or *hujuscemōdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such; *illiusmōdi* and *istiusmōdi*, of that sort; *cujusmōdi*, of what sort, like *quālis*; *cu-*

\* See § 9, 5.

*juscemodā, cujusquemodā, cujusmodicumque*, of what kind soever; *cujusdammodā*, of some kind. So also *istmodā, cuimodā* and *cuiusmodā*, instead of *istiusmodā, cujusmodā*, etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined:—

Singular.		
	M.	F.
N.	ī'-dem,	e'-ā-dem,
G.	e-jus'-dem,	e-jus'-dem,
D.	e-ī'-dem,	e-ī'-dem,
Ac.	e-un'-dem,	e-an'-dem,
V.	<u>e-ī'-dem,</u>	<u>e-ā'-dem,</u>
Ab.	e-ī'-dem.	e-ā'-dem.

Plural.		
	M.	F.
N.	i-ī'-dem,	e-ā'-dem,
G.	e-o-run'-dem,	e-a-run'-dem,
D.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,
Ac.	e-os'-dem,	e-as'-dem,
V.	<u>e-is'-dem,</u>	<u>e-as'-dem,</u>
Ab.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *eundem, eorundem*, etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem*, and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *isdem*; and Ennius in Cicero has *eademmet* for *eadem*.

## INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

*Ipse* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse*, and is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.		M.	F.
N.	ip'-sē,	ip'-sā,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sē,
G.	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sō'-rum,	ip'-sā'-rum,
D.	ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sīs,	ip'-sīs,
Ac.	ip'-sum,	ip'-sam,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sōs,	ip'-sās,
V.	ip'-sē,	ip'-sā,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sē,
Ab.	ip'-sō.	ip'-sā.	ip'-sō.	ip'-sīs.	ip'-sīs.

REMARK 1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse, tu ipse*, Jupiter himself, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjunctive* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipseus*, occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsissimus*, his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *eapse*, (nom. and abl.), *eampse*, and *eopse*, instead of *ipsea, ipseam* and *ipso*. So also *reapse*, . e. *re eapse*, "in fact."

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*, whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

*Qui* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
G. <i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>quō'-rum</i> ,	<i>quā'-rum</i> ,	<i>quō'-rum</i> ,
D. <i>cui</i> ,*	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>quī'-būs</i> ,	<i>quī'-būs</i> ,	<i>quī'-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quos</i> ,	<i>quas</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. <i>quō</i> .	<i>quā</i> .	<i>quō</i> .	<i>quī'-būs</i> .	<i>quī'-būs</i> .	<i>quī'-būs</i> .

REMARK 1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *qua*, *qui*, and *quibus*, *cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 133, 4. Cicero uses *quicum* for *quibuscum*, when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Quis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cajus* and *cui* were anciently written *quidjus* and *quoi*: and, instead of the genitive *cajus*, a relative adjective *cajus*, *a*, *um*, very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque*, (or *quicumque*), is declined like *qui*.

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *quæ me cumque vocant terræ*. Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque*.

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	M.
N. <i>quis'-quis</i> ,	<i>quis'-quis</i> ,†	<i>quid'-quid</i> ,	N. <i>quī'-quī</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem'-quem</i> ,	—	<i>quid'-quid</i> ,	D. <i>quī'-būs'-quī'-būs</i> ,
Ab. <i>quō'-quō</i> .	<i>quā'-quā</i> .	<i>quō'-quō</i> .	

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quisquis* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

\* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 306, (1.)

† Cf. § 127, R. (1)

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} <i>who? what?</i>	Ecquis?	} <i>is any one?</i>	Cūjus? <i>whose?</i>
Quisnam?		Ecquisnam?		Cūjas? <i>of what country?</i>
Qui?	} <i>which? what?</i>	Numquis?	}	
Quinam?		Numquisnam,		

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

*Quis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis,	quæ,	quid,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cū-jūs,	cū-jūs,	cū-jūs,	quō-rum,	quæ-rum,	quō-rum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	quī-būs,	quī-būs,	quī-būs,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quid,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. quō.	quā.	quō.	quī-būs.	quī-būs.	quī-būs.

REMARK (1.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. *Quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.) *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *si*, *ne*, *neu*, *nisi*, *num*; and after relatives, as *quo*, *quanto*, etc. Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quidvis*? what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis*. Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis*; but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.) *Ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua*.

REM. (5.) *Ecqui* and *numqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis*; but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter. In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective:—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	F.
N. <i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū-jā</i> ,	<i>cū-jum</i> ,	N. <i>cū-jas</i> ,
A. <i>cū-jum</i> ,	<i>cū-jam</i> ,	_____	Ac. <i>cū-jās</i> .
Ab. _____	<i>cū-jā</i> .	_____	

6. *Cujās* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cājās*, *cujāts*. See § 139, 4.

NOTE. The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contain only an indirect question; as, e. g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis*; as, *qui sit apertū*, he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, N.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

<i>Aliquis</i> , some one.	<i>Quisquam</i> , any one.	<i>Quidam</i> , a certain one.
<i>Siquis</i> , if any.	<i>Quispiam</i> , some one.	<i>Quilibet</i> , } any one you
<i>Nēquis</i> , lest any.	<i>Unusquisque</i> , each.	<i>Quivis</i> , } please.
<i>Quisque</i> , every one.	<i>Aliquiplam</i> , any, some.	<i>Quis and qui</i> , § 137, R. (8.)

NOTE. *Siquis* and *nequis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *ne quis*: so also *unus quisque*.

1. *Aliquis* is thus declined:—

Singular.		
M.	F.	N.
N. <i>al'-i-quis</i> ,	<i>al'-i-qua</i> ,	<i>al'-i-quod</i> , or <i>-quid</i> ,
G. <i>al-i-cū'-jus</i> ,	<i>al-i-cū'-jus</i> ,	<i>al-i-cū'-jus</i> ,
D. <i>al'-i-cui</i> ,	<i>al'-i-cui</i> ,	<i>al'-i-cui</i> ,
Ac. <i>al'-i-quem</i> ,	<i>al'-i-quam</i> ,	<i>al'-i-quod</i> , or <i>-quid</i> ,
V. _____	_____	_____
Ab <i>al'-i-quo</i> .	<i>al'-i-quā</i> .	<i>al'-i-quo</i> .
Plural.		
M.	F.	N.
N. <i>al'-i-qui</i> ,	<i>al'-i-quæ</i> ,	<i>al'-i-qua</i> ,
G. <i>al-i-quō'-rum</i> ,	<i>al-i-quā'-rum</i> ,	<i>al-i-quō'-rum</i> ,
D. <i>a-liq'-ui-bus</i> ,*	<i>a-liq'-ui-bus</i> ,	<i>a-liq'-ui-bus</i> ,
Ac. <i>al'-i-quos</i> ,	<i>al'-i-quas</i> ,	<i>al'-i-qua</i> ,
V. _____	_____	_____
Ab. <i>a-liq'-ui-bus</i> .	<i>a-liq'-ui-bus</i> .	<i>a-liq'-ui-bus</i> .

\* Pronounced *a-lik'-wē-bus*. See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 3

2. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *quæ* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(a.) *Aliquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*aliqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Aliquis* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 64. *Siqui*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *siquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

(b.) *Aliquid*, *siquid*, and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *aliquid*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(a.) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(b.) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plant. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ullus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quæpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquodquid* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quiritis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quod* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

NOTE. *Quidam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 134, NOTE 1.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bōnus*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*. Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mi* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cujus* also is declined like *bōnus*; but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *piger*. See § 106.

REMARK 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suapte pondere*, by its own weight; *suapte manu*, by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpā*; *suapte amicum*; *meamet culpā*. The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannibal suamet ipse fraude captus abiit*. Liv.; but Sallust has *meamet facta dicere*.

REM. 2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132, 4.

## PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (a.) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostrātis*, but both are defective.

(b.) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrātes*, neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, (*nostratibus*). *Cūjas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujātem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are:—

(1.) (a.) *Alius*, *ullus*, *nullus*, and *nonnullus*, which answer to the question, who?

(b.) *Alter*, *neuter*, *alterūter*, *utervis*, and *uterlibet*, which answer to the question, *ūter*? which of two?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives*.

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu*, and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali*. The *demonstratives* begin with *t*, and are sometimes strengthened by *dem*. A *general relative*, having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque*. A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives*, § 191, R. 1.

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Relat. general.	Indefin.	Indef. general.
quālis?	tālis,	quālis,	{ qualis-qualis, qualicumque.	———	qualislibet,
quantus?	{ tantus, tantundem,	quantus,	{ quantus-quantus, quantuscumque,	aliquantus,	quantuslibet.
quōt?	tōt, totidem,	quōt,	{ quot-quot, quotcumque,	aliquot,	quotlibet,
quōtus?	tōtus,	quōtus,	quotuscumque,	(aliquōtus),	———.

## Diminutives.

quantūlus?	tantūlus.	———.	quantuluscumque.	aliquantūlum.	———.
------------	-----------	------	------------------	---------------	------

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque*, which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum* (*quum*) and the suffix *que*, expressive of universality, as in *quasque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque*, therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as, *qui*, who; *quicumque*, whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmodi* is sometimes used for *qualis*, and *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *eiusmodi* and *eiusdemmodi* for *talis*. Cf. § 184, R. 6.

## VERBS.

§ 140. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate*. Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy reads; *aqua calet*, the water is warm;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth is round.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

NOTE. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive*; and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive*, according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequitur consulem*, he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *gradior*, I walk.

REMARK 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, 'I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust*, and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salutem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

To verbs belong *voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons*.

## VOICES.

(a.) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(b.) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy is reading a book.



2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legitur a puëro*, a book is read by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum, literas*, etc., a book, a letter, etc.; *virtus laudatur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ 142. 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semi-deponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapulo*, I am beaten; and *veneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (a.) *Deponent* verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depōno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sēquor*, I follow; *mōrior*, I die.

(b.) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

## MOODS.

§ 143. (a.) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(b.) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute assertions and inquiries; as, *amo*, I love; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me obsēcret, redibō*; if he entreat me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou; *amanto*, they shall love.

4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state in definitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium fugere*, to shun vice is a virtue.

## TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amo</i> , I love, or am loving; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābam</i> , I was loving; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābo</i> , I shall love, or be loving; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amāvi</i> , I have loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amāveram</i> , I had loved; <i>Pluperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amāvero</i> , I shall have loved; <i>Future perfect tense</i> .

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amor</i> , I am loved; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābar</i> , I was loved; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābor</i> , I shall be loved; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amātus sum</i> , or <i>fui</i> , I have been loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amātus eram</i> , or <i>fuēram</i> , I had been loved; <i>Pluperfect</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amātus ero</i> , or <i>fuēro</i> , I shall have been loved; <i>Future Perfect</i> .

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *āmo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympano*; among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*; for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present*; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provolvunt in primum*; they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiebat jamdudum verba*; he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending, preparing, or attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvī*, I have loved, or I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*; in the latter, the *perfect indefinite, historical perfect, or aorist*.

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *litteras scripsēram, quum nuncius vēnit*; I had written the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum coenavēro, proficiscar*; when I shall have supped, I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *seconda future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses*.

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised, or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may or can, may have or can have, must*, in certain connections, be translated by *might, could, would, or should; might have, could have, etc.* The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 85, 1.

## PERSONS.

§ 147. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 85, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the second person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the second and third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices:—

	Active.				Passive.		
Person.	1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.
Singular.	o, i, or m,	s,	t;		r,	ris,	tur;
Plural.	mus,	tis,	nt.		mur,	mini,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular and plural, which end in *isti* and *istis*, and in one of the forms of the third person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego*, *nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amatus*, loved, or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

\* See §§ 106, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandī*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;

In the second, . . . . . *ē* long;

In the third, . . . . . *ē* short;

In the fourth, . . . . . *i* long.

EXCEPTION. *Dō, dāre*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *ā* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, R. 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *iv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *it*, and *it*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *t*. See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting vowel*. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(a.) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *i* or *t*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiant*, etc.

(b.) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (a.) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle; the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive active.

(b.) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*, and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

NOTE. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

*Terminations added to the First Root.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.				SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
				Persons.				Persons.			
				2.				2.			
				1. -ōr,	-āris	or -ārē,	-ātūr;	1. -āmūr,			
				2. -eōr,	-āris	or -ārē,	-ēātūr;	-ēmūr,			
				3. -ōr,	-ēris	or -ārē,	-itūr;	-imūr,			
				4. -iōr,	-āris	or -ārē,	-itūr;	-imūr.			
				IMPERFECT.							
				1. -ābār,	-ebāris	or -ebārē,	-abātūr;	-ebāmūr,			
				2. -ēbār,	-ebāris	or -ebārē,	-ebātūr;	-ebāmūr,			
				3. -ēbār,	-ebāris	or -ebārē,	-ebātūr;	-ebāmūr,			
				4. -iebār,	-iebāris	or -iebārē,	-iebātūr;	-iebāmūr,			
				FUTURE.							
				1. -ābōr,	-abēris	or -abērē,	-abitūr;	-abimūr,			
				2. -ēbōr,	-ebēris	or -ebērē,	-ebitūr;	-ebimūr,			
				3. -ār,	-ēris	or -ārē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,			
				4. -iār,	-ieris	or -iārē,	-ietūr;	-iemūr,			
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
				PRESENT TENSE.							
				2.				2.			
				1. -ēr,	-ēris	or -ērē,	-ētūr;	-emūr,			
				2. -eār,	-eāris	or -eārē,	-ēātūr;	-eamūr,			
				3. -ār,	-āris	or -ārē,	-ātūr;	-āmūr,			
				4. -iār,	-iāris	or -iārē,	-iātūr;	-iamūr,			

**IMPERFECT.**

1. -ārem,	-arēs,	-arēt,	-arētis	-ārent.
2. -ārem,	-ārēs,	-ārēt,	-ārētis	-ārent.
3. -ārem,	-ārēs,	-ārēt,	-ārētis	-ārent.
4. -ārem,	-ārēs,	-ārēt,	-ārētis	-ārent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

[illegible]

**NOTE.** Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

*Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.*

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

**ACTIVE VOICE.—SECOND ROOT.**

<i>Perf.</i>	-i-	-it-	-imūs,	-iatūs,	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	-ēram,	-ēāt;	-ērānūs,	-ērātūs,	
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	-ēro.	-ēris,	-ērīt;	-ēritūs,	

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

<i>Perf.</i>	-i,	-ist,	-it,	-imūs,	-istis,	-erunt or -ērē.
<i>Plup.</i>	-eram,	-erās,	-erāt;	-erāmūs,	-erātis,	-erant.
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimūs,	-eritis,	-erint.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

<i>Perf.</i>	-èrim,	-èris,	-èrimus,	-èritis,	-èrint.	<i>Perf.</i>	-às sim	or fuèrim,	-às sis	or fuèris, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	-issem,	-issès,	-issèmus,	-issètis,	-issent.	<i>Plup.</i>	-às essem	or fuissem,	-às esès	or fuissès, etc.
							INFIN. <i>Perf.</i> -us esse or fuisset.			

THIRD ROOT. INF. *Fut.* -orda. PART. *Fut.* -um. PART. *Perf.* -us. INF. *Fut.* -um. L. SUP. -a.



**REMARK 1.** In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the *personal* terminations. Thus in *amabamus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amamini*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

**REM. 2.** Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the *personal* termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *docēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*bibimus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

**§ 153.** SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

**REMARK.** *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>
Sum,	es'-sĕ,	fu'-ī,	fū'-tū'-rūs.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present Tense.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Person.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ sum, I am,} \\ 2. \text{ ěs, thou art,*} \\ 3. \text{ est, he is;} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sū'-mūs, we are,} \\ \text{es'-tis, ye† are,} \\ \text{sunt, they are.} \end{array} \right.$

##### Imperfect.

1. ě'-ram, I was,	ě-rā'-mūs, we were,
2. ě'-rās, thou wast,	ě-rā'-tis, ye were,
3. ě'-rāt, he was;	ě'-rant, they were.

##### Future. shall, or will.

1. ě'-rō, I shall be,	ěr'-ī-mūs, we shall be,
2. ě'-ris, thou wilt be,	ěr'-ī-tis, ye will be,
3. ě'-rit, he will be;	ě'-runt, they will be.

\* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

**Perf. t. have been, or was.**

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. fu'-i, <i>I have been,</i>        | fu'-i-mūs, <i>we have been,</i>          |
| 2. fu-is'-ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tīs, <i>ye have been,</i>         |
| 3. fu'-it, <i>he has been ;</i>      | fu-ē'-runt or rē, <i>they have been.</i> |

**Pluperfect.**

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-ram, <i>I had been,</i>      | fu-e-rā'-mūs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu-e-rā'-tīs, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rāt, <i>he had been ;</i>    | fu'-ē-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

**Future Perfect. shall or will have.**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu'-ē-rō, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | fu-er'-i-mūs, <i>we shall have been</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu-er'-i-tīs, <i>ye will have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rit, <i>he will have been ;</i>  | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present. may, or can.**

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | sī'-mūs, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | sī'-tīs, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be</i>      | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

**Imperfect. might, could, would, or should.**

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es-sē'-mūs, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es-sē'-tīs, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-sēt, <i>he would be ;</i>    | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

**Perfect.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. fu'-ē-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu-ēr'-i-mus, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu-ēr'-i-tīs, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rit, <i>he may have been ;</i>    | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

**Pluperfect. might, could, would, or should have.**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu-is-sē'-mūs, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu-is-sē'-tīs, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu-is'-sēt, <i>he would have been ;</i>    | fu-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i> |

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <b>Pres.</b> 1. ēs, <i>be thou,</i>         | es'-tē, <i>be ye.</i>          |
| <b>Fut.</b> 2. es'-tō, <i>thou shalt be</i> | es-tō'-tē, <i>ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. es'-tō, <i>let him be ;</i>              | sun'-tō, <i>let them be.</i>   |

**INFINITIVE MOOD.****Present.** es'-sē, *to be.***Perfect.** fu-is'-sē, *to have been.***Future.** fū-tū'-rūs (ā, um), es'-sē, or fō'-rē, *to be about to be.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Future.* fū-tū'-rus, a, um, *about to be.*

§ 154. REMARK 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently in use, and is still found in the compounds *obens*, *præens*, and *pōens*.

REM. 2. The perfect *fuī*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, an old subjunctive present *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*; —, —, *fuam*, and the forms *futurus*, perf. ind., *fuverint*, perf. subj., and *fuissent*, plup. subj.

REM. 3. From *fuo* appear also to be derived the following:—

*Subj. imperf.* fū'-ram, fū'-rās, fū'-rēt; —, — fū'-rent.

*Inf. pres.* fū'-rē.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fuērem*, etc., and *fuēre*. *Fōrem* is equivalent in meaning to *esse*, but the infinitive *fōre* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

REM. 4. *Sicm*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, for *sim*, *sia*, *sit*, *sint*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, *esc*, *escitis*, and *escat*, for *esse*, *essitis*, and *essent*.

REM. 5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, *absum*, *adsum*, *dēsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, and *supersum*.

REM. 6. *PROSUM*, from the old form *prōd* for *prō*, and *sum*, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

*Ind. pres.* prō'-sum, prōd'-es, prōd'-est, etc.

— *imperf.* prōd'-ē-ram, prōd'-ē-rās, etc.

REM. 7. (a.) *POSSUM* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *pōtis* is the same in all genders and numbers.

(b.) In composition, *is* is omitted in *pōtis*, and *t*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *s*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, as is also *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and the parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

*Pres. Indic.* *Pres. Inf.* *Perf. Indic.*

Pos'-sum, pos'-sē, pōt'-u-i, *I can, or I am able.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

pos'-sum, pō'-tēs, pō'-test;  
pos'-sū-mūs, pō'-tes'-tis, pos'-sunt.

pos'-sim, pos'-sis, pos'-sit;  
pos'-sī-mūs, pos'-sī-tis, pos'-sint.

*Imperfect.*

pōt'-ē-ram, pōt'-ē-rās, pōt'-ē-rēt;  
pōt'-ē-rā-mūs, -ē-rā'-tis, -ē-rant.

pos'-sem, pos'-sēs, pos'-sēt;  
pos'-sē-mūs, -sē'-tis, pos'-sent.

*Future.*

pōt'-ē-rō, pōt'-ē-ris, pōt'-ē-rit;  
pō-tēr'-i-mūs, po-tēr'-i-tis, pōt'-ē-runt.

*Perfect.*

pōt'-u-i, pōt-u-is'ti, pōt'-u-rit;  
pō-tu'-i-mūs, -is'-tis, -ē'-runt or -ē'-rē.

pō-tu'-ē-rim, -ē-ris, -ē-rit;  
pōt-u-ēr'-i-mūs, -i-tis, -ē-rint.

**Paperfect.**

pō-tu'-ē-ram, ē-rās, ē-rāt;  
pōt-u-ē-rā'-mūs, ē-rā'-tīs, ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

pō-tu'-ē-rō, pō-tu'-ē-rīs, pō-tu'-ē-rīt;  
pōt-u-ēr'-ī-mūs, pōt-u-ēr'-ī-tis, pō-tu'-ē-rint.

**(No Imperative.)**

**DEFINITIVE.**

**Pres. pos'-së. Perf. pöt-u-is'-së.**

### **PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.**

**př'-tena, able.**

**NOTE.** The following forms are also found; *potissem* for *possem*, *potissent* for *posuissent*, *potissim* and *possem* for *posim*, *posies*, *posiet* and *potessit* for *posui* and *posuit*, *potessem* for *possem*, *potesse* for *posse*, and before a passive infinitive the passive forms *potetur* for *potest*, *poteretur* for *poterat*, and *possetur* for *poscet*.—*Potis* and *pote* without *est* are sometimes used for *potest*.

## § 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Ā'-mō,	ā-mā'-rē,	ā-mā'-vi,	ā-mā'-tum.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present.** *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mō,	<i>I love,</i>
	ă-mās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
	ă-māt,	<i>he loves ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-mūs,	<i>we love,</i>
	ă-mă'-tis,	<i>ye love,</i>
	ă-mant,	<i>they love.</i>

**Imperfect.** *was loving, loved, did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-bam,	<i>I was loving,</i>
	ā-mā'-bās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
	ā-mā'-bāt,	<i>he was loving ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ām-ā-bā'-mūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
	ām-ā-bā'-tis,	<i>ye were loving,</i>
	ā-mā'-bant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

**Future.** *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-bō,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	ā-mā'-bis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
	ā-mā'-bit,	<i>he will love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-māb'-i-mūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
	ā-māb'-i-tis,	<i>ye will love,</i>
	ā-mā'-bunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mā'-vī, ǎm-ā-vis'-tī, ǎ-mā'-vīt,	<i>I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ī-mūs, ǎm-ā-vis'-tīs, ǎm-ā-vē'-runt or -rē,	<i>we have loved, ye have loved, they have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-ram, ǎ-māv'-ě-rās, ǎ-māv'-ě-rāt,	<i>I had loved, thou hadst loved, he had loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-rā'-mūs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rā'-tīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>we had loved, ye had loved, they had loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-rō, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>I shall have loved, thou wilt have loved, he will have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ā-vēr'-ī-mūs, ǎm-ā-vēr'-ī-tīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>we shall have loved, ye will have loved, they will have loved</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Present. *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ'-mem, ǎ'-mēs, ǎ'-mēt,	<i>I may love, thou mayst love, he may love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-mē'-mūs, ǎ-mē'-tīs, ǎ'-ment,	<i>we may love, ye may love, they may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mā'-rem, ǎ-mā'-rēs, ǎ-mā'-rēt,	<i>I would love, thou wouldst love, he would love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ā-rē'-mūs, ǎm-ā-rē'-tīs, ǎ-mā'-rent,	<i>we would love, ye would love, they would love.</i>

Perfect. *may, or can have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-rim, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>I may have loved, thou mayst have loved, he may have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ā-vēr'-ī-mūs, ǎm-ā-vēr'-ī-tīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>we may have loved, ye may have loved, they may have loved</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i> ăm-ă-vis'-sem,	<i>I would have loved,</i>
ăm-ă-vis'-eēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved,</i>
ăm-ă-vis'-sēt,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ăm-ă-vis'-eē'-mūs,	<i>we would have loved,</i>
ăm-ă-vis'-eē'-tīs,	<i>ye would have loved,</i>
ăm-ă-vis'-sent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> ă'-mă,	<i>love thou ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tē,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
ă-mă'-tō,	<i>he shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ăm-ă-tō'-tē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
ă-man'-tō,	<i>they shall love</i>

# INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> ă-mă'-rē,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> ăm-ă-vis'-sē,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ăm-ă-tū'-rūs, (ă, um,) es'-sē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

# PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i> ă'-mans,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ăm-ă-tū'-rūs, ă, um,	<i>about to love.</i>

# GERUND.

<i>G.</i> ă-man'-dī,	<i>of loving,</i>
<i>D.</i> ă-man'-dō,	<i>for loving,</i>
<i>Ac.</i> ă-man'-dum,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Ab.</i> ă-man'-dō,	<i>by loving.</i>

# SUPINE.

<i>Former.</i> ă-mă'-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
---------------------------	-----------------

# § 156. PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf'n.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
A'-mor,	ă-mă'-rī,	ă-mă'-tū.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mōr, ā-mā'-rīs or -rē, ā-mā'-tūr,	<i>I am loved, thou art loved, he is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-mā'-mūr, ā-mām'-ī-nī, ā-man'-tūr,	<i>we are loved, ye are loved, they are loved.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-bār, ām-ā-bā'-rīs or -rē, ām-ā-bā'-tūr,	<i>I was loved, thou wast loved, he was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ām-ā-bā'-mūr, ām-ā-bām'-ī-nī, ām-ā-ban'-tūr,	<i>we were loved, ye were loved, they were loved.</i>

Future. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-bōr, ā-māb'-ē-rīs or -rē, ā-māb'-ī-tūr,	<i>I shall be loved, thou wilt be loved, he will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-māb'-ī-mūr, ām-ā-bīm'-ī-nī, ām-ā-bun'-tūr,	<i>we shall be loved, ye will be loved, they will be loved.</i>

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-tūs sum or fu'-ī, ā-mā'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī, ā-mā'-tūs est or fu'-it,	<i>I have been loved, thou hast been loved, he has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-mā'-tī sū-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs, ā-mā'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis, ā-mā'-tī sunt, fu'ē'-runt or -rē,	<i>we have been loved, ye have been loved, they have been loved</i>

Pluperfect. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram, ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās, ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt,	<i>I had been loved, thou hadst been loved, he had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-mā'-tī ē-rā-mūs or fu'-ē-rā-mūs, ā-mā'-tī ē-rā'-tis or fu'-ē-rā'-tis, ā-mā'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant,	<i>we had been loved, ye had been loved, they had been loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō, ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs, ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt,	<i>I shall have been loved, thou wilt have been loved, he will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-mā'-tī ēr-ī-mūs or fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs ā-mā'-tī ēr'-ī-tīs or fu'-ār'-ī-tīs, ā-mā'-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint,	<i>we shall have been loved, ye will have been loved, they will have been loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-měr,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
ă-mě'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
ă-mě'-tūr,	<i>he may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mě'-mūr,	<i>we may be loved,</i>
ă-mēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
ă-men'-tūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rěr,	<i>I would be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-rě'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-rě'-tūr,	<i>he would be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ăm-ă-rě'-mūr,	<i>we would be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-rēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-ren'-tūr,	<i>they would be loved.</i>

Perfect. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have been loved,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-er'-ī-mūs,	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-er'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would hav. been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt,	<i>he would have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,	<i>ye would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rě,	<i>be thou loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mām'-ī-nī,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tōr,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tōr,	<i>he shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> (ăm-ă-bīm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye shall be loved),</i>
ă-man'-tōr,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> ă-mă'-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> ă-mă'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ă-mă'-tum ī'-rī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>



## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect.* ā-mā'-tūs,      loved, or having been loved.  
*Future.* ā-man'-dūs,      to be loved.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* ā-mā'-tū,      to be loved.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *am*, are derived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	amo.	amor.
— <i>imperf.</i>	amābam, amābar.	
— <i>fut.</i>	amābo, amābor.	
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	amem, amer.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	amārem, amārer.	
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	amā, amāre.	
— <i>fut.</i>	amāto, amātor.	
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	amāre, amāri.	
<i>Part. pres.</i>	amans, amandus.	
— <i>fut.</i>		amandū.
<i>Gerund.</i>	amandū.	

From the second root, *amao*, are derived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	amāvi,	amātus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	amāveram, amātus eram, etc.	
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	amāverō, amātus ero, etc.	
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	amāverim, amātus sim, etc.	
— <i>plup.</i>	amāvissem, amātus essem, etc.	
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	amāvisse, amātus esse, etc.	

From the third root, *amat*, are derived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
From the third root,		
<i>Inf. fut.</i>	amatārus esse, amātum iri.	
<i>Part. fut.</i>	amatārus.	
— <i>perf.</i>		amātus.
<i>Form. sup.</i>	amātum.	<i>Lat. sup.</i> amātū.

## § 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* mō'-ne-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* mō-nē'-rē.  
*Perf. Ind.* mōn'-u-i.  
*Supine.* mōn'-i-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* mō'-ne-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* mō-nē'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* mōn'-i-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I advise.*  
*Sing.* mō'-ne-ō,  
           mō'-nēs,  
           mō'-nēt;  
*Plur.* mō-nē'-mūs,  
           mō-nē'-tis,  
           mō'-nent.

*I am advised.*  
*Sing.* mō'-ne-ōr,  
           mō-nē'-rīs or -rē,  
           mō-nē'-tūr;  
*Plur.* mō-nē'-mūr,  
           mō-nēm'-ī-nī,  
           mō-nen'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was advising.*  
*S.* mō-nē'-bam,  
       mō-nē'-bās,  
       mō-nē'-bāt;  
*P.* mōn-ē-bā'-mūs,  
       mōn-ē-bā'-tis,  
       mō-nē'-bant.

*I was advised.*  
*S.* mō-nē'-bār,  
       mōn-ē-bā'-rīs or -rē,  
       mōn-ē-bā'-tūr;  
*P.* mōn-ē-bā'-mūr,  
       mōn-ē-bām'-ī-nī,  
       mōn-ē-ban'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future.

*I shall or will advise.*

- S.* mǒ-ně'-bǎ,  
mǒ-ně'-bǎs,  
mǒ-ně'-bǎt;  
*P.* mǒ-něb'-l-mūs,  
mǒ-něb'-l-tis,  
mǒ-ně'-bunt.

*I shall or will be advised.*

- S.* mǒ-ně'-bǎr,  
mǒ-něb'-ě-ris or -rě,  
mǒ-něb'-l-tūr;  
*P.* mǒ-něb'-l-mūr,  
mǒn-ě-bim'-l-ni,  
mǒn-ě-bun'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I advised or have advised.*

- S.* mǒn'-u-i,  
mǒn'-u-is'-ti,  
mǒn'-u-īt;  
*P.* mǒ-nu'-l-mūs,  
mǒn'-u-is'-tis,  
mǒn'-u-ě'-runt or -rě.

*I was or have been advised.*

- S.* mǒn'-l-tūs sum or fu'-l,  
mǒn'-l-tūs ēs or fu-is'-ti,  
mǒn'-l-tūs est or fu-īt;  
*P.* mǒn'-l-ti sū'-mūs or fu'-l-mūs,  
mǒn'-l-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
mǒn'-l-ti sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě

## Pluperfect.

*I had advised.*

- S.* mǒ-nu'-ě-ram,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-rās,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* mǒn'-u-ě-rā'-mūs,  
mǒn'-u-ě-rā'-tis,  
mǒ-nu-ě-rant.

*I had been advised.*

- S.* mǒn'-l-tūs ě'-ram or fu'-ě-ram,  
mǒn'-l-tūs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,  
mǒn'-l-tūs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* mǒn'-l-ti ě-rā'-mūs or fu-e-rā'-mūs,  
mǒn'-l-ti ě-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,  
mǒn'-l-ti ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have advised.*

- S.* mǒ-nu'-ě-rǒ,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-ris,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-rit;  
*P.* mǒn'-u-ěr'-l-mūs,  
mǒn'-u-ěr'-l-tis,  
mǒ-nu-ě-rint.

*I shall have been advised.*

- S.* mǒn'-l-tūs ě'-rǒ or fu'-ě-rǒ,  
mǒn'-l-tūs ě'-ris or fu'-ě-ris,  
mǒn'-l-tūs ě'-rit or fu'-ě-rit;  
*P.* mǒn'-l-ti ěr'-l-mūs or fu-ěr'-l-mūs,  
mǒn'-l-ti ěr'-l-tis or fu-ěr'-l-tis,  
mǒn'-l-ti ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can advise.*

- S.* mǒ'-ne-am,  
mǒ'-ne-ās,  
mǒ'-ne-āt;  
*P.* mǒ-ne-ā'-mūs,  
mǒ-ne-ā'-tis,  
mǒ'-ne-ant.

*I may or can be advised.*

- S.* mǒ'-ne-ār,  
mǒ-ne-ā'-ris or -rě,  
mǒ-ne-ā'-tūr;  
*P.* mǒ-ne-ā'-mūr,  
mǒ-ne-ām'-l-ni,  
mǒ-ne-an'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

S. mǒ-ně'-rem,  
mǒ-ně'-rēs,  
mǒ-ně'-rēt;  
P. mǒn-ē-rē'-mūs,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-tīs,  
mǒ-ně'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

S. mǒ-ně'-rēr,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-tūr;  
P. mǒn-ē-rē'-mūr,  
mǒn-ē-rēm'-ī-nī,  
mǒn-ē-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have advised.*

S. mǒ-nu'-ē-rim,  
mǒ-nu'-ē-rīs,  
mǒ-nu'-ē-rīt;  
P. mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǒ-nu'-ē-rint.

*I may have been advised.*

S. mǒn'-ī-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs sis or fu'-ē-rīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs sīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
P. mǒn'-ī-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī sint or fu'-ē-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

S. mǒn-u-is'-sem,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēt;  
P. mǒn-u-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn-u-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

S. mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. mǒn'-ī-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S. mǒ'-ně, advise thou;*

*P. mǒ-ně'-tě, advise ye.*

*Fut. S. mǒ-ně'-tǒ, thou shalt advise,*

*mǒ-ně'-tǒ, he shall advise;*

*P. mǒn-ē-tǒ'-tě, ye shall advise,*

*mǒ-nen'-tǒ, they shall advise.*

*Pres. S. mǒ-ně'-rě, be thou advised;*

*P. mǒ-nēm'-ī-nī, be ye advised.*

*Fut. S. mǒ-ně'-tǒr, thou shalt be advised,*

*mǒ-ně'-tǒr, he shall be advised;*

*P. (mǒn-ē-blm'-ī-nī, ye shall be advised,)*

*mǒ-nēm'-tǒr, they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. mǒ-ně'-rě, to advise.*

*Perf. mǒn-u-is'-sē, to have advised.*

*Fut. mǒn'-ī-tū-rīs es'-sē, to be about to advise.*

*Pres. mǒ-ně'-rī, to be advised.*

*Perf. mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been advised.*

*Fut. mǒn'-ī-tum ī'-rī, to be about to be advised.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* mō'-nens, *advising.**Perf.* mōn'-i-tūs, *advised.**Fut.* mōn-i-tū'-rūs, *about to advise.* | *Fut.* mō-nen'-dūs, *to be advised.*

## GERUND.

*G.* mō-nen'-di, *of advising,**D.* mō-nen'-dō, *etc.**Ac.* mō-nen'-dum,*Ab.* mō-nen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* mōn'-i-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mōn'-i-tū, *to be advised.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	moneo, moneor.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	monēbam, monēbar.	
— <i>ful.</i>	monēbo, monēbor.	
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	moneam, monear.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	monērem, monērer.	
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	mone, monere.	
— <i>ful.</i>	monēto, monētor.	
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	monere, moneri.	
<i>Part. pres.</i>	monens, monendus.	
— <i>ful.</i>		
<i>Gerund.</i>	monendū.	

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	monui, monitus sum, etc.	
— <i>plup.</i>	monuēram, monitus eram, etc.	
— <i>ful. perf.</i>	monuēro, monitus ero, etc.	
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	monuērim, monitus sim, etc.	
— <i>plup.</i>	monuissē, monitus essem, etc.	
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	monuisse, monitus esse, etc.	
From the third root,		
<i>Inf. fut.</i>	monitūrus esse, monitus iri.	
<i>Part. fut.</i>	monitūrus, monitus.	
— <i>perf.</i>		
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	monitum.	<i>Lat. Sup.</i> monitus.

## § 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* rē'-gō.  
*Pres. Inf.* rēg'-ē-rē.  
*Perf. Ind.* rex'-i.  
*Supine.* rec'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* rē'-gōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* rē'-gī.  
*Perf. Part.* rec'-tū.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I rule.*  
*Sing.* rē'-gō,  
 rē'-gīs,  
 rē'-gīt;  
*Plur.* rēg'-i-mūs,  
 rēg'-i-tīs,  
 rē'-gant.

*I am ruled.*  
*Sing.* rē'-gōr,  
 rēg'-ē-ris or -rē,  
 rēg'-i-tūr;  
*Plur.* rēg'-i-mūr,  
 rē-gīm'-i-ni,  
 rē-gun'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling*

S. rě-gě'-bam,  
rě-gě'-bās,  
rě-gě'-bāt;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tīs,  
rě-gě'-bant.

*I was ruled.*

S. rě-gě'-bār,  
rěg-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tūr;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūr,  
rěg-ē-bām'-ī-nī,  
rěg-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

S. rě'-gam,  
rě'-gās,  
rě'-gēt;  
P. rě-gě'-mūs,  
rě-gě'-tīs,  
rě'-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

S. rě'-gār,  
rě-gě'-rīs or -rě,  
rě-gě'-tūr;  
P. rě-gě'-mūr,  
rě-gēm'-ī-nī,  
rě-gen'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

S. rex'-ī,  
rex-is'-tī,  
rex'-īt;  
P. rex'-ī-mūs,  
rex-is'-tīs,  
rex-ē'-runt or -rě.

*I was or have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,  
rec'-tūs es or fu-is'-tī,  
rec'-tūs est or fu'-īt;  
P. rec'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,  
rec'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

S. rex'-ē-ram,  
rex'-ē-rās,  
rex'-ē-rāt;  
P. rex'-ē-rā'-mūs  
rex'-ē-rā'-tīs,  
rex'-ē-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. rec'-tī ē'-rā'-mūs or fu'-ē-rā'-mūs,  
rec'-tī ē'-rā'-tīs or fu'-ē-rā'-tīs,  
rec'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled*

S. rex'-ē-rō,  
rex'-ē-rīs,  
rex'-ē-rīt;  
P. rex'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex'-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rex'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
P. rec'-tī ē'r'-ī-mūs or fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī ē'r'-ī-tīs or fu'-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rec'-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I may or can rule.*

*S.* rě'-gam,  
rě'-gās,  
rě'-gāt;

*P.* rě'-gā'-mūs,  
rě'-gā'-tīs,  
rě'-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

*S.* rě'-gār,  
rě'-gā'-rīs or -rě,  
rě'-gā'-tūr;

*P.* rě'-gā'-mūr,  
rě'-gām'-ī-nī,  
rě'-gan'-tūr.

Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rem,  
rěg'-ě-rēs,  
rěg'-ě-rēt;

*P.* rěg'-ě-rē'-mūs,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-tīs,  
rěg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rēr,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-rīs or -rě,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-tūr;

*P.* rěg'-ě-rē'-mūr,  
rěg'-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
rěg'-ě-ren'-tūr.

Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-rīs,  
rex'-ě-rīt;

*P.* rex'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex'-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-rīs,  
rec'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt;

*P.* rec'-tī sī'-mūs or fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī sī'-tīs or fu'-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rec'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

*S.* rex-is'-sem,  
rex-is'-sēs,  
rex-is'-sēt;

*P.* rex-is-sē'-mūs,  
rex-is-sē'-tīs,  
rex-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;

*P.* rec'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
rec'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
rec'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* *S.* rě'-gě, rule thou,  
*P.* rěg'-ī-tě, rule ye.

*Fut.* *S.* rěg'-ī-tō, thou shalt rule,  
rěg'-ī-tō, he shall rule;  
*P.* rěg'-ī-tō-tě, ye shall rule,  
rě-gun' tō, they shall rule.

*Pres.* *S.* rěg'-ě-rě, be thou ruled;  
*P.* rě-gīm'-ī-nī, be ye ruled.

*Fut.* *S.* rěg'-ī-tōr, thou shalt be ruled,  
rěg'-ī-tōr, he shall be ruled,  
*P.* (rě-gīm'-ī-nī, ye shall, etc.)  
rě-gun'-tōr, they shall, etc.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* rēg'-ē-rē, to rule.  
*Perf.* rex-is'-sē, to have ruled.  
*Fut.* rec-tū'-rūs es'-se, to be about  
to rule.

*Pres.* rē'-gī, to be ruled.  
*Perf.* rec'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to  
have been ruled.  
*Fut.* rec'-tum ī'-rī, to be about to  
be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* rē'-gens, ruling.  
*Fut.* rec-tū'-rūs, about to rule.

*Perf.* rec'-tūs, ruled.  
*Fut.* rē'-gen'-dūs, to be ruled.

## GERUND.

*G.* rē'-gen'-dī, of ruling.  
*D.* rē'-gen'-dō, etc.  
*Ac.* rē'-gen'-dum,  
*Ab.* rē'-gen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* rec'-tum, to rule. | *Latter.* rec'-tū, to be ruled.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are de-  
rived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	rego,	regor.
— <i>imperf.</i>	regēbam,	regēbar.
— <i>fut.</i>	regam,	regar.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	regam,	regar.
— <i>imperf.</i>	regērem,	regērer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	rege,	regere.
— <i>fut.</i>	regito,	regitor
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	regere,	regi.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	regens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		regendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	regendū.	

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	rexī,	rectus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	rexeram,	rectus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	rexēro,	rectus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	rexerim,	rectus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	rexissem,	rectus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	rexisse.	rectus esse, etc.

From the third root,  
*Inf. fut.* rectūrus esse, rectum iri.  
*Part. fut.* rectūrus.  
— *perf.* rectus.  
*Form. Sup.* rectum. *Lat. Sup.* rectu.

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *cāpio*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ, to take.*Pres. Inf.* cǎp'-ǎ-rě.*Perf. Ind.* cē'-pi.*Supine.* cap'-tum.*Pres. Ind.* cǎ'-pi-ǎr, to be taken.*Pres. Inf.* cǎ'-pi.*Perf. Part.* cap'-tūa.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-a,  
cǎ'-pi-t;  
*P.* cǎp'-i-mūs,  
cǎp'-i-tis,  
cǎ'-pi-unt.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎr,  
cǎp'-ǎ-ris or -rě,  
cǎp'-i-tūr;  
*P.* cǎp'-i-mūr,  
cǎ-pīm'-i-ni,  
cǎ'-pi-un'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bam,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bās,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bāt;  
*P.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bā-mūs,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bā-tis,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bant.

*S.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bār,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bā-ris or -rě,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bā-tūr;  
*P.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bā-mūr,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-bām'-i-ni,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-am,  
cǎ'-pi-ēs,  
cǎ'-pi-ēt;  
*P.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-mūs,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-tis,  
cǎ'-pi-ent.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ār,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-ris or -rě,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-tūr;  
*P.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-mūr,  
cǎ-pi-ēm'-i-ni,  
cǎ-pi-en'-tūr.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* cē'-pi.*Plup.* cēp'-ǎ-ram.*Fut. perf.* cēp'-ǎ-rǎ.*Perf.* cap'-tūs sum or fu'-i.*Plup.* cap'-tūs ǎ'-ram or fu'-ǎ-ram.*Fut. perf.* cap'-tūs ǎ'-rǎ or fu'-ǎ-rǎ.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-am,  
cǎ'-pi-ās,  
cǎ'-pi-āt;  
*P.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-mūs,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-tis,  
cǎ'-pi-ant.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ār,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-ris or -rě,  
cǎ-pi-ǎ'-tūr;  
*P.* cǎ-pi-ǎ'-mūr,  
cǎ-pi-ām'-i-ni,  
cǎ-pi-an'-tūr.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

S. cǎp'-ě-rem,  
cǎp'-ě-rēs,  
cǎp'-ě-rēt;  
P. cǎp'-ě-rē'-mūs,  
cǎp'-ě-rē'-tīs,  
cǎp'-ě-rent.

S. cǎp'-ě-rēr,  
cǎp'-ě-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
cǎp'-ě-rē'-tūr;  
P. cǎp'-ě-rē'-mūr,  
cǎp'-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
cǎp'-ě-ren'-tūr.

*Perf.* cēp'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cē-pis'-sem.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cap'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* 2. S. cǎ'-pě; P. 2. cǎp'-ī-tě. | S. cǎp'-ě-rě; P. cǎ-pīm'-ī-nī.  
*Fut.* 2. cǎp'-ī-tǔ, cǎp'-ī-tǔ-tě, | cǎp'-ī-tǔr, (cǎ-pī-ēm'-ī-nī,) — 3. cǎp'-ī-tǔ; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔ. | cǎp'-ī-tǔr; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cǎp'-ě-rě.  
*Perf.* cē-pis'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs es'-sě.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pī.  
*Perf.* cap'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap'-tum ī-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pi-ens.  
*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs.  
*Fut.* cǎ-pi-en'-dūs.

## GERUND.

G. cǎ-pi-en'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.

*Latter.* cap'-tū.

## § 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ǔ.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* au-dī-vī.  
*Supine.* au-dī-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ǔr.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* au-dī-tūs.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I hear.*

*S.* au'-di-Ń,  
au'-dis,  
au'dit ;  
*P.* au-di'-mŃs,  
au'-di'-tis,  
au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

*S.* au'-di-Ńr,  
au-di'-ris or -rě,  
au-di'-tŃr ;  
*P.* au-di'-mŃr,  
au-dim'-i-ni,  
au-di-un'-tŃr.

## Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

*S.* au-di-ě'-bam,  
au-di-ě'-bās,  
au-di-ě'-bāt ;  
*P.* au-di-ě-bā'-mŃs,  
au-di-ě-bā'-tis,  
au-di-ě-bant.

*I was heard.*

*S.* au-di-ě'-bār,  
au-di-ě-bā'-ris or -rě,  
au-di-ě-bā'-tŃr ;  
*P.* au-di-ě-bā'-mŃr,  
au-di-ě-bām'-i-ni,  
au-di-ě-ban'-tŃr.

## \* Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

*S.* au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ēs,  
au'-di-ēt ;  
*P.* au-di-ě'-mŃs,  
au-di-ě'-tis,  
au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

*S.* au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ě'-ris or -rě,  
au-di-ě'-tŃr ;  
*P.* au-di-ě'-mŃr,  
au-di-ēm'-i-ni,  
au-di-en'-tŃr.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

*S.* au-di'-vī,  
au-di-vis'-ti,  
au-di'-vīt ;  
*P.* au-div'-i-mŃs,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vě'-runt or -rě.

*I have been or was heard.*

*S.* au-di'-tŃs sum or fu'-i,  
au-di'-tŃs ēs or fu-is'-ti,  
au-di'-tŃs est or fu'-it ;  
*P.* au-di'-ti sŃ-mŃs or fu'-i-mŃs,  
au-di'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-di'-ti sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

*S.* au-div'-ě-ram,  
au-div'-ě-rās,  
au-div'-ě-rāt ;  
*P.* au-div-ě-rā'-mŃs,  
au-div-ě-rā'-tis,  
au-div'-ě-rant.

*I had been heard.*

*S.* au-di'-tŃs ě'-ram or fu'-ě-ram,  
au-di'-tŃs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,  
au-di'-tŃs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt ;  
*P.* au-di'-ti ě-rā'-mŃs or fu-ě-rā'-mŃs,  
au'-ti ě-rā'-tis or fu-ě-rā'-tis,  
'-ti ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

- S. au-di-v'ĕ-rō,  
au-di-v'ĕ-rīs,  
au-di-v'ĕ-rit;  
P. au-di-vĕr'-ĭ-mūs,  
au-di-vĕr'-ĭ-tīs,  
au-di-v'ĕ-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

- S. au-di'-tūs ĕ-rō or fu'-ĕ-rō,  
au-di'-tūs ĕ-rīs or fu'-ĕ-rīs,  
au-di'-tūs ĕ-rit or fu'-ĕ-rit;  
P. au-di'-tī ĕr'-ĭ-mūs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mūs,  
au-di'-tī ĕr'-ĭ-tīs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tīs,  
au-di'-tī ĕ-runt or fu'-ĕ-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

- S. au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ās,  
au'-di-āt;  
P. au-di-ā'-mūs,  
au-di-ā'-tīs,  
au-di-an't.

*I may or can be heard.*

- S. au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ā'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di-ā'-tūr;  
P. au-di-ā'-mūr,  
au-di-ām'-ĭ-nī,  
au-di-an'-tūr.

## Imperfects

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

- S. au-di'-rem,  
au-di'-rēs,  
au-di'-rēt;  
P. au-di-rē'-mūs,  
au-di-rē'-tīs,  
au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

- S. au-di'-rēr,  
au-di-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di-rē'-tūr;  
P. au-di-rē'-mūr,  
au-di-rēm'-ĭ-nī,  
au-di-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

- S. au-di-v'ĕ-rim,  
au-di-v'ĕ-rīs,  
au-di-v'ĕ-rit;  
P. au-di-vĕr'-ĭ-mūs,  
au-di-vĕr'-ĭ-tīs,  
au-di-v'ĕ-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

- S. au-di'-tūs sim or fu'-ĕ-rim,  
au-di'-tūs sis or fu'-ĕ-rīs,  
au-di'-tūs sit or fu'-ĕ-rit;  
P. au-di'-tī si'-mūs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mūs,  
au-di'-tī si'-tīs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tīs,  
au-di'-tī sint or fu'-ĕ-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

- S. au-di-vis'-sem,  
au-di-vis'-sēs,  
au-di-vis'-sēt;  
P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,  
au-di-vis-sē'-tīs,  
au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

- S. au-di'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
au-di'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
au-di'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. au-di'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
au-di'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
au-di'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au'-dī, *hear thou*;  
*P.* au-dī'-tē, *hear ye.*  
*Fut. S.* au-dī'-tō, *thou shalt hear,*  
 au-dī'-tō, *he shall hear*;  
*P.* au-dī-tō'-tē, *ye shall hear,*  
 au-di-un'-tō, *they shall*  
*hear.*

*Pres. S.* au-dī'-rē, *be thou heard*,  
*P.* au-dim'-l-nī, *be ye heard.*  
*Fut. S.* au-dī'-tōr, *thou shalt be*  
*heard,*  
 au-dī'-tōr, *he shall be*  
*heard*;  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-l-nī, *ye shall*  
*be heard,*)  
 au-di-un'-tōr, *they shall*  
*be heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-dī'-rē, *to hear.*  
*Perf.* au-di-vis'-sē, *to have heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī-tū'-rūs es-sē, *to be*  
*about to hear.*

*Pres.* au-dī'-rī, *to be heard.*  
*Perf.* au-dī-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-  
 sē, *to have been heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī-tum ī'-rī, *to be about*  
*to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au'-di-ēns, *hearing.* | *Perf.* au-dī'-tūs, *heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī-tū'-rūs, *about to hear.* | *Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, *to be heard.*

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-dī, *of hearing.*  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, *etc.*  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-dī'-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-dī'-tū, *to be heard.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are de-  
 rived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	<i>audio,</i>	<i>audior.</i>
— <i>impe-f.</i>	<i>audiēbam,</i>	<i>audiēbar.</i>
— <i>fut.</i>	<i>audiam,</i>	<i>audiar.</i>
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	<i>audiam,</i>	<i>audiar.</i>
— <i>imperf.</i>	<i>audīrem,</i>	<i>audīrer.</i>
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	<i>audī,</i>	<i>audīre.</i>
— <i>fut.</i>	<i>audīto,</i>	<i>audītor.</i>
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	<i>audire,</i>	<i>audīri.</i>
<i>Part. pres.</i>	<i>audiens,</i>	
— <i>fut.</i>		<i>audiendus.</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>audiendi.</i>	

From the second root, *audīto*, are derived,

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	<i>audīvi,</i>	<i>auditus sum, etc.</i>
— <i>plup.</i>	<i>audīveram,</i>	<i>auditus eram, etc.</i>
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	<i>audīverō,</i>	<i>auditus ero, etc.</i>
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	<i>audīverim,</i>	<i>auditus sim, etc.</i>
— <i>plup.</i>	<i>audīvissem,</i>	<i>auditus essem, etc.</i>
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	<i>audīvisse,</i>	<i>auditus esse, etc.</i>

From the third root,  
*Inf. fut.* *audīturus esse,* *audītum iri.*

<i>Part. fut.</i> <i>audīturus.</i>	
— <i>perf.</i>	<i>auditus.</i>
<i>Form. sup.</i> <i>audītum</i>	<i>Lat. sup.</i> <i>audītū.</i>

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 3.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

↘ Mi'-rör, mi-rä'-ri, mi-rä'-tüs, to admire.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rör, mi-rä'-ris, etc.	<i>I admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mi-rä'-bär, etc.	<i>I was admiring.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	mi-rä'-bör,	<i>I shall admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs sum or fu'-i,	<i>I have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs ẽ'-ram or fu'-ẽ'-ram,	<i>I had admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs ẽ'-ro or fu'-ẽ'-ro,	<i>I shall have admired.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rër, mi-rẽ'-ris, etc.	<i>I may admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mi-rä'-rër,	<i>I would admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs sim or fu'-ẽ'-rim,	<i>I may have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have admired.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	mi-rä'-rë, admire thou,	<i>P. mi-rām'-i-ni, admire ye.</i>
<i>Fut. S.</i>	mi-rä'-tör, thou shalt admire,	<i>P. (mi-rä-bīm'-i-ni, ye shall, etc.)</i>
	mi-rä'-tör, he shall admire ;	<i>mi-ran'-tör, they shall, etc.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi-rä'-ri,	<i>to admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs es'-sẽ or fu-is'-sẽ,	<i>to have admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mi-rä-tũ'-rüs es'-sẽ,	<i>to be about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mi-rä'-tum i'-ri,	<i>to be about to be admired.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rans,	<i>admiring.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs,	<i>having admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mi-rä-tũ'-rüs,	<i>about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mi-ran'-düs,	<i>to be admired.</i>

## GERUND.

G. mi-ran'-di, of admiring, etc.

## SUPINES.

Former mi-rä'-tum, to admire. | Latter. mi-rä'-tũ, to be admired.

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im*, *is*, &c., etc.; as, *edim*, *edus*, *edui*, *edimus*; *comedim*, *comedis*, *comedant*; for *edam*, etc. *comedam*, etc.; *duim*, *duis*, *dui*, *duint*; and *perduim*, *perduis*, *perdui*, *perduint*; for *dem*, etc. *perdam*, etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *do* and *perdo*: so *creduis*, *credui*, and also *creduam*, *creduas*, *creduat*, for *credam*, etc. from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im*, etc. was retained as the regular form in *sims* and *velim*, from *sims* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibar*, for *iŕbam* and *iŕbar*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestibat*, Virg., *largibar*, Propert. for *vestiŕbat*, *largiŕbar*; *scibo*, *opperibor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*. *Ibam* and *ibo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is are in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dicō*, *dāco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dīc*, *dāc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effice*, *conſice*; but *caſſāce* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dīce*, *edīce*, *addīce*, *indīce*, *dīce*, *abſdīce*, *redīce*, *tradīce*, and *fāce*. *Inger* for *ingēre* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scito*, and *scitōte* is preferred to *scite*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto*, *amplexāto*, *utito*, *nitito*; for *arbitrātor*, etc.; and *censorio*, *utuntio*, *tuento*, etc. for *censorio*, etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mīno*; as, *hortamīno*, *veremīno*, *frusmīno*; for *hortātor*, etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amariŕ* for *amāri*, *diciŕ* for *dici*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. (a.) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncopation and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amasti* for *amavisti*, *implerunt* for *impleverunt*, *nōram* and *noŕse* for *novēram* and *novisse*.

(b.) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audierō* for *audivēro*; *audisſe* for *audivisse*.

(c.) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasi* for *evasisti*, *extinxi* for *extinxisti*, *divisi* for *divisissē*; *extinxem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexi* for *surrexisse*; *acceſſi* for *acceſſiſſe*, *iusti* for *iustiſſi*; *dixi* for *dixiſſi*. So *facem* for (*facissem*, l. e.) *fecissem*.

(d.) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *ſumit*, *auduit*, *cepit*; for *ſumavit*, *audovit*, *cepovit*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *ſepeli*, *enarrāmus*; for *ſepelivi*, *enarrāvimus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ērē* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepto, emissim, ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, from *audeo*, *confecim* and *promissim*: *divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root ends in *x*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added; as, *jusso, dixis; intellexes, percepisset; surrexer, sumes*. *V*, at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s*; as, *levasso, locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es*; as, *habesso, hēcassit*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capao, fasso (facao), faxim (facim)*.

NOTE. *Fazo* expresses determination, 'I will,' or, 'I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *faxit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dñi immortales faxint*. *Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, 'I might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quaso uti in calamitatē prohibeas, defendas, averruncasque*. Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur, jussitur*, instead of *turbatum fuerit*, and *jussus fuerit*.—A future infinitive active in *stere* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *o* into *s*; as, *expugnassere, impetrassere, for expugnatum esse*, etc.

### *Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.*

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amatus, -a, -um, est; amati, -a, -a, sunt*, etc.

(1.) *Fui, fueram, fuërim, fuisset*, and *fuisset*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, etc., in those of c'her verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *förem*, etc., for *essem*, etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistola scripta est*, when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter has been written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is, the letter is written, and *epistola scripta fuit*, in this case, would signify, the letter has been written, or, has existed as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amatus, -a, -um, esse* or *fuisset*; *amatum, -am, -um, esse* or *fuisset*; *amati, -a, -a, esse* or *fuisset*; *amatos, -as, -a, esse* or *fuisset*; and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisset, amatus*, etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentia, scribis te nunc venditurum*. Id.

*Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point of doing something*. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amatūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fui,</i>	<i>I was or have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus essem,</i>	<i>I would be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuissem,</i>	<i>I would have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus esse,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

REM. 2. *Fuēro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo*. The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution: as, *in eo est*, or *futūrum est*, *ut epistola scribātur*, a letter is about to be written. So *in eo erat*, etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive periphrastic conjugation*;—thus :

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sum,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus eram,</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus ero,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fui,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuēram,</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuēro.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sim,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus essem,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuērim,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuissem.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus esse,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse.</i>



**REM. 5.** The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person as, *mihi scribendum est* I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

### Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*comātus*, having supped; *pītus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *aduktus*, *coactus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occāsus*, *obsoletus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *dus* and its compounds, see § 182, 1.

17. (a.) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertatem*, having obtained liberty, or *adeptā libertate*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

So *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *detestātus*, *dignātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interpretātus*, *largitus*, *machinātus*, *mediātus*, *mercātus*, *melātus*, *oblitus*, *opinātus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *parātus*, *perfunctus*, *periculātus*, *pollicitus*, *populātus*, *repopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(b.) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futurus*. *Venturorum* is found in Ovid, *exiturarum*, *transiturarum* and *periturorum* in Seneca, and *moriturorum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in-*, signifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *praefectus*, a commander; *ausum*, an attempt; *commissum*, an offence.

**NOTE.** Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *dus*, *tus*, and *ātus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turretus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

### GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ 163. 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *fācio*, *factum* *hābro*, *hābitum*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ē*; as, *curro, cūcurri*; *fallo, fēfellī*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*.

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *stoloe* *s* in the second syllable, making *spōspondī* and *stōlōl*. For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, R. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1, (A.)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio, audiui, auditum*; *exaudio, exaudiui, exauditum*.

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando, scandi, scansum*; *descendo, descendi, descensum*.

Exc. 3. (a.) When *a, æ, or e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *habeo, hābui, hābitum*; *prohibeo, prohibui, prohibitum*.

(b.) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *fācio, fēcī, factum*; *confācio, confēcī, confectum*; *tēneo, tēnui, tentum*; *retīneo, retīnui, retentum*; *rāpio, rūpui, raptum*; *abrīpio, abrīpui, abreptum*.

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cādo, āgo, frango, pango*, and *tango*, retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *pārio, (ēre)*, and some of the compounds of *do* and *cādo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do, cādo* and *pārio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *āt*; as, *amo, amāvi, amātum*.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.

**NOTE.** In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked \* are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dur*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r*, *d*., *m*., and *u*. *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dur*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p*. is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

- \* *Abundo*, *r.* to overflow.  
*Accuso*, *m. r. d.* to accuse.  
† *Adumbo*, *r.* to delineate.  
*Edifico*, *r. d.* to build.  
*Equo*, *r. d.* to level.  
*Estimo*, *r. d.* to value.  
\* *Ambulo*, *m. d.* to walk.  
*Amo*, *r. d.* to love.  
† *Amplio*, *d.* to enlarge.  
*Appello*, *d.* to call.  
*Apto*, *d.* to fit.  
*Aro*, *r. d.* to plough.  
\* † *Ausculto*, *d.* to listen.  
\* † *Autumo*, to assert.  
† *Bäsis*, —, *d.* to kiss.  
\* *Bello*, *m. r. d.* to wage war.  
† *Beo*, to bless.  
\* *Boo*, to bellow.  
† *Brävio*, to shorten.  
† *Cæco*, to blind.  
† *Cælo*, to carve.  
† *Calceo*, *d.* to shoe.  
\* † *Calcitro*, to kick.  
*Canto*, *m.* to sing.  
*Capto*, *m. r. d.* to seize.  
† *Castigo*, *m. d.* to chastise.  
*Celebro*, *d.* to celebrate.  
*Cælo*, *d.* to conceal.  
*Cesso*, *d.* to cease.  
*Certo*, *r. d.* to strive.  
*Clamo*, to shout.  
*Cogito*, *d.* to think.  
*Concellio*, *r. d.* to conciliate.  
*Considero*, *r. d.* to consider.  
*Crëmo*, *d.* to burn.—*concrëmo*, *r.*  
† *Creo*, *r. d.* to create.  
*Crücio*, *d.* to torment.  
*Culpo*, *r. d.* to blame.  
† *Cuneo*, *d.* to wedge in.  
*Cüro*, *r. d.* to care for.  
*Damno*, *m. r. d.* to condemn.  
*Decoro*, *d.* to adorn.  
\* † *Delineo*, to delineate.  
*Desidero*, *r. d.* to desire.  
*Destino*, *d.* to design.  
*Dico*, *m. r. d.* to dedicate.  
*Dicto*, to dictate.  
† *Dölo*, to hew.  
*Dono*, *r. d.* to bestow.  
*Duplico*, *r. d.* to double.  
*Düro*, *r.* to harden.  
† *Effigio*, to portray.  
† *Enucleo*, to explain.  
*Equito*, to ride.  
*Erro*, to wander.  
*Existimo*, *u. r. d.* to think.  
*Exploro*, *m. d.* to search.  
*Exsülo*, *m. r.* to be banished.  
*Fabrico*, *d.* to frame.  
† *Fatigo*, *r. d.* to weary.  
*Festino*, *r.* to hasten.  
*Firmo*, *r. d.* to strengthen.  
*Flagito*, *m. d.* to demand.  
\* *Flagro*, *r.* to be on fire.—*conflagro*, *r.*—*deflagro*.  
*Flo*, *d.* to blow.  
*Formo*, *r. d.* to form.  
*Föro*, *d.* to bore.  
† *Fraudo*, *d.* to defraud.  
† *Frëno*, to bridle.  
† *Frio*, —, to crumble.  
*Fügo*, *r. d.* to put to flight.  
† *Fundo*, *r.* to found.  
† *Fürro*, —, to madden.  
† *Gäleo*, —, to put on a helmet.  
*Gesto*, *d.* to bear.  
*Gläcio*, —, to congeal.  
*Grävo*, *d.* to weigh down.  
*Gusto*, *d.* to taste.  
*Habito*, *m. d.* to dwell.  
\* *Hälo*, —, to breathe.  
*Hiëmo*, *m.* to winter.  
\* *Hio*, *d.* to gape.  
† *Humo*, *r. d.* to bury.  
*Ignoro*, *r. d.* to be ignorant of.  
*Impëro*, *r. d.* to command.  
† *Impetro*, *r. d.* to obtain.  
*Inchoo*, —, to begin.  
*Indägo*, *r. d.* to trace out.  
*Indico*, *m. r. d.* to show.  
† *Inëbrio*, —, to inebriate.  
*Initio*, to initiate.  
*Inquino*, to pollute.  
*Instauro*, *d.* to renew.  
*Intro*, *r. d.* to enter.  
*Invito*, *d.* to invite.  
*Irrito*, *r. d.* to irritate.  
*Itëro*, *u. d.* to do again.  
*Jacto*, *r. d.* to throw.  
*Judico*, *r. d.* to judge.  
*Jügo*, *d.* to couple.  
*Jugulo*, *m. d.* to butcher.  
*Jüro*, *d.* to swear.  
*Laboro*, *r. d.* to labor.  
*Lacëro*, *d.* to tear.  
\* *Lacto*, to suckle.  
† *Länio*, *d.* to tear in pieces.  
*Lätro*, to bark.  
*Laudo*, *r. d.* to praise.  
*Laxo*, *d.* to loose.  
† *Lëgo*, to depute.  
*Lëvo*, *r. d.* to lighten.  
*Libëro*, *r. d.* to free.  
*Libo*, *d.* to pour out.  
*Ligo*, to bind.  
† *Liquo*, *d.* to melt.  
*Lito*, to appease.  
*Löco*, *r. d.* to place.  
*Lustro*, *d.* to survey.  
*Luxürio*, to be luxurious.  
*Macto*, *d.* to sacrifice.  
*Maculo*, to spot, stain.  
*Mando*, *r. d.* to command.  
*Mandüco*, to chew.  
\* *Mäno*, to flow.  
*Matüro*, *d.* to ripen.  
*Memoro*, *u. d.* to tell.  
\* *Meo*, to go.  
\* *Migro*, *u. r. d.* to depart.  
\* *Milito*, *m. r.* to serve as a soldier.  
† *Minio*, *d.* to paint red.  
*Ministro*, *d.* to serve.  
*Mitügo*, *d.* to pacify.  
*Monstro*, *r. d.* to show.  
† *demonstro*, *d.*  
*Müto*, *r. d.* to change.

Narro, r. d. to tell.	Püto, d. to reckon.	Südo, to sweat.
Näto, m. r. to swim.	Quasso, d. to shake.	Sufföco, to strangle.
*Nauseo, to be sea-sick	Rädio, to emit rays.	Sugillo, d. to launt.
†Navigo, r. d. to sail.	Rapto, d. to drag away.	Supëro, r. d. to overcome.
Nävo, r. d. to perform.	Recupëro, m. r. d. to recover.	Suppedito, to afford.
Nëgo, m. r. d. to deny.	Recuso, r. d. to refuse.	*Supplico, m. to supplicate.
*No, to swim.	Redundo, to overflow.	*Susurro, to whisper.
Nomino, r. d. to name.	Regno, r. d. to rule.	Tardo, to delay.
Nôto, d. to mark.	†Repüdio, r. d. to reject.	Taxo, d. to rate.
Nôvo, r. d. to renew.	Resëro, d. to unlock.	Temëro, d. to defile.
Nüdo, d. to make bare.	*†Retälio, —, to retaliate.	Tempëro, r. d. to temper
Nuncüpo, r. d. to name.	Rigo, to water.	—obtempëro, r. to obey.
Nuntio, m. r. to tell.—	Rôgo, m. r. d. to ask.	Tento, m. r. d. to try.
renuntio, d.	Rôto, to whirl around.	Terebro, to bore.
*Nüto, r. to nod.	Sacrifico, m. to sacrifice.	Termino, r. d. to limit.
Obsecro, m. r. d. to beseech.	Sacro, d. to consecrate.	Titübo, to stagger.
Obtrunco, r. to kill.	†Sagino, d. to fatten.	Tolëro, u. r. d. to bear.
Onëro, r. d. to load.	Salto, r. to dance.	Tracto, u. d. to handle.
Opto, d. to wish.	Salüto, m. r. d. to salute.	*†Tripüdio, to dance.
†Orbo, r. d. to bereave.	Säno, r. d. to heal.	Triumpho, r. to triumph.
Orno, r. d. to adorn.	Sätio, to satiate.	Trucido, r. d. to kill.
Oro, m. r. d. to beg.	†Satüro, to fill.	Turbo, d. to disturb.
Päco, d. to subdue.	Saucio, d. to wound.	*Väco, to be at leisure.
Pävo, r. d. to prepare.	*Secundo, to prosper.	*Vapülo, m. d. to be beat
compäro, d. to compare.	Sëdo, m. d. to allay.	en. Cf. § 142, 8.
Patro, r. d. to perform.	Servo, r. d. to keep.	Värio, to diversify.
*Pecco, r. d. to sin.	*†Sibülo, to hiss.	Vasto, d. to lay waste.
†Pio, d. to propitiate.	Sicco, d. to dry.	Vellico, to pluck.
Pläco, r. d. to appease.	Signo, r. d. to mark out.—	Verbëro, r. d. to beat.
Plöro, m. d. to bewail.	assigno, m.	*Vestigo, to search for
Porto, u. r. d. to carry.	Simülo, r. d. to pretend.	Vexo, d. to tease.
Postülo, m. r. d. to demand.	Söcio, d. to associate.	Vibro, d. to brandish.
Privo, d. to deprive.	*Sommio, to dream.	Vigilo, to watch.
Pröbo, m. u. r. d. to approve.—	Specto, m. r. d. to behold.	Viölo, m. r. d. to violate.
compröbo, m.	Spëro, r. d. to hope.	Vitio, d. to vitiate.
Profligo, d. to rout.	*Spiro, to breathe.—	Vito, u. d. to sham.
Propëro, d. to hasten.	spiro. — exspiro, r. —	Ulülo, to howl.
*†Propino, to drink to.	suspiro, d.	Umbro, r. to shade.
Propitio, d. to appease.	Spölio, m. d. to rob.	Vöco, r. d. to call.
Pugno, r. d. to fight.	Spümo, to foam.	*Völo, to fly.
Pulso, d. to beat.	Stillo, to drop.	Vöro, r. to devour.
Purgo, u. r. d. to cleanse.	Stimülo, to goad.	Vulgo, r. d. to publish.
	Stipo, to stuff.	Vulnëro, d. to wound.

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

*Crëpo, crepui, to make a noise.	*dis-	venundo; the other compounds of da
crëpo, -ui, or -ävi.	incrëpo, -ui or	are of the third conjugation. See
-ävi, -itum or -ätum.	*†percrëpo, —.	§ 163, Exc. 1.
*†recreëpo, —.		Dömo, domui, domitum, r. d. to tame.
*Cübo, cubui, (perf. subj. cubäris; inf.		Frico, fricui, frictum or fricätum, d.
cubasse), cubitum (sup.), to recline.		to rub. confrico, —, -ätum. So infrico.
incübo, -ui or ävi, d. Those com-		co. defrico, —, -ätum or -ctum.
pounds of cubo which take m before		Jüvo, jüvi, jätum, r. d., also juvatürus,
b, are of the third conjugation.		m. r. d. also adjuvatürus.
Do, cädi, dätum, m. r. d. to give.—		*Läbo, labasse, to totter.
So circumdä, pessumdc, satüdo, and		

**Lāvo, lāvi, rar. lāvāvi, lavātum, lautum**  
or **lōtum**; (*sup.*) **lautum** or **lavātum**,  
**lavātūrus, d. to wash.** *Lāvo is also*  
*sometimes of the third conjugation.*

\***Mico, micui, d. to glister.** **dimico,**  
**-āvi or -ui, -atūrus.** \***emico, -ui,**  
**-atūrus.** \***internico, —.** \***promi-**  
**co, —, d.**

**Nēco, necāvi or necui, necātum, r. d.**  
**to kill.** **enēco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum, or**  
**-ctum, d. †internēco, —, -ātum.**

\*†**Nexo, —, to tie.**

\***Plico, —, plicātum, to fold.** **duplico,**  
**-āvi, -ātum, r. d. multiplico and re-**  
**plico have -āvi, -ātum.** \***supplico,**  
**-āvi, m. r. applico, -āvi or -ui,**  
**-ātum or -itum, -itūrus.** *So implico.*  
**—complico, -ui, -itum or -ātum.**  
**explico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum,**  
**-atūrus or -itūrus.**

**l'ōto, potāvi, potātum or pōtum, r. r.**  
**m. m. d. to drink.** **†epōto, -āvi, -um.**  
**—\*perpōto, -āvi.**

**Sēco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. to**

*cyl.*—\***circum:ico, —.** \***intersēco**  
**—, d.** \***persēco, -ui. præsēco, -ui,**  
**-tum or -ātum.** *So resēco, d.*

\***Sōno, sonui, -atūrus, d. to sound.**  
\***consōno, -ui.** *So ex-, in-, per-,*  
*præ-sōno.* \***resōno, -āvi.** \***assōno,**  
**—.** *So circum-sōno and dissōno.*

\***Sto, stēti, stātūrus, to stand.** \***an-**  
**testo, -stēti.** *So circumsto, intersto,*  
*supersto.*—*Its compounds with mo-*  
*nosyllabic prepositions have stiti;*  
*as, \*consto, -stīti, -statūrus.* *So ex-*  
*sto, insto, obsto, persto.* \***præsto,**  
**-stīti, -stātūrus, d.** \***adsto or asto,**  
**-stīti, -stītūrus.** \***prosto, -stīti.** *So*  
*resto, restīti: but subj. perf. restāvē-*  
*rit, Propert, 2, 34, 58.* \***disto, —.**  
*So substo and supersto.*

\***Tōno, tonui, to thunder.** *So circum-*  
*tōno.* **attōno, -ui, -itum. intōno,**  
**-ui, -ātum.** \***retōno, —.**

**Vēto, vetui, rarely āvi, vetitum, to**  
**forbid.**

**REMARK 1.** The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *i*. The *v* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo*, (*cubāvi*, by syncope *cubvi*), i. e. *cubui*; (*cubātum*, by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubitum*. Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo*, (*āre*) *jūvi, jātum; tēneo*, (*ēre*) *tēnuī, tentum*. In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g*, and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s*; as, *rideo, risi, risum*.

**REM. 2.** The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do, sto*, and their compounds.

**REM. 3.** The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo, calceo, creo, cūneo, enucleo, illāqueo, collīneo, delīneo, meo, nauseo, screeo*; *eo* and its compounds are of the fourth.

**§ 166.** All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *miror*, § 161; as,

**Abominor, d. to abhor.**  
**Adūlor, d. to flatter.**  
**Emūlor, d. to rival.**  
**Ancillor, to be a handmaid.**  
\***Aprior, to bask in the**  
**sun.**  
**Arbitror, r. d. to think.**  
**Aspēnor, d. p. to despise.**  
**Aucupor, r. p. to hunt**  
**after.**  
**Auxillor, p. to help.**  
**Avēsor, d. to dislike.**  
**Bacchor, p. to revel.**  
**Calumnior, to censure un-**  
**fairly.**

**Cansor, to allege.**  
\***Comissor, m. to revel.**  
**Comitor, p. to accompany.**  
**Conciōnor, to harangue.**  
\***Confabulor, m. to con-**  
**verse together.**  
**Cōnor, d. to endeavor.**  
\***Conspicor, to see.**  
**Contēplor, d. p. to view**  
**attentively.**  
**Criminor, m. p. to com-**  
**plain of.**  
**Cunctor, d. p. to delay.**  
**Deprecor, m. r. d. p. to**  
**deprecate.**

\*†**Diglādiōr, to fence.**  
**Dignor, d. p. to deem wor-**  
**thy.**  
**Domīnor, p. to rule.**  
**Epūlor, r. d. to feast.**  
\*†**Famūlor, m. to wait on.**  
**Fātūr, (defect.) u. d. p**  
**to speak. See § 183, c.**  
†**Fērior, r. to keep holiday.**  
\***Frumētor, m. d. to for-**  
**age.**  
**Fūrōr, m. to steal.**  
**Glōrior, r. d. to boast.**  
**Gratūlor, m. d. to con-**  
**gratulate.**

Hartōlor, <i>to practise sooth-saying.</i>	Modōlor, <i>d. p. to model.</i>	*Bustōlor, <i>to live in the country.</i>
Hortor, <i>d. to encourage.</i>	Mōror, <i>r. d. to delay.</i>	Sciscitor, <i>m. p. to inquire.</i>
Imitor, <i>u. r. d. to imitate.</i>	†Mūtōlor, <i>p. to borrow.</i>	*Sctor, <i>m. to ask.</i>
Indignor, <i>d. to disdain.</i>	Negōtor, <i>r. to traffic.</i>	Scrītor, <i>p. to search.</i>
Inftior, <i>d. to deny.</i>	*†Nūgor, <i>to trifle.</i>	Sōlor, <i>d. to comfort.</i>
Insector, <i>to pursue.</i>	Obsōnor, <i>m. to cater.</i>	Spātor, <i>to walk about.</i>
Insidior, <i>r. d. to lie in wait for.</i>	Obtestor, <i>p. to beseech.</i>	Specōlor, <i>m. r. d. to spy out.</i>
Interpōtor, <i>p. to explain.</i>	Opēror, <i>to work.</i>	†Stipōlor, <i>p. to bargain, stipulate.</i>
Jacōlor, <i>p. to hurl.</i>	Opīnor, <i>u. r. d. to think.</i>	†Suātor, <i>d. to kiss.</i>
Jōcor, <i>to jest.</i>	Opittōlor, <i>m. to help.</i>	Suspōlor, <i>to suspect.</i>
Lātor, <i>r. d. p. to rejoice.</i>	†Otior, <i>to be at leisure.</i>	Testifōlor, <i>p. to testify.</i>
Lamentor, <i>d. p. to bewail.</i>	Pabūlor, <i>m. d. to graze.</i>	Testor, <i>d. p. to testify. its detestor.</i>
*†Lignor, <i>m. to gather wood.</i>	Pālōr, <i>to wander about.</i>	Tātōr, <i>to defend.</i>
Luctor, <i>d. to wrestle.</i>	Percontor, <i>m. to inquire.</i>	Vāgor, <i>to wander.</i>
Medicor, <i>r. d. p. to heal.</i>	Periclitōr, <i>d. p. to try.</i>	Venēror, <i>d. p. to venerate, worship.</i>
Meditor, <i>p. to meditate.</i>	†Piscor, <i>m. to fish.</i>	Vēnor, <i>m. p. to hunt.</i>
Mercor, <i>m. r. d. p. to buy.</i>	Popōlor, <i>r. d. p. to lay waste.</i>	Versor, <i>to be employed.</i>
Minor, <i>to threaten.</i>	Prædor, <i>m. p. to plunder.</i>	Vocifērōr, <i>to bawl.</i>
Mīror, <i>u. r. d. to admire.</i>	Prēcōr, <i>m. u. r. d. to pray.</i>	
Misēror, <i>d. to pity.</i>	Prællor, <i>to fight.</i>	
Modōror, <i>u. d. to govern.</i>	Recordor, <i>d. to recollect.</i>	
	Rimor, <i>d. to search.</i>	
	Rixor, <i>to quarrel.</i>	

NOTE. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being or practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancillāri*, to be a handmaid; *hariolāri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *harisma*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *it*; as, *monéo*, *monui*, *monitum*.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

*Aceo, <i>to be sour.</i>	*Clāreo, —, <i>to be bright.</i>	*†perhībeo, <i>d. to report.</i>
*Ēgreo, —, <i>to be sick.</i>	*Clueo, —, <i>to be famous.</i>	†posthābeo, <i>to postpone.</i>
*Albeo, —, <i>to be white.</i>	*Denseo, —, <i>to thicken.</i>	præbeo, ( <i>for</i> prāhībeo), <i>r. d. to afford.</i>
*Arceo, <i>d. to drive away;</i> <i>part. adj. arctus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain. exerceo, r. d. to exercise.</i>	*Dirībeo, —, <i>to sort the voting tablets.</i>	*prāhībeo, —, <i>dēbeo, (for dehābeo), r. d. to owe.</i>
*Areo, <i>to be dry.</i>	*Dōleo, <i>r. d. to grieve.</i>	*Hēbeo, —, <i>to be dull.</i>
*Aveo, —, <i>to covet.</i>	*Egeo, <i>r. to want.</i>	*Horreo, <i>d. to be rough.</i>
*Cāleo, <i>r. to be warm.</i>	*Emīneo, <i>to rise above.</i>	*Hūmeo, —, <i>to be moist.</i>
*Calleo, —, <i>to be hardened.</i>	*Flacceō, <i>to droop.</i>	*Jāceo, <i>r. to lie.</i>
*percalleo, <i>to know well.</i>	*Flāveo, —, <i>to be yellow.</i>	*Lacteo, —, <i>to suck.</i>
*Calveo, —, <i>to be bald.</i>	*Flōreo, <i>to blossom.</i>	*Langueo, —, <i>to be faint.</i>
*Candeo, <i>to be white.</i>	*Fœteo, —, <i>to be fetid.</i>	*Lāteo, <i>to lie hid.</i>
*Cāneo, <i>to be hoary.</i>	*Frigeo, —, <i>to be cold.</i>	*Lenteo, —, <i>to be slow.</i>
*Cāreo, <i>r. d. to want.</i>	*Frondeo, —, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	*Liceo, <i>to be valued.</i>
*Cēveo, —, <i>to j'non.</i>	Hābeo, <i>r. d. to have. The compounds, except posthābeo, change ā into i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hībeo. cohībeo, d. to restrain. inhībeo, d. to hinder.</i>	*Liveo, —, <i>to be livid.</i>
		*Māceo, —, <i>to be lean.</i>
		*Mādeo, <i>to be wet.</i>
		*Mæreo, —, <i>to grieve.</i>
		Mēreo, <i>r. to deserve.</i>

- †commēreo, to *fully deserve*. †dāmēreo, d. to *earn*. †mēreo, to *serve out one's time*. \*†permēreo, —, to *go through service*. promēreo, to *deserve*.
- Mōneo, r. d. to *advise*. admōneo, m. r. d. to *remind*. commōneo, to *impress upon*. prēmōneo, to *forewarn*.
- \*Mūceo, —, to *be mouldy*. \*Nigreo, —, to *be black*. \*Niteo, to *shine*. Nōceo, m. — to *hurt*. \*Oleo, to *smell*. \*Palleo, to *be pale*.
- \*Pāreo, m. r. d. to *obey*. \*Pāteo, to *be open*. Plāceo, to *please*. \*Polleo, —, to *be able*. \*Pūteo, to *stink*. \*Putreo, to *be putrid*. \*Renideo, —, to *glitter*. \*Rigeo, to *be stiff*. \*Rūbeo, to *be red*. \*Scāteo, —, to *gush forth*. \*Sēneo, —, to *be old*. \*Sileo, d. to *be silent*. \*Sordeo, —, to *be filthy*. \*Splendeo, —, to *shine*. \*Squāleo, —, to *be foul*. \*Strideo, —, to *creak*. \*Stūdeo, d. to *study*. \*Stūpeo, to *be amazed*.
- \*Sueo, —, to *be used*. Tāceo, r. d. to *be silent*. \*Tēpeo, to *be warm*. Terreo, d. to *terrify*. Se deterreo, to *deter*. †absterreo, to *deter*. †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, to *frighten*. \*Timeo, d. to *fear*. \*Torpeo, —, to *be stiff*. \*Tūmeo, to *swell*. \*Vāleo, r. to *be able*. \*Vēgeo, —, to *arouse*. \*Vieo, —, to *plait*. Pa. viētus, *shriveled*. \*Vigeo, to *flourish*. \*Vireo, to *be green*. \*Uveo, —, to *be moist*.

§ 163. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, o, āvi, ātum, of the fourth io, ivi, itum, so that of the second would be eo, ēvi, ētum. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, ē, and those in *veo* drop vē; as, cāveo, (cāvēvi) cāvi, (cāvētum or cāvītum) cautum. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add s to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. mordeo, pendeo, spondeo, and tondeo. See § 163, Rem.

- Abōleo, -ēvi, -itum, r. d. to *efface*.  
 \*Algeo, alsi, to *be cold*.  
 Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. to *burn*.  
 Audeo, ausus sum, (rarely ausi, whence ausim, § 183, R. 1), r. d. to *dare*.  
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to *increase*.  
 Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, m. d. to *beware*.  
 Censeo, censui, censum, d. to *think*.  
 recenseo, -ui, -um or -itum. \*per-  
 censeo, -ui. \*succenseo, -ui, d.  
 Cileo, civi, citum, to *excite*. There is a cognate form, cio, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles excitus and concitus is common, and that of accitus is always long.
- \*Conniveo, -nivi, to *wink at*.  
 Jēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. to *blot out*.  
 Dōceo, docui, doctum, d. to *teach*.  
 \*Fāveo, fāvi, fānturus, to *favor*.  
 \*Ferveo, ferui, to *boil*. Sometimes fervo, vi, of the third conjugation.  
 Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. to *weep*.  
 Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. to *cherish*.
- \*Fulgeo, fulsi, to *shine*. Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.  
 Gaudeo, gavisus sum, r. to *rejoice*. § 142, 2.  
 \*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsurus, to *stick*. Se ad-, co-, in-, ob-hæreo; but \*subhæreo, —.  
 Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. to *indulge*.  
 Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to *order*.  
 \*Lūceo, luxi, to *shine*. pollūceo, -luxi -luctum.  
 \*Lūgeo, luxi, d. to *mourn*.  
 \*Māneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to *remain*.  
 Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, misturus, d. to *mix*.  
 Mordeo, momordi morsum, d. to *bite*. remordeo, -di, -morsum, r.  
 Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, r. d. to *move*.  
 Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. to *soothe*.  
 permulceo, permulsi, permulsum and permulctum, to *rub gently*.  
 \*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, to *milk*. emulgeo, —, emulsum, to *milk out*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*

\*Pāveo, pāvi, d. *to fear.*

\*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.* \*impendeo, —, propendeo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (a<sup>o</sup>soleo). compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill.* *So the other compounds.*

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. d. *dine.*

Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. *to sit.*

*The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ē into i, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.*

\*disideo, -sēdi. *So præsideo, and rarely circumsideo.*

Sūleo, solitus sum *and rarely solui, to be accustomed.* § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.* *So \*exsorbeo: but \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpai.*

Spondeo, spondi, sponsam *to promise.* See § 163, Rem.

\*Strideo, idi, *to whist.*

Snādeo, suāsi, suāsum, r. d. *to advise.*

Tēneo, tēnuī, tentum, r. d. *to hold.* *The compounds change ē into i in the first and second roots; as, detineo, detinui, detentum. \*attineo, -tinui. So pertineo.*

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.* Tergo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use.*

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, *to shear.* *The compounds have the perfect tondi.*

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. *to twist.*

Torreo, torui, tostum, *to roast.*

\*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*

\*Urgeo or argueo, ursi, d. *to urge.*

Video, vidi, visum, m. u. r. d. *to see.*

Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, d. *to vow.*

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, *it becomes.*

Lībet, libuit or libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*

Licet, licuit or licitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*

Liquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident.*

Misēret, miseruit or miseritum est, *it moves to pity; misēret me, I pity.*

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Piget, piguit or pigitum est, d. *it troubles, grieves.*

Poenitet, poenituit, poenitūrus, d. *it repents; poenitet me, I regret.*

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, d.; *it shames; pudet me, I am ashamed.*

Tædet, tæduit or tæsum est, *it disgusts or wearies. pertædet, pertæsum est.*

NOTE. Lībet is sometimes written for libet, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, r. d. p. *to confess.* *The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, d. p. to acknowledge.*

\*diffiteor, *to deny.* profiteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*

Liceor, licitus, *to bid a price.*

\*Mēdeor, d. *to cure.*

Mēreor, meritus, *to deserve.*

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, *to pity.*

Polliceor, pollicitus, p. *to promise.*

Reor, rātus, *to think, suppose.*

Tueor, tuitus, d. p. *to protect.*

Vēreor, veritus, d. p. *to fear.*

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpei, carptum; arguo, argui, argutum.

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. The palatals *c, g, qu*, and also *h*, at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t*; as, dico, (dici, l. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (regi, l. e.), rexi, rectum; vido, vixi, vectum; cado, caxi, coctum.



**NOTE.** *ſuo* and *ſuo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *ſcribo*, *ſcripti*, *ſcriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudo*, *clauſi*, *cēdo*, *ceſſi*; *mitto*, *miſi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is ſometimes inſerted before *s* and *t*; as, *ſūmo*, *ſumpſi*, *ſumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gēro* and *ſuo*.

4. Some other conſonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

**Exc. 1.** Many verbs whose first root ends in a conſonant, do not add *s* to form the ſecond root.

(a.) Of theſe, ſome have the ſecond root the ſame as the firſt, but the vowel of the ſecond root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

Bībo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scābo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fōdio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strīdo,	Verto,
Emo,	Fūgio,	Lēgo,	Pſallo,	Sīdo,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obſolete *cando*, *fendo*, and *mo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the firſt root. Of theſe, ſome change a vowel, ſome drop a conſonant, ſome prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of theſe changes; as,

Ago, āgi.	Cāpio, cēpi.	Fācio, fāci.
Fīndo, fīdi.	Frango, frēgi.	Fundo, fūdi.
Jācio, jēci.	Līnquo, līqui.	Rumpo, rūpi.
Scīndo, scīdi.	Sīsto, sītī.	Vīnco, vīci.

Thoſe which have a reduplication are

Cādo, cēcīdi.	Cēdo, cēcīdi.	Cāno, cēcīni.
Curro, cūcurri.	Disco, didīci.	Fallo, fēfelli.
Pāgo, (obſ.) pēpigi	Parco, pēperci.	Pārio, pēpēri.
and pēgi.	Pēdo, pēpēdi.	Pello, pēpūli.
Pendo, pēpendi.	Posco, pōpoſci.	Pungo, pūpūgi.
Tango, tētīgi.	Tendo, tētēdi.	Tundo, tūtūdi.

**Exc. 2.** Some, after the analogy of the ſecond conjugation, add *u* to the firſt root of the verb; as,

Alo, alui, etc.	Conſūlo,	Gēmo,	Rāpio,	Trēmō,
Cōlo,	Depſo,	Gēno, (obſ.)	Strēpo,	Vōlo,
Compesco,	Frēmō,	Mōlo,	Texo,	Vōmo.

*Mēto*, *meſſui*; and *pōno*, *pōnui*; add *su*, with a change in the root.

**Exc. 3.** The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *iv* to the firſt root:—

Arceſſo,	Cūpio,	Lāceſſo,	Būdo,	Tēro, dropping ē.
Cāpeſſo,	Inceſſo,	Pēto,	Quāro, with a change of r into s.	

**Exc. 4.** The following add *v*, with a change in the root; thoſe in *ro* and *ſco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and thoſe having *er* before *n* changing it to *rē* or *rū*:—

Creſco,	Pasco,	Sciſco,	Sperno,	Līno,	Sēro,
Nosco,	Quiſco,	Cerno,	Sterno,	Sino,	to ſou.

**Exc. 5.** (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and ſome in *g*, add *s*, inſtead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t*, and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudo*, *clauſum*; *dēfendo*, *dēfenſum*; *cēdo*, *ceſſum*; *flecto*, *flexum*; *figo*, *fixum*. But the compounds of *ip* add *ū*; as, *perdo*, *perdītum*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root —

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Va. ro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Præmo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *nqu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gëro,	Sëro,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Côlo,	Frango,	Rumpo,	Sisto,	Sterno,	Tëro,	Vinco;

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *aco* with the second root in *e*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nasco*, *nôvi*, *nôtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *u*:—

Bibo,	Elleio,	Môlo,	Pôno, with a change of <i>ôn</i> into <i>ôa</i> .
Gëno, (obs. form of gigno,)	Vômo,	Sino, dropping <i>n</i> .	

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *u* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cûpio,	Pëto,	Tëro, dropping <i>ë</i> .
Fâcesso,	Lâ'esso,	Quëro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>z</i> .	

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

Acuo, âcui, âcutum, d. to sharpen.

Ago, âgi, actum, r. d. to drive. So circumâgo, cûgo, and përago. \*ambi-

go, —, to doubt. So sâtâgo. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root; as, exîgo, exëgi, exactum, to drive out. \*prôdîgo, -ëgi, to squander. See § 189, 2.

Alo, âlui, altum, and later âltum, d. to nourish.

\*Ango, anxî, to strangle.

Arguo, argui, argûtum, d. to convict.

Arcesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. to call for. Pass. inf. arcessiri or arcessi.

\*Bâtuo, bâtui, d. to beat.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, d. to drink.

\*Câdo, cêcidi, câsurus, to fall. The compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, occîdo, -cidi, -câsum, r. to set.

Cædo, cêcidi, cæsum, r. d. to cut. The compounds change *æ* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, occîdo, -cidi, -cîsum.

Cando, (obsolete,) synonymous with candeo of the second conjugation. Hence accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. to kindle. So incando, succendo.

\*Câno, cêcîni, d. to sing. The compounds change *â* into *i*; as, \*concîno,

-cîni. So occîno, præcîno. \*accîno, —. So incîno, intercîno, succîno, recîno.

\*Capesso, -ivi, r. d. to undertake.

Câpio, cêpi, captum, r. d. to take. So antêcâpio. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, dêcîpio, dêcîpi, dêceptum.

Carpo, carpi, carptum, d. to pluck.

The compounds change *a* into *e*; as,

dêcerpo, dêcerpi, dêcerptum.

Câdo, cessi, cessum, r. to yield.

Cello, (obsolete,) excello, -cellui, -culsum, to excel. \*antêcello, —. So præcello, rêcello. percello, -cûli, -culsum, to strike.

Cerno, crêvi, crêtum, d. to decree.

\*Cerno, —, to see.

Cingo, cînxî, cinctum, d. to gird.

\*Clango, —, to clang.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, r. d. to shut. The compounds change *au* into *i*; as, occlûdo, occlûsi, occlûsum, to shut up.

\*†Clando, —, to limp.

\*†Clêpo, clêpi, rarely clêpi, to steal.

Côlo, côlui, cultum, d. to till. †occûlo,

-cûlui, -cultum, d. to hide.

Cômo, compsi, comptum, to deck.

\*Compesco, -pescui, to restrain.

Constūlo, -stūlūi, -sultum, m. r. d. to *consult*.

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. to *cook*.

Crēdo, crēdīdi, crēditum, r. d. to *believe*.

\*Cresco, crēvi, to *grow*. concreresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

Cūbo is of the first conjugation. Cf. § 165. \*accumbo, -cūbui, to *lie down*.

So the other compounds which insert m.

\*Cūdo, —, to *forge*. excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. to *stamp*.

Cūpio, cūpīvi, cūpītum, d. to *desire*. *Subj. imperf.* cūpīret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

\*Curro, cūcurri, cūrsurus, to *run*. concurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, dēcurro, dēcurri, and dēcūcurri, dēcursum. \*antēcurro, —. So circumcurro.

\*Dēgo, dēgi, d. to *live*.

Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. to *take away*.

†Depso, depseui, depstum, to *knead*.

Dico, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. to *say*.

\*Disco, didici, discitūrus, d. to *learn*.

\*Dispesco, —, to *separate*.

Divido, divisi, divisum, r. d. to *divide*.

Do is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. to *hide*. So condo,

indo. addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. to *add*. So dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo,

trādo, vendo. †dīdo, -didi, -ditum, to *distribute*. So abdo, subdo. perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. abscondo, -di or -didi, -ditum or -sum.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. to *lead*.

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. to *eat*.

Exuo, exui, exūtum, d. to *strip off*.

Emo, ēmi, emptum, r. d. to *buy*. So cōmo. The other compounds change ē to i; as, exīmo, -ēmī, -emptum.

Fācesso, -cessi, -cessitum, to *execute*.

Fācio, fēci, factum, m. u. r. d. to *do*. Compounded with a preposition, it changes ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive.

Compounded with other words, it retains ā when of this conjugation, makes fac in the imperative, and has the passive, fio, factum. See § 180.

Lallo, fellēli, falsum, d. to *deceive*. \*rēfello, -felli, d. to *refute*.

Fendo, (obsolete.) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. to *defend*. offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. to *offend*.

Fēro, tūli, lātum, r. d. to *bear*. See § 179. A perfect tētūli is rare. Its compounds are affēro attūli, allātum;

ausēro, abstūli, ablātum; diffēro, distūli, dilātum; confēro, contūli, collātum; infēro, intūli, illātum; offēro, obtūli, oblātum; effēro, extūli, elātum; suffēro, sustūli, sublātum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antē-, praefero, -tūli, -lātum.

\*Fervo, vi, to *boil*. Cf. ferveo, 2d conj.

Fido, —, fīsus, to *trust*. See § 162, 18. confido, confisus sum or confidi, to rely on. diffido, diffusus sum, to distrust.

Figo, fixi, fixum, r. rarely fīctum, to *fix*. Findo, fidi, fissum, d. to *cleave*.

Fingo, finxi, fīctum, d. to *feign*.

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. to *bend*.

\*Fligo, flixi, to *dash*. So configo. affligo, -flixi, -flictum, to *afflict*. Be infligo. prōfligo is of the first conjugation.

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (fūctum, obs.) r. to *flow*.

Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, d. to *dig*. Old pres. inf. pass. fōdiri: so also effōdiri.

Frango, frēgi, fractum, r. d. to *break*. The compounds change a into i, in the first root; as, infringo, infrēgi, infractum, to *break in upon*.

\*Frēmo, frēmui, d. to *roar, howl*.

Frendo, —, frēsom, or fressum, to *gnash*.

Frigo, frixi, frīctum, rarely frīxum, to *roast*.

\*Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitūrus, d. to *flee*.

\*Fulgo, —, to *flash*.

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, r. d. to *pour*.

\*Fūro, —, to *rage*.

\*Gēmo, gēmui, d. to *groan*.

Gēro, gessi, gestum, r. d. to *bear*.

Gigno, (obsolete gēno,) gēmui, gēnitum, r. d. to *beget*.

\*Glisco, —, to *grow*.

\*Glābo, —, to *peel*. deglābo, —, -gluptum.

Gruo, (obsolete.) \*congruo, -grui, to agree. So ingruo.

Ico, icl, ictum, r. to *strike*.

Imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, d. to *imbue*.

\*Incesso, -cessivi or -cessi, to *attack*.

†Induo, indui, indūtum, to *put on*.

Jācio, jēci, jactum, d. to *cast*. The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third. (§ 163, Exc. 8); as, rejicio, rejēci, rejectum.

Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. to *join*.

Lācesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. to *provoke*.

Lācio, (obsolete.) The compounds change ā into i; as, allicio, -lexi, -lectum, d. to *allure*. So illicio, pellicio. ālicio, -licui, -lōctum, to *draw out*.

**Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. to hurt.** *The compounds change s into i; as, illido, illisi, illisum, to dash against.*

\***Lambo, lambi, to lick.**

**Lêgo, lêgi, lectum, r. d. to read.** *So allêgo, perlêgo, prælêgo, relêgo, sublêgo, and translêgo; the other compounds change g into i; as, colligo, collêgi, collectum, to collect. But the following add s to form the second root; § 171, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, to love. intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. to understand. negligo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. to neglect.*

**Lingo, —, linctum, d. to lick.** \*delingo, —, to lick up.

**Lino, lvi or lêvi, litum, d. to daub.**

\***Linquo, liqui, d. to leave.** relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, r. d. delinquo, -liqui, -lictum. *So derelinquo.*

**Lûdo, lûsi, lûsum, m. r. to play.**

\***Luo, lui, luitûrus, d. to atone.** abluo, -lui, -lûtum, r. d. diluo, -lui, -lûtum, d. *So eluo.*

**Mando, mandî, mansum, d. to chew.**

**Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. to dip.** *So immergo; but pres. inf. pass. immergêri, Col. 5, 9, 8.*

**Mêto, messui, messum, d. to reap.**

**Mêtuo, metui, metûtum, d. to fear.**

\***Mingo, minxi, mictum, (sup.) to make water.**

**Minuo, minui, minûtum, d. to lessen.**

**Mitto, misi, missum, r. d. to send.**

**Môlo, mólui, mólitum, to grind.**

**Mungo, (obsolete.) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, to wipe the nose.**

**Necto, nexi, nexum, d. to knit.** innecto, -nexui, -nexum. *So annecto, connecto.*

\***Ningo or -guo, ninxi, to snow.**

**Nosco, nôvi, nôtum, d. to learn.** agnosco, -nôvi, -nîtum, d. to recognize. cognosco, -nôvi, -nîtum, u. r. d. to know. *So recognosco.* \*internosco, nôvi, to distinguish between. præcognosco, —, præcognitum, to fore-know.

\***ignosco, —, So prænosco.** ignosco, -nôvi, -nôtum, d. to pardon.

**Nûbo, nupsi, or nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. to marry.**

**Nuo, (obsolete.) to nod.** \*abnuo, -nui, -nuitûrus, d. to refuse. \*annuo, -nui. *So innuo, renuo.*

\***Olo, ôlui, to smell.**

**Pando, —, passum or pansum, to open.** *So expando.* dispando, —, -pansum.

**Pago, (obs. the same as paco whence pascor.) pèpigi, pactum, to bargain; hence**

**Pango, panxi (+ pègi, pactum, pactû-**

**rus, d. to drive in.** compingo, -pègi, -pactum. *So impingo.* \*oppango, -pègi. \*depango, —. *So repango, suppingo.*

\***Parco, pèperci rarely parsi, parstûrus, to spare.** *Some of the compounds change s to e; as, \*comparco or comperco. \*imperco, —.*

**Pàrio, pèpèri, partum, pàritûrus, d. to bring forth.** *The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.*

**Pasco, pàvi, pastum, m. r. d. to feed.**

**Pecto, —, pexum, and pectitum, d. to comb.** \*depecto. repecto.

\***Pèdo, pèpèdi. \*oppèdo, —.**

**Pello, pèpûli, pulsum, d. to drive.** *Its compounds are not reduplicated.*

**Pendo, pèpendi, pensum, r. to weigh.** *The compounds drop the reduplication. See § 163, Exc. 1.*

**Pèto, pètivi, pètîtum, m. u. r. d. to ask.**

**Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint.**

**Pinso, pinsi, pinsitum, pinsum or pistum, to pound.**

\***Plango, planxi, planctûrus, to lament.**

**Plando, plausi, plausum, d. to clap, applaud.** *So applaudo.* \*circumplando, —. *The other compounds change au into ô.*

**Plecto, —, plexum, d. to twine.**

\***Pluo, pluî or plûvi, to rain.**

**Pôno, pôui, (anciently posui), pôsitum, r. d. to place.**

\***†Porricio, —, to offer sacrifice.**

\***Posco, pôposci, d. to demand.**

**Prehendo, { -di, -sum, r. d. to seize.**

**Prendo, }**

**Prêmo, pressi, pressum, r. d. to press.** *The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, imprimo, impressi, impressum, to impress.*

**Prômo, prompsi, promptum, r. d. to bring out.**

\***Psallo, psalli, to play on a stringed instrument.**

**Pungo, pûpûgi, punctum, to prick.** compungo, -punxi, -punctum. *So dispungo, expungo. interpungo, —, -punctum. \*repungo, —.*

**Quæro, quæsi, quæsitum, m. r. d. to seek.** *The compounds change s into i; as, requiro, requisivi, requisitum, to seek again.*

**Quâtio, —, quassum, to shake.** *The compounds change quâ into cû; as, concûtio, -cussi, -cussum, d. dis-cûtio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.*

**Quiesco, quiêvi, quiêtum, r. d. to rest.**

**Râdo, râsi, râsum, d. to shave.**

**Râpio, râpui, raptum, r. d. to snatch.**

*The compounds change â into i in the*

- first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, diripio, -rîpui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and præripio.*
- Rêgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule.** *The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, dirigo, direxi, directum.*  
 \*pergo, (for perrigo), perrexi, r. to go forward. surgo (for surrigo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise. So porrigo (for prorigo), to stretch out.
- \*Rêpo, repsi, to creep.
- Rôdo, rôsi, rôsum, r. to gnaw.** ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rôdo, want the perfect.
- \*Rûdo, rudivi, to bray.
- Rumpo, rûpi, ruptum, r. d. to break.**
- Ruo, rui, rûtum, ruitûrus, to fall.** diruo, -rui, -rûtum, d. So obruo.  
 \*corruo, -rui. So irruo.
- \*Sâpio, sapiui, to be wise. *The compounds change â into i; as, \*resipio, -sîpivi or -sîpui. \*desipio, —, to be silly.*
- \*†Scâbo, scâbi, to scratch.
- Scalpo, scalpsi, scalpum, to engrave.**
- Sâlo or sallo, — salsum, to salt.**
- \*Scando, —, d. to climb. *The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendô, descendî, (anciently descendîdi,) descendsum.*
- Scindo, scidi, (anciently sciscidi), scissum, d. to cut.**
- Scisco, scîvi, scitum, d. to ordain.**
- Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.**
- Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. to carve.**
- Sêro, sêvi, sîtum, r. d. to sow.** consêro, -sêvi, -sîtum. So insêro, r., and obêro.
- Sêro, —, sertum, to entwine.** *Its compounds have -sêrui; as, assêro, -sêrui, -sertum, r. d.*
- \*Sêro, serpsi, to creep.
- \*Sîdo, sîdi, to settle. *Its compounds have generally sêdi, sessum, from sedeo.*
- \*Sîno, sîvi, sîtûrus, to permit. desîno, desîvi, desîtum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.
- Sisto, stiti, stâtum, to stop.** \*absisto, -stîti. *So the other compounds; but circumstisto wants the perfect.*
- Solvo, solvi, solûtum, r. d. to loose.**
- Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread.** *The compounds change a into e; as, respergo, -spersi, -spersum; but with circum and in, a sometimes remains.*
- Spêcio, (obsolete.)** *The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at. inspicio, inspexi, inspectum, r. d.*
- Sfêrno, sfri vi, sprêtum, d. to despise.**
- \*†Spuo, sî i, to spit. \*respuo, respu-  
 -i. d.
- Stâtuo, stâtui, stâtûtum, d. to place.** *The compounds change â into i; as, institûo, institûi, institûtum, to institute.*
- Sterno, strâvi, strâtum, d. to stress.**  
 \*Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.
- \*Sterto, —, to snore. \*†desterto, destertui.
- \*Stinguo, —, to extinguish. distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. So exstinguo, r. d.
- \*Strêpo, strêpui to make a noise.
- \*Strido, stridi, to creak.
- Stringo, strinxî, strictum, r. d. to bind or tie tight.**
- Struo, struxi, structum, d. to build.**
- Sûgo, suxi, suctum, to suck.**
- Sûmo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. to take.**
- Suo, —, sûtum, d. to sew.** So consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sûtum. \*asuo, —.
- Tâgo, (very rare), to touch.** Hence
- Tango, têtigi, tactum, r. d. to touch.** *The compounds change a into i in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, contingo, contîgi, contactum, r.*
- Têgo, texi, tectum, r. d. to cover.**
- \*Temno, —, d. to despise. contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.
- Tendo, têtendi, tentum or tensum, to stretch.** *The compounds drop the reduplication; as, extendo, -tendi, -tentum or -tensum. So in-, oe-, and re-tendo. detendo has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.*
- \*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. *Tergeo, of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.*
- Têro, trîvi, trîtum, d. to rub.**
- Texo, texui, textum, d. to weave.**
- Tingo or tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. to moisten, tinge.**
- \*Tollo, anciently têtûli, rarely tolli, d. to raise. *The perfect and supine sustûli and sublâtum from suffêro take the place of the perfect and supine of tollô and sustollô. \*sustollô, —, r. to raise up, to take away. \*attollô, —. So extollô.*
- Trâho, traxi, tractum, r. d. to draw.**
- \*Trêmo, trêmui, d. to tremble.
- Tribuo, tribui, tributum, r. d. to ascribe.**
- Trûdo, trûsi, trûsum, to thrust.**
- Tundo, tûtûdi, tunsum or tûsum, to beat.** *The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tûsum. Yet contunsum, detunsura, obtunsum, and retunsum, are also found.*
- Ungo, (or -guo), unxi, unctum, d. to anoint.**

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. to burn.

\*Vādo, —, to go. So supervādo. The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evādo, evāsi, r. So pervādo; also invādo, r. d.

Vēho, vxi, vectum, r. to carry.

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. to pluck. So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. The other compounds have velli only, except intervallo, which has vulsi.

\*Vergo, versi, to incline.

Verro, —, versum, d. to brush.

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. to turn. See § 174, Note.

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. to conquer.

\*Viso, —, d. to visit.

\*Vivo, vixi, victurus, d. to live.

\*Volo, vólui, velle (for vólere), to be willing. See § 178.

Volvo, volvi, vólutum, d. to roll.

Vómo, vómui, vómitum, r. d. to vomit.

REMARK. Those verbs in *io* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *capió* (page 115) are, *cápio*, *cúpio*, *fúcio*, *fúcio*, *fúgio*, *jácio*, *pápio*, *quápio*, *rúpio*, *xúpio*, compounds of *lacio* and *specio*, and *grádior*, *mórior*, *párior*, and *mórior*: but compare *mórior* in § 174, and *órior*, and *pórior* in § 177.

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, ácui, s. to grow sour.

\*Egresco, to grow sick.

\*Albesco, —, s. to grow white.

\*Alesco, —, s. to grow. coalesco, -alui, -alítum, to grow together.

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. to take fire.

\*Aresco, —, s. to grow dry. \*exaresco, -arui. So inaresco, peraresco.

\*Augesco, auxi, s. to increase.

\*Calesco, cálui, s. to grow warm.

\*Calvesco, —, s. to become bald.

\*Candesco, candui, s. to grow white.

\*Cānesco, cānui, s. to become hoary.

\*Clāresco, clāui, s. to become bright.

\*Condormisco, -dormivi, s. to go to sleep.

\*Conticesco, -ticui, to become silent.

\*Crebroesco, crebui and crebui, to increase.

\*Crūdesco, crūlui, to become violent.

\*Dītesco, —, to grow rich.

\*Duicesco, —, to grow sweet.

\*Dūresco, dūui, to grow hard.

\*Evīlesco, evīui, to become worthless.

\*Extimesco, -timui, to fear greatly.

\*Fātesco, —, to gape.

\*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. to wilt.

\*Fervesco, fervui, s. to grow hot.

\*Flōresco, flōui, s. to begin to flourish.

\*Frāresco, frāui, to grow rancid.

\*Frigesco, —, s. to grow cold. \*per-

frigesco, -frizi. So refrigesco.

\*FronDESCO, —, s. to put forth leaves.

\*Frūticesco, —, to put forth shoots.

\*Gēlasco, —, s. to freeze. So \*congē-

lasco, s. to congeal.

\*Gēmisco, —, s. to begin to sigh.

\*GemmascO, —, to begin to bud.

\*Gēnērasco, —, s. to be produced.

\*Grandesco, —, to grow large.

\*Grāvesco, —, to grow heavy.

\*Hāresco, —, s. to adhere.

\*Hēbesco, —, s. to grow dull.

\*Horresco, horrui, s. to grow rough.

\*Hūmesco, —, s. to grow moist.

\*Ignesco, —, to become inflamed.

\*Indōlesco, -dōui, d. to be grieved.

\*Insōlesco, —, to become haughty.

\*Intēgrasco, —, to be renewed.

\*JūvēnescO, —, to grow young.

\*Languesco, langui, s. to grow languid.

\*Lāpidesco, —, to become stone.

\*Lātesco, —, to grow broad.

\*Lātesco, to be concealed. s. \*delītesco

-līui; \*oblītesco, -līui.

\*Lentesco, —, to become soft.

\*Līquesco, —, s. to become liquid.

\*dēlīquesco, -līui.

\*Lūcesco, —, s. to grow light, to dawn.

\*Lūtesco, —, s. to become muddy.

\*Māresco, —, s. }

\*Macresco, — } to grow lean.

\*remacresco, -macrui.

\*Mādesco, mādui, s. to grow moist.

- \*Marcesco, —, s. to pine away.  
 \*Mātureco, mātūri, to ripen.  
 \*Misēresco, misēri, s. to pity.  
 \*Mitesco, —, to grow mild.  
 \*Mollesco, —, to grow soft.  
 \*Mūtesco, —, to become dumb. \*ob-  
 mūtesco, obmūtui.  
 \*Nigresco, nigrui, s. to grow black.  
 \*Nitesco, nitui, s. to grow bright.  
 \*Nōtesco, nōtui, to become known.  
 \*Obbrūtesco, —, to become brutish.  
 \*Obdormisco, —, s. to fall asleep.  
 \*Obsurdesco, —, s. to grow deaf.  
 \*Occallesco, —, callui, to become callous.  
 \*Olesco, (scarcely used.) \*ābōlesco,  
 —, ōlvi, s. to cease. ādōlesco, —, ōlvi,  
 —, ultum, s. to grow up. exōlesco,  
 —, ōlvi, —, ōlētum, to grow out of date.  
 So obsōlesco. inōlesco, —, ōlvi, —, ōl-  
 tum, d. to grow in or on.  
 \*Pallesco, pallui, s. to grow pale.  
 \*Pātesco, pātui, s. to be opened.  
 \*Pāvesco, pāvi, s. to grow fearful.  
 \*Pertimesco, —, tūmui, d. to fear greatly.  
 \*Pinguesco, —, to grow fat.  
 \*Pūbesco, —, to come to maturity.  
 \*Puērasco, —, to become a boy.  
 \*Pūtesco, —, s. }  
 \*Putresco, —, s. } to become putrid.  
 \*Rāresco, —, to become thin.  
 \*Rēspiscō, —, s. }  
 \*Rēspiscō, —, s. } to recover one's  
 senses.  
 \*Rigresco, rigui, s. to grow cold.  
 \*Rūbesco, rūbui, s. to grow red. \*ārū-  
 besco, —, rūbui, d.
- \*Sānesco, —, to become sound. \*con-  
 sānesco, —, sānui.  
 \*Sēnesco, sēnui, s. d. to grow old. sē-  
 consēnesco.  
 \*Sentisco, —, s. to perceive.  
 \*Siccesco, —, to become dry.  
 \*Silesco, silui, s. to grow silent.  
 \*Sōldesco, —, to become solid.  
 \*Sordesco, sordui, s. to become filthy.  
 \*Splendesco, splendui, s. to become  
 bright.  
 \*Spūmesco, —, to begin to foam.  
 \*Stērilesco, —, to become barren.  
 \*Stūpesco, stūpui, s. to become astun-  
 ished.  
 Suesco, suēvi, suētum, s. to become ac-  
 customed.  
 \*Tābesco, tābui, s. to waste away.  
 \*Tēnēresco and —asco, —, to become  
 tender.  
 \*Tēpesco, tēpui, s. to grow warm.  
 \*Torpesco, torpui, s. to grow torpid.  
 \*Trēmisco, —, s. to begin to tremble.  
 \*Tūmesco, tūmui, s. }  
 \*Turgesco, —, s. } to begin to swell.  
 \*Uvesco, —, to become moist.  
 \*Vālesco, —, s. to become strong.  
 \*Vānesco, —, to vanish. \*āvānesco,  
 —, vānnui.  
 \*Vētērasco, vētērāvi, to grow old.  
 \*Viresco, virui, s. to grow green.  
 \*Vivesco, vixi, s. to come to life. \*rē-  
 vivisco, —, vixi.

### § 174. Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

- Apiscor, aptus, to get. The compounds  
 change ā into I in the first root, and  
 into e in the third; as, ādīpiscor,  
 ādeptus. So indīpiscor.  
 Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.  
 \*Fātiscor, to gape or crack open. The  
 compounds change ā into ē; as, dēfē-  
 tiscor, —, fessus.  
 Fruor, fructus or fructus, fructūrus, d.  
 to enjoy.  
 Fungor, functus, r. d. to perform.  
 Grādiōr, gressus, to walk. The com-  
 pounds change ā into ē; as, aggrēdiōr,  
 aggressus, r. d. Inf. pres. aggrēdi  
 and aggrēdiri; so, progrēdi and progrē-  
 diri; and pres. ind. ēgrēditur, Plaut.  
 \*Inascor, to be angry.  
 Lābor, lapsus, r. to fall.  
 \*Liquor, to melt, flow.  
 Lōquor, lōcūtus, r. d. to speak.  
 Miniscor, (obsolete.) comminiscor, com-  
 mentus, p. to invent. \*rēminiscor,  
 to remember.
- Mōriōr, (mōri, rarely mōriri,) mortuus,  
 mōritūrus, d. to die. So ēmōriri, Plaut.  
 for emōri.  
 Nanciscor, nactus or nactus, to obtain.  
 Nascor, nātus, nascitūrus, u. to be born.  
 Nitor, nixus or nixus, nixūrus, to lean  
 upon.  
 Obliviscor, oblitus, d. p. to forget.  
 Pāciscor, pactus, d. to bargain. So  
 dēpāciscor.  
 Pātiōr, passus, r. d. to suffer. perpētiōr  
 —, pessus.  
 From plecto, to twine, come, ampleo-  
 tor, amplexus, d. p. complector, com-  
 plexus, p. So circumplector.  
 Prōfisciscor, prōfectus, r. to depart.  
 Quēror, questus, m. u. d. to complain.  
 \*Ringor, to snarl.  
 Sēquor, sēcūtus, r. d. to follow.  
 Tuor, tātus, to protect.  
 \*Vescor, d. to eat.  
 Ulciscor, ultus, m. d. p. to avenge.  
 Utor, ūsus, r. d. to use.

**NOTE.** *Disvertor, praverter, reverter*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *revertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *iv*, and their third in *it*; as, *audio, audiivi, auditum*.

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation:—

*Audio, -ivi or -ii, m. u. r. d. to hear.*  
*\*Cio, civi, to excite. Cf. cico, § 168.*  
*Conodio, -ivi or -ii, to season.*  
*Custodio, -ivi or -ii, d. to guard.*  
*\*Dormio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. to sleep.*  
*Erudio, -ivi or -ii, d. to instruct.*  
*Expedio, -ivi or -ii, d. to disentangle.*  
*Finio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to finish.*  
*\*Gestio, -ivi or -ii, to exult; desire.*  
*Impedio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to entangle.*  
*Insanio, -ivi or -ii, to be mad.*  
*Irratio, -ivi or -ii, to ensnare.*  
*Lenio, -ivi or -ii, d. to mitigate.*  
*Mollio, -ivi or -ii, d. to soften.*

*\*Mugio, -ivi or -ii, to bellow.*  
*Munio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to fortify.*  
*Mutio, -ivi, to mutter.*  
*Nutrio, -ivi or -ii, d. to nourish.*  
*Partio, -ivi or -ii, r. to divide.*  
*Polio, -ivi, d. to polish.*  
*Punio, -ivi or -ii, d. to punish.*  
*Redimio, -ivi, to crown.*  
*Scio, -ivi, u. r. to know.*  
*Servio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. to serve.*  
*Sopio, -ivi or -ii, to lull asleep.*  
*Stabilio, -ivi or -ii, to establish.*  
*Tinnio, -ivi or -ii, r. to tinkle.*  
*Vestio, -ivi or -ii, to clothe.*

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

**REMARK.** The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sepio, sepsi, septum*. A few become irregular by syncope; as, *venio, vèni, ventum*.

*Amicio, -ui or -xi, amictum, d. to clothe.*  
*\*Balbutio, —, to stammer.*  
*Bullio, ii, itum, to bubble.*  
*\*Cæcütio, —, to be dim-sighted.*  
*\*Cambio, —, to exchange.*  
*\*Dementio, —, to be mad.*  
*Effutio, —, to babble.*  
*Eo, ivi or ii, itum, r. d. to go. The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except öbeo, præeo, and sübeo, which have ivi or ii. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except ädeo, ambio, ineo, öbeo, prætereö, sübeo, circümeo or circueo rëdeo, transeo, and \*†vëneo, vënii r. (from vënum eo), to be sold.*  
*Farcio, farsî, fartum or farctum, is cram. The compounds generally change a to e; as, réfercio, -fersi, -fertum, but con- and 3f-, -farcio and -fercio.*  
*Fastidio, -ii, -itum, d. to loathe.*  
*\*Fërio, —, d. to strike.*

*\*Fëröcio, —, to be fierce.*  
*Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. to prop up.*  
*\*Gannio, —, to yelp, bark.*  
*\*Glöcio, —, to cluck as a hen.*  
*\*Glütio, ivi, or glütii, to swallow.*  
*Grandio, —, to make great.*  
*\*Grunnio, grunnii, to grunt.*  
*Haurio, hausi, rar. haurii, haustum, rar. haustum, hausturus, haustus, u. d. to draw.*  
*\*Hinnio, —, to neigh.*  
*\*Ineptio, —, to trifle.*  
*\*Lascivio, lascivii, to be wanton.*  
*\*Ligürio, ligürîi, to feed delicately.*  
*\*Lippio, —, r. to be blear-eyed.*  
*\*Obëdio, obëdii, r. to obey.*  
*Pärio is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing ä to ö; as, äpërio, äpëriui, äpertum, r. d. to open. So öpërio, d. compërio compëri, compertum, rarely depcompërior, to find out. So repërio, r. d.*



**Pāvio**, —, *pāvītum*, to beat.

\***Prūrio**, —, to itch.

**Queo**, *quvi* or *quii*, *quītum*, to be able.

So \***nēqueo**.

\***Raucio**, —, *r.* to be hoarse.

\***Rūgio**, —, to roar as a lion.

**Sævio**, *sævii*, *itum*, *r.* to rage.

\***Sāgio**, —, to perceive keenly.

\***Sālio**, *sālui* or *sālīi*, to leap. The

compounds change *ā* into *i*; as, \***absil-**

**lio**, —. So **circumsilio**. \***assilio**, -*ui*.

So **disilio**, **inailio**. \***dēsilio**, -*ui* or -*ii*.

So **exsilio**, **rēsilio**, **subsilio**. \***transil-**

**io**, -*ui* or -*ivi*, *d.* So **prōsilio**.

**Sādo**, —, *itum*, *r. d.* to salt.

**Sancio**, *sanxi*, *sancitum* or *sanctum*, *d.* to ratify, sanction.

**Sarcio**, *sarsi*, *sartum*, *d.* to patch.

**Sarrio**, -*ivi* or -*ui*, *sarritum*, *d.* to weed, hoe.

\***Scātūrio**, —, to gush out.

**Sentio**, *sensi*, *sensum*, *r.* to feel.

**Sēpēlio**, *sēpēlvi* or -*ii*, *rar.* **sēpēli**, *sē-*

*pultum*, *r. d.* to bury.

**Sēpio**, *sepsi*, *septum*, *d.* to hedge in.

\***Singultio**, —, to sob, hiccup.

\***Sitio**, *sitii*, to thirst.

**Suffio**, -*ii*, -*itum*, *d.* to fumigate.

\***Tussio**, —, to cough.

\***Vāgio**, *vāgii*, to cry.

**Vēnio**, *vēni*, *ventum*, *r.* to come.

**Vincio**, *vinxi*, *viuctum*, *r. d.* to bind.

**NOTE.** Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three:—\***ēsūrio**, —, *ēsūritus*, *r.* to desire to eat; \***nuptūrio**, -*ivi*, to desire to marry; \***partūrio**, -*ivi*, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

### § 177. Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

**Assentior**, *assensus*, *r. d. p.* to assent.

**Blandior**, *blanditus*, to flatter.

**Largior**, *largitus*, *p.* to give, bestow.

**Mentior**, *mentitus*, *r. p.* to lie.

**Mētior**, *mensus* or *mētītus*, *d. p.* to measure.

**Mōlior**, *mōlītus*, *d.* to strive, toil.

**Ordior**, *orsus*, *d. p.* to begin.

**Orior**, *ortus*, *ōritūrus*, *d.* to spring up.

Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.

**Pērior**, (*obs. whence pēritus.*) *ex-*

*pērior*, *expertus*, *r. d.* to try. *oppē-*

*rior*, *opertus* or *oppēritus*, *d.* to wait for.

**Partior**, *partītus*, *d.* to divide.

**Pōtior**, *pōtītus*, *r. d.* to obtain, enjoy. In the poets the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation.

**Sortior**, *sortītus*, *r.* to cast lots.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum*, *vōlo*, *fēro*, *ēdo*, *fio*, *eo*, *queo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Volo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

**REMARK.** It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after *ē* was dropped, *r* following *l* was changed into *l*; as, *vellre* (*valre*) *velle*; *velērem* (*veilrem*) *vallem*.

**Pres. Indic.**

*vōl'-lō*,

**Pres. Infjn.**

*vel'-lē*,

**Perf. Indic.**

*vōl'-u-ī*,

*to be will ng, to wish.*

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> vō'-lō, vis, vult;	<i>Perf.</i> vōl'-u-i
<i>P.</i> vōl'-ū-mūs, vul'-tis, vō'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> vō-lu'-ē-ram
<i>Imperf.</i> vō-lē'-bam, vō-lē'-bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> vō-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> vō'-lam, vō'-lēa, etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> vē'-lim, vē'-lis, vē'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> vō-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> vē-lī'-mūs, vē-lī'-tis, vē'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> vōl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> vel'-lem, vel'-lēa, vel'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> vel-lē'-mūs, vel-lē'-tis, vel'-lent.	

INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* vel'-lē.  
*Perf.* vōl-u-is'-sē.

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* vō'-lena.

NOTE. *Vult* and *vultis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, and *vis*, for *vis* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nōlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nē* (for *non*) and *vōlo*. The *v* of *vōlo* after *nē* is dropped, and the vowels (*ē* *ō*) are contracted into *ō*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	
nō'-lō,	nol'-lē,	nōl'-u-i,	to be unwilling.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> nō'-lō, non'-vis, non'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> nōl'-u-i.
<i>P.</i> nōl'-ū-mūs, non-vul'-tis, nō'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> nō-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> nō-lē'-bam, -bās, -bāt, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> nō-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> nō'-lam, -lēa, -lēt, etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> nō'-lim, nō'-lis, nō'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> nō-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> nō-lī'-mūs, nō-lī'-tis, nō'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> nōl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> nol'-lem, nol'-lēa, nol'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> nol-lē'-mūs, nol-lē'-tis, nol'-lent.	

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>Sing. 2.</i> nō'-li; <i>Plur.</i> nō-li-tē.	<i>Sing. 2.</i> nō-li-tō, <i>Plur.</i> nōl-i-tō'-tē,
	<i>3.</i> nō-lī'-tō; nō-lun'-tō

INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* nol'-lē.  
*Perf.* nōl-u-is'-sē.

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* nō'-lena.

NOTE. In *non-vis*, *non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *nēvis* and *nēvult* also occur in Plautus.

3. *Mālo* is compounded of *māgis* and *vōlo*. In composition *māgis* drops its final syllable, and *vōlo* its *v*. The vowels (*ā ō*) are then contracted into *a*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>
<i>mā'-lō,</i>	<i>mal'-lē,</i>	<i>māl'-u-i, to prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	<i>mā'-lō, mā'-vis, mā'-vult;</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u-i.</i>
<i>P.</i>	<i>māl'-ū-mūs, mā'-vul'-tis, mā'-lunt.</i>	<i>Plup.</i>	<i>mā-lu'-ē-rau.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mā-lē'-bam, -bās, etc.</i>	<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>mā-lu'-ē-rō.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mā'-lam, -lēs, etc.</i>		

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	<i>mā'-lim, mā'-lis, mā'-lit;</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mā-lu'-ē-rim.</i>
<i>P.</i>	<i>mā-li'-mūs, mā-li'-tis, mā'-lint.</i>	<i>Plup.</i>	<i>māl-u-is'-sem.</i>
<i>Imperf. S.</i>	<i>mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lēt;</i>		
<i>P.</i>	<i>mal-lē'-mūs, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lert.</i>		

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. mal'-lē.</i>	<i>Perf. māl-u-is'-sē.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------------

NOTE. *Māvōlo, māvōlunt; māvōlet; māvēlim, māvēlis, māvēlit; and māvōllem; for mālo, mālunt, etc., occur in Plautus.*

§ 179. *Fēro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tūlo* for *tollo*, and *tlao*, sup. *tlātum*, by aphæresis, *lātum*:—2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>fē'-rō, (to bear.)</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>fē'-rōr, (to be borne.)</i>
<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>fer'-rē,</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>fer'-rī,</i>
<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>tū'-li,</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs.</i>
<i>Supine.</i>	<i>lā'-tum.</i>		

## INDICATIVE.

## Present.

<i>S</i>	<i>fē'-rō, fers, fert;</i>	<i>fē'-rōr, fer'-ris or -rē, fer'-tūr;</i>
<i>F</i>	<i>fēr'-i-mūs, fer'-tis, fē'-runt.</i>	<i>fēr'-i-mūr, fē'-rim'-i-nī, fē'-run'-tū</i>

<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fē-rē'-bam.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fē-rē'-bār.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fē'-ram, -rēs, etc.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fē'-rār -rē'-ris or -rē'-rē, etc</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tū'-li.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs sum or fu'-i.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>tū'lē'-ram.</i>	<i>Plup.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>tū'-lē-rō</i>	<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fě-rum, -rās, etc.	<i>Pres.</i> fě-rār, -ra-ris or -r. rě, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i> fer'-rem, -rēs, etc.	<i>Imperf.</i> fer'-rēr, -rē-ris, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū-lě-rim.	<i>Perf.</i> lā-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.
<i>Plup.</i> tū-lis'-sem.	<i>Plup.</i> lā-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fěr,	<i>P.</i> fer'-tě.	<i>Pres. S.</i> fer'-rě,	<i>P.</i> fě-rim'-i-ni.
<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tō,	<i>P.</i> fer'-tō'-tě,	<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tōr,	<i>F.</i> (fě-rēm'-i-ni.).
	fer'-tō;		fě-run'-tōr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer'-rě.	<i>Pres.</i> fer'-ri.
<i>Perf.</i> tū-lis'-sě.	<i>Perf.</i> lā-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.
<i>Fut.</i> lā-tū-rūs es'-sě.	<i>Fut.</i> lā-tum i'-ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> fě-reus.	<i>Perf.</i> lā-tūs.
<i>Fut.</i> lā-tu'-rūs.	<i>Fut.</i> fě-ren'-dūs.

## GERUND.

fě-ren'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

Former. lā-tum.

Latter. lā-tū.

**NOTE.** In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetūli*, *tetuliati*, *tetūlii*, *tetulērunt*; *tetulēro*, *tetulērit*; *tetuliāsem*, and *tetuliisse*.

§ 180. *Fio*, 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root; but it is used also as a passive of *fāciō*, from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus*. The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fiēre* to *fiēri*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
fi'-ō,	fi'-ēri,	fac'-tūs, to be made or to become.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fi'-ō, fīs, ſit;	<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sum or fu'-i.
<i>P.</i> fi-mūs, fi'-tis, fi'-unt.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> fi-ē'-bam, fi-ē'-bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> fac'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> fi'-am, fi'-ēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fi'-am, fi'-ās, etc.	<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim.
<i>Imp.</i> fi'-ē-rem, -ē-rēs, etc.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. Sing.* fī; *Plur.* fī'-tē.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* fī'-ē-rī.*Perf.* fac'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē.*Fut.* fac'-tum ī-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf.* fac'-tūs.*Fut.* fā-ci-en'-dūs.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* fac'-tū.

**NOTE.** The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *facio* in the passive; as, *calefacio*, to warm; passive, *calefacio*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. (Cf. *facio* in the list, § 172.) Yet *confit*, *dēfit*, and *ingit*, occur. See § 183, 12, 18, 14.

— § 181. *Edo*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it has also forms similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *sum*:—  
Thus.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

<i>S.</i> ē'-dō,	ē'-dīs,	ē'-dīt,
	(or ēs,	est);
<i>P.</i> ēd'-ī-mūs,	ēd'-ī-tīs,	ē'-dunt.
	(or es'-tīs),	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Imperfect.*

<i>S.</i> ēd'-ē-rem,	ēd'-ē-rēs,	ēd'-ē-rēt,
(or es'-sem,	es'-sēs,	es'-sēt);
<i>P.</i> ēd'-ē-rē'-mūs,	ēd'-ē-rē'-tīs,	ēd'-ē-rent,
(or es'-sē'-mūs,	es'-sē'-tīs,	es'-sent).

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> ē'-dē,	<i>P.</i> ēd'-ī-tē,
(or ēs;	es'-tē).
<i>Fut. S.</i> ēd'-ī-tō,	<i>P.</i> ēd'-ī-tō-tē, ē-dun'-tō.
(or es'-tō,	es-tō-tē).

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres* ēd'-ē-rē, (or es'-sē).

## PASSIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ēd'-ī-tūr,	(or es'-tūr).
<i>Imperf.</i> ēd'-ē-rē-tūr,	(or es'-sē-tūr).

**NOTE.** (a.) In the present subjunctive, *ēdim*, *ēdis*, etc., are found, for *ēdam* *ēdis*, etc.

(b.) In the compounds of *ēdo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur. *Ambēdo* has the participles *ambens* and *ambēsus*; *comēdo* has *comēsus*, *comēsūrus* and rarely *comestus*; and *adēdo* and *exēdo* have *adēsus* and *exēsus*.

§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Part.
e'-ō,	i'-rē,	i'-vi,	i'-tum, to go.

## INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. e'-ō, is, It;	Fut. i'-bō, i'-bis, i'-bit, etc.
P. i'-mūs, i'-tis, e'-unt.	Perf. i'-vi, i'-vis-ti, i'-vīt, etc.
Imperf. S. i'-bam, i'-bās, i'-bāt;	Plup. i'v'-ē-ram, i'v'-ē-rās, etc.
P. i'-bā-mūs, etc.	Fut. perf. i'v'-ē-rē, i'v'-ē-rīs, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. e'-am, e'-ās, e'-āt, etc.	Perf. i'v'-ē-rim, i'v'-ē-rīs, etc.
Imperf. i'-rem, i'-rēs, i'-rēt, etc.	Plup. i'-vis-sem, i'-vis-sēs, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. S. i,	P. i'-tē.
Fut. 2. i'-tō,	i'-tō'-tē,
3. i'-tō;	e-un'-tō.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. i'-rē.
Perf. i'-vis-ē.
Fut. i-tū'-rūs es-ē.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. i'-ens, (gen. e-un'-tis.)
Fut. i-tū'-rūs, a, um.

## GERUND.

e-un'-di,
e-un'-dō, etc.

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam*, *ies*, *iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam*, *redies*, *abiet*, *exiet*, *procliet*. *Istis*, *issem*, and *isse*, are formed by contraction for *ivistis*, *ivissem*, and *ivisse*. See § 182, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri*, and the third persons singular *itur*, *ibatur*, *ibitur*, *itum est*, etc.; *ētur*, *irētur*, *cundum est*, etc., which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (a.)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo*, including *veneo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ii* in the perfect rather than *vi*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo*, *anteo*, *inco*, *prætereo*, *sūbeo*, and *transco*, being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniūtur* occurs as a future passive of *inco*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audire*, but has either *ambibat* or *ambiēbat*.

NOTE. *Queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

- |                               |                              |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Odi, <i>I hate.</i>        | 6. Fāri, <i>to speak.</i>    | 11. Cēdo, <i>tell, or give me.</i> |
| 2. Cœpi, <i>I have begun.</i> | 7. Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>     | 12. Confit, <i>it is done.</i>     |
| 3. Mēmīni, <i>I remember.</i> | 8. Ave, } <i>hail, or</i>    | 13. Dēfit, <i>it is wanting.</i>   |
| 4. Aio, } <i>I say.</i>       | 9. Salve, } <i>farewell.</i> | 14. Infīt, <i>he begins.</i>       |
| 5. Inquam, }                  | 10. Apāge, <i>begone.</i>    | 15. Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>      |

1. Odi, cœpi, and mēmīni are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive verbs*. Odi has also a deponent form in the perfect:—  
Thus,

IND. perf. ō-di or ō-sus sum; *plup.* ōd'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* ōd'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. perf. ōd'-ē-rim; *plup.* ō-dis'-sem.

INF. perf. ō-dis'-se; *fut.* ō-stū'-rum es'-se.

PART. *fut.* ō-stū'-rus; *perf.* ō-sus.

NOTE 1. *Exōsus* and *pēdōsus*, like *ōsus*, are used actively. *Odōit*, for *ōdīit*, occurs, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 13, 19: and *odēndi* in Appuleius.

2. IND. perf. cœ-pi; *plup.* cœp'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* cœp'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. perf. cœp'-ē-rim; *plup.* cœ-pis'-sem.

INF. perf. cœ-pis'-se; *fut.* cœp-tū'-rum es'-se.

PART. *fut.* cœp-tū'-rus; *perf.* cœp'-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, *cæpio*, present subjunctive, *cæpiam*, and infinitive, *cæpere*. Before an infinitive passive, *cæptus est*, etc., rather than *cæpi*, etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. perf. mēm'-i-ni; *plup.* mēm'-mīn'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* mēm'-mīn'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. perf. mēm'-mīn'-ē-rim; *plup.* mēm-i-nis'-sem.

INF. perf. mēm-i-nis'-sē.

IMPERAT. 2 pers. S. mēm-en'-to; P. mēm-en-tū'-tē.

NOTE 3. *Odī* and *mēmīni* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future, as, *fugiet atque odērit*. Cic. In this respect. *nōvi*, I know, the perfect of *noscere*, to learn, and *consuevi*, I am wont, the perfect of *consuesco*, I accustom myself, agree with *odī* and *mēmīni*.

4. IND. pres. ai'-o,\* ai'-is, ai'-it; —, —, ai'-unt.\*

— *imp.* ai-ē'-bum, ai-ē'-bās, ai-ē'-bāt; ai-ē'-bā'-mūs, ai-ē'-bā'-tīs, ai-ē'-bant.

SUBJ. pres. —, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; —, —, ai'-ant.

IMPERAT. pres. ai'-i. PART. pres. ai'-ens.

NOTE 4. *Ais* with *ne* is contracted to *ain'* like *viden'*, *abīn'*: for *vidēne*, *abīne*. The comic writers use the imperfect *aibas*, *aibat* and *aibant*, which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. pres. in'-quam, in'-quis, in'-quit; in'-qui-mūs, in'-qui-tīs, in'-qui-unt.

— *imp.* —, —, in-qui-ē'-bāt, and in-qui-ē'-bāt; —, —, in-qui-ē'-bant

— *fut.* —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-ēt; —, —, —.

— *perf.* —, in-quis'-tī, in-quit; —, —, —.

SUBJ. pres. —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in-qui-ē'-tīs, in'-qui-ant.

IMPERAT. in'-quē, in'-qui-to.

6. IND. pres. —, —, fā'-tūr; *fut.* fā'-bōr, —, fāb'-i-tūr.

— *perf.* fātus est; *plup.* fātus eram.

IMPERAT. fā'-rē. PART. pres. fāns; *perf.* fā'-tūs; *fut.* fān'-dūs.

INFIN. pres. fā'-ri or fā'-ri-ēr. GERUND. gen. fān'-dī; abl. fān'-dō.

SUPINE, fā'-tū.

\* Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, etc., wherever the diphthong ai is followed by a vowel or i, i.

*interfari* has the forms *interfatur*, *interfata est*, *interfari*, *interfane*, and *interfatus*.—*Effari* has *effabor*, *effabere*, *effatus est*, *effati sunt*; imperat. *effare*; *effari*, *effatus*, *effandus*, *effando*; *effatu*.—*Præfari* occurs in the following forms, *præfatur*, *præfamur*; *præfabantur*; *præfärer præfarentur*; *præfati sumus*; *præfatus fuero*; imperat. *præfate*, *præfamino*; *præfane*, *præfatus*, *præfandus*; *præfando*.—*Præfari* has *præfatur*, *præfata est*, *præfata sunt*, *præfatus* and *præfane*.

7. IND. pres. *quæ-so*, —, *quæ-elt*; *quæ-û-mûs*, —, —.

INF. pres. *quæ-s'è-rè*.

8. T. *â-vê*, *â-vê-tê*; *â-vê-to*. INF. *â-vê-rè*.

*âvère* and *salvère* are often used with *jâbeo*.

9. IND. pres. *sal-vè-o*; fut. *sal-vê-bis*. INF. pres. *sal-vê-rè*.

IMPERAT. *sal-vê*, *sal-vê-tê*; *sal-vê-to*.

10. IMPERAT. *âp'â-gê*. So *âge* with a subject either singular or plural.

11. IMPERAT. *ing. cê-do*; pl. *cet-tê* for *cêd'-i-tê*. Hence *cêdodum*.

12. IND. pres. *con-flit*; fut. *con-fl'-et*.

SUBJ. pres. *con-fl'-ât*; imperf. *con-fl'-è-rèt*. INF. pres. *con-fl'-è-ri*.

13. IND. pres. *dê-flit*; pl. *dê-fl'-unt*; fut. *dê-fl'-ët*. SUBJ. pres. *dê-fl'-ët*.

INF. pres. *dê-fl'-è-ri*. So *ef-fl'-è-ri*, and *in-ter-fl'-è-ri*. *Plant.*; and *in-ter-fl'-at*. *Lucr.*

14. IND. pres. *in-flit*; pl. *in-fl'-unt*.

15. IND. pres. *ô-vât*. SUBJ. pres. *ô-vêt*; imperf. *ô-vê-rèt*.

PART. pres. *ô-vans*; perf. *ô-vê-tûs*; fut. *ôv-â-tû-rûs*. GERUND, *ô-van'-dû*.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Förem*, *föres*, etc., *f'rê*, (see § 154, R. 3.) *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausi*; *ausint*. *Fazo* and *fazim*, *faxis*, *faxit*; *faximus*, *faxitis*, *faxint*. *Faxem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect subjunctive. See § 162, 7, (c.), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *fûro*, to be mad, and *do* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used. So in the imperative *act*, *cipe* and *polle*, from *scio*, *cipio*, and *polleo*, do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *si vultis*, *sides* for *si audes* (for *audies*.)

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. (a.) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

(b.) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it*, commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat scribere*, *it* delights me to write. Sometimes an accusative depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a subject; as, *me miseret tui*, I pity thee.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the several conjugations like *delectat*, it delights; *dêcet*, it becomes; *convincit*, it convicts; *evenit*, it happens; *th* is:—



+

	1a Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
<b>IND. Pres.</b>	delectat,	dēcet,	contingit,	venit,
<b>Imp.</b>	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	veniebāt,
<b>Fut.</b>	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	veniet,
<b>Perf.</b>	delectavit,	decuit,	contigit,	evenit,
<b>Plup.</b>	delectavērat,	decuērat,	contigērat,	evenērat,
<b>Fut. perf.</b>	delectavērit.	decuērit.	contigērit.	evenērit.
<b>SUB. Pres.</b>	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
<b>Imp.</b>	delectāret,	decēret,	contingēret,	eveniret,
<b>Perf.</b>	delectavērit,	decuērit,	contigērit,	evenērit,
<b>Plup.</b>	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
<b>INF. Pres.</b>	delectāre,	decēre,	contingēre,	evenire,
<b>Perf.</b>	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

2. (a.) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the *passive* voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

*Illī pugnant*; or *pugnātur ab illis*, they fight. *Illī quaerunt*, or *quaeritur ab illis*, they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(b.) In the *passive* form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

*Pugnātum est*, we, they, etc. fought; or, the battle was fought. *Concurritur*, the people run together; or, there is a concourse.

(c.) Sometimes the English subject in the *passive* form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi*, thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the *passive* voice:—

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>Pres.</b>	pugnātur,	favētur,	currītur,	venītur,
<b>Imp.</b>	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
<b>Fut.</b>	pugnabitur,	favebitur,	currētur,	veniētur,
<b>Perf.</b>	pugnātum est or fuit,	fautum est or fuit,	cursum est or fuit,	ventum est or fuit,
<b>Plup.</b>	pugnātum erat or fuērat,	fautum erat or fuērat,	cursum erat or fuērat,	ventum erat or fuērat,
<b>Fut. p.</b>	pugnātum erit or fuērit.	fautum erit or fuērit.	cursum erit or fuērit.	ventum erit or fuērit.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>Pres.</b>	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
<b>Imp.</b>	pugnārētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
<b>Perf.</b>	pugnātum sit or fuērit,	fautum sit or fuērit,	cursum sit or fuērit,	ventum sit or fuērit,
<b>Plup.</b>	pugnātum esset or fuisset.	fautum esset or fuisset.	cursum esset or fuisset.	ventum esset or fuisset.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>Pres.</b>	pugnāri	favēri,	currī,	venīri,
<b>Perf.</b>	pugnātum esse or fuisse,	fautum esse or fuisse,	cursum esse or fuisse,	ventum esse or fuisse,
<b>Fut.</b>	pugnātum iri.	fautum iri.	cursum iri.	ventum iri.

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, both of active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the dative of the person; as, *mihi scribendum fuit*, I have been obliged to write; *moriendum est omnibus*, all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *décet*, *libet*, *licet*, *âquet*, *mihi*, *oportet*, *piget*, *penitet*, *pudet*, and *taedet*. (See § 169.) Four of these, *décet*, *libet*, *licet*, and *âquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(a.) In the first conjugation:—

<i>Constat</i> , it is evident.	<i>Văcat</i> , there is leisure.	<i>Pugnătur</i> , a battle is fought.
<i>Juvat</i> , it delights.	<i>Certătur</i> , there is a contention.	<i>Stătur</i> , they stand firm.
<i>Præstat</i> , it is better.	<i>Pecătur</i> , a fault is committed.	
<i>Restat</i> , it remains.		
<i>Stat</i> , it is resolved.		

(b.) In the second conjugation:—

<i>Appăret</i> , it appears.	<i>Pertinet</i> , it pertains.	<i>Persuadetur</i> , he, they, etc. are persuaded.
<i>Attinet</i> , it belongs to.	<i>Plăcet</i> , it pleases.	<i>Pertussum est</i> , he, they, etc. are disgusted with.
<i>Displicet</i> , it displeases.	<i>Flătur</i> , we, etc. weep, or, there is weeping.	<i>Silătur</i> , silence is maintained.
<i>Dălet</i> , it grieves.	<i>Nocătur</i> , injury is inflicted.	
<i>Miseretur</i> , it distresses.		
<i>Pătet</i> , it is plain.		

(c.) In the third conjugation:—

<i>Accidit</i> , it happens.	<i>Miserescit</i> , it distresses.	<i>Desinitur</i> , there is an end.
<i>Conducit</i> , it is useful.	<i>Sufficit</i> , it suffices.	<i>Scribitur</i> , it is written.
<i>Contingit</i> , it happens.	<i>Creditur</i> , it is believed.	<i>Vivitur</i> , we, etc. live.
<i>Fallit</i> , or } it escapes me;	<i>Curritur</i> , people run.	
<i>Făgit</i> me, } I do not know.		

(d.) In the fourth conjugation:—

<i>Convénit</i> , it is agreed upon; it is fit.	<i>Expédit</i> , it is expedient.	<i>Scitur</i> , it is known.
<i>Evénit</i> , it happens.	<i>Dormitur</i> , we, they, etc. sleep.	<i>Itur</i> , they, etc. go.
		<i>Venitur</i> , they, etc. come.

(e.) Among irregular verbs:—

<i>Fit</i> , it happens.	<i>Præterit</i> me, it is unknown to me.	<i>Răfert</i> , it concerns.
<i>Intéret</i> , it concerns.	<i>Prădest</i> , it avails.	<i>Săbit</i> , it occurs.
<i>Obest</i> , it is hurtful.		<i>Supărest</i> , it remains.

(f.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupiter*, *deus*, or *cælum*, which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following:—

<i>Fulget</i> ,	<i>Lapidat</i> , it rains stones.	<i>Tănat</i> , it thunders.
<i>Fulgurat</i> , } it lightens.	<i>Lucescit</i> , } it grows light.	<i>Vesperascit</i> , } evening
<i>Fulminat</i> ,	<i>Illucescit</i> ,	<i>Advesperascit</i> , } ap-
<i>Gelat</i> , it freezes.	<i>Ningit</i> , it snows.	<i>Invesperascit</i> , } approaches.
<i>Grandinat</i> , it hails.	<i>Pluit</i> , it rains.	

*Lapătat*, *ningit*, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice.

**REM. 2.** Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

**REM. 3.** Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *punitur* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *das*, and the gerund. *Pūdet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

**REM. 4.** Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tiberis inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination*; as, *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame;—in *conjugation*; as, *lāvo*, *-āre*, and *lāvo*, *-ēre*, to wash;—or in certain tenses; as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked *r.*, occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

Abominor, *to abhor.*  
Adūlor, *to flatter.*  
Altercor, *to dispute.*  
Amplexor, *to embrace.*  
Arbitror, *to suppose.*  
Argūtor, *to prate.*  
Assentior, *to assent.*  
Aucūpor, *to hunt after.*  
Augūror, *to foretell.*  
Aurigor, *to drive a chariot.*  
Auspīcor, *to take the auspices.*  
Cachinnor, *r. to laugh aloud.*  
Comitor, *to accompany.*  
Commentor, *to deliberate.*  
Convivor, *to feast together.*  
Cunctor, (cont.), *to delay.*  
Dignor, *to deem worthy.*  
Depascor, *to feed upon.*  
Elucubror, *to elaborate.*

Fabrīcor, *to frame.*  
Fenēror, *to lend on interest.*  
Fluctuor, *to fluctuate.*  
Frustror, *to disappoint.*  
Frutīcor, *to sprout.*  
Impertior, *r. to impart.*  
Jurgor, *to quarrel.*  
Lacrimor, *r. to weep.*  
Ludīcor, *to ridicule.*  
Luxūrior, *r. to be rank.*  
Medīcor, *to heal.*  
Mēreor, *to deserve.*  
Mētor, *to measure.*  
Misēreor, *to commiserate.*  
Modēror, *to moderate.*  
Munēror, *r. to bestow.*  
Nictor, *r. to wink.*  
Nūtrior, *r. to nourish.*  
Obsōnor, *to cater.*  
Opīnor, *to suppose.*

Oscitor, *to gape.*  
Pacīfīcor, *r. to make a peace.*  
Palpor, *to caress.*  
Partior, *to divide.*  
Popūlor, *to lay waste.*  
Pūrior, *to punish.*  
Ruminor, *to ruminate.*  
Sciscitor, *to inquire.*  
Sortior, *to cast lots.*  
Stabūlor, *to stable.*  
Tueor, *to defend.*  
Tumultuor, *to be in confusion.*  
Tutor, *to defend.*  
Ūtor, *to use.*  
Urīnor, *to drive.*  
Velīfīcor, *to set sail.*  
Venēror, *to reverence.*  
Vocīfīcor, *to bawl.*

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

Boo, *-āre*, } *to roar.*  
Boo, *-āre*, *r.* }  
Bullo, *-āre*, } *to boil.*  
Bullio, *-āre*, }  
Cleo, *-āre*, } *to excite.*  
Cio, *-āre*, *r.* }  
Denseo, *-āre*, } *to thicken.*  
Denseo, *-āre*, }  
Ferveo, *-āre*, } *to boil.*  
Fervo, *-āre*, }  
Fōdio, *-āre*, } *to dig.*  
Fōdio, *-āre*, *r.* }

Fulgeo, *-āre*, } *to shine.*  
Fulgo, *-āre*, *r.* }  
Lāvo, *-āre*, } *to wash.*  
Lāvo, *-āre*, *r.* }  
Līno, *-āre*, } *to anoint.*  
Līno, *-āre*, *r.* }  
Nīcto, *-āre*, } *to wink.*  
Nīcto, *-āre*, }  
Sālo, *-āre*, } *to salt.*  
Sālo, *-āre*, }  
Scāteo, *-āre*, } *to abound.*  
Scāto, *-āre*, *r.* }

Sōno, *-āre*, } *to sound.*  
Sōno, *-āre*, }  
Strīdeo, *-āre*, } *to creak.*  
Strīdo, *-āre*, }  
Tergeo, *-āre*, } *to wipe.*  
Tergo, *-āre*, }  
Tueor, *-āre*, } *to protect.*  
Tuor, *-āre*, *r.* }

Those marked *r.* are rarely used.

*Mōrior, ōrior, and pōrior*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

Abdico, -āre, to abdicate.	Edo, -ēre, to eat.	Nitor, -ī, to strive.
Abdico, -ēre, to refuse.	Edo, -ēre, to publish.	Obſero, -āre, to look up.
Accido, -ēre, to fall upon.	Edūco, -āre, to educate.	Obſero, -ēre, to sow.
Accido, -ēre, to cut down.	Edūco, -ēre, to draw out.	Occido, -ēre, to fall.
Addo, -ēre, to add.	Effero, -āre, to make wild.	Occido, -ēre, to kill.
Adeo, -ēre, to go to.	Effero, -re, to carry out.	Operto, -īre, to cover.
Aggéro, -āre, to heap up.	Excido, -ēre, to fall out.	Operto, -āri, to work.
Aggéro, -ēre, to heap upon.	Excido, -ēre, to cut off.	Oppertor, -īri, to wait for
Allēgo, -āre, to depute.	Ferio, -īre, to strike.	Pando, -āre, to bend.
Allēgo, -ēre, to choose.	Fero, -re, to bear.	Pando, -ēre, to extend.
Appello, -āre, to call.	Ferior, -āri, to keep holiday.	Pāro, -āre, to prepare.
Appello, -ēre, to drive to.	Frigeo, -ēre, to be cold.	Pāreo, -āre, to appear.
Cādo, -ēre, to fall.	Frigo, -ēre, to fry.	Pārio, -ēre, to bring forth.
Cādo, -ēre, to cut.	Fūgo, -āre, to put to flight.	Pārio, -āre, to balance.
Cādo, -ēre, to yield.	Fūgio, -ēre, to fly.	Pendeo, -ēre, to hang.
Cāleo, -ēre, to be hot.	Fundo, -āre, to found.	Pendo, -ēre, to weigh.
Cāleo, -ēre, to be hard.	Fundo, -ēre, to pour out.	Percōlo, -āre, to filter.
Cāleo, -ēre, to sing.	Incido, -ēre, to fall into.	Percōlo, -ēre, to adorn.
Cāneo, -ēre, to be gray.	Incido, -ēre, to cut into.	Permāneo, -ēre, to re-
Cāreo, -re, to want.	Indico, -āre, to show.	main.
Cāro, -ēre, to card wool.	Indico, -ēre, to proclaim.	Permāno, -āre, to flow
Cālo, -āre, to conceal.	Inficio, -ēre, to stain.	through.
Cālo, -āre, to carve.	Infitor, -āri, to deny.	Prædico, -āre, to publish.
Censeo, -ēre, to think.	Intercedo, -ēre, to happen.	Prædico, -ēre, to foretell.
Sentio, -īre, to feel.	Intercedo, -ēre, to cut	Prōdo, -ēre, to betray.
Clando, -ēre, to shut.	asunder.	Prōdeo, -īre, to come forth.
Clando, -ēre, to be lame.	Jaceo, -ēre, to lie.	Recedo, -ēre, to retire.
Colligo, -āre, to bind to-	Jacio, -ēre, to throw.	Recido, -ēre, to fall back
gether.	Lābo, -āre, to totter.	Recido, -ēre, to cut off.
Colligo, -ēre, to collect.	Lābor, -ī, to glide.	Reddo, -ēre, to restore.
Cōlo, -āre, to strain.	Lacto, -āre, to suckle.	Rēdeo, -īre, to return.
Cōlo, -ēre, to cultivate.	Lacto, -āre, to deceive.	Refertor, -re, to bring back
Compello, -āre, to accost.	Lēgo, -āre, to depute.	Refertor, -īre, to strike back
Compello, -ēre, to force.	Lēgo, -ēre, to read.	Relēgo, -āre, to remove.
Concido, -ēre, to cut to	Liceo, -ēre, to be lawful.	Relēgo, -ēre, to read over
pieces.	Liceor, -ēri, to bid for.	Sēdo, -āre, to allay.
Concido, -ēre, to fall.	Liquo, -āre, to melt.	Sēdeo, -ēre, to sit.
Concindo, -ēre, to em-	Liqueo, -ēre, to be mani-	Sido, -ēre, to sink.
bark.	fest.	Sēro, -ēre, to sow.
Concindo, -ēre, to tear	Liquor, -ī, to melt.	Sēro, -ēre, to enshrine.
to pieces.	Māno, -āre, to flow.	Succido, -ēre, to fall un-
Consterno, -āre, to terrify.	Māneo, -ēre, to stay.	der.
Consternuo, -ēre, to strew	Mando, -āre, to command.	Succido, -ēre, to cut down.
over.	Mando, -ēre, to eat.	Vādo, -ēre, to go.
Decido, -ēre, to fall down.	Mēto, -ēre, to reap.	Vādor, -āri, to bind over
Decido, -ēre, to cut off.	Mētor, -āri, to measure.	by bail.
Decipio, -ēre, to deceive.	Mētor, -īri, to measure.	Vēneo, -īre, to be sold.
Desipio, -ēre, to dote.	Mētuo, -ēre, to fear.	Vēnio, -īre, to come.
Deligo, -āre, to tie up.	Misēror, -āri, to pity.	Vēnor, -āri, to hunt.
Deligo, -ēre, to choose	Misēreor, -ēri, to pity.	Vincio, -īre, to bind.
Dilligo, -ēre, to love.	Mōror, -āri, to delay.	Vinco, -ēre, to conquer.
Dico, -ēre, to say.	Mōrior, -ī, to die.	Vōlo, -āre, to fly.
Dico, -āre, to dedicate.	Niteo, -ēre, to glitter.	Vōlo, velle, to be willing.

2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect; as,

Aceo, acui, <i>to be sour.</i>	Fulcio, fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>	Paveo, pavi, <i>to fear.</i>
Acuo, acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>	Luceo, luxi, <i>to shine.</i>	Pasco, pavi, <i>to feed.</i>
Qresco, crevi, <i>to grow.</i>	Lugeo, luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>	Pendeo, pependi, <i>to hang.</i>
Cerno, crevi, <i>to decry.</i>	Mulceo, mulsi, <i>to soothe.</i>	Pendo, pependi, <i>to weigh.</i>
Fulgeo, fulsi, <i>to shine.</i>	Mulgeo, mulsi, <i>to milk.</i>	

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle; as,

Frico, frictum, <i>to rub.</i>	Pango, pactum, <i>to drive in.</i>	Pätior, passus, <i>to suffer.</i>
Frigo, frictum, <i>to roast.</i>	Paciscor, pactus, <i>to bargain.</i>	Teneo, tentum, <i>to hold.</i>
Mäneo, mansum, <i>to remain.</i>	Pando, passum, <i>to extend.</i>	Tendo, tentum, <i>to stretch.</i>
Mando, mansum, <i>to chew.</i>		Verro, versum, <i>to brush.</i>
		Verto, versum, <i>to turn.</i>

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. (a.) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root; as,

### FROM NOUNS.

#### Actives.

Armo, <i>to arm,</i> (arma.)
Fraudo, <i>to defraud,</i> (fraus.)
Nomino, <i>to name,</i> (nomen.)
Numéro, <i>to number,</i> (numérus.)

#### Neuters.

Flóreo, <i>to bloom,</i> (flos.)
Frondeo, <i>to produce leaves,</i> (frons.)
Lúceo, <i>to shine,</i> (lux.)
Víreo, <i>to flourish,</i> (vis.)

### FROM ADJECTIVES.

Albo, <i>to whiten,</i> (albus.)	Albeo, <i>to be white,</i> (albus.)
Celebro, <i>to frequent,</i> (celēber.)	Calveo, <i>to be bald,</i> (calvus.)
Libéro, <i>to free,</i> (liber.)	Fláveo, <i>to be yellow,</i> (flāvus.)

(b.) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

Coacervo, <i>to heap together,</i> (acervus.)	Exstirpo, <i>to extirpate,</i> (stirps.)
Excävo, & excavate, (cävus.)	Illäqueo, <i>to insnare,</i> (lāqueus.)

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive; as, *architector*, to build; *comitor*, to accompany; *füror*, to steal; from *architectus*, comes, and *für*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives*; as, *cornior*, to imitate a crow, from *cornix*; *Græcor*, to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso*; as, *patrisso*, to imitate a father.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third root; as, *dōmo*, (*dōmīt-*) *dōmīto*. So *adjūvo*, *adjūto*; *dīco*, *dīcto*; *gēro*, *gēsto*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *ā* of the root is often changed into *ū*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clamāt-*) *clamīto*, to cry frequently.

(b.) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ito* to the first root of the primitive; as, *āgo* (*āg-*) *āgīto*. So *lūteo*, *lūīto*; *nosco*, *nasclīto*; *quæro*, *quærīto*.

(c.) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dīco*, *dīcto*, *dīclīto*; *curro*, *curso*, *curscito*; *venio*, *venio*, *venīto*. Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(d.) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minitor*, from *minor* (*minūt-*); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers-*). So *amplexor*, *sector*, *lōquitor*, from *amplector*, *sequor*, and *lōquor*.

(e.) When verbs of this class express simply an increase of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives*.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *cāleo*, to be hot; *cālesco*, to grow hot.

So *libo*, (*āre*), *lābasco*; *ingēmo*, (*ēre*), *ingēmisco*; *obdormio*, (*īre*), *obdormisco*. *Hīscō* is contracted for *hīasco*, from *hīo*, (*āre*).

(b.) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(c.) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puérasco*, from *puer*; *jūvenesco*, from *jūvenis*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *dīscō*, *poscō*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(a.) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ūrīo*; as, *cāno*, to sup, (*cānāt-*) *cānātūrīo*, to desire to sup.

(b.) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(c.) Verbs in *ūrīo*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prārīo*, *āgūrīo*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *conscribillo*, to scribble, from *conscribo*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so*, *esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *fācesso*, to act earnestly—from *fācio*.

So *cāpesso*, *incesso*, from *cāpio* and *incēdo*. *Concupisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an inceptive, is, in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.

## COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

## § 188. Verbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *œtífico, belligero, lucrifacio*. See § 103, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplifico, multiplico*.
3. Of two verbs; as, *califacio, madefacio, patefacio*.

REM. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o*; the second part is always the verb *facio*.

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benefacio, maledico, satago, nolo, neglige*.
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *adduco, excolo, prado, subrepto, discerno, objungo*.
6. Of a preposition and a noun, as, *pernocto, irratio*.

§ 189. In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *æ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e* :—

Arceo,	Carpo,	Farcio,	Jacto,	Pario,	Patre,	Spargo,
Candeo,	Damno,	Fatiscor,	Lacto,	Partio,	Sacro,	Tracto.
Capto,	Fallo,	Gradior,	Mando,	Patior,	Scando,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, premando, desacro, and retracto*; *prædamno, and pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occanto* from *canto*, and *anhelo* from *halo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ā* and *ē* into *ī*; viz.

*āgo, cādo, ēgeo, ēmo, frango, pango, prēmo, rēgo, sēdeo, spēcio, tango.*

3. These change *ā* and *ē*, in the first and second roots, into *ī*; viz.

*sālio, to leap, sāpio, tāceo, and tēneo.*

4. These change *ā* into *ī*, and *æ* into *ī*, in all the roots; viz.

*hābeo, lācio, lāteo, plāceo, stātuo; cædo, lædo, and quæro.*

5. The following change *ā*, in the first root, into *ī*, and in the third root into *e*; viz.

*cāno, cāpio, fāteor, jācio, rāpio, and āpiscor.*

Exc. (a.) *A* is retained in *circumāgo, perāgo, satāgo; antehābeo, posthābeo, depango, repango, complāceo, and perplāceo*. *Occāno* and *reccāno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coēmo, circumsedeo, and supersedeo*. *Antecāpio* and *anticipo* are both used; so also are *superjācio* and *superjicio*.

(b.) *Cogo* and *dēgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de, and āgo*; *dēma, prōmo* and *sūmo*, from *de, pro, sub, and ēmo*; *præbeo*, and perhaps *dēbeo*, from *pra, de, and hābeo*; *pergo* and *surgo*, from *per, sub, and rēgo*.

NOTE 1. *Facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *ā* into *ī* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *afficio, affici, affectum*. Some compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives, change *ā* into *ī*, and also drop *i* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, latifico, magnifico*. *Spēcio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspicor* and *suspicio*.

NOTE 2. *Lēgo*, compounded with *con, de, cū, e, inter, nec, and se*, changes *ī* into *ī*, in the first root; as, *colligo, neglige*, etc.; but with *ad, pra, per, re, sub, and trans*, it retains *ē*; as, *allēgo*.

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *salto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco, insulto*. *Plaudo* changes *au* into *o*; as, *explodo*; except *applaudo*. *Audio* changes *au* into *o* in *obscuro*. *Causo, claudio*, and *quæso*, drop *a*; as, *accuso, rēclādo, percussio*. *Fere* changes *ā* into *ē* in *dējā o* and *pējero*, but *dējaro*, also, is in use.

NOTE 4. In the compounds of *caveo*, *timeo*, and *timeo* *d* remains unchanged, and so also does *e* in the compounds of *habeo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Défendo,	Impédio,	Confúto,	Instigo,	Conniveo,
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Réfúto,	Impleo,	Percello,
Expèrior,	Compello, (-äre,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo, and some
Expédio,	Appello, (-äre,)	Congruo,	Rènideo,	Exuo, others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196.

## PARTICLES.

§ 190. 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

## ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

*Bene et sapienter dixit*, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; *Canis egregie fidelis*, a *remarkably* faithful dog; *Nimis valde laudare*, to praise *too much*. Compare § 277, E. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification*, are divided into various classes; as, adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology*, adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

## PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ 191. The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III.

### I. Adverbs of Place and Order.

ideo, so far, as far.	alicubi, somewhere.	aliquoversum, toward
adhuc, to this place.	alicundè, from some	some place.
adversus, } opposite,	place.	aliundè, from another
adversum, } over against,	aliò, to another place.	place.
exadversus, —um, } toward.	aliquà, in some way.	circà, } around.
alià, by another way.	aliorum, toward another	circum, } place.
aliàs, in another place.	place.	circiter, on every side.
alibi, elsewhere.	aliquò, to some place.	circumcircà, all around.



*altrā, on this side.*  
*citro, hither.*  
*contrā, over against.*  
*cōram, before.*  
*dēhinc, henceforth.*  
*deinceps, successively.*  
*deindē, after that.*  
*dēniquē, finally.*  
*dēnuo, again.*  
*deorsum, downward.*  
*dextrorsum, toward the right.*  
*eā, that way.*  
*eādem, the same way.*  
*eō, to that place, thither.*  
*eōdem, to the same place.*  
*exindē, after that.*  
*extrā, without.*  
*extrinsēcus, from without.*  
*fōrās, out of doors.*  
*fōris, without.*  
*hāc, this way.*  
*hactēnūs, thus far.*  
*hic, here.*  
*hinc, hence.*  
*hūc, hither.*  
*hūcuscūq, thus far.*  
*hōrsūm, hitherward.*  
*ibi, there.*  
*ibidem, in the same place.*  
*illāc, that way.*  
*illuc, there.*  
*illinc, thence.*  
*illō, thither.*  
*illorsūm, thitherward.*  
*illūc, thither.*  
*indē, thence.*  
*indēm, from the same place.*

*infra, below, beneath.*  
*inibi, in that place.*  
*intrinsēcus, from within.*  
*intrā, intro, } within.*  
*introrsum, } within.*  
*intūs, } within.*  
*istāc, that way.*  
*istic, there.*  
*istinc, thence.*  
*istō, istūc, thither.*  
*juxtā, near, alike.*  
*nēcūbi, lest any where.*  
*neutro, to neither side.*  
*neutrōbi, to neither place, } to neither side.*  
*nullibi, } no where.*  
*nusquam, } no where.*  
*pēnitūs, within.*  
*pōnē, post, behind, back.*  
*porro, onward.*  
*prōcūl, far.*  
*prōpē, proptēr, near.*  
*prorsūm, forward.*  
*prōtinūs, onward.*  
*quā? in which way?*  
*quāquā, } what way*  
*quācumq, } soever.*  
*quāquē, wheresoever.*  
*quālibēt, } in every way.*  
*quāvis, } in every way.*  
*quō? whither?*  
*quōād, } how far.*  
*quousquē, } how far.*  
*quōpiam, } to some place.*  
*quōquam, } to some place.*  
*quōquō, } whither.*  
*quōcumq, } soever.*  
*quōquōversūs, toward every side.*

*quorsum? whitherward?*  
*quōvis, } to every place.*  
*quōlibēt, } to every place.*  
*retro, } backward,*  
*retrorsum, } back.*  
*scūbi, if any where.*  
*scūcūde, if from any place.*  
*sinistrorsum, toward the left.*  
*subtēr, beneath.*  
*sūpēr, suprà, above, on top.*  
*sursum, upward.*  
*tum, then, in the next place.*  
*tūi? where?*  
*ūbicūmq, } wherever,*  
*ūbiūbi, } wheresoever.*  
*ūbilibēt, } any where,*  
*ūbiquē, } every where.*  
*ūbivis, } every where.*  
*ultrā, ultro, beyond.*  
*undē? whence?*  
*undēlibēt, } from every*  
*undēvis, } where.*  
*undiquē, } where.*  
*undeundē, } whence?*  
*undēcūmq, } soever.*  
*aspiam, } somewhere,*  
*usquam, } any where.*  
*asquē, all the way.*  
*usquēquāquē, in all ways.*  
*utrimquē, on both sides.*  
*utrō? which way?*  
*utrōbi? in which place?*  
*utrōbiquē, in both places.*  
*utrōquē, to both sides.*  
*utrōquēversum, toward both sides.*

REMARK 1. (a.) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ubi?* where? *undē?* whence? *quō?* whither? and *quā?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (3.)

(b.) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu*. The *demonstratives* are formed from *is*, which is strengthened by *dem*, and the *indefinite* from *aliquis*. The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals*, like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumquē*, 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quē, vis, or libēt*. Thus :

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Gen. Relat.	Indefin.	Gen. Indefin.
<i>ūbi?</i>	<i>ibi, ibidem,</i>	<i>ūbi,</i>	<i>ūbiūbi, ūbicūmq,</i>	<i>ālicūbi,</i>	<i>ūbiquē, ūbivis, ūbilibēt.</i>
<i>undē?</i>	<i>indē, indidem,</i>	<i>undē,</i>	<i>undeundē, undēcūmq,</i>	<i>ālicundē,</i>	<i>undiquē, undēvis, undēlibēt.</i>
<i>quō?</i>	<i>eō, eōdem,</i>	<i>quō,</i>	<i>quōquō, quōcumq,</i>	<i>āliquō,</i>	<i>quōvis, quōlibēt.</i>
<i>quā?</i>	<i>eā, eādem.</i>	<i>quā.</i>	<i>quāquā, quācumq.</i>	<i>āliquā.</i>	<i>quāvis, quālibēt.</i>

(c.) To those answering *o ubi?* may be added *abibi*, *nullibi*, and *inibi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ibi*. In like manner *aliundē*, *utrimquē*, *intrinsecus*, and *extrinsecus* may be added to those answering to *undē?* and *aliō* to those answering to *quō?* So also to *utrō?* answer *utroquē* and *neutrō*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ibi*, *indē*, and *eō* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hic*, *istē*, and *illē*, answering in like manner to *ubi?* *undē?* and *quō?* These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ubi?* *undē?* *quō?* *quā?* and *quorsum?*—Thus:

<i>ubi?</i>	<i>undē?</i>	<i>quō?</i>	<i>quā?</i>	<i>quorsum?</i>
<i>hic</i> ,	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>hūc</i> ,	<i>hāc</i> ,	<i>horsum</i> ,
<i>istic</i> ,	<i>istinc</i> ,	<i>istūc</i> ,	<i>istāc</i> ,	<i>istorsum</i> ,
<i>illic</i> ,	<i>illinc</i> ,	<i>illūc</i> ,	<i>illāc</i> ,	<i>illorsum</i> ,
<i>ibi</i> ,	<i>indē</i> ,	<i>eō</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	—,
<i>Ibidem</i> ,	<i>indidem</i> ,	<i>eodem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	—,
<i>abibi</i> ,	<i>aliundē</i> ,	<i>aliō</i> ,	<i>aliā</i> ,	<i>allorsum</i> ,
<i>allicubi</i> .	<i>allicundē</i> .	<i>allicuō</i> .	<i>allicuā</i> .	<i>allicuorsum</i> .

(e.) *Hic*, *hinc*, *hūc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istic*, *istinc*, *istāc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illic*, *illinc*, *illāc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ubi*, *undē*, *quō*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisse.*

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hic*, *ibi*, *ibi*, *hinc*, *indē*, *hactenus*, etc., become also adverbs of time, and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

## II. Adverbs of Time.

*actūtum*, immediately.  
*abhinc*, from this time.  
*adēo*, so long (as).  
*adhūc*, until now, still.  
*alias*, at another time.  
*aliquamdiū*, for awhile.  
*aliquandō*, at some time.  
*aliquoties*, several times.  
*antē*, } before,  
*anteā*, } previously.  
*antehāc*, formerly.  
*bis*, twice. (see § 119).  
*circtēr*, about, near.  
*crās*, tomorrow.  
*cum cr quum*, when.  
*deinceps*, in succession.  
*deinceps or dein*, } thereupon,  
*exin*, } or exin, } afterwards.  
*ēhinc*, from this time.  
*ēnum*, at length.  
*ēnique*, lastly.  
*diū*, long.  
*dūdum*, previously.  
*eousquē*, so long.  
*hērē or hērī*, yesterday.  
*hic*, here, hereupon.  
*hinc*, from this time, since.  
*hodiē*, to-day.  
*ibi*, then, thereupon.  
*dentidem*, now and then,  
*repeatedly*.

*illicō*, immediately.  
*indē*, after that, then.  
*interdum*, sometimes.  
*intērīm*, meanwhile.  
*Itērūm*, again.  
*jam*, now, already.  
*jamdiū*, } long ago.  
*jamdūdum*, }  
*jamjam*, presently.  
*jampridem*, long since.  
*mōdo*, just now.  
*mox*, soon after.  
*nondum*, not yet.  
*nonnumquam*, sometimes.  
*nūdiūs tertius*, three days  
*ago*.  
*nunc*, now.  
*numquam*, never.  
*nūpēr*, lately.  
*olim*, formerly.  
*pārumpēr*, } for a short  
*paulispēr*, } time.  
*pōrendiā*, two days hence.  
*porro*, hereafter, in fu-  
*ture*.  
*post*, *postea*, afterwards.  
*posthāc*, hereafter.  
*postridiē*, the day after.  
*pridem*, long since.  
*pridiē*, the day before.  
*prōtinūs*, instantly.

*quamdiū?* how long?  
*quandō?* when?  
*quandocumquē*, when-  
*ever*.  
*quandocūquē*, at some time.  
*quātēr*, four times.  
*quōad?* }  
*quousquē?* } how long?  
*quondam*, formerly.  
*quōtidie*, daily.  
*quōtiās?* how often?  
*quum or cum*, when.  
*rursus*, again.  
*sæpē*, often.  
*sēmēl*, once.  
*sempēr*, always.  
*stātīm*, immediately.  
*sūbindē*, immediately, now  
*and then*.  
*tamdiū*, so long.  
*tandem*, at length.  
*tantispēr*, for so long.  
*tēr*, thrice.  
*tōtiēs*, so often.  
*tum*, tunc, then.  
*ubi*, when, as soon as.  
*umquam*, ever.  
*usquē*, until, ever.  
*ūt or ūti*, as, as soon as,  
*when*.

## III Adverbs of Manner, Quality, Degree, etc.,

<i>adeo</i> , so, to that degree.	<i>n. m. s.</i> , } too much.	<i>sine</i> , truly.
<i>admodum</i> , very much.	<i>nimium</i> , }	<i>satis</i> , } enough.
<i>aliter</i> , otherwise.	<i>non</i> , not.	<i>satis</i> , }
<i>as</i> , like as.	<i>omnino</i> , altogether, only.	<i>satis</i> , rather.
<i>cui?</i> why?	<i>pene</i> , almost.	<i>scilicet</i> , truly, to wit.
<i>duntaxat</i> , only, at least.	<i>palam</i> , openly.	<i>scilicet</i> , otherwise.
<i>etiam</i> , also, too, yes.	<i>pariter</i> , equally.	<i>seorsum</i> , } separately.
<i>etiamnunc</i> , }	<i>parum</i> , too little.	<i>seorsim</i> , }
<i>etiamtum</i> , } also, besides.	<i>paulatim</i> , by degrees.	<i>sic</i> , so.
<i>ferè</i> , }	<i>penitus</i> , wholly.	<i>sicut</i> , } so as, as.
<i>fermè</i> , } almost, nearly.	<i>perinde</i> , } just as,	<i>sicuti</i> , }
<i>fortasse</i> , perhaps.	<i>proinde</i> , } as though.	<i>simul</i> , together.
<i>frustra</i> , in vain.	<i>perquam</i> , very much.	<i>singulatim</i> , one by one.
<i>gratis</i> , freely.	<i>plerumque</i> , for the most part, commonly.	<i>solum</i> , only, alone.
<i>haud</i> , not.	<i>potius</i> , rather.	<i>tam</i> , so, so much.
<i>haudquamquam</i> , by no means.	<i>porro</i> , moreover, then.	<i>tamquam</i> , like, as if.
<i>hucusque</i> , so far.	<i>præter</i> , beyond, except.	<i>tantepere</i> , so greatly.
<i>identidem</i> , constantly.	<i>præsertim</i> , particularly.	<i>tantum</i> , so much, only.
<i>immo</i> , nay, on the contrary.	<i>profecto</i> , truly.	<i>tantummodo</i> , only.
<i>ita</i> , so.	<i>prope</i> , almost, near.	<i>temere</i> , at random.
<i>item</i> , just so, also.	<i>propemodum</i> , almost.	<i>tinè</i> , together.
<i>itidem</i> , in like manner.	<i>prorsus</i> , wholly.	<i>usquequaque</i> , in all points, in all ways.
<i>iuxta</i> , equally, alike.	<i>quam</i> , how much, as.	<i>ut</i> , } as.
<i>magis</i> , more.	<i>quamobrem</i> , wherefore.	<i>ut</i> , }
<i>modo</i> , only.	<i>quare?</i> why? wherefore?	<i>utique</i> , at any rate, certainly.
<i>ne</i> or <i>nè</i> , truly, verily.	<i>quasi</i> , as if, as it were.	<i>utpote</i> , as, inasmuch as.
<i>nè</i> , not.	<i>quidem</i> , } indeed.	<i>valde</i> , very much.
<i>nèdum</i> , much less.	<i>equidem</i> , }	<i>vel</i> , even.
<i>nempè</i> , truly, forsooth.	<i>quomodo?</i> how? in what manner?	<i>velut</i> , } as, like as, for example.
<i>nèquāquam</i> , } by no means.	<i>quodque</i> , also.	<i>veluti</i> , }
<i>neutiquam</i> , }	<i>ritè</i> , duly.	<i>vicissim</i> , in turn, again.
<i>nimirum</i> , certainly, to be sure.	<i>saltem</i> , at least.	<i>videlicet</i> , clearly, to wit.
		<i>vix</i> , scarcely.

REM. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *bene*, *malè*. 2. Certainty; as, *certe*, *planè*. 3. Contingence; as, *forte*. 4. Negation; as, *haud*, *non*, *nè*, *immo*. 5. Affirmation; as, *ne*, *quidem*, *atque*, *nempè*. 6. Swearing; as, *herclev*. 7. Explaining; as, *videlicet*, *utpote*. 8. Separation; as, *seorsum*. 9. Joining together; as, *simul*, *tinè*. 10. Interrogation; as, *cui?* *quare?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *satis*, *adeo*. 12. Excess; as, *perquam*, *maximè*. 13. Defect; as, *parum*, *pene*. 14. Preference; as, *potius*, *satis*. 15. Likeness; as, *ut*, *sic*. 16. Unlikeness; as, *aliter*. 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum*, *solum*.

REM. 3. *Non* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum*, *haud magnum*, *haud parvus*, *haud mediocris*, *haud paulo*, *haud procul*, *haud longe*. especially *haud sane* in connection with other words; as, *haud sane facile*, *res haud sane difficile*, *haud sane intelligo*; also *haud quisquam*, *haud unquam*, *haud quāquam*. With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scio an*, which is equivalent to *nescio an*.—*Nè*, (or *ni*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not*. It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (a) with *quidem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them: as, *nè in oppidis quidem*, not even in the towns; (b) in composition as in *nefarius*, *neuter* etc.; (c) with imperatives and

subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē pueri, nē tanta animis iuvenescite bella*. Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nō id Jupiter audeat*, may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Ne vitam, si scio*, may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Ne fuitil*, suppose there was not. Cic. *Sint misericordes in furibus ararii, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur*, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne, dum quidem ne*; and in intentional clauses with *ut*.—*Immo*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed*, etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'nay even.'

REM. 4. *Quidem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equidem*, which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem*, is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but by other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem*.—*Nempe*, 'surely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

REM. 5. *Sic, ita, tam*, as also *tantopere*, and *adeo* signify 'so.' *Sic* is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sic se res habet*. *Ita* defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem laedas*. Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic*, but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita*.—*Tam*, 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantopere* is generally used instead of *tam*.—*Adeo*, 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso sentitus consulto cognoscite*, and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

REM. 6. *Umquam*, 'ever,' and *usquam*, 'somewhere,' like *quasquam*, require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *numquam* and *nusquam*. A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *num tu eum umquam vidisti?*—*Usquam*, like *quisquam*, is not negative, but is the same as *aliquis*, but strengthened, just as *quisquam* is the same as *aliquis*. So, also, *quopiam* is used affirmatively, and *quobquam* negatively.—*Iam*, with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil iam spero*, I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab, or ex*. It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Nataram expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret*. Hor.—*Nuper, modo*, and *mox* are relative and indefinite.—*Dūdum*, 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Jamdūdum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdūdum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdūdum sumite penas*. Virg.—*Tandem*, 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

REM. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc*, 'now': *Tum* is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum*, 'when'; as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicere*, when all were present, then he began to speak. Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon'; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum*, 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*; *quummaxime* and *tummaxime*, 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quum maxime* refer to the present; but *etiam tum, tum ipsum*, and *tummaxime*, to the past.

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

**§ 192.** Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

## I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner; as,

*grēgātīm*, in herds; *membrātīm*, limb by limb; *vicissādīm*, or more frequently, *vicissim*, by turns; from *grex*, *membrum*, and *viciā*.

2. Some end in *itus*, and denote origin or manner; as, *cælūsus*, from heaven; *fundūsus*, from the bottom; *rādīctus*, by the roots; from *cælum*, *fundus*, and *rādix*.

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(a.) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānē*, *noctū*, *diū*, *temporē* or *tempōri*, *initio*, *principiō*, *mōdo*.—(b.) Adverbs of place; as, *fōris*, *fōrās*.—(c.) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontē*, *fortē*, *grātus* or *grātū*, *ingrātus*, *vulgō*, *partim*.

## II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *tēr*.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

*ægrē*, scarcely; *altē*, high; *libērē*, freely; *longē*, far; *misērē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *ægēr*, *altus*, *libēr*, *longus*, *misēr*, *plēnus*, *doctus*, and *ornātus*. *Bēnē*, well, is from *bōnus*, or an older form *bēnūs*.

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sānus*, sound, well; and *valūdus*, strong.

Exc. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *itēr*, *itūs*, *im*, or *ātim* to the root; as,

*nāvitēr*, actively; *antiquitūs*, anciently; *divinitūs*, divinely; *privātīm*, privately; *tuātīm*, after your manner; *singulātīm*, *singillātīm*, *sigillātīm*, or *singultīm*, severally; *cæsīm*, *carptīm*, *sensīm*, *slātīm*, etc. from *nāvūs*, *antiquūs*, *divinūs*, *privātūs*, *tuūs*, *singullūs*, *cæsūs*, *carptūs*, etc.

Exc. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrē*, *dūrtitēr*; *firmē*, *firmitēr*; *adē*, *aditēr*; *largē*, *largitēr*; *luculentē*, *luculentitēr*; *turbulentē*, *turbulentitēr*: so *cautē* and *cautīm*; *humānē*, *humānitēr*, and *humānitūs*; *publicē* and *publicitūs*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *itēr* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ēr* only is added; as,

*acritēr*, sharply; *fēlicitēr*, happily; *turpitēr*, basely;—*ēlegantēr*, elegantly, *prudentēr*, prudently; *āmantēr*, lovingly; *propērantēr*, hastily; from *ācēr*, *fēlix*, *turpis*, *ēlégans*, *prūdēns*, *āmāns*, and *propērans*. So also from the obsolete *ālū* for *ālūs*, and *prōptis*, (neuter *prōptē*), come *ālītēr* and *prōptēr* for *prōptitēr*.

Exc. From *audax* comes by syncope *audactēr*; from *fortis* comes *fortitēr* from *omnis*, *omnitō*; from *uber*, *ubertim*; and from *nēquam*, *nēquitēr*.

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies*; as,

*quingüies*, *clēciēs*, from *quingū* and *dēcem*. So *lōtiēs* and *quōtiēs*, from *lō* and *quōt*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *ō*, from adjectives and participles of the second declension as, *citō*, quickly; *continūō*, immediately; *falsō*, falsely; *crēbrō*, frequently; *mēritō*, deservedly; *nēcōpīnātō*, unexpectedly; *fortuitō*, by chance; *auspiciō*, auspiciously; *consultō*, designedly; and a few in *ā* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *rectā*, straight on; *inā*, together. In like manner, *rēpēntē*, suddenly, from *rēpens*; and *pēgre* or *pēgri*, from *pēgre*.

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *facilē*, *difficilē*, *rēcens*, *sublimē*, and *impānē*; and some also of the second declension; as, *cēlērū*, *plērūquē*, *multū*, *plūrīmū*, *pōtissimū*, *pōtē*, *nīmīū*, *pārū*, and the numeral adverbs, *prīmū*, *itērū*, *tertīū*, *quartū*, etc. which have also the termination in *ō*, and so also *postrēmū* (*ō*), and *ultīmū* (*ō*). The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multā* *gemere*; *tristidū* *ululāre*; *crēbrā* *ferire*.

(c.) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bitariam*, *trifariam*, *multifariam*, *omnifariam*, etc. scil. *partem*.

NOTE 1. The forms in *ē* and *ō* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *vērē* and *vērō* have a somewhat different sense. *Vērē*, truly, is the regular adverb of *vērū*, true; but *vērō* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adfuistinē hēri in convivio?* The affirmative answer is *ego vērō adfui*, or without the verb, *ego vērō*, and negatively, *nīmīe vērō*; and as *vērō* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.—*Certō*, on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certus*, while *certē* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victi sumus, aut, si dignitas vincī non potest, fracti certē*; but *certē* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certē scio*.

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *āmens*, *dirūs*, *discors*, *gnārūs*, *rūdis*, *trux*, *imbellis*, *immōbilitis*, and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vētūs* and *fidūs*, *vētustē* and *antiquē* are used for the former, and *fidēlītēr* for the latter, from *vētustās*, *antiquitas*, and *fidēlīs*.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc. (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *ō* and *ūc* denote the place *whither*, instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eō* for *ad eum locum*; *hūc* for *ad hunc locum*; the terminations *dē* and *inc* denote the place *from which*; *i* and *ic*, the place *in which*; and *ā* and *āc*, the place *by or through which*; as, *eā*; *viā* or *parte* being understood.

IV. (a.) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtūs*, beneath; from *sub*; *proptēr*, near; from *proptē*. (b.) *Mordicūs* and *versūs* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto*.

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs; as, *clam*, *clamculū*; *prīmū*, *prīmūlū*; *cēlērū*, *cēlērūsculē*; *sēpiūs*, *sēpiūsculē*; *bēnē*, *bellē*, *bellissimē*,

## COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

## § 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of in adjective and a noun; as, *posteriùs, quòtiùs, magnopèrè, maximopèrè, summopèrè, quantopèrè, tantopèrè, tantummòdo, solummòdo, multimòdis, quòtantiùs*—of *posteriùs diè, magnò opèrè*, etc.
2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hòdiùs, quàrè, quòtmòdò*—of *hòc diè, què rè*, etc.
3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nūdiùs, xepénamèrò*—of *nunc diès*, etc.
4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *commùnùs, éminùs, illìco, obìter, extempùs, ebeiam, postmòdò, admòdum, pròpèdiem*—of *con, e, and múnùs*; in and *locùs*; etc.
5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *alìquòrè* or *alìdquòrè, cètròquòrè* or *cètròquòrè*—of *alìus* and *quò*, i. e. *alìò quò (mòdo)*, etc.
6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *alìquamdiù, alìcubi*—of *alìquòs, diù, and ubi*; *nèquàquam* and *nèquàquam*—of *nè* and *quàquam*.
7. Of two verbs; as, *illicet, scilicet videlicet* of *irè, scire, vidèrè, and licet*.
8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quòlibèt, ubiùs, undèlibèt*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *cèpio*; *dumtaxat*—from *dum* and *taxo*.
9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum, dextrorsum, horum, retrorsum, sursum*—of *dè, dextèr, hic, retro, supèr, and versùs* or *versùs*.
10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdùdum, quamdiù, tandiù, cummaximè, tummaximè quousquè, sicùl*.
11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *dènuo, imprimis, cumprimis, apprimè, incassum*—of *dè novò, in primis*, etc.
12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quapropter, postèd, intèrèd, pròtèrèd, hacténùs, quàténùs, alìquidénùs, eadénùs*—of *propter quòr, post ea* or *eam*, etc.
13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc, adhuc, dèrèpèntè, intèrubi, interdiù, interdum, pèrceptè*.
14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insupèr, pròtinùs, indè, dein, deindè, pèrindè*.
15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *nècubi, sicubi*—of *nè, si, and alìcubi*.
16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *ibidem, pàrumpèr, quandòcumquè, ubiquè, utcumquè*.
17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *foratim*—of *forè, at, àn, quemadmodum, quàmobrem*, etc.
18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nimirum, utpòtè*.
19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvis, quantumlibèt*.

## Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *continuo, pròtinùs, statim, confestim, subito, repente* and *dèrèpèntè, actùtum, illico, illicet, extemplo*, signify in general 'directly' or 'immediately'; but, strictly, *continuo* means, 'immediately after'; *statim*, 'without delay'; *confestim*, 'directly'; *subito*, 'suddenly, unexpectedly'; *pròtinùs*, 'farther', viz. in the same direction, and hence, 'without interruption'; *repente* and *dèrèpèntè*, 'at once,' opposed to *sensim*, 'gradually,' (see Cic. Off. 1, 33); *actùtum*, 'instantaneously,' i. q. *eòdem actù*; *illico*, and more rarely *illicet*, 'forthwith, the instant,' (Virg. Æn. 2, 424, Cic. Mur. 10); so also *extemplo*, (Liv. 41, 1).
2. *Præsertim, præcipue, imprimis, cumprimis, apprime*, are generally translated 'principally,' but, properly, *præsertim* is 'particularly,' and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcipue*, from *præcèpio*, has reference to privilege, and signifies 'especially'; *imprimis* and *cumprimis*, signify 'principally,' or 'in preference to others'; and *apprime*, 'before all,' 'verv.' is used

in pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admodum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Admodum nihil* and *admodum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Modo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Solum*, 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum*, 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *solum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *modo*, forming *solummodo* and *tantummodo*. *Solummodo* is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolorem, aut minue saltem*.

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra suscipere labores*. *Neguequam* denotes the absence of success, as in Hor. Carm. 1, 3, 21. *Incassum*, composed of *in* and *casum*, 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *tela incassum jacere*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *tēr*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iūs*; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *us* into *e*; as,

*dūrē, dūriūs, dūriissimē; facillē, faciliūs, facillimē; acritēr, acriūs, acerrimē; rārē, rāriūs, rāriissimē; mātūrē, mātūriūs, mātūriissimē* or *māturrimē*.

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um*; as, *mértissimō, plūrimum, primō* or *primum, pōtissimum*.

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

*bēgē, meliūs, optimē; malē, pējūs, pessimē; parum, minūs, minimē; multum, plūs, plūrimum; —, prīus, primō* or *primum; —, ociūs, ociasimē; —, delēriūs, delerrimē; —, pōtiūs, pōtissimē* or *pōtissimum; mēritō, —, mēritissimō; scīūs, scītiūs, —. Māgis, maximē, (from magnūs,) has no positive; nūpēr, nūperrimē, has no comparative. Prōpē, prōpiūs, proximē: the adjective prōpiūs has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *uber* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ubertim*, but *uberiūs* and *uberriimē* are used. So instead of *tristitēr, tristē*, the neuter of *tristis*, is used, but the comparative *tristiūs* is regular; and from *sdcors* only *sdcordiūs*, the comparative, is in use.*

5. *Diū* and *sepe*, though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared; — *diū, diūtiūs, diūtiissimē; sepe, sepiūs, sepiissimē*. A comparative *temperius*, from *temperari* or *tempori*, also sometimes occurs. So *secūs, seciūs*.

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *magis* and *maximē*; as, *magis apertē, maximē accommodatē*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *amor meus erga te*, my love toward thee; *eo ad te*, I go to thee.



3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them :—

<i>ad</i> , to, towards, at, for.	<i>extrā</i> , without, beyond.	<i>post</i> , after, since, behind.
<i>adversus</i> , } against.	<i>infra</i> , under, beneath.	<i>præter</i> , past, before.
<i>adversum</i> , } towards.	<i>inter</i> , between, among,	against, beyond, besides.
<i>antē</i> , before.	during.	<i>prōpe</i> , near by, nigh.
<i>apud</i> , at, with, near, be-	<i>intrā</i> , within.	<i>propter</i> , near, on account
fore, in presence of.	<i>juxtā</i> , near to, next to.	of.
<i>circā</i> , } around, about.	<i>ob</i> , for, on account of,	<i>secundum</i> , after, behind,
<i>circum</i> , }	before.	along, next to, accord-
<i>circiter</i> , about, near.	<i>pōtēs</i> , in the power of,	ing to.
<i>cis</i> , } on this side, within.	with.	<i>suprā</i> , above, over.
<i>citrā</i> , }	<i>për</i> , through, throughout,	trans, over, beyond.
<i>contra</i> , against, opposite.	by, during.	<i>ultrā</i> , beyond.
<i>ergā</i> , towards, opposite.	<i>pōtē</i> , behind.	

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative :—

<i>ā</i> , }	<i>dē</i> , from, down from, af-	<i>præ</i> , before, for, on ac-
<i>ab</i> , } from, after, by.	ter, of, concerning.	count of, in comparison
<i>abs</i> , }	<i>ē</i> , } out of, from, of, by,	with.
<i>absquē</i> , without, but for.	<i>ex</i> , } after.	<i>prō</i> , before, for, instead
<i>ocram</i> , before, in pres-	<i>palam</i> , before, in pres-	of, according to.
ence of.	ence of.	<i>sine</i> , without.
<i>cum</i> , with.		<i>tēnūs</i> , as far as, up to.

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative :—

<i>clam</i> , without the knowl-	<i>sūb</i> , under, about, near.	<i>supr</i> , above, over; upon
edge of.	<i>subtēr</i> , under, beneath.	concerning.
<i>in</i> , in, on; to, into, against.		

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te*.

*E* is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versus*, which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 3), *usquē*, and *exadversus* (*um*), sometimes take an accusative, *simul* and *prōcūl*, an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Sēcūs*, with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

### Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (a.) *Ad* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ad te*. *Sophocles ad summam senectilem tragediam fecit*. Cic. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ad hōram*, at the hour; *ad tempus aliquid facere*,—at the right time. But sometimes *ad tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ad* denotes the approach of time; as, *ad hanc, ad vesperam, ad extremum*, towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time; as, *ad prima signa veris profectus* at the first sign of Spring.

(2.) In answer to the question Where? *ad* signifies 'near' a place as, *ad urbem esse*; *ad portas urbis*; *pugna navalis ad Tenedum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ad aedem Bellonæ*, or, without *aedem*, *ad Opes*; *negotium habere ad portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of,' or 'nearly'; as, *ad ducentos*. It is also used like *circiter* without any case; as, *Occisus ad hominum milibus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ad unum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(c.) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *homo ad labores belli impiger*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ad modum*, *ad effigiem*, *ad similitudinem*, *ad speciem alicujus rei*; *ad normam*, etc. *ad voluntatem alicujus facere aliquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ad hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Apud* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ad* was applied to things. *Apud* also denotes rest, and *ad* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ad*; as, *Mile pugnatum est apud Caudium*. But in early writers, *apud* is used for *in*; as, *Augustus apud urbem Nölam extinctus est*,—at Nola.—With *me*, *te*, *se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling of'; as, *Fuisti apud Læcam illa nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *apud judices*, *apud prætorem*, *apud populum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apud Xenophontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversus*, *contra*, and *erga* signify 'opposite to.' *Contra* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *erga*, a friendly disposition, 'towards'; and *adversus* is used in either sense. But *erga* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intra* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither? It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as 'unfinished,' when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Për*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *për litteras*, by letter; *për injuriam*, *për scelus*, with injustice, criminally; *për iram*, from or in anger; *për simulationem*, *për speciem*, *për causam*, under the pretext; *për occasionem*, on the occasion; *për ridiculum*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *për valetudinem*, on account of illness.—*Për me licet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *ab*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *a primâ ætate*, *ab ineunte ætate*, *ab initio ætatis*, *ab infantia*, *a pueritia*, *ab adolescentia*; and, *a pueris*, *a pueris*, *ab adolescentibus*, *ab infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *a parvis*, *a parvulo*, *a tenero*, *a teneris unguiculis*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio*, *a principio*, *a primo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbe Rômâ a principio rēges habuere*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *ab initio* is equivalent to *initio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *a Platone*, *ab Aristotèle*, etc.—In comic writers *ab* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *ancilla ab Andriâ*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *ab equitatu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus a matre Magnum Pompeium artissimo contingebat gradu*,—on his mother's side.—*Statim*, *confestim*, *recens ab aliquâ re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itinere aliquid facere*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum aliquo ire*; *hostes cum detrimento sumi*

*duplex*. It signifies also 'in,' i. e. 'dressed in'; as, *cum tunica pullâ sedere*. With verbs implying hostility, it signifies 'with,' in the sense of 'against'; as, *cum aliquo bellum gerere*; *cum aliquo queri* to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *De* commonly signifies 'concerning,' 'about.' Hence *traditur de Homero* is very different from *traditur ab Homero*; in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *de* signifies 'in regard to,' 'as respects'; as, *de fratre, confida ita esse, ut semper volui*.—It often signifies 'down from'; and also 'of,' in a partitive sense; as, *homo de plebe, animus de populo*.—From its partitive signification arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitium de nocte venire*, i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multa de nocte, media de nocte*, 'in the depth of night,' 'in the middle of the night.'—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ab*; as, *Audvi hoc de parente meo puer*. Cic.; especially in connection with *emere, mercari, conducere*. *Triumphum agere de Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately.—Sometimes, like *secundum*, it signifies 'in accordance with,' 'after'; as, *de consilio meo*:—sometimes it denotes the manner of an action; as, *denuo, de integro*, afresh; *de improviso*, unexpectedly; *de industria*, purposely:—*quâ de re, quâ de causâ, quibus de causis*, for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex*, 'from,' 'out of.' *Ex equo pugnare*, to fight on horseback; so *ex itinere scribere: ex adverso, e regione*, opposite; *ex omni parte*, in or from all parts.—*Ex vino* or *ex aquâ coquere* or *bibere*, i. e. 'with wine,' etc. are medical expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex animo laudare*, to praise heartily; *ex sententiâ* and *ex voluntate*, according to one's wish.—It is also, like *de*, used in a partitive sense; as, *unus e plebe, unus e multis*.

REM. 14. *In*, with the accusative, signifying 'to' or 'into,' denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in aedem ire*; or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *decem pedes in altitudinem*, in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *amor in patriam, odium in malos cives, in milites liberalis*; *oratio in aliquem*, a speech against some one.—It also denotes a purpose; as, *pecunia data est in rem militarem*. *Pax data Philippo in has leges est*, on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like 'for'; as, *invitare aliquem in postêrum diem*, for the following day. *In diem vivere*, to live only for the day; *in futurum, in postêrum, in reliquum*, for the future; *in æternum, in perpetuum*, forever; *in præsens*, for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singuli*, expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated 'to,' 'for,' 'on,' 'over.'—*In singulos dies*, or simply *in dies*, with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies 'from day to day.'—In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *servilem in modum, mirum in modum*; so *in univêrsam*, in general; *in commune*, in common; *in vicem*, alternately, or, instead of; *in alicujus locum aliquid petere*, in the place, or, instead of.

REM. 15. *In*, with the ablative, signifies 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies 'among,' and is equivalent to *inter*. It may sometimes be translated 'with,' or 'notwithstanding'; as, *In summâ copiâ oratorum, nemo tamen Ciceronis laudem æquavit*.—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *seculum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper*, etc., the time, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in consulatu in principio, in bello*; but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris*. *In præsenti, or in præsentiâ*, signifies 'at the present moment,' 'for the present.'—*Ex in eo, ut aliquid fiat* signifies that something is on the point of happening.

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 196. Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (a.) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *ambveo*, *avello*, and sometimes before *f* in *afui* and *aföre*, for *abfui* and *abföre*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *s*; as, *abjuro*, *abrogo*, etc. *Abs* occurs only before *c*, *g*, and *t*; as, *abscondo*, *absque*, *abstineo*. In *aspello*, *aspernor*, and *asporto*, the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufëro* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *m*, *v*. It often changes *d* into *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, before those letters respectively; as, *co-cedo*, *affëro*, *aggredior*, *allëgo*, *annilor*, *appöno*, *arrigo*, *assëquor*, *attollo*. Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspergo*, *aspicio*, *agnosco*, *agnätus*. Before *g*, the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquiro*.

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *anticipo* and *antisto*, where it changes *e* to *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circümeeo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo*, *circuitus*, etc.

5. *Com* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b*, *m*, *p*; as, *combibo*, *committo*, *compöno*: before *l*, *n*, *r*, its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *collëgo*, *connitor*, *corripio*: before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *condico*, *conjungo*. Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *coeo*, *coopto*, *cognosco*, *cohabito*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comëdo*, *cömes*, *cömitor*. In *cögo* and *cögito* a contraction also takes place; as, *cöigo*, *cögo*, etc. In *combüro*, *b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*; as, *exeo*, *exigo*, *excurro*, *exhibeo*, *expëdo*. Before *f*, *x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effëro*, or *ecfëro*. *S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exëquor*, for *exëquor*; in *excidium* (from *exscindo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ëbibo*, *ëdico*, except in *eclex*. Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r*, *ex* is sometimes used; as, *exmöveo*. *E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ëpöto*.

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b*, *m*, *p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbüo*, *immitto*, *impöno*: before *l* and *r*, *n* is assimilated; as, *illëgo*, *irrëtio*: before *gn*, *n* is omitted; as, *ignätus*. Before the other consonants *n* is unchanged. In some compounds, *n* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu*; as, *indigëna*, *indigëo*, *indolesco*. So anciently *induperätor*, for *imperätor*.

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intelligo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; as, *occurro*, *officio*, *oggannio*, *oppëto*. In *ömitto*, *b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs*, analogous to *ab*, is implied in *obolesco*, from the ample verb *oleo*, and in *ostendo*, for *obstendo*.

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellicio* and sometimes in *pelläceo*, in which *r* is assimilated before *l*. In *pëjëro*, *r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pömarrium* and *pömbriäñus*, in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Pro* and *præter* in composition remain unchanged, except that *pro* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 283, II Exc. 1.

13. *Pro* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prōdeo*, *prōdesse*, *prōdāgo*. Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *pot*; as, *porrigo*, *polliceor*.

14. *Sub* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b*, *d*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *s*, *t*, *v*. Before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, *r*, its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *succēdo*, *suffēro*, *suggēro*, *summōveo*, *supplicō*, *surrīpio*. Before *c*, *p*, and *t*, it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *subs*, analogous to *abs* and *obs*; as, *suscipio*, *suspendo*, *sustollo*: *b* is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

15. *Subter* and *super* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo*: in *trādo*, *trādāco*, *trājicio*, and *trāno*, *ns* is commonly omitted.

(b.) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

*Ambi* or *amb*, (Greek ἀμφί), around, about. *Rēd* or *rē*, again, back. *Vē*, not. *Dis* or *di*, arunder. *Sē*, apart, aside.

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambāges*, *ambarvālis*, *ambēdo*, *ambigo*, *ambio*, *ambūro*: except *inipulla*, *āmicio*, and *ānhēlo*. Before consonants it has the forms *ambi*; as, *ambidens*, *ambifāriam*, *ambivivum*: *am*; as, *amplector*, *ampūto*: or *an*; as, *anceps*, *anfractus*, *anquiro*.

2. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c*, *p*, *q*, *s* before a vowel, *t*, and *h*; as, *discretio*, *dispono*, *disquiro*, *distendo*, *dishiasco*: but *disertus* is formed from *disēro*; before *f*, *s* is changed into *f*; as, *diffēro*: in *dirimo*, and *diribeo* (from *dis hābeo*), *s* becomes *r*. *Di* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *didūco*, *dimitto*, *distinguo*, *dispicio*. But both *dis* and *di* are used before *j*; as, *disjungo*, *dijūcteo*, and before *r* in *rumpo*.

3. *Rēd* is used before a vowel or *h*; *rē* before a consonant; as, *rēdāmo*, *rēdeo*, *rēdhibeo*, *rēdigo*, *rēdōleo*, *rēdundo*;—*rējicio*, *rēpōno*, *rēvertor*. But *rēd* is used before *do*; as, *reddo*. The connecting vowel *i* is found in *rēdivivus*; and in the poetical forms *relligio*, *relliquiæ*, and sometimes in *reccido* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h*.

4. *Sē* and *vē* are prefixed without change; as, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*; *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*.

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations:—

1. *A*, or *ab*, away, from, down; entirely; un-. With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *aufēro*, *abūtor*, *absum*. With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *āmens*, *absonus*.

2. *Ad*, to, toward; at, by. In composition with verbs *ad* denotes (a) motion to, (not into), as, *accēdo*; (b) addition, as, *ascribo*; (c) nearness, as, *asideo*; (d) assent, favor, as, *annuo*, *arrideo*; (e) repetition and hence intensity, as, *accido*; (f) at, in consequence of, as, *arrigo*. It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambi*, around, about, on both sides.

4. *Circum*, around, about, on all sides.

5. *Cōm* or *cōn*, together, entirely. In composition with verbs it denotes (a) union, as, *concurro*, *consūlo*; (b) completeness, as, *combūro*, *conficio*; (c) with effort, as, *conjicio*, *conclāmo*; (d) in harmony, as, *consonō*, *consentio*; (e) on or over, like the English *be-*, as, *collino*, to besmear.

6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dē*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēmitto*; (b) *removal*; as, *dētondeo*; (c) *absence*; as, *dēsum*, *dēhabeo*; (d) *prevention*; as, *dēhortor*; (e) *unfriendly feeling*; as, *dēspicio*, *dērideo*.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēclivis*; (b) *without*; as, *dēmens*.

8. *Dis*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (a) *division*; as, *divido*, *dilābor*; (b) *difference*; as, *discrēpo*, *dissentio*; (c) *the reverse of the simple notion*; as, *displīceo*, *diffīdo*; (d) *intensity*; as, *dilaudo*.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference*; as, *discolor*, *discors*.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (a) *out*; as, *exeo*, *eximo*, *ēlāboro*; (b) *removal of something*; as, *ēdormio*; (c) *publicity*; as, *ēdico*; (d) *ascent*; as, *exsisto*; (e) *completeness*; as, *ēdisco*, *exūro*; (f) with denominative verbs, *change of character*; as, *expio*, *effēro* (*āre*); (g) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived*; as *ēnodo*; (h) *the reversal of the fundamental idea*; as, *explico*; (i) *distance*; as, *exaudio*.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence*; as, *exsomnia*.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, *inhābito*, *induo*, *ingēmo*, *ineo*, *illido*. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, *ignōtus*, *inhospitālis*, *immortālis*. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *intectus*, *part.*, covered, *adj.*, un covered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, *ōbeo*, *ostendo*; against; as, *obluor*, *obnuntio*; at, before; as, *ōcambūlo*, *obversor*; upon; as, *occulco*; over; as *obduco*.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, *perduco*, *perficio*, *perdo*: with adjectives, through, very; as, *pernox*, *perlēvis*.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Præ* in composition with verbs denotes (a) *before* in place; as, *præmitto*; (b) *by* or *past*; as, *præfluo*; (c) *in command*; as, *præsum*, *præficio*; (d) *superiority*; as, *præsto*; (e) *before* in time; as, *prædico*, *præcerpo*; *at the extremity*; as, *præūro*.—With adjectives, (a) *before* in place or time; as, *præceps*, *præscius*; (b) *very*; as, *præaltus*, *præclarus*.

16. *Præter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, *prōludo*, *porrigo*, *prōterveo*, *prōtēro*, *prōcūro*, *prōfiteor*.

18. *Rē*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, *rēflōresco*, *rēpendo*, *rēfērio*, *rēfigo*, *rēcondo*.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, *sēcūro*, *sēpōno*, *sēcādo*, *sēcūrus*.

20. *Sūb* up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sūb* also signifies (a) *assistance*; as, *subvenio*; (b) *succession*; as, *succino*; (c) *in place of*; as, *sufficio*; (d) *near*; as, *subsum*; (e) *secretly*, *clandestinely*; as, *surrīpio*, *subdūco*; (f) *some-what, a little*; as, *subrideo*, *sūbaccūso*.—With adjectives it signifies, *slightly*, *rather*; as, *sūboscūrus*, *sūbabsurdus*, *sūbācidus*.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sūper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, *sūpersēdco*, *sūpersum*, *sūperstes*, *sūpervacūeus*.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, *trādo*, *transeo*, *transfigo*, *transulpinus*.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*; *vēpallidus*.

REMARK.—In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

— **§ 198.** A conjunction is a particle which conn. its words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

atque, } *and, as; than.*

ac,

ac si, *as if.*

ideo, *so that, so.*

an,

anne, } *whether.*

annon, *whether or not.*

antequam, *before.*

at, *at, but.*

at enim, *but indeed.*

atqui, *but.*

etiamen, *but yet.*

aut, *either, or.*

aut...aut, *either...or.*

autem, *but.*

ceterum, *but, however.*

ceu, *as, like as, as if.*

eum or quum, *since.*

donec, *as long as, until.*

dum, *provided, while, as*

*long as, until.*

dummodo, *if but, if only.*

enimvero, *in very deed.*

enim, } *for.*

etenim, } *for.*

eo, *therefore.*

equidem, *indeed.*

ergo, *therefore.*

et, *and.*

et...et, } *both...and;*

et...que, } *as well...as.*

et...neque or nec, *on the one hand, but not on the other.*

etiam, *also.*

etiamsi, } *although,*

etsi, } *though.*

iccirco,

ideo, } *therefore.*

igitur,

itaque,

licet, *though, although.*

modo, *provided.*

nam, *namque, for.*

ne, *lest, that not.*

-ne, *whether.*

neque or nec, *neither, nor.*

neque...neque, } *neither,*

nec...nec, } *...nor.*

neque...nec, } *neither,*

nec...neque, } *...nor.*

necne, *or not.*

neque, *neither, nor.*

neque or nec...et, } *not*

neque or nec...que, } *on the one hand, but on the other.*

neve or neu, *nor, and not.*

neve...neve, } *neither...*

neu...neu, } *nor.*

ni, nisi, *unless.*

num, *whether.*

prout, *in comparison with.*

prout, *according as, just as, as.*

proinde, *hence, therefore.*

propterea, *therefore, for that reason.*

postquam, *after, since.*

priusquam, *before.*

quam, *as, than.*

quamvis, *although.*

quando, *when, quodquidem,*

*whereas, since.*

quamquam, *although.*

quapropter, } *wherefore.*

quare, } *wherefore.*

quamobrem, } *wherefore.*

quocirca, } *wherefore.*

quantumvis, } *although,*

quamlibet, } *however.*

quasi, *as if, just as.*

-que, *and.*

-que...et, } *both...and;*

-que...que, } *as well...as.*

quia, *because.*

quin, *but that, that not.*

quippe, *because.*

quod, *in order that.*

quoad, *as long as, until.*

quod, *because, but.*

quodsi, *but if.*

quominus, *that not.*

quoniam, *since, because.*

quodque, *also.*

quum or cum, *when, since because.*

quum...tum, *both...and.*

sed, *but.*

sicut, } *so as, just as, as.*

sicuti, } *so as, just as, as.*

si, *if.*

si modo, *if only.*

simul, } *as soon*

simulac (-atque), } *as.*

sin, *but if, if however.*

sive or seu, *or if.*

sive...sive, } *whether...or.*

seu...seu, } *whether...or.*

siquidem, *if indeed, since.*

tamen, *however, still.*

tamen, *although.*

tamen, *although.*

tamen, *although.*

tamen...tum, *both...and.*

unde, *whence.*

ut, } *that, as that, so that,*

ut, } *to the end that.*

ut si, *as if.*

utrum, *whether.*

-ve, } *either, or.*

vel, } *either, or.*

vel...vel, *either...or.*

velut, } *even as, just as,*

veluti, } *like as.*

vero, *truly, but indeed.*

verum, *but.*

veruntamen, *yet, notwithstanding.*

verum-enim vero, *but in deed.*

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coördinate and subordinate.

I. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant,* The moon and the stars were shining. *Concitant venti, fugiuntque nubes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Difficilis actus est, sed conabor tamen,* It is difficult to accomplish but still I will try.

Coordinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and most of the *causal* conjunctions.

II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. Pyrrhus rex in itinere incidit in canem, *qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiēbat*. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit, *ut libèrent*, quoniam esse nollent.

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive*, *illative*, *final*, *conditional*, *interrogative*, and *temporal* conjunctions, and the *causals* *quod*, *quoniam*, *quoniam*, etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives.

1. **COPULATIVE** conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, the enclitic *que*, which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nēque* or *nec*, and, the negation being doubled, *nec nōn* or *nēque nōn*, it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *et*. To these are to be added *etiam* and *quodque*, with the adverbials *item* and *etiam*.

**REMARK.** (a.) *Et* and *que* differ in this, *et* connects things which are conceived as different, and *que* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et*, therefore, is copulative and *que* adjunctive. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *que* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *que* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(b.) *Ac* never stands before vowels, *atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atque*, being formed of *ad* and *que*, properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atque* or *ac* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognovistine hos versus? Ac memoriter*, it is rendered 'yes, and that.' *Ac* being an abridged form of *atque* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *et*.

(c.) *Nēque*, compounded of the ancient *nē* for *nōn* and *que*, is used for *et nōn*. *Et nōn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negated; as, *patior et non moleste fero*; and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomine ac non impulsu tuo fecisset*. Cic. *Et nōn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *et* precedes, but *nēque*, also, is often used in this case. *Nec nōn* or *nēque nōn*, in classical prose, is not used like *et* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *et*.

(d.) *Etiam* has a wider extent than *quodque*, for it contains the idea of our 'even,' and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quodque* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *etiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quodque* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quodque*, 'and so,' 'also.' *Quodque* always follows the word to which it refers, *etiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et*, too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' Sc. *ita est nōn modo—sed et*, 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'



(e.) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,' 'as well—as,' 'not only—but also.' *Et—et* is of common occurrence; so, in later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *et—quē*; *quē—et* connect single words, but not in Cicero; *quē—quē*, occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connection with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by 'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nēquē—nēquē*, *nec—nec*, *nēquē—nec*, and rarely by *nec—nēquē*. Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on the other,' are connected by *et—nēquē* or *nec*, *nēquē* or *nec—et*, and occasionally by *nec* or *nēquē—quē*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *vēl*, the enclitic *vē*, and *sivē* or *seu*.

REMARK. (a.) *Aut* and *vēl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the object, *vēl*, a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vēl*, subjective. *Vēl* is connected with the verb *velle*, and is generally repeated, *vēl—vēl*, 'choose this or choose this,' and the single *vēl* is used by Cicero only to correct a preceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam*, *pōtius*, or *ētiā*.—Hence by ellipsis *vēl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quum Sophocles vel optime scripsērit Electram*, where *bene* is to be supplied before *vel*, and the latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4. By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of 'for example' or 'to take a case,' for which *vēlūt* is more frequently used.—(b.) *Vē*, the apocopated *vēl*, leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in later but good prose *vēl* is used in the same manner.

(c.) *Sivē* commonly retains the meaning of *si*, and is then the same as *vēl si*, but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vēl*, denoting a difference of name; as, *Vocabulum sivē appellatio*. Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by Cicero except in the combination *seu pōtius*.—(d.) *Aut* and *vē* serve to continue the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor'; as, *nōn—aut*, where *nōn—nēquē* also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as, *Num leges nostras moresvē novit?* Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrina paulo asperior, quam veritas aut natura patiatur*. Cic. It is only when both ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vē*.—(e.) 'Either—or' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut*, denoting an opposition between two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vēl—vēl*, denoting that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need not exclude the other; as, *Vēl imperatōre vel milite me utimini*. Sall.—*Sivē—sivē* is the same as *vēl si—vēl si*, and retains the meaning of *vēl—vēl*. If nouns only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing is to be called; as, *Crētum leges, quas sive Jupiter sive Minos sancit*; i. e. I do not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ut* or *utī*, *sicūt*, *vēlūt*, *proūt*, *prout*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, (with and without *si*), *quāsi*, *ut si*, *ac si*, with *ac* and *atquē*, when they signify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquē* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *aequē*, *juxtā*, *pār* and *pārītēr*, *pēriūdē* and *proūdē*, *prō eō*, *similis* and *similiter*, *dissimilis*, *talīs*, *tōtīdem*, *alius* and *aliūtēr*, *contrā*, *secūs*, *contrārius*.—*Quam* is rarely used after these words, except when a negative particle is joined with *alius*; as, *Virtus nihil aliud est, quam, etc.*; and *et* and *quē* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for *quam*, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as, *Artius atque hedera*. Hor. *Insanius ac si*. Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signification 'although.' These are *etsi*, *etiāsi*, *tāmeti*, or *tāmenetsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibēt*, *licēt*, *ut* in the sense of 'even if' or 'although,' and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tāmen* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correlates of the concessive conjunctions; as, *Ut desint vires, tāmen est laudanda*

*solutas*. Ovid. The adverb *quidem* becomes a concessive cor. pmo pñ, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *sed*.—*Quamquam* in absolute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies; as, *Quamquam quid loquor?* Yet why do I speak?

- ✓ 5. **CONDITIONAL** conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *si*, *siā*, *etsi* or *nī*, *si modo*, *dummodo*, 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *modo* are also used alone), *dummodo nē*, or simply *modo nē* or *dum nē*.

**REMARK.** (a.) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quod*, which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *si* and sometimes before *nisi* and *etsi*, so that *quodsi* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodsi* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quodetsi*, 'nay, even if.' *Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quid*, *quoniam*, *nē*, *ut*, *nam*, and *etiam* before the relative pronoun.

(b.) *Ni* and *nisi* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *si nōn*, which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nisi* or *si nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Si nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *si minis* may be used instead of *si nōn*.—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *si minis* or *sin minis* or *sin aliter*; as, *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos; si minis, quam plurimos*. Cic.; rarely by *si nōn*.

- ✓ 6. **ILLATIVE** conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *ed*, *ideo*, *iccirco*, *proinde*, *propterea*, and the relative conjunctions, *quapropter*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, *quodcirca*, *undē*, 'wherefore.'

**REMARK.** *Ergo* and *igitur* denote a logical inference.—*Idcirco*, 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, and *propterea*, 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Ed*, 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proinde*, 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undē*, 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adeo*, 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc*, 'hence,' and *inde*, 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

- ✓ 7. **CAUSAL** conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *etnim*, *quid*, *quod*, *quoniam*, *quippē*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandōquidem*, *siquidem*; and the adverbs *nimirum*, *nempē*, *scilicet*, and *videlicet*.

**REMARK.** (a.) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *enim*, after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *enim* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namque* and *etnim*. *Namque*, however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Caesar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *at enim* or *sed enim* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Num*, *enim*, and *etnim* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nimirum*, *videlicet*, and *scilicet* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nimirum*, compounded of *nī* and *nirum*, and signifying a wonder if not, is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Videlicet* and *scilicet* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *videlicet* generally indicates the true, and *scilicet* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam*, *enim*, *etnim*, *nimirum*, and *videlicet* are used in an ironical sense, and *scilicet* introduces a true reason.—*Nempē* 'scarcely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(b.) *Quid* and *quod* indicate a defi-

nite and conclusive reason, *quoniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive.—*Ideo, ideoque, propterea quid*, and *quid*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quid* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quoniam*, signifying 'now as,' introduces important circumstances.—*Quando, quandoquidem*, and *siquidem* approach nearer to *quoniam* than to *quid*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandoquidem* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *siquidem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *siquidem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *si* and *quidem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sententiam eiecerit*. Cic.—*Quippe*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies 'forsooth' or 'indeed.' Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *enim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of 'in order that,' or 'in order that not.' These are *ut* or *utrum*, *quod*, *ne* or *ut ne*, *neve* or *neue*, *quis* and *quominus*.

REMARK. *Ut*, as a conjunction indicates either a result or a purpose, 'so that,' and 'in order that.' When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *ut non*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it becomes *ne* or *ut ne*, but *ut non* also is very rarely used for *ne*.—*Neve* (i. e. *vel ne*) signifies either 'or in order that not,' or 'and in order that not.' *Ut ne* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *ne*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quo ne* for *ne* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of 'but.' These are *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, *vero*, *at* (poetical *ast*), *atque*, *atqui*, *tamen*, *attdmen*, *sedtamen*, *veruntamen*, *at vero* (*enimvero*), *verumtamen*, *verum*, *vero*, *ceterum*.

REMARK. (a.) *Sed* denotes a direct opposition, and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, 'further,' denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors.—*Verum* has a similar relation to *vero* as *sed* to *autem*. *Verum*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Ver* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important as in the phrase, *Illud vero plane non est ferendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vero* is often added to the verb; as, *Dame? Do vero*. Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vero* alone signifies 'yes,' like *sane*, *ita*, and *etiam*.—*Enimvero*, 'yes, truly,' 'in truth,' does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vero*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *verum enimvero* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(b.) *At* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *si*, in the sense of 'yet,' or 'at least'; as, *etiam non sapientissimus, at amicissimus*. It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At enim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at*.—By *atque*, 'but still,' 'but yet,' or 'nevertheless,' we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narras, via creditibile. Atque sic habet*. Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atque* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by 'now,' 'but,' 'but now.'—*Ceterum*, properly 'as for the rest,' is often used by later writers for *sed*.—*Contra ea*, in the sense of 'on the other hand,' is used as a conjunction. So *adeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated 'just,' 'precisely,' 'even,' 'indeed,' or an intensive 'and.'

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum*, *quum primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antequam*, and *primum*. *nam*, *quando*, *simulac* or *simulatque*, or *simul* alone, *cum*, *quod cum*, *dum*, *quoad*.

**REMARK.** *Ut* and *ubi*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *dōnc*, and *quoad* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *intēd* or *intērim*, and both *dum* and *donc* are often preceded by the adverbs *nequē*, *nequē* *adēo*.

11. INTERROGATIVE conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *utrum*, *an*, and the enclitic *nē*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numnē*, *utrumnē*, and *annē*, does not affect their meaning. With *nōn* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonnē*. To these add *ec* and *en*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *enumquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

**REMARK.** (a.) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *nē*, and *an*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(b.) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numnē*, *numnam*, *numquid*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *en* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquid* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(c.) *Nē* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *nē* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *menē istud potuisse facere putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *nē* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonnē* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo similis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *iter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *nē*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum, taceanne an praedicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumnē* is united into one word. *Nē* is rarely appended to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uternē*; *quōnē malo*; *quantanē*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(d.) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si satis, nihil interest utrum aqua sit, an vinum; nec refert, utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus concava.* Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *in*, *annē*, *an* *vērō* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invitus te offendi, an putas me delectari laedendis hominibus?* Here we may supply before *an* *putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrahit. Quibus? An his, quae geruntur juventute ac viribus?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? etc. Here we may suppose *altime* to be supplied before *an* *his*? Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonnē*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *an*.

(e.) To the rule that *an*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *dubito*, *dubium est*, *incertum est*; *delibēro*, *hæsito*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se virtus sine*

*fortuna ponderanda sit dubito hunc primum omnium ponam.* If virtue is to be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should not prefer this man to all others. Nep. It is not Latin to say *dubito an* for *dubito an*.—*Nescio an*, or *hauri scio an* are used quite in the sense of 'perhaps,' so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus*, *nemo*, *numquam*, instead of *ulius*, *quisquam* and *unquam*. When the principal verb is omitted, *an* is often used in the sense of *aut*; as, *Themistocles, quum ei Simonides, an quis alius, artem memorie polliceretur*, etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *si* is sometimes used in indirect interrogations instead of *num*, like the Greek *si*, and it is so used by Cicero after the verb *experiōr*.

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, are not used alone, but are always affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitics*.

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as adverbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Ceteris in rebus, quum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur*. In other concerns, *when* misfortune comes, *then* damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, (i. e. *adque*), *iccirco* or *idcirco*, (i. e. *id-circa*), *ideo*, *namque*, etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*) and now; *utique*, and so; *neque* or *sec*, and not.

## INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

ah! ah! alas!  
aha! aha! ah! haha!  
āpāgē! away! begone!  
ātāt! or atatte! oh! ah! alas! lo!  
au! or hau! ah! ah!  
eccē! lo! see! behold!  
ēhem! ha! what!  
ēheu! ah! alas!  
ēho! ehodum! ho! soho!  
eiā! or heiā! ah! ah ha! indeed!  
ēn! lo! see! behold!  
eu! well done! bravo!  
eugē! well done! good!  
euaē! } huzzah! hurrah!  
eueē! }  
ha! hōh! ho!  
ha! ha! he! ha! ha!  
hei! ah! wo! alas!

hem! oh! indeed! well! hah! alas! ah! ah!  
heu! oh! ah! alas!  
heus! ho! ho there! hark! hallow!  
hui! hah! ho! oh!  
iō! ho! hurrah! huzzah!  
ō! o! oh! ah!  
ōh! oh! o! ah!  
ōhē! ho! halloo! ho there!  
ōho! oh! aha!  
oi! hoy! alas!  
pāpā! strange! wonderful  
phui! fōh! fugh!  
phy! pish! tush!  
prō! or prūh! oh! ah!  
et! hist! whist! hush!  
tātā! so! strange!  
vā! ah! alas! woe!  
vāh! vāh! ah! alas! oh!

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax* 'be still! So *indignum*, *infandum*, *mālum*, *miserum*, *miserabile*, *nēfas*, when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *macte* and *maecti*, as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *na*, *profecto*, *cito*, *bene*, *belle*; the verbs *quasso*, *præcor*, *oro*, *obsecro*, *amābo*, *āge*, *āgite*, *cōdo*, *audēs*, (for *si audēs*), *sic*, *sultis*, (for *si ris* and *si vultis*), *āgēs*, *āgēdum*, and *āgite* *sum*, and the interrogative *quid* 'what?' used as exclamations.

REM. 8. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercūles, hercūle, hercle*; or *mehercūles, mehercūle, mehercle*, *medius fidius, mecastor, ecastor, ecce, pol, edepol, equirine, per deum, per deum immortālem, per deos, per Jūvem, prō (or prōh) Jūpter, prō dii immortāles, prō deum fidem, prō deum atque hominum fidem, prō deum immortālium* (scil. *fidem*), etc.

## SYNTAX.

§ 200. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words; as, *Cānes latrant*, The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE; as, *Venti spirant*, The winds blow:—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE; as, *Spirantne venti?* Do the winds blow?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY; as, *Quam vehēmenter spirant venti!* How fiercely the winds blow!—or

(4.) IMPERATIVE; as, *Venti, spirāte*, Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

## PROPOSITIONS.

§ 201. 1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit*, The horse runs, *equus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate*.

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself; as,

*Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, *Phocion was always poor*, though he might have been very rich.

6. A subordinate proposition is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of another proposition; as,

*Phœcion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, Phœcion was all ways poor, though he might have been very rich.

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives*, *adjectives*, or *adverbs*, and are accordingly called *substantive*, *adjective* or *adverbial propositions* or *clauses*.

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, etc., sometimes by *quod*, and in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with the infinitive and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo te valere*.

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and pronominal adjectives; as, *qui*, *quâlis*, *quantus*, etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 191, R. 1, (b.)), or by temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple sentence*; as,

*Cadunt fœlia*, The leaves fall. *Semirâmis Babylonem condidit*.

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex sentence*; as,

*Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?* How happens it, that no one lives content? *Quis ego sim, me rogitas*, You ask me, who I am.

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions, either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound sentence*; as,

*Spirant venti et cadunt fœlia*, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses*; the principal proposition is called the *leading clause*, its subject, the *leading subject*, and its verb, the *leading verb*.

## SUBJECT.

§ 202. 1. The subject also is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical subject*, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun; as,

*Aves volant*, Birds fly. *Tu lëgis*, Thou readest. *A est v'câlis*, A is a vowel. *Mentiri est turpe*, To lie is base.

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical subject*, consists of the simple subject with its modifications; as,

*Conscientia bene actæ vitæ est jucundissima*, The consciousness of a well spent life is very pleasant. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia bene actæ vitæ* the complex subject.

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgēbant*, The moon and stars were shining. *Grammaticæ ac mūsicæ iunctæ fuerunt*, Grammar and music were united. *Semper honos nō minusque tuum laudesque mōnēbunt*.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

### Complex or Modified Subject.

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

I. *Simple additions*. The subject may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word*:—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

*Nos consules dīstinas*, We consuls are remiss. *Mucius augur multa narravit*, Mucius the augur related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

*Amor multitudinis commōvitur*, The love of the multitude is excited. *Cura mei*, Care for me. *Viribus usus*, Need of strength.

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

*Fūgit invida atas*, Envious time flies. *Mea māter est bēnigna*. *Dūcit agmina Penthesilæa fūrens*. *Littera scripta manet*.

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Sopor in grāmīna*. *Oppida sine præsidio*. *Receptio ad te*.

3. A dependent adjective *clause* introduced by *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, etc.; as,

*Læve fit, quod bēne fertur, ōnus*, The burden, which is borne well, becomes light. *Litteræ, quas scripsisti, acceptæ sunt*. *Ut, quālis (ille) hābēri vellet, tālis esset*. *Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima esse pōtest, mōrum distantia*.

II. *Complex additions*. The subject may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified:—

(a.) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

*Erat expectatio valde magna*. *Præsidium non nimis firmum*.

(b.) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

*Major pietate*, Superior in piety. *Contentionis cupidus*, Fond of contention. *Patri similis*, Like his father. *Natus membra*. *Juvenis patre dignus*.



(c.) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

*Inuētus* vinci, Not accustomed to be conquered. *Vēnandi stūdēus*, Fond of hunting. *Mirābile dictu*, Wonderful to tell.

(d.) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Rūcus* in rēpublicā, Unskilled in civil affairs. *Ab ēquitātu firmus*. *Celer* in pugnam. *Prōnus* ad fidem.

(e.) By a subordinate clause; as,

*Mēlior est certa pax, quam spērāta victōria*, A certain peace is better than an expected victory. *Dūbus sum, quid faciā*.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

*De victōria Cēsāris fāma perfertur*, A report concerning *Cæsar's* victory is brought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

*Longe ultra*, Far beyond. *Multo ante noctem*, Long before night. *Sexennio post Vēios captos*, Six years after the capture of Veii.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. Compound additions. The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

*Consules*, *Brūtus et Collatinus*, The consuls, *Brutus* and *Collatinus*.

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

*Vitæque necisque potestas*. *Periculorum et liberum incitamentum*.

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

*Græve bellum perditurnumque*. *Animi teneri atque molles*.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,

*Et qui fecere, et qui facta aliorum scripsere, multi laudantur*. *Sall.*

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

*Genus hominum agreste, sine legibus, sine imperio, liberum, atque solutum*.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

*Omnia tua consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea expressed by *tua consilia*. So *Triginta naves longa*. *Præpresens finitimus rex*.

REM. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition ; as,

*Virtus est vitium fugere, To shun vice is a virtue.*

REM. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition ; as,

*E celo descendit 'Nosce te ipsum.' Equum est, ut hoc facias.*

REM. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb ; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

NOTE 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

## PREDICATE.

§ 203. 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical* predicate, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb ; as,

*Sol lūcet, The sun shines. Multa animalia rēpunt, Many animals creep. Brevis est cōsuetus, Pleasure is brief. Eurōpa est pēninsula, Europe is a peninsula. Rectissime sunt apud te omnia.*

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical* predicate, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications ; as,

*Scipio fudit Annibālīs cōpias, Scipio routed the forces of Hannibal. Here fudit is the grammatical, and fudit Annibālīs cōpias the logical predicate.—So, Rōmulus Rōmānās conditor urbis fuit.*

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject ; as,

*Prōbitas laudatur et alget, Honesty is praised and neglected. Lēti vis rēpuit, rēprietque gentes. Lucius Cātīlīna fuit magnā vi et animi et corpōris, sed ingenio malo pravōque.*

### *Complex or Modified Predicate.*

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions.* The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word* ;—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.) ; as,

*Servus fit libertinus, The slave becomes a freedman. Servius Tullius rex ei dēclārātus. Aristides justus est appellātus. Incēdo regina.*

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case ; as,

*Spe vivimus, We live by hope. Deus regit mundum, God rules the world.*

(3.) An adverb either simple or modified ; as,

*Sæpe venit.* He came *often*. *Festina lente.* Hasten *slowly*. *Litrus facile dñs suntur.* *Chremes nimis graviter cruciatur adolescentulum.*

(4.) An infinitive mood ; as,

*Cipiti discere.* He desires *to learn*. *Audeo dicere.* *Ver esse coperat.*

2. A phrase consisting of a preposition and its case ; as, *Venit ad urbem.* He came *to the city*.

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial clause ; as,

*Vereor ne reprehendar.* I fear *that I shall be blamed*. *Zēnēm, quum Athēnis essem, audiebam frēquenter.* *Fac cōgites.*

II. *Complex additions.* The predicate may be modified :—

1. By a word to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses ; as, *Agamem-nōis belli glōria.* *Pāternum odiū erga Rōmānos.* *Mens sibi conscia recti.* *Mea maxime intērest, te vālere.* *Agō tibi grātias.* *Meipsum inertie condemnō.* *Eos hoc mōneo.* *In quo te accūso.* *Mōnet eum, ut suspiciōnes vitet.*

III. *Compound additions.* 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions ; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition ; as,

*Bello confecto discessit,* i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit.* The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil desperandum, Teucro dūce.*

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

## APPOSITION.

✓ § 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case as,

*Urbs Rōma*, The city *Rome*. *Nos consules*, We *consuls*. So *Ajūd Herodōtum*, patrem *historiæ*, sunt *innumerabiles fabulæ*, In *Herodotus*, the *father* of *history*, etc. *Cic. Lapidēs silices*, *flint stones*. *Liv. Ante mē consulem*, Before I was *consul*. *Fons cui nōmen Arethūsa est*. *Cic.*

REMARK 1. (a.) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fūgæ cōmitem me adjunxi*, I added myself, as a *companion* of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander puer*, Alexander *when a boy*. *Cito sēnex scribere historiā instituit*. *Suet.*

(b.) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2.) assumes the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative affirms it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocatur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Unus magister egrēgius*. *Plin. Philosophia magistra vitæ*. *Cic.* If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus filissimū custos*.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo fulminā bellī, Scipiādas*, clādē *Libyæ*. *Virg. Mūlēne, urbs nobilis*. *Cic. Tulliolā, deliciæ nostræ*. *Id.*;—and sometimes in both; as, *Nāte, meæ vires*. *Virg. Nos, animæ viles, inhumāta infestique turba*. *Id.*

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, *Consul dixi*, scil. *ego*; (1) the consul said. And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, *Tua dōmus, talis vtri*. *Cic.* See § 211, R. 3, (b.)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribūnī *plēbis*, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribunes of the people. *Cæs. Publius et Servius Sullæ, Serri filii*. *Sall. Tib. et Gaius Gracchi*. *Cic. Oratiōes L. et C. Aureliōrum Orestārum*. *Id.* But sometimes in the singular; as, *Cn. et L. Domitius*. *Cic.*

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vērō cum Aristozēno, doctos sâne homines, omittāmus*. *Cic.*

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque rēges legātī missi sunt*. *Liv.*

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbeē Patāvī locāvī*, The city of *Patavium*. *Virg. Pluvius Eridāni amnis*. *Id. Arborem fici numquam vidēbat*. *Cic. In oppido Antiochiæ*. *Id. Rupili et Persi par*. *Hor.*

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthi Achaiæ urbe*; At *Corinth*, a city of *Achaia*. *Tac. Antiochiæ, celebri urbe*. *Cic.* See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 8.

REM. 8. (a.) A proper name, after *nōmen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nōmen*, etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons, cui nōmen Arethūsa est*. *Cic. Stirps viridis, cui Ascanium parentes dicere nōmen*. *Liv. Nōmen Aretūro est mihi*, I have the

name Arcturus. Plant. *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo additur.* Virg. *Cui Igerio inditum nōmen.* Liv.—(b.) The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmēn Mercūrii est mihi.* Plaut. *Q. Metellus, cui Macedonici nōmen inditum erat.* Veil. Cf. R. 8.—(c.) In *Illa ætas, cui fecimus Aurea nōmen*, Ov. Met. 15, 96, *Aurea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Aureum* (scil. *ætatem*); or *Aureas* dat. (scil. *ætati*).

REM. 9. A clause may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Ogillet oratōrem institui—rem arduam*, Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quint.—So also a neuter adjective used substantively; as, *Triste lūpus stabūlis*, The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. Virg. *Vārium et mutabile semper fēmina.* Id.

REM. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Onerariæ, pars maxīma ad Ægimūrum*, —*aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*, The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poetæ suum quisque opus a vulgo considerāri vult.* Cic. In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative, though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi quisque impērium petentibus.* Sall. J. 18. So also, in Liv. 26, 29, *quisque* remains in the nominative although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

REM. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

*Quis hērūs est tibi?* Amphitruo, scil. *est.* Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. *Quid quæris?* Librum, scil. *quæro.* What are you looking for? A book. *Quōtā hōrā venisti?* Sextā. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

NOTE 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, *Cūjus est liber?* Meus, (not *Mei*.) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (b.)) So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus*? *Cūjum pēcus?* an *Melibæi?* Non; *vērūm Ægōnis.* Virg.

NOTE 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, *Quanti emisti?* Viginti minis. *Damnatusne es furti?* Imo alio crimine. See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

## ADJECTIVES.

— § 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bōnus vir*, A good man.

*Benigna māter*, A kind mother.

*Triste bellum*, A sad war.

*Spe amissā*, Hope being lost.

*Bōnos viros*, Good men.

*Vānæ lēges*, Useless laws.

*Minācia verba*, Threatening words

*Hæc res*, This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna.*

*Hæc lēges vānæ sunt.*

NOTE 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104), are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting some *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy*; the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjectives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and numerals.

**NOTE 2.** An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

**NOTE 3.** Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

**NOTE 4.** In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

**REMARK 1.** An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas æger ago*, scil. *ego*, *Melibæus*; Virg. *Fortunate puer, tu nunc eris alter ab illo*. Id. *Ut se totum ei traderet*. Nep. *O me miserum* (spoken by a man), *miseram me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sumus*, *salvæ sumus*, scil. *nos*, masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos fruges consumere nati*. Hor.

**REM. 2.** An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

*Lupus et agnus siti compulsi*, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Sardiniaque amissæ*. Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *uterque* in the singular. *Procumbit uterque*, scil. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

*His genus, ætas, eloquentia præpe æquâlia fuere*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, impéria, nobilitates, honores, divitiæ in cæsus sita sunt*. Cic. *Huic bella, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grata fuere*. Sall. *Anima atque animus, quamvis integra recens in corpus eunt*. Lucr.

**NOTE.** When nouns denoting things without life are of the same gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et vita et patrimonii partes, et urbs Barce concessa sunt*. Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque velocitas et regio hostibus ignara tutata sunt*. Sall. *Nox atque præda remota sunt*. Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

*Numidæ atque signa militaria obscurati sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romani regem regnumque Macedonæ sua futura sciunt*. Liv. *Jâne, fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros*. Ovid.

**Exc. to REM. 2.** The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

*Sociis et rege recepto*, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri omnes et maria*. Cic. *Cognitum est salutem, liberos, famam, fortunas esse carissimas*. Cic.

**NOTE.** A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were connected by *et*; as, *Filiam cum filio accitos*. Liv. *Ilia cum Lauso de Numitore sâti*. Ovid. *Filium Alexandri cum matre in arcem custodiendos mittit*. Just.

**REM. 3.** (1.) An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

*Pars certare parâti*, A part, prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros dilapsa*. .... *suam quisque spem exséquentes*. Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine iudice tati*. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2.) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the singular takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars arduus altis pulverulentus equis furit*. Virg. *Pars una ducum*—*fractus morbo*. Ovid.

(3.) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human beings, have by *synesis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Latium Cipriâque agro muletati* Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Cipita conjurationis virgis cæsi ac securi percussi sunt*. Id. *Auxilia irati*. Id. So after *millia*; as, *Duo millia Tyriorum, crucibus affixi*. Curt. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

**REM. 4.** Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Mæria Tyrrhenum atque Adriaticum*, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. *Cum legionibus secundâ et tertiâ*. Liv. *Circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque*. Id. But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquilinum Collinamque portam*. Id. *Légio Martia et quarta*. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nobis presente*. Plaut. *Absente nobis*. Ter.

**REM. 5.** A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (a) sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Vênêti appellati*. Liv. (b.) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposition to it; as, *Corinthum, patres vestri, totius Græciæ lumen, extinctum esse voluerunt*. Cic.; or (c) with the noun of a subordinate sentence; as, *Illorum urbem ut præpugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris*. Nep.

**REM. 6.** When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, (§ 239, R. 1.) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mihi negligenti esse non licuit*, i. e. *me negligentem esse mihi non licuit*. Cic. *Da mihi justo sanctoque videri*. Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vobis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. But the adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expedit bonas esse vobis*, scil. *vos*. Ter. *Si civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum*. Cic.

**REM. 7.** (1.) An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

*Boni sunt rari*, scil. *homines*, Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar suos misit sci. milites*, Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra*, scil. *manus*, The right (hand). *Impletur pinguis ferina*, scil. *carnis*. Virg. *Hiberna*, scil. *castra*. *Allum* scil. *mare*. *Quartana*, scil. *febris*. *Immortales*, scil. *Dii*. Lucr. *Amantium*, scil. *dominium*. Ter. *Illum indignanti similem, similemque minanti apticæra*, scil. *Amisii*. Virg. *Tibi primas deferô*, scil. *partes*. Cic. *Respice præteritum*, scil. *tempus*, which is often omitted, as in *ex quo*, *ex eo*, and *ex illo*, scil. *tempore*. *Ovgnatæ meorum omnium literis*, scil. *amicorum*. Cic. So patricial adjectives; as, *Missi ad Parthum Armeniumque legati*, scil. *regem*. In *Tusculano*, scil. *prodicio*.

NOTE 1. The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *homines*, but when they are possessives, it is oftener *amici*, *militæ*, *cives*, or *pro pinqui*.

NOTE 2. The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

*Bonum*, a good thing; *malum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *honestum*, *verum*, *turpe*; and in the plural, *bona*, *mala*, *turpia*, *levia*, *caelestia*, etc. *Labor omnia vincit*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

NOTE 1. The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Eorum rerum utrumque*. Cic. *Humânarum rerum fortuna plerâque regit*. Sall. *Ilud te rogo, sumptui ne parcas ullâ in re, quod ad utilitatem opus sit*. Cic. *Omnium rerum mors est extremum*. Cic.

NOTE 2. Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A primo*, At first. Plaut. *Per mutua*, Mutually. Virg. *In primis*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad hæc*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things.) Plin. *Iniquissimi mei*, My greatest enemies. *Familiâris meus*. Cic. *Iniquus noster*. Id. *Iusta funebria*. Liv. *Jocis omnia plena*. scil. sunt. Virg.

REM. 8. (a.) Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, *Supremum vâle dixit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Dulce et decôrum est pro patriâ mori*. Hor. *Velle suum cuique est*. Pers. *Gras istud quando venit?* Mart. J. *Redito actûm*. A. Id. *actûm diu est*. Plaut. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera letus*. Hor. (b.) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Ænæs pelâgo jactetur*—*nota tibi*. Virg.

REM. 9. (a.) Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum temporis*, for *multum tempus*; much time. *Id rei, for ea res*; that thing. So, *plus eloquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110, (b.)) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vana rerum*, for *vânæ res*. Hor. *Plerâque humânarum rerum*. Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, *Acuta belli*. Hor. *Tellûs operta*. Virg. *Summa pectoris*.

NOTE. The adjectives thus used partitively in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3, Note 1.

REM. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, *Dulce ridentem Lâdgen ambo*, *dulce loquentem*. Hor. *Magnum stridens*. Virg. *Arma horrendum sonuere*. Id. *Multa deos venerati sunt*. Cic. *Hodie aut summum cras*. Id. See § 192, II. 4, (b.)

REM. 11. (a.) A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nemo miles Rômânus*, No Roman soldier. Liv. *Nemo fere adolescens*. Cic. *Vir nemo bonus*. Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (c.) *Tiberim accolis fluvii orbatum*. Tac. *Incola turba*. Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is*; as, *Pellius hasta*. Ovid. *Laurus Parnâsis*. Id. *Ursa Libystis*. Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(b.) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Næque enim ignâri cunctis ante mûlûrum*. i. e. *antiquorum* or *præteritorum*. Virg. *Nunc hominum mores*. Plaut.



**REM. 12. (a.)** An adjective or adjective pronoun, used *partitively*, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluorum nulla est prudentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium fluviorum maximus*. Cic. *Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de*, *ex*, *apud*, *inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a *collective* noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissimus nostris civitatis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. *Maximus stirpis* Liv.

**REM. 13. (a.)** When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. *Noster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Pugna Romana stabilis suo pondere incumbentium in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*. Cic.

**REM. 14.** An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versa*; as, *Edificationis tuæ consilium* for *tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accusantes violati hospitii fœdus, for violatum*. Liv. *Ad majora initia rerum dicentibus fatis, for majorem*. Id. *Iis nominibus civitatum, quibus ex civitatibus, etc., for earum civitatum*. Cæsar.

**REM. 15. (a.)** An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce venit Telamon propèrus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Læti pacem agitantibus, for læta*. Sall. *Æneas se matutinus agebat, for mane*. Virg. *Nec lappus grægitus nocturnus obambulat*, i. e. by night. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non*; as, *Mentis tametsi nullus moneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sextus ab armis nullus discedit*. Cic. *Prior, primus, princeps, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultimus, multus, totus*, and some others, are used instead of their neutrals, adverbially; as, *Priori Remo augurium venisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispania postrima omnium provinciarum perdomita est*. Liv. *Scetola solos novem menses Asia præfuit*, Only nine months. Cic. *Unum hoc dico*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, *Prænuus cecidit*. Ovid. *Fræquentes convenerant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versa*; as, *Sic venias hodierna*. Tibull. *Salve, primus omnium parens patriæ appellate*. Plin.

**REM. 16. (a.)** A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multa et varia et copiosa oratione*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actio, varia, vehemens, plena veritatis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, *Periculossimum civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Malam domesticam disciplinam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; *Externos multos ceteros viros nominarem*. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

REM. 17. The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *p.rius*, *mēdius*, *ultīmus*, *extrēmus*, *intīmus*, *infīmus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *rēliquus*, and *cētera*; as,

*Mēdia nox*, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The top of a tree. *Suprēmos montes*, The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extrēmo complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco nātus*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

REM. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscera terræ*. Ovid. *Scribendum est mihi*. See § 184, 2 and 3.

## RELATIVES.

§ 206. REM. 19. (a.) Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

*Puer qui lēgit*, The boy who reads. *Ædificium quod extruxit*, The house which he built. *Litræ quas dedit*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum qualis eram*, I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus cuius munere vivimus*, cui nullus est similis, quem colimus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus. *Adlictus Herminippo, et ab hoc ductus est*. *Aquilo, quantus frangit ilices*. Hor.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui*.

NOTE 2. When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used *logically*. *Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille*.

(b.) The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood; with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

*Erant omnino duo itinēra, quibus itinēribus dōmo exire possent*, There were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home. Cæs. *Crūdēlissimæ bello, quāle bellum nulla umquam barbaria gessit*. Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dies*; as, *Fore in armis certo die, qui dies futūrus erat*, etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

(2.) Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

*Animum rēge, qui, nisi pāret, impērat*, Govern your passions, which rule unless they obey. Hor. *Tanta multitudinis, quantam caput urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus*. Cic. *Quot capitulum vivunt, totidem studiōrum millia*. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

*Quibus de rēbus ad me scripsisti, coram vidēbitur*; scil. *de rēbus*, In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Trōja vocātur*; scil. *locus*. Liv. *Quantā vi expetunt, tantā deprecantur*. Qualesque viros eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tales aspicio. Ovid.

(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad quas res aptissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Maximum ornamentum amicitiae tollit, qui ea tollit verecundiam.* Cic. *Terra quod accepit, nunquam sine usura reddit.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *talis* before *qualis*, *tantus* before *quantus*, *inde* before *unde*, *ibi* before *ubi*, etc.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non malarum quas amor curas habet, hac inter obliviscitur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

*Qui bene luit, bene vixit,* scil. *homo*, (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos curriculo pulvèrem Olympicum colligisse juvat,* scil. *homines*, There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non habeo quod te accusem,* scil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non solum sapiens videris, qui hinc absis, sed etiam beatus,* scil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyrii tenuere coloni,* scil. *quam* or *eam*, There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuérant, Romanos invadunt, for et qui non in priore,* etc. Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scribas et aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti,* for *quos.* Cic. *Raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis, exhibant,* for *iis, quos quisque efferre poterat, elatis.* Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive either preceding or following the pronoun; as, *Urbeum quam statum vestra est,* for *urbs.* Virg. *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quis turbas dedit!* for *Eunuchus.* Ter. *Naucretem quem concénire volui, in navi non erat.* Plaut. *Atque alii, quorum comœdia prisca virorum est,* for *atque alii viri, quorum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta quibus comœdia prisca viris est,* for *illi vi-ri, quibus.* Id. *Quos pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by attraction.

(7.) (a.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos, quos inconditos jaciunt,* for *jocos inconditos, quos,* etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis, quæ magna volant.* Virg. *Calore, quem multum habet.* Cic.

(b.) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a numeral, a comparative, or a superlative; as, *Nocte quam in terris ultimam egit,* The last night which he spent upon earth. *Esculapius, qui primus vulnus obligeasse dicitur.* Cic. *Consiliis parere, quæ nunc pulcherrima Nautæ dat senior,* Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum venissent ad vada Volaterrana, quæ nominantur,* Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

*San. res non longe a Tolosātium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in provinciâ* The Santes are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitia, quod tempus haud longe aberrat.* Sall. *Rômæ fânus Diânæ pópuli Látini cum pópulo Rômáno fêcerunt: ea erat confessio caput rerum Rômam esse; i. e. that thing or that act.* Liv. *Si omnia faciendâ sunt, quæ amici vellent, non amicitias tales, sed conjurationes putandas sunt; i. e. such things or such connections.* Cic. *So, Ista quidem via, Surely this is force.* *Ea ipsa causa belli fuit, for id ipsum.* Hither also may be referred such explanatory sentences as, *Qui meus amor in te est, Such is my love for you.* Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

*Flumen est Arur quod in Rhodânûm influit.* Cæs. *Ad flumen Oxum pervertitur res, qui turbidus semper est.* Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distinguished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

*Nâturæ vultus quem dixere Chaos,* The appearance of nature which they called chaos. Ovid. *Génus hominûm: quod Hêlotes vocatur.* Nep. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem,* The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur.* Sall. *Pecuniarum conquisitio; eos esse belli civis nervos dictitans Mucianus.* Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equivalent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding clause; as,

*Abundantiâ earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* An abundance of those things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 205, R. 7, (2.) N. 1. But sometimes when a neuter adjective used substantively has preceded, *res* with a relative follows; as, *Permulta sunt, quæ dici possunt, quâ re intelligatur.* Cic. *Fatâle monstrum, quæ, etc., scil. Cleopâtra.* Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(a.) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as, *Eruditum, quos.* Sall. *Génus, qui prementur.* Cic. *Sénatus*—ii. Sall.

(b.) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs, as, *Democritum omnittamus; nihil est enim apud istos, quod, etc. i. e. with Democritus and his followers.* Cic. *Dionysius negavit se jure illo nigro quod canas caput erat, delectatum.* Tum is, qui illa coxerat, etc. Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Omnem laudare fortunas meas, qui natum tali ingenio præditum habere;* scil. *mei,* as I extolling my fortune, who, etc. Ter. *Id mea mente refert, qui sum natu maximus.* Id. *Nostrum consilium laudandum est, qui noluerim, etc. Cic.;* or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servili tumultu, quos, etc. Cæs.*

(13.) (a.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is commonly neuter; as, *Postremo, quod difficillimum inter mortales, gloriâ invidiam vicisti,* Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, which, among men, is most difficult. Sall. *Equidem expectabam jam tuas litteras, idque cum multis.* Cic.

(b.) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun, referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Plutonis studiosus audienti fuit.* Cic. *Diem consumi volebant, id quod fecerunt.* Id.

(c.) Sometimes *is*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as, *Idem velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod* relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *at*, *etsi*, and *nisi*; as, *Quodsi illinc inanis profugisses, tamen: ista tua fuga nefaria iudicaretur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. *Quodsi*, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodsi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, *Quodnisi ego meo adventu illius cōatus aliquantulum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. *Quodetsi* is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quodetsi ingēnis magnis præditi quidam dicendi cōpia sine ratiōne consequuntur, ars tamen est dux certior*.—*Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *nē* and *ut*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, *Quod utinam illum, cū ipso impio facinore in has misērias projectus sum, eadem hæc simulacrum videam*. Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.*—*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (a.) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Rem. 2, page 185; as, *Ninus et Semiramis, qui Bābylōna condiderant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crēbro fūnābi et tibicine, quæ sibi sumpserat*. Cic. *Ex summā letitiā atque lasciviā, quæ diuturna quies pepererat*. Sall. *Naves et captivos quæ ad Chum capta erant*. Liv.

(b.) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et pater, qui in convivio eratis*. *Ego et tu, qui erāmus*. Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quōt*, *quantus*, *quālis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *tōt*, *tantus*, *tālis*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quæ quum ita sint*, Since these (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tū, pro tuā prudentiā, quid optimum factū sit, videbis*. Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prudentiā, or, quā prudentiā es*. So, *Vēlis tantummodo, quæ tua virtus, expugnābis*. Hor. *Quā prudentiā es, nihil te fugiet*. Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *li, qui audiunt*, or *qui adant*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex libris quos dixi or quos ante (supra) laudavi*: and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem*, *quam*, *quod vocant*, or by *qui*, *quæ*, *quod vocatur*, *dictur*, etc. as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vocant, inponi (Athenis) licebat*. Cic. *Vestra, quæ dicitur, vita, mors est*. Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Is, unde te adivisse dicis*, i. e. a quo. Cic. *Divitiæ apud illos sunt, aut ubi illi volunt*, i. e. apud quos. Sall. *Huic ab adolescentiā bella intestina, cedes, rapina, discordia civis, grāta fuisse*, Ibiq̄ juvenitētem exercuit, i. e. in iis, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam qui* and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; as, *Tam mihi grātum id erit, quam quod grātissimum*. Cic. *Tam enim sum amicus reipublicæ, quam qui maxime*. Id. *Tam quam mitis, quam qui lenissimus*. Id. So also with *ut qui* without *tam*; as, *Te semper sic colam et tuebor, ut qui nem diligētissime*. Id.

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ 207. REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, etc.*) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*. *Hic* and *ille*, however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id* in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se*; and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui*.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille*, are sometimes used, especially with *quidem*, where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Sipientiæ studium vêtus id quidem in nostris, sed tamen, etc.* Cic. *O hominem semper illum quidem mihi aptum, nunc vëro etiam suavem.* Id. *Quem nèque fides, nèque jusjurandum, nèque illum misericordia, repressit.* Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Male se res habet, quum, quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pëcuniâ.* Cic.

REM. 22. *Sic, ita, id, hoc, illud*, are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, *Sic a majôribus suis acceptèrant, tanta pöpilli Römîni esse bénéficia, ut, etc.* Cic. *Te illud admoneo, ut quôtidie mediâre, resistendum esse iracundiæ.* Id. *Hoc tibi persuadeas vëlim, me nihil omisisse,* I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut*; as, *De cûjus dicendi cöpiâ sic acceptum, ut, etc.* Cic. *Ita enim dëfinit, ut perturbatio sit, etc.* Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud, or id agere ut*, the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1, (a.)

REM. 23. (a.) *Hic* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *ille* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hic* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hic homo* is then the same as *ëgo*. On this account *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Ignôvia corpus hëbëtat, labor firmat; illa matüram senectutem, hic longam adölescentiam reddit.* Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(b.) But the order is often reversed, so that *hic* refers to the object first mentioned, and *ille* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sic deus et virgo est; hic spe ceter, illa timore.* Ovid. So when *alter...alter*, 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *al* or refers to the last object. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic . ille*. *Sc ille...ille* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(c.) *Hic* and *ille* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc*, see § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hic* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc*, and *adhuc*, is expressed by *ille* and its derivatives, when it is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille*, when not in opposition to *hic*, is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno illi Alexandro simillimus.* Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. *Mëdëa illa,* The celebrated Medea. Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Avëbant visere, quis ille tot per annos opes nostras sprëvisset.* Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this*; as, *Unum illud dico,* This only I say. Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other' as, *Vercingetorix obviam Cæsari præfiscitur*. Ille (scil. Cæsar) oppidum Novesium oppugnare instituit. Cæsar.

REM. 25. *Iste* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste liber* is thy book, but *ille liber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191, R. 1, (a); *Iste* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (a.) *Is* does not, like *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic*, *is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

(b.) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *tālis*, such, denoting a class; as, *Næque enim tu is es, qui quid sis nescias*, Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *idem*; as, *vos —is*. Cic. Manil. 12.

(c.) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is*, *atque is*, *ique*, *et is quidem*, and with a negative *nec is*; as, *Vincula vero, et ea sempiterna*, etc. Cic. *Unde in domo, et ea quidem angusta*, etc. Id. *Adolescentes aliquot, nec ii tenui loco orti*, etc. Liv. *Sed is* is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Serēritatem in senectute prōbo, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam*. Cic. The neuter *id*, or *idque*, serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quamquam te, Marce fili, annum jam audientem Cratippum, idque Athenis*, etc.

(d.) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Pater amat liberos et tamen castigat. Multos illustrat fortuna, dum vexat*.

(e.) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Philippus hostium manus sepe vitavit, suorum effugere non valuit*, those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Judicia civitatis cum iudiciis principis certant*. Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Terentii fabulas studiōse lēgo*, Plautus *minus delector*: and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum Lycurgo et Dracōne et Solōne nostras lēges conferre volueritis*. Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille*, when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam enim virtus diu mercedem desiderat, præter hanc*; i. e. the one of which I am speaking. Cic.

REM. 27. (a.) *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *tamen*, 'yet' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musici, qui erant quondam idem poætæ*. Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrates et Tigris magno aquarum divortio iter percurrunt; idem (and yet) paulatim in arctius coeunt*.

(b.) *Et ipse*, on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antoninus Commodus nihil patrum habuit, nisi quod contra Germanos feliciter et ipse pugnavit, for item or ipse quoque*. Eutr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as, *Primis repulsis Maharbal cum majore robore virorum missus nec ipse eruptionem cohibere sustinuit*. Liv.

(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuere quidam qui idem ornate idem versute dicerebent*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui*, *ac* or *atque*, *quam*, *quasi*, *ut* or *cum*; as, *Verres idem est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est eadem ac fuit*. Liv. *Disputationem exponimus iisdem fere verbis ut actum est*. Cic. *Eandem constituit potestatem quam si*, etc. Cic. *Eodem loco res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset*. Id. *Hunc ego eodem mecum patre gentium*, etc. So also poetically with the dative; as, *Eodem aliis opitu' quæte est*. Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

### IPSE, INTENSIVE OR ADJUNCTIVE.

REM. 28. (a.) *Ipse*, when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively, agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ego medicinâ* (i. e. *ut alii me consolerentur*); *me ipse consolor*. Cic. *Accusando eum, a cuius crudelitâ vosmet ipsi armis vindicatis*. Liv.—Cn. Pompeium omnibus, Lentulum mihi ipsi antepōno. Cic. *Fac ut te ipsum custodias*. Id. *Deforme est de se ipsum predicare*. Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est negotii continere eos, quibus præsis, si te ipse contineas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam ipse legem negligo*; not *meam ipsius*, according to § 211, R. 3, (a). So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci ipsi suis potuissent*. Cic. *Eam fraudem vestrâ ipsi virtute vitastis*. Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tuâ ipsius causâ hoc feci*. And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjecturam de tuo ipsius studio cêperis*, instead of *ipse*.—(c.) *Ipse* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Casarem occiderunt*. Cic.

(d.) *Ipse*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely'; or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrhachio sum præfectus ipso illo die, quo lex est data de nobis*, on the very day. Cic. *Triginta dies trant ipsi, quum has dëbam lëtras, per quos nullas a vobis accëperam*, just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam dubitabit—quam facile império atque exercitû socios et vectigalia conservâturus sit, qui ipso nômîne ac râmbrë defendêrit*, by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

### GENERAL RELATIVES.

REM. 29. *Quicumque*, *quisquis*, and the other general relatives (see § 189, 5, R.), are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quicumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque militum*; and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis erit vitæ color*. Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis hōnos tūmuli, quidquid solâmen hūmāndi est*. Virg. *Quicumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quivis*; as, *Quæ sanâri potêrunt, quâcumque râtione sanâbo*, What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—'in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quicumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quivis* or *quilibet*; as, *Cicêronem cuicumque eorū fortitèr opposuêrim*. Quint. *Qualiscumque* and *quantiscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu non concipisces quanticumque ad libertatē pervenire?* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Siquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek *ὅστις* for *ὅστις*, 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of 'perhaps'; as, *Nuda fere Alpium cæcûmina sunt, et si quid est pabuli, obruit nives*. Li<sup>2</sup>.



## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

REM. 30. (a.) *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hereditas est pecunia, quæ morte alicujus ad quempiam pervenit jure*, An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multis sine doctrinâ aliquid omnium generum et artium consequuntur*. Id.

(b.) *Aliquis* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quis*. (See § 187, (3.)) Hence *aliquis* stands by itself, but *quis* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quis* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Mortuus anî egestas aut quid ejusmodi*. Cic. *Létrâhère quid de aliquo*. Id. *Injûrium cui facere*. Id. So, *Dixerit quis*, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quis*, *aliquis* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Timêbat Pompeius omnia, nê aliquid vos timêrêtis*. Cic. In English the emphasis of *aliquis* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus mörvendî, si aliquis esse pôtest, is ad exiguum tempus datur*. Cic.—*Quispiam*, also, is sometimes used like *quis* after *si*, etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Quærêt fortasse quispiam*.

REM. 31. (a.) *Quisquam*, 'any one,' and *ullus*, 'any,' are universal. Like *unquam* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine*; as, *Nêque ex castris Catilines quisquam omnium discesserat*. Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo casu pôtest contingere, ut ulla internissio fiat officii*. Cic. *An quisquam pôtest sine perturbâtione mentis irasci*? Id. *Têtrior hic tyrannus Syracûsanis fuit, quam quisquam supêriorum*. Id. *Vix quidquam spei est*. Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne*, *nêve*, and the negative interrogative particle *num*, *quis* and not *quisquam* is used.

(b.) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *aliquis* or *quis*, serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut enim nêmo, quod quidem magis crêdo, aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit, if any man*. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si*, where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam*, *ullus*, *unquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, rives*. Cic. *Bellum maxime omnium mênôrâbile, quæ umquam gesta sunt, scriptûrus sum*. Tac.

(c.) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Cuiquam civi*, To any citizen. *Cujusquam orâtôrîs eloquentiam*. Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nêmo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus*. *Nêmo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus*; as, *nêmo pictor, nêmo adôlescens*, and even *homo nêmo*. Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner; as, *quisquam hómo, quisquam civis*. On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nêmo* and *quisquam*, especially the genitive *nullius* and the ablative *nullo*.

REM. 32. (a.) *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one...another'; as, *Aliud aliis videtur optimum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Aliis aliunde përicûlum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; or, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium aliter cum aliis de nobis locutum audiebam*. Cic.—*Alter* is used in the same manner when only two persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, *Alter in altêrum causam confërunt*, They accuse each other.

(b.) *Alius*, repeated in different propositions, is also translated 'one...another'; as, *Aliud dgitur, aliud simulâtur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. *Alter loqritur, aliter scribit*, like *aliter ac* or *atque*, He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliui loquntur, aliud scribit*.

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrique*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macedones—Tyrus, utrique*. But in other good prose writers the plural *utrique* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrique Dionysii*. Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, *Quidam de collegis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me quodam tempore Mædipontum vènisse tecum*. Id.

(b.) *Quidam* is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to *the whole*, or to *others*; as, *Excesserunt urbe quidam, alii mortem sibi consciverunt*, Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milvo est quoddam bellum naturale cum corvo*, A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fuit enim illud quoddam cæcum tempus servitutis*. Id. *Et enim omnes artes quæ ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognitione quâdam inter se consentiunt*. Id.—*Tanquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ita dicam*.

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet*, 'any one,' and *quisquisque*, 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmodi quivis ut perspicere possit*, All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic apud majores nostros adhibebatur pèritus, nunc quilibet*. Id. *Natura innumquamque trahit ad discendum*. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Crinthus*, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quisque* signifies *each*, *every one*, distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod cuique obigit, id quisque teneat*, Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scipio pollicetur sibi magnæ cære fore, ut omnia civitatibus, quæ cujusque fuissent, restituerentur*. Cic. *Ut prædici posset, quid cuique eventurum, et quo quisque fâto natus esset*. Id. *Cur fiat quidque quæris: recte omnino*. Id. *Quo quisque est sollertior, hoc docet liberosius*. Id. *Ut quisque optime dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem timet*. Id. And hence the expression *quotusquisque* in the sense of 'how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Décimus quisque sorte lectus*, Every tenth man. *Quinto quodque anno*, In every fifth year. So also after *suus*; as, *Sui cuique liberi carissimi: suum cuique placet*. (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissimus quisque*, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte optimum quidque rarissimum*, The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur*, The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. With *primus*, it denotes the *first possible*; as, *Primo quodque tempore*, As soon as possible. Cic.

#### POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tutus amor meus est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam ricem dolere soleo*. Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *amor tuus ac iudicium de me*.

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the objects of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam neque tuâ negligentia, neque odio id fecit tuo*, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred of you. Ter. See § 211, R. 3.

(c.) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo revertar? in patriam?* scil. *meam*, Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrâ mœnēra porrexit*, scil. *suâ*. Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dicam, lamen id potērit cum dñis meis vestris cōgītāre*. Cic.

(d.) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris dñimum mihi rēconciliasti*, i. e. *patris mei dñimum* rather than *tui*.

(e.) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy, his, her, its, *jur*, your, their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

#### THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS*.

§ 208. REM. 37. (a.) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

*Oppidāni fēctus in se ac suos fēdum consciunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(b.) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

*Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipse mercēdem exigat caritātis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est*. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

*Ariovistus prædicavit, non sēse Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse*, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Hômērum Colophōniū civem esse dicunt suum*, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus petiit ut se ad amicitiam tertium ascriberent*. Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvētii sēse Allobroges vi coartūros existimabant, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur*. Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvētii*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scythas petebant ut regis sui filiā mātīmōnio sibi jungeret*. Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

*Mœdēam prædicant* (scil. *hōmīnes*) *in fugā frātis sui membra in iis locis, quæ se pārens persēquerētur, dispāvisse*. Cic. *Ipsūm regem trādunt opēratūm his sacris se addidisse*. Liv.

(3.) (a.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

*A Cæsare invitōr ut sim sibi lēgātus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invitat*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(b.) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

*Cānum tam fida custōdiā quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hōminum commoditates esse gēnērātos?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading- or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

*Jugurtha legatos misit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissime ferre homines debent, quæ ipsorum culpâ contracta sunt*.

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

*Frâtes inter se quum formâ, tum moribus similes*, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Feras inter sese conciliat natura*. Cic. *Accidunt aliquæ a doctis etiam inter ipsos mutuo reprehensa*. Quint.

(6.) (a.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

*Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret, suis verbis, adversarios ejus in fugâ esse*, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

(b.) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

*Suam rem sibi salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. *t aut*

(c.) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

*Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur*, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. *Ligarius*) *ut ei pacem esse expédiret*. Cic. *C. Claudii drantis per sui fratris parentisque ejus mânes*. Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariovistus respondit, neminem secum sine sua perniciæ contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *sua* to *neminem*.

(7.) (a.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

*Hunc cives sui ex urbe ejecerunt*, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titurius quum procul Ambiorigem, suos cohortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

(b.) *Suus*, and not *hujus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as, *Octavius quem sui* (scil. *amici*) *Cæsarem salutabant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

(c.) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *et* but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

*Ptolemæus amicos Demetrii cum suis rebus dimisit*, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fil*, *favorable*; as,

*Sunt et sua dona parenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut liberator ille populi Romani opprimeretur tempora sua*. Liv. *Alphæus crebatur populo sane suo*. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua terra Salaci*, scil. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Pessoque sopor suus occupat artus*. Id.

## NOMINATIVE.

## SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209. (a.) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1. (a.) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (b.) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

(b.) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

*Ego lægo*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest.

*Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Nos lægitmus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, You write.

*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc natus adice septem*, scil. *vos*, *Thébædes*. Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So *Adde defectionem Italiæ*, scil. *vos*, *milites*. Liv. 26, 41.

REMARK 1. (a.) The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as,

*Opto*, I desire; *vivis*, thou livest; *håbemus*, we have. See § 147, 3.

(b.) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, *Ego rēges ejeci*, *vos tyrannus introductis*, I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dice aperte*, *consules desumus*. Cic. *Tu es patrōnus*, *tu pater*. Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, *Tu in fōrum prōdire*, *tu lacem conspiciere*, *tu in hōrum conspectum venire cōnaris?* Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(a.) As nominative; as, *Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vōsēgo*, *et in Ocednum influit*. Cæs.; or (b) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem miserunt*, *ut id nuntiāret*, scil. *cursor*. Nep.; or (c) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et vereor quo se Jūnōnia vertant Hospitia*; *haud tanto cessabit cardine rerum*, scil. *illa*, i. e. *Jūnō*. Virg. En. I. 672.

(2.) When it is a general word for *person* or *thing*:—

Thus *hōmines* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *fēerunt*, etc.; as, *Ut aiunt* As they say. Cic. *Maxime admirantur eum*, *qui pecūniā non mēretur*. Id. Sc *bene* est, *bene* hæbet or *bene* agitur, It is well; as, *Si vales*, *bene* est, *ego valeo*. Cic. *Quum* melius est, *grātūlor dis*. Afran. Optūme hæbet, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bene* hæbet: *jacta sunt fundāmenta dēfensionis*. Cic. *Bene* agitur *pro noxia*. Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvum non odit*, *amet tua carmina*, *Mævi*, scil. *hōmo*, Let him who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastāt agri quod inter urbem ac Fidēnas est*, scil. *id spītium*. Liv. *Sunt quos jūvat*, scil. *hōmines*, There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vētēris pōcula Musici spernit*, scil. *hōmo*. Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *aliqui*. So, *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Nēque erat cur fallere vellent*. Ovid. *Est ubi id valeat*. Cic. *Est, quum nō est satius*, etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, scil. *lūco*, *tempore*.

REM. 3 (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

*Fulgurat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lăcescēbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam advesperascit*. Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally; as,

*Făvētur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus orătioni vĕhēmenter ab omnibus reclāmātum est*. Cic. Proinde ut bene *vivitur*, diu *vivitur*. Plant. *Ad exitum ventum est*. Sen. *Actum est de império*. See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnātū est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

*Si vis me flere dōlendum est primum ipsi tibi*, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. *Orandum est, ut sit mens aetna in corpore aetno*. Juv. *Ad villam revertendum est*. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *miseret*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget*; as,

*Eos ineptiarum pœnitet*, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Miseret te dñorum, tui te nec miseret nec pudet*. Plant. *Me civitatis morum piget taedetque*. Sall.—In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortuna*, *conditio*, *mēmoria*, etc. So in the expression, *Vēnit in mentem*, It came into mind as, *In mentem vēnit de speculo*, scil. *cōgitatō*, etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo modo pūduit facere*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pœnitet me*, quantum profecerim. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (b.)) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

*Văcāre culpā magnum est sōlātium*, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Nēque est te fallere quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. *Mentiri non est meum*. Plaut. *Te non istud audivisse mirum est*, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. *Summum jus, summa injuria, factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbium*. Id. *Ni dēgēnērātum in aliis tunc quōque dēcōri offēcisset*. Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)) *Sin est ut vĕlis mănere illam apud te*. Ter. *Nec prōfuit Hydræ crescere per damnum, gēminasque rēsūmēre vīres*. Ovid. *Dic mīhi, cras istud, Postūme, quando vēnit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Pārūne campis atque Nep̄tino sūper fūsum est Lātīni sanguinis?* Hor.

(a.) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, *Orātorem irasci non dēcet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. *Hoc fieri et oportet et ōpus est*. Id. *Me pēdibus dēlectat claudere verba*, Hor. *Intēret omnium recte facere*. Cic. *Cāsu accidit*, ut, id quod Rōmæ audierat, prīmus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Impūne facere quæ libet*, id est *rēgem esse*. Sall. Cf. § 206, (13.), (a.)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pōtest*, *cœpit* or *cœptum est*, *incipit*, *dēsinit*, *dēbet*, *sōlet*, and *vidētur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

*Pigère eum facti capiti*, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est aia, quâ præceptrice, in tranquillitate vivi potest.* Cic. *Tedere solet avaros impendū.* Quint.

REM. 4. The verb is sometimes omitted; as,

*Di meliōra piis*, scil. *dent* or *vētint*, May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Verum hac hactenus*, scil. *dicimus*. Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nihil ad me, nihil ad rem; Quid hoc ad Epicūrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hæc?* i. e. *quorsus hæc pertinent?* What is that for?—*Pārābo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mihi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mihi aliquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mihi bibliothēcas?* Sen. *Unde mihi lāptidem?* Hor. A tense of *fācio* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille, melius hi; Bēne Chrysippus, qui dēcet.* Cic. *Nihil per vim unquam Clōdius, omnia per vim Milo.* Id. *Quas quum dixerat Octia finem.* Id. So, also in the phrases *nihil aliud quam; quid aliud quam; nihil præterquam*, which signify 'merely'; as, *Tisaphernes nihil aliud quam bellum comparavit.* Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *nihil amplius quam; nihil minus quam*, and in the phrase *si nihil aliud*.—*Ait* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille; hic ego; huic ego.* *Dicit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person's words; as, *Scite Chrysippus: ut glādiū causā vāgntum, sic præter mundum cētera omnia dīdūrum causā esse gēnērāta.* Cic.—After *per* in adjurations *oro, rōgo* or *præcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ego vos deos patrios, vincite ab ultimo dedecore nōmen gentemque Persarum;* i. e. *per deos patrios vos oro, vincite.* Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum*; as, *Nam Polydorus ego, scil. sum.* For I am Polydorus. Virg. And so *est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot hōmines tot sententia.* Ter. *Omnia præclāra rara, scil. sunt.* Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro mulctati, scil. sunt.* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 3.

NOTE 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *magis ego te amo, quam tu me,* scil. *amas.* After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, after *nēgo, dico*, after *veto, jubeo*, and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed*. Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

NOTE 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannibal Miniciūm, magistrum equitum, patri ac dictatorem dolo productum in prælium, fugavit,* i. e. *patri ac dictator dolo productus fuerat.* Nep. Hann. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

REM. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

*Interim quotiē Caesar Ædus frumentum flagitare,* Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Æduli. Cæs. *Nos patridi trepidare metu.* Virg. *Id horrendum ferri.* Id.

NOTE 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive*, and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

*Egc qui lægo,* I who read. *Tu qui scribis,* Thou who writest. *Equus qui currit,* The horse which runs. *Vos qui queritis,* You who ask.

REM. 7. (a.). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

*Quam multa facimus causâ amicorum!* How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi,* Whoever wishes me, etc. Hor.

(b.) *Nos* is often used for *ego*, and *noster* for *meus*; and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei*, but *nostrum* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (b.)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amantium ira amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Lôca, quæ proxima Carthaginæ, Nûmidia appellâtur*. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence; as, *Sed ei caribûs semper omnia, quam decus atque pûdictia fuit*. Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained; as, *Tulliôla, delliçæ nostræ, flagitat*. Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it; as, *Tungri, civitas Galliæ, fontem habet insignem*, The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Côridoli oppidum captum* (est). Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb; as,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba ruunt*. Ovid. *Atria turba teneant; veniunt læve vulgus euntque*. Id.

(1.) (a.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc., of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem generi humano evenit, quod in terrâ collocati sint*, because they (scil. *homines*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently; as, *Locros omnis multitudo abeunt*.

(b.) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their concrete; as, *nobilitas* for *nobiles*, *jæventus* for *jævenes*, *vicinia* for *vicini*, *servitium* for *servi*, *lævis armâtura* for *læcter armati*, etc. (c.) *Miles, eques, pèdes*, and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter; as, *Jam ne nocte quidem turba ex eo loco dilabebatur, refractâroque carcèrem minabantur*. Liv. *Gens eadem, quæ te crudeli Daunia bello insequitur, nos si pellant, nihil absque credunt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quid huc tantum hominum incedunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *uterque* and *quisque*, *pars...pars*, *alius...alius*, and *alter...alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intinus quisque libertorum vincti abreptique* (sunt). Tac. *Alius alium, ut prælium incipiant, circumspectant*. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 32, (c.)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Ceteri, suo quisque tempore, adierunt*. Liv. *Decemviri perturbati alius in aliam partem castrorum discurrunt*. Id. See § 204, R. 10.



**REM. 12.** Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

*Fūror trāque mentem præcipitant*, Fury and rage hurry (n (my) mind. *Virg. Dum atas, mētus, māgister*, prohibebant. Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac mūsice junctæ fuērunt*. Quint.

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

*Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in omnibus est*. Cic. *Beneficentia, liberalitas, bonitas, justitia funditus tollitur*. Id.

**NOTE 9.** This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Senātus populusque Rōmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrāsīmāchus, Prōtāgōras, Prōdācus, Hippias in honore fuit*. Cic. *Quin et Prōmētheus et Pēlōpis pārens dulci laborum decipitū sono*. Hor. When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Cotilio consilium et Pompeius obsunt*. Liv.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, *Dii te pēnates patriæque, et patriis imāgo, et domus regia, et in domo regale solum, et nomen Turquīnium creat vocatque regem*. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et ratio doctus, et necessitas barbaris, et mos gentibus, et feris natura ipsa præscripsit*. This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et ego, et Cicero meus flagitabit*. Id. *Tum setas viresque, tum avia gloria animum stimulabat*. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et facere, et pati fortia, Rōmānum est*. Cic. *Unus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, *Dicit unus et alter breviter*. Cic. *Unus et alter assultur paucis*. Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

*Si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret*, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque studium privatim aut gratia occupaverunt*. Liv.

(a.) The plural is necessary with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Decemviris neque ego neque Cæsar habiti essemus*. Cic.—(b.) With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*, sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, *Domitius cum Messala certus esse videbatur*. Cic. *Bocchus, cum peditibus, postremam Rōmānorum aciem invadunt*, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipsæ dux, cum aliquot principibus, capiuntur*. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

*Si tu et Tullia valesis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. Cic. *Hæc neque ego neque tu facimus*. Ter. *Ego populusque Rōmānus bellum jūdico facioque*. Liv.

(a.) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et senatus frequens restitit*. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, *Ego mihi te felicitur omnia*.

**REM. 13.** The interjections *en*, *ecce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

*En Priāmus! Lo Priam! Virg. En ego, vester Ascānīus. Id. Ecce hōmē ūtīcū! Cic. Ecce tuā lītērā. Id. O vir fortis atque amicus! Ter.*

### PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(a.) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira fūror brēvis est*, Anger is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vōcor Lyconides*, I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo regīna*, I walk a queen. Virg. *Caius et Lūcius frātres fuērunt*. Cic.—So (b.) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdiocem me esse vōlo*. Cic.

(c.) Sometimes also a dative, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, N.—And (d.) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of choosing, naming, etc.; as, *Consūlīb. certioribus factis*. Liv. See § 257, R. 11.

(e.) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia corruptrix est mōrum*. Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(f.) But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vilas māgister est*.

(g.) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

**REMARK 1.** (a.) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(b.) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

**REM. 2.** (a.) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, *Sanguis ērant lacrimae*, Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Capivi militum praeda fuerunt*. Liv.

(b.) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum*, the predicate is plural; as, *Exsiles esse iubet L. Tarquinius cum conjuge et liberis*. Liv.

**REM. 3.** The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are:—

(1.) The copula *sum*; as, *Ego Jōvis sum filius*. Plaut. *Disce esse pater*. Ter. The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as *Quod est longe ālīter*. Cic. *Rectissime sunt apud te omnia*, Every thing with you is in a very good condition. Id.; or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmē aīe tūre est*. Ovid. *Sunt nobis mitia pōma*. Virg.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence, position, motion*, etc.; as,  *vivo, existo, appareo, cado, eo, evado, fugio, incedo, jaceo, maneo, sedeo, sto, venio*, etc. Thus, *Rex circuibat pedes*. The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos judicabat non posse oratores evadere*. Cic. *Ego huic causae patrēnus existī*. Cic. *Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(a.) To name or call; as, *appellor, dicor, nominor, nuncipor, perhibeor, ulator, scribor, inscribor, vōcor*. Thus, *Cognōmine Justus est appellatus*, He was called by the surname Just. Nep. *Aristotēlis olivae dicitur inventor*. Cic.

(a.) To *create, render, appoint, or constitute*; as, *constituor, creor, declaror, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, renuncior*. Thus, *Dux a Rōmānis electus est Q. Fābius. Postquam ēphēbus factus est. Nep. Certior factus sum.*

(c.) To *esteem or reckon*; as, *censeor, cognoscor, credor, deprehendor, existimor, dācor, fēror, habeor, iudicor, mēnoror, nūmēror, pātor, repōror, videor*. Thus, *Crēdēbar sanguinis auctor ego. Ovid. Mālim vidēri timidus quam parum prudens. Cic.*

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Apens mihi fuisse videor*, I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *videor*; as, *Satis dōcuisse videor*. Id.—*Atilius prudens esse pātābatur*. Id. So with *dācor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Vērus patriā dicēris esse pāter*. Mart. *Hoc ne locātus sine mercēde existimer*. Phæc.

NOTE 2. *Auāio* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque pāterque audisti coram*. Hor.

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a *purpose, time, or circumstance* of the action; as, *Cōmes additus Œolides*, Œolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lēpus obambulat nocturnus*. Id. *Appāret liquidō sublimis in æthēre Nixus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Auditi hoc puer*. Cic. *Sāpiens nil fācit invitus*. Id. *Rempūblicam dēfendi adōlescens*. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.

NOTE 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro*; as, *audācia pro mīro est*; and sometimes the ablatives *lōco* or *in nūmēro* with a genitive, as, *ille est mihi pārentis lōco*; *in hostium nūmēro habētur*.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary*, etc.; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est*. Cic. *Multi opus sunt dōves*. Varr. (*Dixit*) *aurum et ancillas opus esse*. Ter. *Urus* also is occasionally so construed.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, *attracted* into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor invicti Iōvis esse neceis*, i. e. *to esse uxorē*. Hor. *Rētilit Ajax esse Iōvis prōnēpos*. Ovid.

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor glōriæ*, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles; *Pāter patriæ*, The father of the country; *Vitiū ira*, The vice of anger; *Nēmōrum custos*, The guardian of the groves; *Amor habēndi*, Love of possessing.

NOTE 1. In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *glōriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source*; as, *Rādii solis*, The rays of the sun;—*Cause*; as, *Dolor podagrar*, The pain of the gout;—*Effect*; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—*Connection*; as, *Pāter consūlis*, The father of the consul;—*Possession*; as, *Dōmus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar;—*Object*; as, *Cōgitatō dīcēnis rei*, A thought of something;—*Purpose*; as, *Appārātus triumphi*, Preparation for a triumph;—*A whole*; as, *Pars hōminum*, A part

of men; this is called the *partitive* genitive;—*Character or Quality*; as, *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material or Component Parts*; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acervus scâlorum*, A heap of shields;—*Time*; as, *Frumentum dierum decem*, Corn for ten days Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active*, when it denotes either that to which a thing belongs, or the subject of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive*, when it denotes the object affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virôrum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Jûnônis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Désidérium otii*, Desire of leisure.

(a.) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *próvidentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him. *amor Dei*, the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *métus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. Æn. 2, 486.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Ænææ*, (Id. Æn. 12, 823.) that which Æneas had received.

(b.) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(c.) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(d.) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempúblicam*, for *reipúblicæ*, Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Rómânos*, for *Rómânorum*. Nep. *Cúra de salúte patriæ*, for *salútis*. Cic. *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Révéréntia adversus homines et optimi cuiusque et reliquorum*. Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox*, *nómen*, *verbum*, etc.; as, *vox vóluptâtis*, the word pleasure; *nómen amicitie*, the word *amicitia*; *dómini appellatio*. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *flos violæ*, a violet; *virtus continentie*, the virtue of abstinence; and in geographical names; as, *oppidum Antióchiæ*. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *gênus* and *causa*; as, *Unum gênus est eorum, qui*, etc. *Dur sunt causæ, una pudôris, aliéra scêleris*.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nómen ipsam cãrendi*, The very word to want is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

*Cúra mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Vestri cûram agite*. Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or*, *iz* and *io*; as, *Accusâtor mei*. Cic. *Nimis astimatio sui*. Id. *Ratiônem et sui et aliorum habere*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Liber meus*, not *liber mei*, my book. *Cúra mea*, My care, i. e. the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas literas exspecto*. Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui animi studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injuria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invidia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fiducia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plant. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causa* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used as, *Mea causa*, For my sake. Plaut.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the subjective genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa regia*, for *causa regis*. Cic. *Hærilis filius*, for *hæri filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Herculeus labor*, for *Herculis*. Hor. *Civilis fœdor*, for *civium*. Hor. So, also, for the *objective* genitive, *Mētus hostilis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrâ ipsorum causâ hoc feci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo recitare timentis*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 18.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the *objective* genitive; as,

*Idem amor exilium pœcôri* (est), *pœcôrisque* mægistro. Virg. *Vitis ut arboribus decôrî est, ut vitibus uva*—*Tu decus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *decôrî* and the nominative *decus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor sui sênâtui*. Cic. *Muræna légatus Lúculo fuit*. Id. *Erit ille mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic causæ patrônis exsistit*. Cic. *Huic ego me bello dæcem profíteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fâtum fœret urbis potârî*. Id.—*Cum P. Africâno sênâtus egit, ut légatus frâtri proficisceretur*. Id. *Cæsar tégumenta galeis milites ex viminibus facere jubet*. Cæs. *Trinôbantibus Cæsar impêrat—frumentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod neque invidiâ consûli præcedebant*. Sall. *Quem exitum tantis malis sperarent?* Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententiâ ambobus*, scil. *qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTES. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exilium*, *decus*, *auctor*, *légatus*, *deus*, *patrônus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the *possessive* genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

*Sese omnes flentes Cæsari ad pèdes projecerunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vero exarsit jûveni dölör ossibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scûtum Pulfônî*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summæ audâciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pèdum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilear secum duxit filium Hannibâlem* annorum nôvem. Nep. *Athênenses dêligunt Pêriclem*, spectatæ virtûtis virum. Just. *Quinquâginta annorum imperium*. Id. *Her unus diêi*. Cic. *Pulchritudine eximîâ femina*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximo natu filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Câtûna fuit magnâ vi et ânimæ et corpôris, sed ingénio mâlo prævôque*. Sall. *Spêlunca infinitâ altitûdine*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentulum nostrum*, eximîâ spe, summe virtûtis adolescentem. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurâ*,...of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Ubi species et coloris tauri*. Id. *Fructus palmi altitudine*. Plin. *Clavi digiti pollicis crassitudine*. Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are immediately connected; as, *fossa quindécim pedum*; *homo antiquâ virtute*. It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindécim pedes lata*; *puer decem annos natus*. Cf. § 236.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timore sum*, I am in great fear. Cic. *Bono animo sum*. Id. *Quanto fuërim dolore meministi*. Id. *Maximo honore Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *secus* (sex), *genus* and *pondo*; as, *Libèròrum caput virile secus ad decem millia capta*, i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexus virilis*. Liv. So *genus*, when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, or with *omne*, is used for *hujus*, *ejus*, *omnis*, etc., *generis*; as, *Orationes aut aliquid id genus scribere*,—of that kind. Cic. *Concedere nugas hoc genus*. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras*; as, *Dictator cornam auream libram pondo in Capitolio Jovi donum posuit*,...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 236, I. 7.

(5.) The genitive *modi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cujusmodi libri*, the same as *quales libri*, what kind of books; *hujusmodi libri*, i. e. *tales libri*, such books. So, also, *generis* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitudine*, *latitudine*, etc., or *in longitudinem*, etc.; as, *fossa decem pedum latitudine*; but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *homo*, *res*, *negotium*, *proprium* or *proprius*, etc., and with the ablative, *præditus*, *instructus*, *ornatus*, etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I.

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O miserae sortis!* scil. *hominis*; *O (men) of wretched fortune!* Lucan. *Ad Dianæ*, scil. *cedem*. Ter. *Hectoris Andrômache*, scil. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspicionis vitandæ*, scil. *causâ*. Tac. *So filius* or *filia*; as, *Hannibal Gisgonis*.

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujus pecus?* an *Melibæi?* Non; *verum Egonis*, scil. *pecus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtutem quam mercedem desulerat, præter hanc* (scil. *mercedem*) *laudat*. Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hæc domus est Cæsaris*. This house is Cæsar's. *Nomen auræ tam sæpe vocatum esse putans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves onerarias, quarum minor nulla erat diuturnum millium amphorum*, i. e. *quarum minor nulla erat quam i avis diuturnum*, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc. as,

*Thucydides, qui ejusdem ætatis fuit*, scil. *homo*, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Mulum ei detraxit, quod aliena erat civitatis*, scil. *homo* or *civis*. Id. *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, scil. *adolescens*. Id. *Summi ut sint laboris efficiunt*, scil. *animalia*. Cæs. (*Claudius*) *somni brevissimi erat*. Suet. *Mirā sum dicitur*. Cic. *Vulgus ingenio mobili erat*. Sall. *Nom est juris sui*, He is not his own master. Lucan. *Potestatis sue esse*. Liv. *Suarumque rerum erant*. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc. are commonly supplied; as,

*Témérité est florētis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis*. Cæs. So, *stultitia est*; *est levitatis*, etc., which are equivalent to *stultitia est, levitas est*. *Omnia hostium erant*. *A paucis emi, quod multorum esset*. Sall.

(a.) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Adolescentis est majores natu revere*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis in errore perseverare*. Cic. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*. Ovid. So especially *moris est*; as, *Negavit moris esse Græcorum, ut in convivio virorum accubarent mulieres*, the same as *morem esse Græcorum*. Cic. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis esse*. Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tamen officii duxi, exorare patrem*, scil. *esse*. Suet. *Non est mentiri meum*. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Cato, videre quid agatur*.

(b.) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Humānum est errare*, To err is human. Ter. *Et facere et pati fortia Rōmānum est*. Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *facio*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asia Rōmānorum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum sue ditionis fecisse*. Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magna formica laboris*, scil. *animal*. The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So *Ei venit in mentem potestatis tuæ* scil. *membra*, or the like. Cic.

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*; grammarians sometimes supply *negotium, officium, manus, opus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205 Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

*Tria millia*, scil. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

*Agamemnonis belli gloria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius administrationis provinciae*. Cic. *Eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta*. Cæs. *Orbitas reipublicæ talium virorum*. Cic. *Pro veteribus Helveticorum injuriis populi Rōmāni*. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *usus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

*Argenti opus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse*. Id. *Prooemii non semper usus est*. Quint. *Si quo operum usus est*. Liv. *Puero opus est cibum*. Plaut. *Usus est hominem astutum*. Id. See § 243.

REM. 12 The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (b.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

*Rēmedium dōloris*, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pōtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

### GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitātis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sorōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālium?* Who of mortals? *Māior jūvēmum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimus Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecūniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Utinam gentium sāmus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *mēdimnum tritici*, a bushel of wheat; *libra farris*; *jāgērū agrī*; *magna vis auri*.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nēmo*, *nihil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *mōdius*, *mēdimnum*, and *libra*; as,

*Nēmo nostrum*, No one of us. *Maxima pars hōmīnum*. *Nihil hūmānārū rērum*. Cic. *Dimidium militum*. Liv. *Mēdimnum tritici*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104, 9.); as, *ullus, nullus, solus, alius, ūter, ūterque, ūtercumque, ūtervis, ūterlibet, neuter, alter, aliterūter, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, quisque, quisquam, quicumque, unusquisque, quis? quī? quōt? quōtus? quōtusquisque? tot, aliquot, nonnulli, plerique, multi, pauci, mediū*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consulū alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multū hōmīnum*, Many men. Plin. *Et mediū jūvēmum ibat*; i.e. between. Ovid. For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expediti militum*, The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlecti equitum*. Id. *Vetēres Rōmānōrū dūcum*. Vell. *Sapēri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancite deōrum*. Virg. *Dēgēnēres cānum*. Plin. *Piscium fētūnā*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior jūvēmum*. *Orātōrū praestantissimū*. *Eloquentissimū Rōmānōrū*. *Optimū omnium*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singuli*; as, *Equitū centum quinquaginta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sapientum octāvus*. Hor. *Singulos vestrum*. Curt.



(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissimus Rōmāndrum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus*: *Alter consil m*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Venimus ad viros*, qui duo sūpersunt; not *quodrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maximus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *ālius*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrum*? Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrum*? Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ commūnis est omnium nostrum pārens*. Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis erit tam cupidus vestrum*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nōbīlium tu quōque fontium*, scil. *ūnus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna millia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo de iis*. *Alter ex censoribus*. Liv. *Unus ex multis*. Cic. *Acerrimus ex sensibus*. Id. *Thales, qui sapientissimus in septem fuit*. Id. *Primus inter omnes*. Virg. *Cræsus inter rēges opulētissimus*. Sen. *Apud Helvētios nōbīlissimus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectōres, pars in fōrum, pars Syracūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attalus Mācēdōnum fere omnibus persuāsit*, Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos homīnum*. Ovid. *Cunctas provinciārum*. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōius autem injustitiæ nulla capitālior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo mōdo probābilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mōdorum probābilem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ*, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id temporis*, That time. *Ad hoc ætātis*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id miseriārum*. Ter. *Armōrum quantum*. Cæs.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *minimum*, *dimidūm*, *multum*, *nimium*, *paulum*, *plurimum*, *reliquum*; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantūlum*, *tantundem*, *quantūlum*, *quantūlumcumque*, etc.; to which add *medium*, *summum*, *ultimum*, *aliud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *idem*, *quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *aliquid*, *quidquid*, *quippiam*, *quidquam*, *quodcumque*.

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quid* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crēvit Nilus, tantum spei in senatu est*. Sen. *Quid mulieris uxorē habes*? What kind of a woman... Ter.

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornâmentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid reliqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ê* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset.* Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrema impèrii*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opæca locorum*. Virg. *Antiqua fœderum*. Liv. *Cuncta camporum*. Tac. *Exercent colles, atque horum asperitima pascunt.* Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sât*, *sâtis*, *pârum*, *nîmis*, *âbunde*, *largitèr*, *affâtim*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiônis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sâtis eloquentiæ, pârum sapiëntiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nimis insidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraudis âbunde est.* Virg. *Auri et argenti largitèr*. Plaut. *Copiârum affâtim*. Liv. *Quum partim illorum mihi familiârissimi essent.* Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrârum*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrârum*. Just. *Usquam gentium*, Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrârum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrârum possent.* Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est.* Cic. *Nescire quo loci esset.* Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubinam*, *ubicumque*, *ubiubi*, *ubivis*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quovis*, *quôquo*, *aliquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium*. Cic. So, *minime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Vicinias* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Hic proximæ viciniæ*. Plaut. *Huc viciniæ*. Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiæ furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est.* Curt. *Buccinæ rerum venimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo miseriam venire*, To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo âmentis progressi sitis.* Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum*, and *temporis*, appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*, and *tunc temporis*, At that time. Just. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ejus* occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus facere poteris.* Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ejus fieri vocat.* As far as may be. Cic.; the *ejus* refers to the preceding clause; literally as much of it as possible.

NOTE 6. *Pridie* and *postridie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Pridie ejus diēi*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Pridie insidiarum*, The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postridie ejus diēi*, The next day. Cæsar. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238, 1, (b.)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optime omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

### GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*; as,

*Avidus laudis*, Desirous of praise.

*Appetens gloriæ*, Eager for glory.

*Memor virtutis*, Mindful of virtue.

*Plena timoris*, Full of fear.

*Egēnus aquæ*, Destitute of water.

*Doctus sandi*, Skilful in speaking.

So, *Nescia mens fātī*, The mind ignorant in regard to fate. Virg. *Impotens iræ*, lit. Powerless in respect to anger, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hōmīnes expertes vērītātis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra fēraz arbōrum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tēnas prōpōsiti viri*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Æger animi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Locus mēdius jūgūli summiq̄ue lacerti*, i. e. between. Ovid. *Mōrum dīverq̄ue*. Tac. *Opērum solūtus*. Hor. *Liber libōrum*. Id. *Intēger vitæ scēlērīsq̄ue pūrus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor. *Vini pollens Liber*. Plant.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *Verbals* in *az*; as, *cōpax*, *ēdax*, *fēraz*, *fūgaz*, *pericōz*, *tēnaz*, etc.—(2.) *Participials* in *ns*, and a few in *tus*, with their compounds; as, *āmāns*, *appētēns*, *cūpiēns*, *efficiēns*, *pōtiēns*, *impōtiēns*, *sitiēns*;—*consultus*, *doctus*, *solūtus*.—(3.) Adjectives denoting desire or aversion; as, *dvārus*, *āvidus*, *cūpidus*, *stūdiōsus*; *fastidiōsus*:—*participation*; as, *particeps*, *affinis*, *consors*, *exors*, *expers*, *inops*:—*knowledge*, *experience*, *capacity*, and their contraries; as, *callidus*, *compos*, *consciūs*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*, *pēritus*, *impēritus*, *impos*, *pōtēns*, *impōtēns*, *prūdēns*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *consūsus*, *insūsus*, *nesciūs*, *insolēns*, *insolūtus*, *insuētus*, *rūdis*, *sollers*:—*memory* and *forgetfulness*; as, *mēmōr*, *immēmōr*, etc.:—*certainty* and *doubt*, as, *certus*, *incertus*, *ambiguus*, *dūbius*, *suspensius*:—*care* and *negligence*; as, *ānzius*, *sollīctus*, *prōvidus*, *imprōvidus*, *sēcūrus*:—*fear* and *confidence*, as, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trēpidus*, *impavidus*, *fidēns*, *interritus*:—*guilt* and *innocence*; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *mānifestus*, *innocius*, *innocēns*, *insons*:—*plenty* and *want*; as, *abundans*, *plēnus*, *dīvex*, *sātus*, *largus*, *inops*, *egēnus*, *inānis*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *solūtus*, *vācuus*.

(a.) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi*, *ingēnii*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *libōris*, *rērum*, *avi*, *fūturī*, *mōrum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a cause or source, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus maris*, *et viarum*, *millitumque*. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus maris*. Hor. *Attōnitus serpentis*. Sil. *Mens interrita lēti*. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as such, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mare terram appetens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go. Ovid. *Cantāre pēriti*. Virg. *Fēlicior unguēre ūla*. Id. *Anxius quid facte ōpus sit*. Sall. *Vive mēmor quam sis ōvi brēvis*. Hor.—So *aliēnus, avidus, callidus, cupidus, firmus, frēquens, gnārus, impōtens, inops, latus, largus, liber, pollens, mēmor, dubius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, *Ad rem dōdior*. Ter. *Avidus in dirēptiones*. Liv. *Animus cōpax ad prācepta*. Ovid. *Ad cāsū fortunamq; fēlix*. Cic. *Ad fraudem callidus*. Id. *Diligens ad custōdiendum*. Id. *Negligentiōr in patrem*. Just. *Vir ad disciplinam pēritus*. Cic. *Ad bella rādix*. Liv. *Pōtens in res bellicas*. Id. *Alācer ad mālēficia*. Cic. *Inter bellum et pācem nihil mēdium est*. Id.—So with *ad*, *fērtilis, firmus, infirmus, pōtens, stērilis*, etc.—with *in*, *cupidus, parvus, pōtens, prōdīgus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nūdus membra*. Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, hūmērosq; deo similis*. Id. *Cētera fulvus*. Hor. *Cuncta pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pēcūnis*, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius de fāmā*. Quint. *Rādix in jūre civili*. Cic. *Pēritus de agricultūrā*. Varr. *Prūdēns in jūre civili*. Cic. *Reus de vi*. Id. *Pārus ab cultu hūmāno*. Liv. *Certior factus de re*. Cic. *Sollicitus de re*. Id. *Sūper scēlère suspectus*. Sall. *Inops ab amicis*. Cic. *Pauper in aere*. Hor. *Mōdicus in cultu*. Plin. *Ab āquis stērilis*. Apul. *Cōpōsus a frūmento*. Cic. *Ab ēquitātē firmus*. Id.—So with *in*, *immōdicus, parvus, ūber*:—with *ab*, *aliēnus, beātus, extorris, imminis, inops, liber, nūdus, orbis, vācuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte rādix*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prūdēns consilio*. Just. *Ēger pēdibus*. Sall. *Prastans ingēnio*. Cic. *Mōdicus sēvēritātē*. Tac. *Nihil insidiis vācuus*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimus*. Plaut. *Mēdus Pollice et Castōre*. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *bēnignus, cōpax, exsors, impos, impōtens, ineditabilis, irritus, liberālis, mōdicus, mūnificus, praelargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, ēgēnus, exhēres, expers, fertilis, indigus, inops, parvus, particeps, pauper, prōdīgus, prosper, stērilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dives, fēcundus, fēraz, imminis, inānis, immōdicus, jējūnus, largus, nimius, opulētus, pēritus, plēnus, pōtens, pārus, rēfertus, sātur, ūber, vācuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, aliēnus, cassus, cōpōsus, extorris, firmus, fētus, frēquens, grāvātus, grāvis, infirmus, liber, lōcuples, lūtus, mactus, nūdus, onustus, orbis, pollens, sctiātus, truncus, vālidus, vācuus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus, crēber, densus, mūtulus, tūmidus, turgidus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis, dissimilis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens sili conaria recti*. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the thing; as, *conscius huic faciōri*. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS

**214.** *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*ne argentum, quanti est, sūmito*, Take of me so much money as (he) is. Ter. *Magni aestimābat pecūniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*, It is worth so much; and, *absco*, It is worth while. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

**MARK 1.** (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, the value is expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner by:—

A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, mājōris, magni, ayni, plūrimī, maximī, minimī, parvi, tantidem, quāticumque, quantivis, tābel*, but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris*.

The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, plī, tērciū*, and also *pensi* and

) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the *ive*. Cf. § 252.

**M. 2.** The verbs of valuing are *aestimo, existimo, dūco, fācio, fio, hābeo, pūto, depūto, itzo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fāciat, tanti fiat ab s friends*. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūceret*. Id. *Hōnōres si magni non pūto*. Id. *Non assis fācis?* Catull. *Nēque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut.

**RE 1.** (a.) The phrase *aequi bōni*, or *aequi bōnique fācio*, or *consūlo*, I take g in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as *aequi bōnique fācimus*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūluit* Plin.—(b.) A genitive ce is joined also to *ceno, hābitō, doceo*, etc.; as, *quanti hābitas?* what rent ou pay for your house or lodging? *quanti docet?* what are his terms in ing?

**RE 2.** After *aestimo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are imes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dāta magno aestimas, accepta*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, hābeo*, and *pūto*; and *nihil* with and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 5.

**RE 3.** The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be refer-a noun understood, as *prētii, aeris, pondēris, mōmenti*; and may be con-d as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some per-thing; as, *Aestimo te magni*, i. e. *hōmīnem magni prētii*. *Scio ejus ordinis tātatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētio*, etc.

**M. 3.** Statements of *price*, also, when *general* or *indefinite*, are n the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*,

*recātōres non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērent*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hūmāno i plūris stetit, quam ira*. Sen.

**RE 1.** Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *ēmo, vendo*, the neutral passive, *consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

**RE 2.** With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, no, parvo, minimo*, and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *vōlest parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emēre possum minimo?* What lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cēre* and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret, pœnitēt, pūdet, tædet*, and *pīget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Misērēmini sociōrum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Misērescite régis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea māter, tui me misēret, mei pīget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pœnitēt*. Cic. *Frātris me pūdet pīgetque*. Ter. *Me civitātis mōrum pīget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet; Haud quod tui me, nēque dōmi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti nēgōtii eum pertæsum est*. Nep. *Lentitudinis eōrum pertæsa*. Tac. *Misēritum est me tuōrum fortunārum*. Ter. *Cave te frātrum misēreātur*. Cic. *Pūdet (me) deōrum hōminumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Misērescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misēret*; as, *Nunc te misērescat mei*. Ter. *Misēreo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui misēret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character*, etc., cf § 211, R. 3, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pūdebit*. Cic. *Non pœnitēt me quantum profēcērim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pœnitēt*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misēret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Mēndēmi vicem misēret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertæsus ignāviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) And sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nihil*, denoting to *what degree* the feelings are exercised; as, *Sēquitur ut nihil (sapien-tem), pœniteat*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sātāgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

*Is sātāgūt rērum suārum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sāt*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sāt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agitas sāt tāte tuōrum rērum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rēcorder, mēmīni, rēmīniscor*, and *obliviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Flāgitiōrum suōrum rēcorderābitur*. Cic. *Omnes grādus atātis rēcorder tuas*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mēmīni vivōrum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nūmēros mēmīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rēmīnisci vētēris fāmæ*. Nep. *Dulces mōriens rēmīniscitur Argos*. Virg. *Rēmīnisci āmicos*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Injūriārum obliviscitur*. Nep. *Obliviscor injūrias*. Cic. *Obliviscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a *neuter pronoun* or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the *person* with these verbs is unusual, except that *mēmīni*, when referring to a contemporary always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cin-ram mēmīni*. Cic.

(b.) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as *Memento mihi suppētus ferre*. Plaut. *Esse quōque in fātis rēminiscitur*, affōn tempus, quo mārē, etc. Ovid. *Obliū quid dēcea* Hor. *Mēmīni te scribēre* Cic. *Quae sum passūra rēcor* Ovid.

REM. 2. *Rēcor* and *mēmīni*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Pētīmus ut de suis libēris rēcor* dentur. Cic. *De pallā mēmīni*. Plaut.

REM. 3. *Mēmīni*, signifying to make mention of, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Nēque hājus rei mēmīni*, poēta. Quint. *Mēmīni de exstīlībus*. Cic. With *vēni* *mīhi in mentem*, the person or thing may be made the subject of *vēni*; as, *Miserā ubi vēni in mentem mortis mētus*. Plaut. *Vēni hoc mīhi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Sōlet mīhi in mentem vēnīre illius tempōris*, see § 211, R. 8, (6.) The genitive with *rēcor* is very rare.

§ 217. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting*, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the *crime*; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He charges me with theft. *Alīterum accūsāt probri*, He accuses another of villany. *Meipsum Inertiae condēmo*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accūsō, āgo, arcesso, arguo, cito, dēfēro, incrtēpo, incūsō, instāuile postūlo*, and more rarely *alligo, anquiro, astringo, capto, incrtēpto, urgo, inter rōgo, reum āgo* or *fācio, ālicui dīem dīco, cum āliquo āgo*.—Convicting; *convīno, coarguo, prēhendo, tēneor, obstringor, obāgor*.—Condemning; *damno, condēmo, infāmo*, and more rarely *iudīco, nōlo, plector*.—Acquitting; *absolvo, libēro, purgo*, and rarely *solvo*. To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting *guilt* and *innocence*, which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 213, R. 1, (3.)

(b.) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audācia, āvaritia, cecūdia, falsi, furti, ignāvia, impiētātis, injuriarū, lēvītātis, mājestātis, mālēficii, mendācia, parricidiū, peccātū, pēculātis, probri, prōditiōnis, rei cāptiālīs, rēpētundarū, scēlētis, stultitā, tēmēritātis, timōris, vānitātis, vērēficii*, etc.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accūsō, dēfēro, anquiro, arguo, postūlo, damno, condēmo, absolvo*, and *purgo*; as, *Accūsāre de negligentiā*. Cic. *De vi condēmnāti sunt*. Id. *De rēpētundis est postūlātus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*, after *accūsō, coarguo, convīno, tēneor*, and *dēprēhendor*; as, *In quo te accūsō* (Cic.); and after *libēro*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scēlētē libērātī sumus*. Cic. *Accūsō* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sicārios accūsāre*, etc., to charge with assassination.

(b.) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Libērāre culpā*. Cic. *Crimen quo argui possēt*. Nep. *Prōconscilum postūlāverāt rēpētundis*. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scēlus, mālēficium, peccātum*, etc.; as, *Me peccātō solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crimine* and *nōmine*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessere āliquem crimine ambītis*. Liv. *Nōmine scēlētis cōnfūratōnisque damnāti*. Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(c.) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accūsābāt quod sōciētātē fecisset*. Nep. So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid? quod me—arguit sērum accessisse?* Ovid.

REM. 3. (a.) The *punishment* is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *cāptis, mortis, multae, pēcūniae, quadrupli, octupli*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *cāpite, morte, nullā, pēcūniā*; and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quatuor millibus aris*: or the accusative with *ad* or *in*,

as, *ad penam, ad bestias, ad metalla, in metallum, in expensas*;—sometimes though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnatus morti*. Lucr.—(b.) *Voti* or *votum*, and less frequently *voto* or *votis damnari*, signifies 'to be condemned to fulfil one's vow,' and is consequently equivalent to 'to obtain what one wishes.' So also in the active voice, *Damnabis tu quoque vota*. Virg. *Perde* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *capitis*; *Quem ego capiti perdam*, will charge with a capital offence. So *capite* or *capitis periclitari*, Plaut., signifies 'to be in peril of one's life.' With *plecto* and *plector*, *caput* is used in the ablative only.—(c.) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nōmine* understood) after *satisdo*, *promitto*, *stipulari*, *repromitto*, and *caveo*; as, *Si quis in pariēte demōtiendo damni infecti promiserit*. Cic.

REM. 4. *Accūso*, *incūso*, and *instimāto*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accūsas*. Plaut. *Quæ me incūsāveras*. Ter. *Sic me instimulare falsum facinus*. Plaut. See § 281, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (a.) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*cāumniō*, *carpo*, *corripio*, *crimīnor*, *culpo*, *excūso*, *multo*, *pūnio*, *reprehēndo*, *sagillo*, *tazo*, *trādūco*, *vitūperō*; as, *Culpāre infēcunditatem agrōrum*. Colum. *Excūsare errōrem et adolescentiam*. Liv.

(b.) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accūso*, *incūso*, *arguo*, and *inarguo*; as, *Ejus dvārtitiam perfūdiāque accūsārat*. Nep. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsiliis, morte multantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

*Mīlites temporis mōnet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admōnebat aliū egestātis, aliū cupiditātis suæ*. Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *mōneo*, *admōneo*, *commōneo*, and *commōnēficio*.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, *De sede Tellūris me admōnes*. Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc mōneo*. Cic. *Illud me admōneo*. Id.; and in the passive, *Multa admōnemur*. Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos locus admōnuī*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sōror alma mōnet succēdere Lauso Turnum*, His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Virg. *Mōnet, ut suspiciōnes vitet*. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mōneo, desinānt fūrere*. Cic. *Mōnet ratiōnem frāmenti esse habendam*. Hirt. *Immortalia ne spēres mōnet annus*. Hor. *Discipulos id unum mōneo, ut, etc.* Quint. *Mōneo quid facto opus sit*. Ter. See § 278, 2.

§ 219. *Rēfert* and *intērest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

*Hūmānitātis rēfert*, It concerns human nature. Plin. *Rēfert omnium animadverti in malos*. Tac. *Intērest omnium recte facere*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, and *vestra*, are used; as,

*Mea nihil rēfert*, It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud mea magni intērest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Tua et mea maxime intērest, te viderē*. Cic. *Māgis reipūblīcæ intērest quam mea*. Id. *Magni intērest Cicerōnis, vel meā pōnū, vel mehercule utriusque, me intervēntre dicenti*. Id.



**NOTE.** *Rēfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *mea*, *tua*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive as, *quid rēfert? magni* or *magnopere rēfert*.

**REM. 2.** In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commōda* or the like understood; as, *Intērest mea*, i. e. *est inter mea*, It is among my concerns. *Rēfert tua*, i. e. *rēfert se ad tua*, It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re*, *causā*, etc., understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam*, *tuam*, *suam*, etc., that *rēfert* was originally *rem fert*, and that hence the *e* of *rēfert* is long.

**REM. 3.** Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad hōnōrem meum intērest quam primum urbem me vēnīre*. Cic. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem rēfert*. Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur rētūlī?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rēferat intra nātūras fines viventi*. Hor.

**REM. 4.** The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, *Id mea minime rēfert*. Ter. *Hoc vēmēnter intērest reipūblicæ*. Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut*, or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intērest te esse diligētem*, or *ut diligens sis*, or *utrum diligens sis nec ne*. When the infinitive alone is used with *rēfert* or *intērest*, the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intērest recte fātere*, scil. *ee*.

**REM. 5.** The degree of interest or importance is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *māgis*, *magnopere*, *vēmēnter*, *pārum*, *minime*, etc.; *multum*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*, *nihil*, *aliquid*, etc.; *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *permagni*, *plāris*. But *minimo* discriūne *rēfert* is found in *Juv. 5*, 123.

§ 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango*, *discrūcior*, *excrāsio*, *fallo*, *pendeo*, which are followed by *animi*; *dēcipior*, *dēspicio*, *fallor*, *fandor*, *videor*, *miror*, *vōreor*; as, *Absurde faciō, qui angas te animi*. Plaut. *Me animi fallit*. Lucr. *Dēcipitur lābōrum*. Hor. *Dēspiciam mentis*. Plaut. *Iustitiæ prius mirer belline lābōrum*. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstīneo*, *dēsino*, *pono*; *Hor.*; *dēsisto*. Virg.; *laudo*, *prōhibeo*. Sil.; *lēvo*, *partīcipo*. Plaut.; *libero*. Liv.; *dissolvo*. Tibull.: compare *liber lābōrum*; *opērum vācuus*; *pūrus scēlōris*. § 218.

3. Some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, to want or need, to free, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo*, *cāreo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *ēgeo*, *indēgeo*, *sūtīro*, *obstātīro*, *scāteo*; as, *Adōlescentem suæ tēmēritātis implet*. He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum explese flammæ*. Virg. *Egeo consiliis*. Cic. *Non tam artis indīgēt quam lābōris*. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pōtior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis pōtīri*, To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pōtīri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *vōram*, To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pōtīo* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pōtīvī servitūtis*, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pōtīus est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Aliquem compōtīre prædæ* or *vōti*. App. So, *Rērum adeptus est*. Tac. *Dōminātīonis apīci*. Id. *Regnāvī pōpūlōrum*. Hor.

## GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. 1. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

*Habitat Milēti*, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rōmæ faciā?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hercules Tyri maxime colitur*. Cic.

NOTE. For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rōmæ* and *Athēnis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Anaxuri*, *Carthagini*, *Lacedæmoni*, the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (c.) In the second declension there was an old dative in *oi*, as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o*, but sometimes to *i*: and the latter is still found in *nulli*, *uni*, etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi*, etc.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Rhæcæ vivere*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcyra fulmus*. Id. *Cōnon plārithum Cypri vivit*, Timotheus Lesb. Nep. *Quam Miltiades dōmum Chersonēsī habuit*. Id. *Crēta jussit considere Apollo*. Virg. *Rōmæ Numidique faciōra ejus mēmorat*. Sall.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rex Tyro decēdit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Cōrintho et Athēnis et Lacedæmōne nunciāta est victōria*. Id. *Pons quem ille Abydo fēcerat*. Id. *Hujus exemplar Rōmā nullum habemus*. Vitruv. *Non Libyæ, non ante Tyro*. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *ubi*, *tibi*, *ibidem*, *alibi*, *illicubi*, *hic*, *illic*, *istic*, etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(b.) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in*; as, *In ipsā Alexandriā*. Cic. And poetically without *in*, *Gēnus Longā nostrum dōminābitur Albā*. Virg.—(c.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in*; as, *Archias Antiōchiæ nātus est*, cēlebrī quondam urbe. Cic. *Cives Rōmānos Neapōli*, in cēlebrīssimō oppido saepe vīdimus. Id. But when *in urbe*, etc., precedes the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppido Citio*. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, Cassius in oppido Antiōchiæ est,—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppido*.

REM. 3. The genitives *dōmi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *hūmi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

*Tēnuī se dōmi*, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir dōmi clārus*. Liv. *Spargit hūm jussos dentes*,—on the ground. Ovid. *Militiæ et belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dōmi*; as, *Una semper militiæ et dōmi sūtus*,—both at home and in the camp. Ter. *So Dōmi militiæque*. Cic. *Et dōmi et militiæ*. Id. *Militiæ dōmique*. Liv. *Militiæ et dōmi*. Ter. *Belli dōmique*, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Dōmi* is thus used with the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, and *aliēna*; as, *Dōmi nostræ vivit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fuit tanquā meæ dōmi*. Id. *Sacrificium, quod aliēnæ dōmi fēret involere*. Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used; as, *In vīdū dōmo*. Ovid. *Pāternā dōmo*. Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Mei in dōmo*. Hor. *In dōmo suā*. Nep. So, instead of *hūmi*, 'upon the ground,'

*hunc* is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In hūmo arēdōd* Ovid. *Sēdere hūmo nūdā*. Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dōmī* or *in dōmē* is used; as, *Dēprēhensus dōmī Cæstris*. Cic. *Dōmī illius fuisse*. Id. *In dōmē Cæstris*. Id. *In dōmo ejus*. Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dōmo* for *dōmī* also occurs, but not in Cicero; as, *Ego is nunc expērior dōmo*. Plaut. *Dōmo se tēnere*. Nep. *Dōmo abditus*. Suet. *Bello for bellī* is found in Livy—*Dōmī bellōque*. So, also, *hūmo* for *hūmī*; *Strātus hūmo*. Stat. *Figit hūmo plantas*. Virg.; and *in hūmo lūmen figit*. Ovid.

(4.) *Terris* is sometimes used like *hūmī*; as, *Sacra terræ cēlātūmus*. Liv. *Prōjectus terræ*. Virg. *Ignes terræ condit*. Luc. So, also, *arēas*; *Truncum reliquit arēas*. Virg.; and *viciis*; *Proximis vicinīs hābitat*. Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dōmī*, *milliis*, etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbē, oppidō, castris, sōlo, loco, tempore*, etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

### GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 4.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tēnus*; as,

*Cūmārum tēnus*, As far as Cumæ. Coel. *Crārum tēnus*. Virg. *Littērum tēnus*. Id. *Urbium Corcyræ tēnus*. Liv.—For the ablative after *tēnus*, and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

### DATIVE.

§ 222. 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality; or, in other words, the object *for* which, to the *benefit* or *loss* of which, any thing is or is *done*. Hence, in distinction from the dative of the *end* (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *dātivus commodi et incommōdi*, the dative of advantage and disadvantage; as,

*Scribo vōbis hunc librum*, I write this book *for* you. *Præsum tibi*, or *Tibi utilis sum*, I am useful *to* you.

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used (a) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists. (b) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (c) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (d) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

### DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put *in* the dative, to denote the *object* to which the quality is directed; as,

*Utilis agris*, Useful to the fields Juv. *Jucundus amicis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimicus quieti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inutilis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites, also those signifying *near*, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Felix tuis*, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio ingrata Gallis*, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cic. *Amicus tyrannidi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Labori inhabilis*, Unsuitable to labor. Colum. *Patri similis*, Like his father. Cic. *Nihil tam est Lysias diversum, quam Isocrates*. Apulum tempori. Id. *Malo pronus*. Sen. *Promptus seditioni*. Tac. *Cuius facile est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsi veris finitima sunt*. Id. *Oculi concordes corpori*. Colum. *Multis bonis febilis*. Liv. *Mors est terribilis illi, quorum*, etc. Cic.

(a.) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *gratus, acceptus, dulcis, jucundus, letus, amicus; ingratus, insuavis, injucundus, molestus, gravis, acerbus, odiosus, tristis; utilis, inutilis, bonus, saluber, salutaris, fructuosus; calamitosus, damnosus, funestus, noxius, pestifer, perniciosus, exitiosus; amicus, benevolus, carus, familiaris, aequus, fidus, fidelis, propitius, secundus; inimicus, adversus, amicus, alienus, contrarius, infestus, infidus, iniquus, iratus; aptus, accommodatus, appositus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus; ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconvenientis; aequalis, par, impar, dispar, similis, dissimilis, absterilis, discolor; pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus; facilis, difficilis; apertus, conspicuus, manifestus, perspicuus, obscurus, certus, compertus, notus, ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, insidus; vicinus, finitimus, confinis, contermianus, propior, proximus, cognatus, concolor, concors, congruus, consanguineus, consensuaneus, consuetus, conveniens, contrarius, unus, continuus, continens*.

(b.) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *sub*, and *super*, as *obnoxius, obtrius, subjectus, supplex, and superstes*, are also followed by a dative of the object.

(c.) After verbals in *bilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi creditibilis sermo*, A speech credible to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(d.) The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusani nobis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit jussu magistratum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nobis dicto audiens atque obediens sit*. Liv. So *dicto obediens*; as, *Futura es dicto obediens, annon, patri*? Plaut.

REM. 2. (a.) The adjectives *aequalis, affinis, alienus, cognominis, communis, contrarius, fideus, insuetus, par, dispar, peculiaris, proprius, propinquus, acer, similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, socius, vicinus, superstes, supplex*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par huius*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Proprium est oratoris ornate dicere*. Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Aequalis ejus*, His contemporary. Cic.

(b.) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, similis*; as, *Plures reges Romuli quam Numae similes*. Liv.

(c.) *Amicus, inimicus, and familiaris*, owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Homo amicissimus nostrorum hominum*,—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis*, though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Expectantibus omnibus quoniam esset tam impius, tam demens, tam diis hominibusque hostis, qui*, etc. Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, *Homo ad nullam rem utilis*. Cic. *Locus aptus ad insidias*. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger ad poenas, ad præmia velox*, Ovid; *Ad aliquem morbum præclivior*, Cic.; *Ad omne facinus paratus*, Id.; *Præus ad fidem*, Liv.;—sometimes with *in*; as, *Occer in pugnam*. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, instead of the dative; as, *Fidelis in filios*. Just. *Mater acerba in suos partus*. Ovid. *Gratus erga me*. Cic. *Gratum adversus te*. Id. So *Dissimilis in dominum*. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, *Inter se similes*. Cic. *Hæc sunt inter eos communia*. Id. *Inter se diversi*. Id.

REM. 5. *Propius* and *proximus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prope*, an accusative; as, *Quod vitium propius virtutem erat*. Sall. *P. Crassus proximus mare Oceanum hiemarat*. Cæs. *Ager, qui proximus finem Mægallöpölitarum est*. Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (a.) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, communis, consentaneus, discors*, with *cum*; as, *Quem patrem cum liberis fecisti*. Sall. *Consentaneum cum iis literis*. Cic. *Civitas secum discors*. Liv. So *diemus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab*; as, *Abieci* a me, Ter.; A ratione *diversus*, Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Alienum nostram amicitiam*. Id.—(b.) *Fræus*, which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, *fortunæ fræus*; nulli rei *fræus*, etc. Cf. § 244.—(c.) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus*, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative either with or without *cum*.

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Ror. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem*, in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτῷ* and is equivalent to *quod occidens*, or *quod facit is, qui occidit*. *Similis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 122. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *quasi*, or *quam*; sometimes by the preposition *cum*. Cf. § 207, R. 27, (d.) *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem*, followed by *ac* and *atque*.

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Justitia, est obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisque populorum*. Cic. *Traditio dicijus rei alteri*. Id. *Exprobratio cuiquam veltris fortunæ*. Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.

## DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mea dñma tibi patet*, My house is open to you. Cic. *Pars optare locum tecto*, A part choose a site for a building. Virg. *Tibi sēris, tibi mētis*, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plant. *Licet nēmīni contra patriam dūcere exercitum*, It is not lawful for any one to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc tibi prēmīto*, I promise you this. Id. *Hæret lātēri lētālis drundo*. Virg. *Sardo fabulam narras*. Hor. *Mihi responsum dedit*. Virg. *Sic vos non vōbia fertis drātra, bōves*. Id. *Omībus bōnis expedit saluam esse rempūblicam*. Cic. *Apai habendo ense*. Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222, 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1.) Thus, (a.) *Illā tibi favet*, She favors you, or is favorable to you. Ovid. *Mihi placebat Pompōnius, minime displicēbat*. Cic. *Quī sibi fidit*. Hor. *Nūc licet sui commōdā causā nocēre altēri*. Cic. *Non invidētur illi etātī sed etiam favētur*. Id. *Desperat salutē suā*. Id. *Nēque mihi vestra decrēta auscultantur*. Sall. *Impērat aut servit collecta pecūnia cuique*. Hor. *Obēdīre et pārēre vōluntātī*. Cic. *Quōniam factiōni inimicōrum resistēre nēquiverit*. Sall. *Mihi minādātur*. Cic. *Irasci inimicis*. Cæs.

(b.) So *Adūlor*, assentior, blandior, commōdo, fāceo, grātificor, grātor, grātūlor, and its verbal grātūlābundus, ignosco, indulgeo, lēndōcinor, palpōr, parco, plaudo, respondeo, stūdeo, suppārāstōr; amūlor, incommōdo, invideo, nōceo, obsum, officio;—arīdeo, plāceo; displiceo;—crēdo, fīdo, confīdo; despēro, diffīdo;—adīnīcūlor, auxiliōr, mēdeor, mēdicor, opitūlor, patrōcinor, prōsum, subvēniō, succurro; dēsum, insidiōr;—impēro, mando, mōdōrōr, prācipio, tempēro; ausculto, morīgēror, obēdio, obsecundo, obsequor, obtemperō, pārco, dicto audiens sum;—ancillor, famūlor, ministro, servio, inservio, prastōlor;—advorsor, refrāgor, obsto, obrecto, rēluctor, rēntōr, rēpugno, rēsisso, and, chiefly in the poets, bello, certo, luctor, pugno;—mīnor, commīnor, intermīnor;—trascor, successeo, sūmōdāchor.—To these may be added æquo, dīlāquo, conviciōr, dēgēnēro, excello, nūbo, suppēdīto, prastāricor, rēcipio (to promise), rēnūncio, sūdeō, persuādeō, dissuādeō, supplico, vāco, videor, and sometimes misceo and lāteo;—also the impersonals acclit, concēnit, confūcit, contingit, dēcet, dōlet, expēdit, licet, libet, or libet, liquet, placet, etc.—(c.) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, *Mihi invidētur*, I am envied. *Mihi mōlādīctur*, I am reviled. *Mihi parctur*, I am spared. Hor. *Hoc persuādētur mīhi*, I am persuaded of this.

(1.) (a.) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative, sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, *adūlor*, ausculto, blandior, dēgēnēro, despēro, indulgeo, lāteo, mēdeor, mēdicor, mōdōrōr, obrecto, prastōlor, prōvideo, etc.; as, *Adūlārī ālquem*. Cic. *Hanc cāve dēgēnēres*. Ovid. *Indulgeo me*. Ter. *Hujus adventum prastōlans*. Cæs. *Prōvidēre rem frūmentārīam*. Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, *A Stōlcis dēgēnērāvī Pārvetius*. Cic. *De rēpūblicā despērāre*. Id. *Obrectārunt inter se*. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, *Quæ despērāt tractātā n' essēre posse, relīquī*. Hor.

(b.) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impéro, mando, ministro, minor, comminor, interminor, præcipio, récipio, renuncio*, etc.; as, *Equites imperat civitatibus*; where *cogendos* is perhaps to be supplied, He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Ministrare victum alicui*. Varr. *Dēflagratiōnem urbi et Ratiā toti minabatur*. Cic.

(c.) *Æquo* and *adæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invideo* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Hōnorem mihi invidet*. Hor.; or, when *invidere* is used in the sense of *privare*, a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non invidērunt laude suā milītribus*. Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is once used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Nēque ille sēpōtī ciceris nec longæ invidet avēna*.

(d.) *Cedo*, used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cēdere alicui possessionē hortōrum*. So, also, *concedo tibi locum*, or *concedo tibi loco*.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *dēlecto, jūvo, adjūvo, nājūto, laedo, offendo*, etc.—*Jūbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jūbeo te bene sperāre*. Cic. *Lex jubet ea quæ faciēda sunt*. Id. *Ubi Britannico jussit exurgere*. Tac. *Quibus jussērat, ut instantibus resistērent*. Id.—*Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. Cf. § 245.

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad, antē, cōn, in, intēr, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, and supēr*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Annus cœptis*, Be favorable to our undertakings. Virg. *Rōmānis equitibus lītēræ affērentur*, Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Antēcellere* omnibus, To excel all. Id. *Antitūlit iras religiōnem*. Nep. *Audetque viris concurrere virgo*. Virg. *Exercitum exercitui, dūces dūcibus comparāre*. Liv. *Imminet his aer*. Ovid. *Pēcōri signum impressit*. Virg. *Nox prælio intēvenit*. Liv. *Interdixit histriōnibus scēnam*. Suet. *Meis commōdis officis et obstas*. Cic. *Cum se hostium tēlis objēcissent*. Id. *Posthābui mea sēria lādo*. Virg. *Certāmini præsedūt*. Suet. *Hibernis Labiēnum præposuit*. Cæs. *Gēnibus prēcumbere*. Ovid. *Misēris succurrere disco*. Virg. *Iis subsidia submittēbat*. Cæs. *Timidis supervēnit*. Ægle. Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adæquō, adhæreo, adjāco, adno, adnōto, adno, adstipulor, adsum, adversor, afflugeo, allabor, allādo, annuo, appāreo, applaudo, appropinquo, arripō, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assisteo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo*;—*addo, adhābeo, adjicio, adjungo, admōveo, adverto, advoico, affēro, affigo, alligo, appōno, applico, aspergo*.

2. *Antēcedo, antēcello, anteo, antesto, antēvénio, antēverto*;—*antēfēro, antēhābeo, antipōno*.

3. *Cōhæreo, collādo, concino, congruo, consentio, consōno, consuesco, convico, and, shelly in the poets, cōbo, concumbo, concuro, contendo*;—*confēro, conjungo, comparo, compōno*.

4. *Inclōdo, inclūdo, incumbo, indormio, ingēmisco, inhāreo, inlāto, innascor, innotor, insideo, insisto, insto, insūdo, insulto, inrādo, invigilo, illacino, illādo, immināco, immōrior, immōror, impendō, insum*;—*immisceo, imperitio, impōno, imprimo, incido, inlādo, induo, infēro, ingēro, injicio, insēro, inspergo, insuesco, inūro*.

5. *Intercēdo, intercēdo, interclūdo, interjūco, intermīco intersum, intervénio*;—*interficio, interjicio, interpōno*.

[illegible]

7 *Postfēro, posthābeo, postpōno, postpūto, postscribo.*

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præco, prælūco, prælinco, præmitto, præsidet, præsidet, præsum, prævidet, prævertor*; — *præfero, præfacio, præpono*.

9. *Prōcumbo, prōficio, prōpugno, prospicio, prōvideō.*

10. Succēdo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, suffragor, subdōles, subdāces, subdēpo, subsum, subdēnio : subdo, subdicio, subdūgo, submitto, supdōno, subdārno.

11. *Sūpercurro, sūpersto, sūpersum, sūpercēnio, sūperuō.*

**NOTE 2.** In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb, according to § 228.

**REMARK 1.** (a.) Some verbs, compounded with *ad*, *de*, *ex*, *circum*, and *contra*, are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, desum, delabor, despro, excido, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjaceo, circumjicio, contradico, contrato*; as, *Serta capiti delapsa*. The garlands have fallen from his head. Virg. *Nummi nummi exciderunt tibi?* Plant. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur*. Plin. *Sibi desperans*. Gess.—(b.) *Circundo* and *circumfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person; as, *circundo alicui custodias*, or *circundo aliquem custodiis*. *Aspergo, impergo, dono, impertio, exuo*, and *inchoo*, are construed in the same manner. Cf. § 251. R. 2.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abŕogo*, *abrŕogo*, *abscindo*, *aufŕero*, *adimo*, *arceo*, *defendo*, *demo*, *dēpello*, *dērŕogo*, *detrŕaho*, *ŕipio*, *ŕuo*, *excitŕo*, *extimo*, *extorqueo*, *extrŕaho*, *ezuo*, *prohibeo*, *surrŕipio*. Thus, *Nec mlihi te ŕipient*, Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstitium pŕcŕri dŕfendŕte*. Virg. *Hunc arcŕbis pŕcŕri*. Id. So rarely *abrumpo*, *aliŕeno*, *fŕvor*, and *rapio*.

REM. 8. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dī* or *dīs*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *dē*, or poetically with the ablative alone; as, *differō, discerpō, discordo, dissentio, dissideo, disto*; as, *Quantum simplex hīlārisque nepōti discerpēt, et quantum discordec, pūrcus āvaro*. Hor. *Distibit infido scurræ amicus*. Hor. *Græcis Tuscānicæ statua diffērent*. Quint. *Comœdia differt sermōni*. Hor. So likewise *misceo*; as, *Mista modestiæ oratitas*. Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad*, *con*, and *in*, instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposition of similar signification is used; as, *Ad primam vocem amidas aduertitis aures*. Ovid. *Nemo eum antecessit*. Nep. *Saxa vides sola coalescere calce*. Lucr. *Inferunt omnia in ignem*. Cæs. *Silex incumbēbat ad annem*. Virg. *Inimicus mitteramine aduvs*. Ovid. *In Pansam fratrem inuicis*. Plin. *Conferite hunc pacem cum illo bello*. Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another, *ad* is used for *in*, and *in* for *ad*; *ab* for *ex*; *ad*, *antē*, *contrā*, and *in*, for *ob*; *ad* and *antē*, for *prō*.

REM. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded with the prepositions, *ad, ante, cōm, in*, etc., either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallo; virtute præcedunt*, The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. *Cæs. Uterque, Isocratem ætate præcurrit*. Cic. *So præeo, præsto, prævertō, præcello*. See § 233, (3.)

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *sātis*, *bēne*, and *māle*, are followed by the dative; as,



*Et nātūrā et lēgibus sātisfēcit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Tibi dī bēnēficiant omnes*, May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, *Amicum erga bēne fēcī*. Id. *Maledicūt utriq̄ue*. Hor. So *sātiedo*, *bēnēdico*, *mālēdico*.

NOTE. These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *sātis*, *bēne*, and *mālē*, but on the simple verb. So, also, *bēne* and *mālē* *altius vōlo*; as, *Tibi bēne ex animo vōlo*. Ter. *Illi ego ex omnibus optime vōlo*. Plaut. *Non sibi mālē vult*. Petron. In like manner *vālere dīco*, and *vālē dīco*; as, *Augustus discēdens 's cūrā*) *sēdentibus singulis vālere dīcēbat*. Suet. *Tibi vālēdīcēre non licet grātis*. Sen.—In late writers *bēnēdico* and *mālēdico* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and the later prose writers; as, *Quidquid in hac causā mihi susceptum est*. Cic. *Nēque cernitur ulli*, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuarum audita mihi nēque visa sororum*. Id. *Barbārus hac ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli*. Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. See § 248, I.

[ III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

*Unda omnibus enātiganda*, The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. *Nobis, cum sēmel occidit brevis lux, Nox est perpētua una dormienda*. Catull. *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summorum hominum sibi tuenda esse dicit*. Id. *Sī vis me flēre, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi*. Hor. *Faciendum mihi putāvi, ut responderem*. Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv. *Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est*. Liv. In such examples, *tibi*, *vobis*, *nobis*, *hominibus*, etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *d* or *ab*; as, *Non eos in deorum immortalium numero vērērandos a vobis et cōlēndos putātos?* Cic. *Hæc a me in dicendo prætēreunda non sunt*. Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

[ IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

*Ad templum Palladis ibant*. Virg. *Ad prætorem hominem trahit*. Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriones*. Cæs. *In conspectum venire*. Nep.

So *curro*, *dūco*, *fēro*, *festino*, *fūgio*, *inclino*, *lēgo*, *mitto*, *pergo*, *porto*, *præcipito*, *propéro*, *tendo*, *tollo*, *vādo*, *verto*.

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, etc.; as, *Eunum ad se vocat*. Virg. *Provocasse ad pugnam*. Cic. So *animo*, *hortor*, *incito*, *invito*, *lācesso*, *stimulo*, *suscito*; to which may be added *attineo*, *conformo*, *perlineo*, and *specto*.

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clamor in cælo*. Virg. *Dum tibi litæ meæ veniant*. Cic. *Grægem viridi compellere hibisco*. Virg. *Sēdibus hunc rēfer ante suis*. Id. After *venio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Venit mihi in mentem*. Cic. *Venit mihi in suspiçiōnem*. Nep. *Eum venisse Germānis in amicitiam cognōcērat*. Cæs. *Præpinyuo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *un*, an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, *Rōnam profectus est*. *Ite domum*. *Rus ibam*. *Lavinia venit litōra*. Virg. *Nēque ego te dōrisum venio*. Plaut. *Non nos Libyicos populāre penātes venimus*. Virg. *Huc venit*. Plaut. See §§ 237, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do*, *scribo*, or *mitto* *litēras*, the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative with *ad*; as, *Ex eo loco tibi litēras ante dēderāmus*. Cic. *Vulturcius litēras gēp*

ad Catilinam datus esse, dicebat. Id. Caesar scribit Labieno cum, etc. Cæs. Ad me Cælius de te scripsit. Cic. But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dare litteras alicui*, and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor*;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

*Est* thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est mihi domi pater*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt nobis mitia poma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Gratia nobis opus est tua*, We have need of your favor. Cic. *Innocentia plus periculi quam honoris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas regibus esse manus?* Ovid. So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec tibi sit durus acuisse in proelia dentes*. Tib. 4, 3, 3. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mihi est nomen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called. The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive. See § 204, R. 8. So also *cognomen*, *cognomentum*, and, in Tacitus, *vocabulum*, *est mihi*.—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nomen*, etc., supplies the place of the proper name; as, *Est mihi nomen Tarquinium*. Gell. *Mercuriale impoñere mihi cognomen*. Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fore*, *suppedit*, *abest*, *deest*, and *dedit*; as, *Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppedit usus*. Hor. *Si mihi cauda foret, cercoptitæus eram*. Mart. *Defuit ars vobis*. Ovid. *Non defore Arsacidis virtutem*. Tac. *Lac mihi non dedit*. Virg. *Hoc unum illi abfuit*. Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *votens*, *cupiens*, and *invitus*; as, *Quia neque plebi milita volenti (esse) putabatur*, Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall. *Ut quibusque bellum invitis aut cupientibus erat*, According as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

#### DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which*, the other the *end for which*, any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mihi maxima est curæ*, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spéro nobis hanc conjunctionem voluptati fore*, I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. *Matri puellam dono dedit*. Ter. *Fabio laudi datum est*. Cic. *Vitio id tibi vertunt*. Plant. *Id tibi honori habetur*. Cic. *Maturavit collæge venire auxilio*. Liv. *Cui bono fuit?* To whom was it an advantage? Cic.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum*, *fore*, *fit*, *do*, *dono*, *daco*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*; also *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *proficiscor*, *venio*, *appono*, *asigno*, *cædo*, *comparo*, *pateo*, *suppedito*, *emo*, and some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the *end* or *purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as,

*Exemplo est formica*, The ant (serves for) an example. Hor. *Absentium bona divisiui fuere*. Liv. *Reliquit pignori putamina*. Plant. *Quas esui et potui sunt*. Gell. *Esse derisui*, To be a subject of ridicule. Tac. *Receptui canere*, To sound a retreat. Cæs. *Aliquid doti dicere*, To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, *does*, etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum* instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used; as,

*Ignōtia erit tibi magno dēdēcōri*, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hoc res est argūmento*, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hoc vitio mihi dant*, This they set down as a fault in me. *Universos cūræ habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno ōsui*. .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tibi magnūpēre cordi est, mihi vēmēnter displicet*, What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the words *fit*, *able*, *ready*, etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum solvendo civiltāter non essent*, .... not able to pay. Cic. *Divites, qui ōnēri fērendo essent*. Liv. *Quae restinguendo igni fōrent*. Liv. *Rādix ejus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Nātūrā tu illi pāter es*, By nature you are his father. *Amor est exiliūm pēcōri*: or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alcui cōmes est ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Rēmis in clientelāra dēcōbant*. Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innocentia pro mālivolentiā dūci caput*. Sall. *Alcibus sunt arbōres pro cūbilibus*. Cæs.

REM. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mihi fortunam, si non concēditur ūti?* Hor. *Quo tibi, Pasiphae, prētiōsq; sinēdra vestes?* Ovid.

REM. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lātini cōrōnam auream Jōvi dōnum in Cāpitoliūm mittunt*. Liv. *Alcui cōmitem esse dātum*. Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

NOTE. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vbis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. *Maximo tibi et civi et dūci evādere contigit*. Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

## DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

*Prōpius Tibēri quam Thermōpŷlis*. Nep. *Proxime castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prōpius stābūlis armenta tēnērent*. Virg. *Congruenter nātūræ, convēnienterque vivēre*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Epīcūrus quam sibi constanter convēnienterque dīcat, non libōrat*. Id. *Nēmīni nīmīum bēne est*. Afran. *Mihi numquam in vitā fuit melius*. Hor. *Vivēre vitæ hōmīnum amice*. Cic. *Bēne mihi, bēne vōbis*. Plaut. So, *Mihi obviā vēnistī*. Cic. *In certāmina sevo comminus ire viro*. Sil. *Questōres prōvinciæ mihi præsto fuērunt*. Cic. *Sāmos est exadversum Milēto*. App.

REMARK. *Prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prōpe a meis ædibus*. Cic. *Stellas errantes prōpius a terris*. Id. *A Surā proxime est Philiscum, oppidum Parthorum*. Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Vae mihi!* Wo is me! Ter. *Vae victis esse!* Liv. *Vae misero mihi*. Plaut. *Hem tibi*. Id. *Ecce tibi*. Cic.

NOTE. (a.) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dātivus ethicus*; as,

*For mihi es.* ... in my opinion. Plant. *An ille mihi liber, cui mātlier imperat?* Cic. *Tongilius mihi eduxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille māgiater?* Virg. *Ecce tibi Sebōus!* Cic. *Hem tibi talentum argenti!* *Philippicum est.* Plant. *Sibi* is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suis*; as, *Suo sibi glādio hunc iūgulo.* Plant. *Ignōrans suo sibi servit patri.* Id. *Sibi suo tempore.*

(b.) The following phrases also occur with *volo* and a reflexive pronoun: *quid tibi vis?* what do you want? *quid sibi iste vult?* what does he want? *quid vult sibi hæc oratio?* what does this speech mean? *quid hæc sibi dōna volunt?* what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

## ACCUSATIVE.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; as,

*Lēgātōs mittunt.* They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Animus movet corpus.* The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da vēniām hanc.* Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitātī sunt.* They imitated him. Cic. *Piscem Syri vēnerantur.* Id.

REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

*Te convinco āmentīæ.* I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum mēliōribus.* Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucria luctu.* Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence, in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me cāretet.* That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Ille mihi favet.* He favors me: and many verbs originally intransitive acquire a transitive signification.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum sēnātus, quem (scil. dīre) vidēbūt, dabit.* Liv.

2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes*. So also *quid vēro?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* which are always followed by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition, the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea?* *quid tum?* supply *sequitur*. With *quid quod,* occurring in transitions, *dicam de eo* is omitted, but it may be rendered 'nay,' 'nay even,' 'but now,' 'moreover,' etc., without an interrogation.—*Dicam* is also to be supplied with *quid multa?* *quid plūra?* *ne multa;* *ne multis;* *ne plūra*. The infinitive *dicere* is also sometimes omitted; as, *Nimis multa videor de me.* Cic. *Perge reliqua.* Id.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcipitat, scil. se.* Virg. *Iam prōra avertit.* Id. *Eo lavātum, scil. me.* Hor.

The reflexives are usually wanting after *abdoleo, abstineo, accingo, adequo, aequo, agglomerō, augeo, cætero, congeminō, continuo, declino, decūquo, desino, differo, dāro, erumpo, flecto, deflecto, fācesco, incipio, incitno, insinuo, irrumpo, iungo, lāro, laxo, lenio, māturo, mollio, moveo, mātō, pōno, præcipio, prōrumpo, quatio, rēmitto, retracto, sēdo, sisto, stābilo, suppedito, tardo, tēneo, tendo, trājicio, transmittō, turbo, vārio, vergo, verto, dēcerto, rēvorto, vestio, vibro;* and more rarely after many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, has been previously expressed in any case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scribam, nescio, scil. lītēras.* Cic. *De quo et tēcum ēgi diligenter, et scripsi ad te.* Id. *Bēne fēcit Silius.* Id. *Dūci in hostem, scil. exercitum.* Liv.

**REM. 5.** An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb; as,

*Da mihi fallere.* Hor. *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum.* Id. *Cupis me esse clementem.* Cic. *Athēnienses statuērunt ut naves conscenderent.* Id. *Vereor ne a doctis reprehendar.* Id. *Eucē, Bacche, somat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di iram miserantur inānem ambōrum, et tantos mortālibus esse labōres.* Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the subjunctive after such verbs, see § 278.

(a.) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit, for Nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus.* Cic. *Illum, ut vical, optant.* Ter. *At te ego faciam, ut minus valeas.* Plaut.

(b.) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts*, etc., modified by such ablative; as, *De republicā vestrā paucis accipe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

**REM. 6.** The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miseret, pœnitet, pœdet, tædet, piget, miserencit, miseretur*, and *periculus est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

*Eōrum nos miseret,* We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *Vēritum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est vēritum pōnere*, etc. Cic.

**REM. 7.** *Juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit, præterit, and decet*, with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

*Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat,* That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fugit me ad te scribere.* Cic. *Illud alterum quam sit difficile, te non fugit.* Id. *Nec vero Cæsarem fefellit.* Cæs. *Facias, ut te decet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet.* Hor.; but *decet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hanc maculam nos decet effigere.* Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vobis decet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *intērest*, see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6.) (b.)

**§ 230.** Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate*. Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.); as,

*Urbem ex Antiōchi patris nōmine Antiōchiam vocāvit.* He called the city Antioch, etc. Just. *Ludos facis me,* You make game of me. Plaut. *Me consulum fecistis.* Cic. *Iram bene Ennius Initium dixit insanis.* Id. *Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit.* Liv. *Sulpicium accusatorem suum numerabat, non competitorum.* Cic. *Quum vos testes habeam.* Nep.

**NOTE 1.** The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dico, nōmino, nuncipo, perhibeo, salūto, scribo* and *inscribo, vōco*; *cāpio, cōstituo, creo, dēclāro, dēligo, dēsigno, dīco, ēligo, facio, efficio, instīto, lēgo, prōdo, reddo, rēnuccio, dūco, dignor, existimo, habeo, iūdico, nūmero, pūto, rēperio, intelligo, invēnio, se præbere* or *præstare*, etc

**NOTE 2.** An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortūna me, qui liber fuēram, servum fecit*, e summo infimum. Plaut. Cf. *Qui recta prava faciunt.* Ter.

**NOTE 3.** An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as, *Si simū asse vocat crimen.* Ovid.:—and sometimes of the predicate-accusative

also; as, *Si rep̄r̄re vocas amittere certius; aut si scire ubi sit rep̄r̄re vocas.* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Præbui se dignum suis maj̄oribus.* Cic. *Cædrem certiorẽ faciunt.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

*Eum av̄arum possid̄us existimare.* Cic. *Talem se imperat̄orem præbui.* Nep. *Præsta te eum, qui mihi es cognitus.* Cic. *Mercūrium omnium invent̄orem artium f̄erunt; hunc viarum atque itin̄erum dūcem arbitrantur.* Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne me existimaris ad m̄nẽs sum esse propensiorẽ.* Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative sometimes follows *p̄t̄o*, *dūco*, and *habeo*, but denotes only an approximation; as, *Aliquid pro certo habere or p̄t̄are.* *Ea pr̄c̄ fulsis dūcit.* Sall. *Aliquem pro hoste habere.* Cæs.—So also in with the ablative; as, *Nihil præter virtutẽ in bonis habere.* Cic. *Aliquem in nūm̄ro hostium dūcere.* Cic.—and the ablative without in; as, *Uti vos affinium loco dūcerẽ.* Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the ablative; as, (*U*) *f̄ac̄ret quod e rep̄blicā fidẽque suā dūceret.* Liv.—Sometimes (2), the genitive; as, *Officiĩ duxit exor̄are filiæ patrem.* Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, (8.)) *Sc* with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *P̄t̄are aliquem nihilo.* Cic. *Non habeo nanci Marum augurẽ.* Enn.—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando tu me habes desp̄cātui.* Plaut.—or an adverb; as, *Egre habui, filium id pro p̄rente ausum.* Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Loca ad hibernacula leḡere.* Liv. *Aliquem in Patres leḡere.* Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servit̄utẽ dedit̄ionis nōmine appellant.* Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do*, *tribuo*, *sūmo*, *p̄t̄o*, *p̄no*, *adjungo*, *ascribo*, *cognosco*, *accio*, *fr̄ngo*, *significo*, etc.; as,

*Quirẽ r̄us f̄ugẽ cōmitem me adjunḡerẽ.* Cic. *Hōm̄num op̄in̄io sōcium me ascribit tuis laudib̄.* Id. *Quos ego sim toties jam dedit̄m̄ta m̄ritos.* Virg. *Hmc̄ t̄ḡtur r̄gem agnoscimus, qui Philippum dedit̄m̄atur patrem?* Curt. *Filiam tuam mihi uxorem posco.* Plaut. *P̄t̄ui hanc S̄aturnia m̄nus.* Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *c̄lō* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

*Hoc te v̄h̄ẽment̄er r̄go.* Cic. *Illud te oro, ut, etc.* Id. *R̄go te nummos, I ask you for money.* Mart. *Posce deos v̄niam,* Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum leḡent quis m̄usicam docuer̄it Ep̄aminondam,* When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antigonus iter omnes c̄lat,* Antigonus conceals his route from all. Id. *D̄p̄r̄c̄ari deos mala.* Sen. *Qūtidie Cæs̄ar Ed̄uc̄s fr̄umentum f̄l̄ḡit̄are.* Cæs. *Multa deos orans.* Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *fl̄ḡito*, *effl̄ḡito*, *ob̄oro*, *oro*, *exoro*, *contendo*, *percontor*, *posco*, *r̄posco*, *cons̄ulo*, *pr̄cor*, *d̄p̄r̄cor*, *r̄go*, and *int̄errogo*, which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, *quid*, more frequently than that of a substantive; of teaching, *doceo*, *ed̄oceo*, *ed̄oceo*, and *er̄udio*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Adm̄oneo* and *cons̄ulo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Cons̄ulam hanc rem amicos.* Plaut. *Eam rem nos d̄cus adm̄onuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non d̄b̄ebam abs te has lit̄ras poscere.* Cic. *V̄niam or̄emus ab ipso.* Virg. *Istud v̄l̄ebam ex te percont̄ari.* Plaut.

**REM. 3 (a.)** Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrogem.* Cic. *De Itinere hostium senatum edocet.* Sall. *Bassus noster me de hoc libro celavit.* Cic. Cf. § 229 R. 5, (b.).—**(b.)** Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos precari debetis, ut urbem defendant.* Cic. *Ut doceam nullum posthac tacere.* Id. *Doci id non fieri posse.* Id. *Doceant cum qui vir Sex.* Roscius fuerit. Id.—**(c.)** With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Aliquem fidibus docere.* Cic. *Docere aliquem armis.* Liv. *Literas* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te litteras doceo.* Cic. *Doctus Græcis literis.* Id.

**REM. 4.** Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exigo, peto, postulo, quaero, scitor, sciscitor*, which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab, de, or ex; imbuo, instituo, instruo*, etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instituere aliquem ad dicendum.* Cic.

**REM. 5. (a.)** Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting in what respect or to what degree the action of the verb is exerted.

**(b.)** The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nihil*, a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Non quo me aliquid juvare posses.* Cic. *Pauca pro tempore milites hortatus.* Sall. *Id adjuta me.* Ter. *Næque est te salutare quidquam.* Virg. Cf. § 232, (8.)

**REM. 6.** By a similar construction, *genus* and *seculus*, 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullas hoc genus vigiliæ vigilarunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes muliebre seculus.* Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

**§ 232. (1.)** Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Vitam jucundam vivere*, To live a pleasant life. Plaut. *Mirum somniavi somnium*, I have dreamed a wonderful dream. Id. *Ferere hunc furorem.* Virg. *Islam pugnam pugnabo.* Plaut. *Pugnare dicenda Musis proelia.* Hor. *Lusum insolentem ludere.* Id. *Si non servitutem serviat.* Plaut. *Quæror haud faciles questus.* Stat. *Juravi verissimum jusjurandum.* Cic. *Ignotas jubet ire vias.* Val. Flacc. So, also, *Ire exsequias*, To go to a funeral. Ter. *Ire supplicias*, To go to one's assistance. *Ire infitias*, To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infittior*; and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc unum adiungero, quod nemo est infittias.* Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Næque infittias inus Siciliam nostram provinciam esse.* Liv. *Ut suum gaudium gauderemus.* Cæd. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum iter.* Cic. *Pollux siquæ redditque viam.* Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

**(2.)** Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *oleo* and *aspicio*, and their compounds, *redolere, respicio*; as, *Olet unguenta*, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olere peregrinum*, To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orationes redolentes antiquitatem.* Id. *Mella herbarum eam sapiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva picem respiciens.* Id. So, *Sitio honores.* Cic. *Carnem pluit.* Liv. *Claudius aleam stichonissime luit.* Suet. *Erumpere diu coercitam iram in hostes.* Liv. *Libros evigilare.* Ovid. *Preire verba.* Liv. *Nec vox hominem sonat.* Virg. *Sulcare mella.* Id. *Morientem nomine clamat.* Id. *Quis post vina gravem militiam aut pauperiem crepat?* Hor. *Omnes una manet nox.* Id. *Ingrati animi crimen horreo.* Cic. *Ego meas quæror fortunas.* Plaut. *Vivere Bacchanalia.* Juv. *Pastorem saltaret itti Cyclopa, rogabat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem Cyclopa mœvetur.* Id. *Xerxes quum mare ambulavisset, terram navigasset.* Cic. *Qui stadium currit.* Id. *Communia jura migrare.* Id. *Te volo colloqui.* Plaut. *Ea dissere mæhi.* Cic.

*Corydon ardebat Alexin.* Virg. *Stygias jærdatimus undas.* Ovid. *Nat̃, jat sequor* Virg. *Currimus sequor.* Id. *Pascuntur sylvas.* Id.

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambũlo, calleo, dũleo, equito, floo, gaudeo, gẽmo, glõrior, horreo, lætor, lætro, nãto, palleo, pãves, pãreo, depãreo, pãcedo, quãtor, video, sũleo, sũblo, tũceo, trẽmo, trẽpido, vãdo, vẽnio, etc.*

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be followed by an accusative denoting *in what respect*, or *to what degree*, the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested; as,

*Nihil lãbũo.* Cic. *Num id lacrimat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. *Multa alia peccat.* Cic. *Quicquid dẽtrant rẽges, plectuntur Achiui.* Hor. *Nec tu id indignãri posses.* Liv. *Illud mihi latendum video.* Cic. *Illud valde tibi assentior.* Id. *Idem glõriãri.* Id. *Hęc glõrians.* Liv. *Hoc stude!* animum. Hor.—So, *Id opẽram do*, I strive for this. Ter. *Consilium pẽtia, quid tibi sim auctor.* Cic. *Quod quidam auctores sunt,* Which is attested by some authors. Liv. *Nil nostri misẽre?* Virg.—*Nihil Rãmãns plẽbis similis.* Liv. *Sẽnatus nihil sãnẽ intentus.* Sall. These limiting accusatives have commonly the force of adverbs, particularly *nihil*, which is used like an emphatic *nam* in the sense of 'in no way,' 'in no respect.' So *non nihil*, 'to some extent,' 'in some measure.'

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad, etc.*, may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, quidquam, aliquid, quicquid, quod, nihil, nonnihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, unum, multa, pauca, alia, cẽtera, omnia, etc.* Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans, ad, and circum*, have sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as,

*Omnem equitãtum pontem transducit,* He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. *Agessilãus Hellespontum cõpias trãjecit.* Nep. *Petrẽius jusjurandum ad tẽgit Afrãnium.* Cæs. *Roscillum Pompẽius omnia sua præsidia circumduxit.* Id. So, *Pontus scõpilos stiperjãcit undam.* Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *induco* with *animum*; as, *Id animum advertit.* Cæs. *Id quod animum induxerat paulisper non tẽnuit.* Cic. So, also, *injicio* in Plautus—*Ego te mãmum injiciam.*

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as,

*Mãgicas accingier artes,* To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose writers the *ad* is in such cases repeated; as, *accingi ad consũlatũ.* Liv. *Classis circumvehitur arcem.* Id. *Quod anguis dõmi vectem circumjectus fuisset.* Cic. *Ilocum prãtervectus sum.* Id.

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or of rest in a place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative; as,

*Gentes quẽ mãre illud adjãcent,* The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obẽquĩtãre agmen.* Curt. *Incẽdunt mæstos lõcos.* Tac. *Transilui flammãs.* Ovid. *Succẽdere tecta.* Cic. *Lũdũrum diẽbus, qui cognitiõnem intervẽnẽrant.* Tac. *Adire provinciã.* Suet. *Cãveat ne prælum ineat.* Cic. *Ingrẽdi lter pãdibus.* Cic. *Epĩcũri hortĩ quos mõdo prãteribãmus.* Id.

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambũlo, cẽdo, curro, eo, equito, floo, errãtũr, labor, no* and *nãto, rẽpo, sũto, scando, vãdo, vẽho, vẽnio, volo*;—*nũbo, sũbo, sideo, sisto, sto, etc.*, with the prepositions included in § 224, and with *ez.*



**REMARK 1.** Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

*Nēmīnem cōvenī, I met with no one. Cic. Quā sociētātem cōīris. Id. Averāri hōnōres. Ovid. Ursi arbōrem āversi dērepunt. Plin. Edormi crāpūlam. Cic. Egressus exsiliū. Tac. Evādique celer ripam. Virg. Excēdere nūmērum. Tac. Extre limen. Ter. Tibur āqua fertilē prāfluunt. Hor.*

**REM. 2.** After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as,

*Cæsar se ad nēmīnem adjunxit. Cic. Multitudinē trans Rhēnum in Galliam transducere. Cæs.—In Galliam invāsit Antonius. Cic. Ad me dāte quēdam mēmīni. Id. Orātor pēragrat per ānimos hōmīnum. Id. Ne in sēnātum accēderem. Id. Rēgina ad templū incessit. Virg. Juxta gēnitōrem adstat Lavinia. Id. Fines extra quos ēgrēdi nō possim. Cic. A dative instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. Circum is not repeated.*

**NOTE.** Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

*Quid tibi huc rēceptio ad te est meum vīrum? Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. Quid tibi, mālum, me, aut quid ego āgam, cūrāto 'st? Id. Quid tibi hanc dātio est? Id. Quid tibi hanc nōtio est, inquam, āmicam meam? Quid tibi hanc dīgitō tactio 'st? Id. Hanno vitābundus castra hostium constālesque. Liv. Mithridātes Rōmānum mēditābundus bellum. Just. Mitrābundi vānam spēcīem. Liv. Pōpūlābundus agros. Sisenn. Carnificem imāginābundus. App.*

**§ 234.** A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

**NOTE 1.** The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, *Dico rēgem esse justum*;—Passive, *Rex dicitur justus esse. Act. Jūbeo te rēdīre*;—Pass. *Jūbēris rēdīre*: the construction in the passive being the same as though *rēgem* and *te* had depended immediately upon *dico* and *jūbeo*.—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

**I.** When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as,

*Rōgātus est sententiā, He was asked his opinion. Liv. Interrogātus causam. Tac. Sēgētes āllimentāque debita dīves poscēbātur hīmus. Ovid. Mōtus dōcēre gaudet lōntros mātūra virgo. Hor. Omnes bellī artes ēdoctus. Liv. Nosne hoc celātos tam diu? Ter. Multa in extis mōnēmur. Cic.*

**NOTE 2.** The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *celāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id* celābar; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, *Id Alcibiādi diūtius celāri nō pōtuit. Nep. Alcib. 5. Cēlo*, and especially its passive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

**REMARK 1.** (a.) *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Inductur atras vestes*, She puts on sable garments. Ovid. *Thorāca indūtus*. Virg. *Excūta est Rōma sēnectam*. Mart. So *indūcor* and *cingor*; as, *Ferrum cingitur*. Virg. So *recingitur* anguem. Ovid.

(b.) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans* the passive retains that which depends upon the preposition; as, *Belgæ Rhēnum antiquitus transducti*. Cæs.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, *Multa novis rēbus quum sit agendum*. Lucr. *Quam (viam) nobis ingrediendum est*. Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the part to which their signification relates; as,

*Nudus mēbra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Clāri gēnus*. Tac. *Tribūni suam vicem anxi*. Liv. *Trēmūt artus*. Virg. *Cētera parce puer bello*. Id. *Sibila colla timentem*. Id. *Expleri mentem nēquit*. Id. *Grīncus ērūtur oculos*. Ovid. *Picti acūta Lābici*. Virg. *Collis frontem lēniter fustigātus*. Cæs. *Animum incensus*. Liv. *Obūtus faciē suā crudēre*. Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Miles fractus mēbra lābore*. Hor. *Dextērū gēnū lapide ictus*. Suet. *Adversum fēmur trāgūlā graviter ictus*. Liv.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting* or *Greek accusative*. It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vicem*, *magnam* and *maximam partem*, instead of *magnā* or *maximā ex parte*, or the adverb *sēre*; as, *Maximam partem lucte vivunt*. Cæs. *Magnam partem ex iambus nostra constat oratio*. Cic. Livy has *magna pars*, viz. *Nūmidæ*, *magna pars agrestes*.—So *cētera* and *rēliqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cēteris*, 'for the rest,' 'in other respects'; as, *Proximum regnum, cētera ēgrēgium, ab unā parte haud satis prosperum fuit*. Liv. So *cētera similis*, *cētera bonus*. *A te his terre summum litēras accepi*. Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id temporis*; *id, hoc or idem ætātis*, *illud hōræ*, for *eo tempore*, *eā ætate*, etc.; *id gēnus*, *omne gēnus*, *quod gēnus*.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

*Tertia vicitur ætas*. Ovid. *Bellum militābitur*. Hor. *Dormiatur hiems*. Mart. *Multa peccantur*. Cic. *Aditur Gnosius Minos*. Sen. *Ne ab omnibus circumscitēretur*. Cæs. *Hostes invādī posse*. Sall. *Campus obitur aquā*. Ovid. *Plures tancuntur grātias*. Cic. *Ea res silētur*. Id.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *anti*, *apud*, *circā* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* or *citra*, *contra*, *ergā*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *iuxta*, *ob*, *pēnes*, *pēr*, *post*, *pōnē*, *præter*, *prōp*, *propter*, *secundum*, *suprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*; as,

*Ad templum non aquæ Palladis ibant*,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes*, Against the enemy. Liv. *Germani qui cis Rhēnum incolunt*,—this side the Rhine. Cæs. *Quum tantum resideat intra muros mli*. Cic. *Principio trum impērium pēnes rēges erat*. Just. *Templum pōnam propter aquam*. Virg. *Inter agendum*. Id. *Ante donandum*. Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, R. 5, etc.

REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum*. Cic. *Cis Párum*. Liv. *Paucos cis menses*. Plaut. *Citra Vélium*. Cic. *Citra satiétatem*, Not to satiety. Col. *Citra jállyatiónem*. Cels. *Citra Trójána tempóra*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scipiónem*. Cic. *Inter natos et pñrentes*. Id. *Inter nos*, Among ourselves. Id. *Inter falcários*, Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during*, and more rarely *at*; as, *Inter ipsum pugna tempus*. Liv. *Inter cenam*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post Cicerónem consúlem*, rather than *ante* or *post consúlatum Cicerónis*.

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *motion* or *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

*Via ducit in urbem*, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor*. Cic. *Callimáchi épigramma in Cleombrotum est*—on or concerning Cleombrotus. Id. *Exercitus sub jügum missus est*, The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub terras ibit mágo*. Virg. *Média in urbe*, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In his fuit Ariovistus*. Cæs. *Bella sub Iliács mœnibus gérere*, To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub nocte silenti*. Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into*, *to*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*, *about*, *concerning*,—with the ablative, *in*, *on*, *upon*, *among*. In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In conspectu meo audeat ténere*. Phæd. *Natiónes quas in amicitiam pépuli Rómáni, ditionemque essent*. Id. *Sub jügo dictátor hostes misit*. Liv. *Hostes sub montem consécasse*. Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in horas*. Ovid. *Hostilem in modum*. Cic. *Quod in bño servo dici posset*. Id. *Sub eá conditióne*. Ter. *Sub pœná mortis*. Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in*, usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub adventu Rómánorum*. Liv. *Sub luce*. Ovid. *Sub lerypóre*. Lucan. Denoting *near*, *about*, *just before* or *just after*, it takes the accusative; as, *Sub lucem*. Virg. *Sub lúmina prima*. Hor. *Sub hoc hêrus inquit*. Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In universum*, In general. *In totum*, Wholly. So, *in plenum*; *in incertum*; *in tantum*; *in quantum*; *in majus*; *in melius*; *in omnia*, in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sûper*, when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on*, *about*, or *concerning*, it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sûper* signifies *over*, *above*, *besides* or *in addition to*; with numerals, *more than*; as,

*Sûper labentem culmína tecti*, Guiding over the top of the house. Virg. *Sûper tres mœdius*. Liv. *Sûper morbum etiám fâmes affecit exercitum*. Id. *Sûper lenéro prosternit grâmine corpus*, He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Mulla sûper Priâmo rôgitans sûper Hectóre mulla*, .... concerning Priam, etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *dêsûper* is found with the accusative, and *insûper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

*Subten terras*, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densâ testudine*. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative; as,

*Clam* vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patrem. Ter. *Clam* matrem suam. Plaut. *Clam* vobis. Cass. *Neque potest clam me esse*. Plaut. *Clam uxore meâ*. Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum patres*. Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in*, and sometimes the preposition is omitted; as, *Ad Oceanum versus proficisci*. Oes. *Fugam ad se versus*. Sall. *In Galliam versus castra movere*. Id.—*Usque ad Numantiam*. Cic. *Usque in Pamphyliam*. Id. *Ad noctem usque*. Plaut.—*Brundisium versus*. Cic. *Terminos usque Libye*. Just. *Usque Ennam profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative; as, *Trans Alpes usque transfertur*. Cic. *Usque sub extrêmum brâmæ imbrem*.—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab*, and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *Ab septemtrione versus*. Varr. *A fundamento usque movisti mare*. Plaut. *Usque ex ultimâ Syriâ*. Cic. *Usque a puertitiâ*. Ter. *Usque a Rómulo*. Cic. *Usque a mâne ad vespèrum*. Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind; as, *Multis post mensis*, i. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. *Circum Concordiæ*, scil. *cedem*. Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood; as, *Quid opus est plûrâ?* i. e. *propter quid?* why? i. q. *cur?* or *quære?* Cic. So, *Quid me ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative; as,

ACC. *Appius cæcus multos annos fuit*, Appius was blind many years. Cic. *Biduum Lâdiciæ fuit*. Id. *Dies tótos de virtute dissêrunt*. Id. *Te jam annum audientem Cratippum*. Id.—*Décrevêrunt intercâlarium quinque et quâdrâginta dies longum*. Id.—*Quum âbessem ab Anâno iter unius diêi*. Id. *Tres pâteat coeli spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu stâdia centum e. viginti processimus*. Cic.—*Duas fossas quindécim pèdes lâtas perduxit*,—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossæ quinos pèdes altæ*. Id. *Fôrâmnâ longa pèdes tres sêmis*. Cato. *Orbem oleârium crassum digitos sex factio*. Id.—ABL. *Vixit annis undétriginta*. Suet. *Quâtuordécim annis exstium vîlêrâvit*. Tac. *Triginta annis vixit Panætius*. Cic.—*Exercitus Rômânus tridui itinêre abfuit ab anne Tânai*. Tac. *Æsculâpii templum quinque millibus passuum distans*. Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the adverbs *longe*, *altè*, etc.; as, *Campestris locus altè duos pèdes et sêmissem infodiendus est*. Colum. *Veringêtrix locum castris dëligit ab Ava. Ico longè millia passuum sâdêcim*. Cæs.

NOTE 3. (a.) *Old*, in reference to the time which a person has lived, is expressed in Latin by *nâtus*, with an accusative of the time; as, *Décessit Alexander mensem unam, annos tres et triginta nâtus*. Just. (b.) A person's age may also be expressed without *nâtus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6; as, *Alexander annôrum trium et triginta dècessit*. (c.) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is expressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite age the ad-

verbs *plus* or *minus*, or the adjectives *major* or *minor*, either with or without *quam*. See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Minor viginti quinque annis natus*. Nep. *Minor triginta annis natus*. Cic. *Biennio quam nos major*. Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit other nouns, are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number; as, *Nos vicissimum jam diem patimur hēbescere diem horum auctoritatis*. Cic. *Punico bello duodecimum annum Italia arēbatur*. Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc tertia vivitur setas*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quae abērant bidui*, scil. *spātium* or *spātio*. Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is not only used; as, *Millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris consēdi*. Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative; as, *Tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit*. Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spātio* and *intervallo*; as, *Quindēcim ferme millium spātio castra ab Tarento posuit*. Id.

NOTE 4. For *abinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per decem annos dūimus*, .... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition; as, *A millibus passuum duobus castra posuerunt*, Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An accusative of weight also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo*. Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town in which the motion ends is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

*Rēgulus Carthāginem rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. *Capuam fecit iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius Rōmam proficiscitur*. Sall. *Rōmam erat nunciatum*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, etc.; as, *Iter est mihi Lānūvium*. Cic. *Cæsarem iter habere Capuam*. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa municipia, quae sunt a Vibōne Brundisium*. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus Rōmam*. Liv. *Reditus Rōmam*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting to or into, which is sometimes expressed; as, *In Ephesum abiit*. Plaut. *Ad*, before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dirigere ad Mūtīnam*. Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adolescentulus miles praefectus sum ad Capuam*; i. e. in castra ad Capuam. Id. So, *Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium venit*. Cæs. *Cæsar ad Gēnēvam pervēnit*. Id. *Quum ego ad Hērāclēam accēderem*. Cic.

(b.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Dēmdrātus se contulit Turquinos, in urbem Etrūscā flōrentissimam*. Cic. *Ad Cirtam oppidum iter constituit*. Sall.—So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*

ita ad doctas *præfici* cōger Athēnas. Prop. But the poets and later writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, Her. 2, 88.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, Carthāgini *nuncios mittam*. Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dōmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

*Ite dōmum*, Go home. Virg. *Galli dōmos abierant*,—had gone home. Liv. *Rus ibo*, I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (a.) When *dōmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introeo in nostram dōmum*. Plaut. *Venisse in dōmum Leccæ*. Cic. *Ad eam dōmum præfecti sunt*. Id. *In dōmos stupras candere cura fuit*. Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Socrates philosophum in dōmos intrōduxit*. Cic. So, *lārem suum*. App., or *ad lārem suum*. Cic. *Caricas in Albense rus inferre*. Plin. *Quum in sua rura vērunt*. Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dōmum* or *in dōmum* is used; as, *Pompōni dōmum venisse*. Cic. *In dōmum Mælii tela inferuntur*. Liv.

(b.) *Dōmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dōmum rēditionis spe sublātā*. Cæs. So, *Itio dōmum*. Cic. *Concursus dōmum*. Cæs. Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (a.) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dōmus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiā transis in Europam*. Curt. *Te in Epīrum venisse quideo*. Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Devēniunt apēluncam*. Virg. *Invenere locos*. Id. *Tūmulum antiquæ Cērēris sēdemque sacrātam vēnimus*. Id. *Ibis Cērōpius portus*. Ovid. So, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in *us*; as, *Ægyptus*, *Bospōrus*, *Chersonesus*, *Epirus*, *Pelōponnesus*, etc. So, also, *Illyricum præfectus*. Cæs. *Macedōniam pervēnit*. Liv. *Africam transiit*. Id. So, Tacitus construes even names of nations, when used, as they often are, for those of countries; as, *Ductus inde Cangos exercitus*. *Ibros ad putrium regnum pervādīt*. So, Virgil, *Nos ibimus Afros*.—Pliny has, *Insulas Rubri Māris navigant*.

(b.) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausaniam cum classe Cyprum miserunt*. Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardānia*, *Britannia*, *Crēta*, *Eubœa*, *Sicilia*.

(c.) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, *Itāliam—Laviniaque venit litōra*. Virg.—The old accusative *fōras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place whither, while *fōris* denotes the place where; as, *Vade fōras*. Mart. *Eat fōras*. Plaut.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. (a.) The adjectives *prōpior* and *proximus*, with their adverbs *prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are often joined with the accusative; as,

*Ipse prōpior montem suos collocat*. Sall. *Crassus proximus mēre Oceānum hēnarat*. Cæs.—*Libyes prōpius mēre Africū agitant*. Sall. *Proxime Hispaniam Mauri sunt*. Id.

(b.) The adverbs *pridie* and *postridie* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Pridie eum diem*. Cic. *Pridie idus*. Id. *Postridie lādos*. Id.—(c.) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cōminus*; as, *Intus dōmum*. Plaut. *Agrestes cōminus re sues*, scil. in. Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *pridie* and *postidie* is by *synec* referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus*, *usque*, *exadversus* (-um) and *secus* with the accusative, see § 195, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bene*, by the elipsis of *valere jubeo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bene vos, bene nos, bene te, bene me, bene nostram etiam Stêphanium!* Plant. *Bene Messalam*, a health to Messala. Tibull. It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the *object of the feeling* is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! eheu! ecce! en! hem! pro! or vae!* as,

*En quattuor aras! ecce duas tibi Daphni!* Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnia! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plant. *O præclarum custodem!* Cic. *Heu me infelicem!* Ter. *Pro Deum hominumque fidem!* Cic. *Ah me, me!* Catull. *Eheu me miserum!* Ter. *Hem astutias!* Id. *Vae te!* Plant. *Vae me!* Sen. *Miseram me!* Ter. *Hominem gravem et ceterum egrègium!* Cic. Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

## SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

*Moleste Pompeium id ferre constabat*, That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hoc nomine appellari fas est.* Id. *Miror te ad me nihil scribere*, I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jubet esse pntentes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est adolescentis majores natu videri*, scil. *eum*. Cic. *Expetit bonas esse vobis*, scil. *vos*. Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *Ea populus latari et merito dicere fieri*; and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fuit consilium* (meum)—*servilibus officiis intentum ceterum agere* (scil. *me*). Sal.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollicitus sum suscepturum* (esse), scil. *me*, I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddere posses negabat*, scil. *se*. Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud trucidandum esse, aliud tratum*, scil. *hominem*. Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

## VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro* (*proh*), also *ah*, *au* (*hau*), *ehem*, *eho*, *ehodum*, *eia* (*heia*), *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, and *ohé*, are followed by the vocative; as,

*O formosae puer!* O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte Juppiter!* Cic. *Ah stultie!* Ter. *Heus Sisyre!* Id. *Ohe libelle!* Mart. *Ehodum donec vir.* Ter.—*Urbein*, mi Rufe, cole. Cic. Quintili Vare, *legiones redde*. Suet. *Quo moritäre ruis?* Hor. *Macte victate esto.* Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O miseris sortis!* scil. *hómínes*. Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

## ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 37, 6.

## ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *ā*, (or *ab*, *abs*), *absquē*, *dē*; *cōram*, *pālam*, *cum*, *ex*, (*ē*); *sine*, *tēnus*, *prō*, and *prae*; as,

*Ab illo tempore*, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo*, From writing. Cic. *Cum exercitu*, With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis*, For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fugā*, From flight. Id. *Pālam pōpulo*. Liv. *Sine lābōre*. Cic. *Ōpālo tēnus*. Virg. *Cantābit vācuus cōram lātrōne viātor*. Juv. cf. § 195, 5.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *ā* (*ab* or *abs*), *dē*, *ē* (or *ex*), *absquē* and *sine*.

REMARK 1. *Tēnus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nōbis*, and *vōbis*, and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo*, *quā*, *quibus*, and *quī*. Cf. § 133, 4, and § 136, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prōcul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab*, and *cum* understood; as, *Prōcul mārī*, Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul nōbis hābitat*. Ovid. *Prōcul dubio*. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed; as, *Prōcul a patriā*. Virg. *Tēcum simul*. Plaut. *Vōbiscum simul*. Cic.—So, rarely, *aque*. *Qui me in terrā aque fortunātus erit*. Plaut. Cf. *Nōi aque omnia tēcum*. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Quum cōram sīmus*. Cic. *Cum frātre an sine*. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10.

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub*, when they answer to the question 'where?' *super*, when it signifies 'on' or 'concerning', and sometimes *clam* and *subter*. Cf. § 235, (2.)—(5.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of placing, as, *pōno*, *lōco*, *collōco*, *stātuo*, *constituo*, and *consido*; as, *Et sālē tābentes artus in stōre pōnunt*. Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to have, hold, or regard



as, *addeo, dūco, nūmero*, etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing, and including*, in is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfigo, inscribo, insculpo, incido*, and *insēro*, in is usually joined with the ablative.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *ab, de, ex*, and *sūper* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

*Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abire sēdibus*, To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se maledictis non abstineant*. Cic. *Dētrūdunt nāves scōpulo*, They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Nāvi ēgressus est*. Nep. *Excēdere finibus*. Liv. *Cæsar prælio sūpersēdere statuit*. Cæs. *Tribūto ac dōlectu sūpersessum est*. Cic. So the adjective *extorris*; as, *Extorris patriā, dōmo*. Sall. And so the verbal *eruptio*, as, *Mūtina eruptio*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Dētrāhere de tuā fāmā numquam cōgītavi*. Cic. *Ex oculis abiērunt*. Liv. *Exire a patriā*. Cic. *Exire de villā*. Id. Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites dēgressi ad pēdes* scil. *equis*. Liv. *Abire ad Deos*, scil. *vitā*. Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de*, and *ex*, instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

## ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying *need*, usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

*Auctōritāte tuā nobis opus est*, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc ānīmis opus, nunc pectōre firmo*. Virg. *Nāves, quibus consēli ūsus non esset*, Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv. *Nunc vīribus ūsus, nunc mānibus rēptis*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Mātūrāto opus est*, There is need of haste. Liv. *Ūsus factō est mīhi*. Ter. *Ubi summus impērator non dēest ad exercitum, citius, quod nō factō est ūsus, fit, quā quod factō est opus*. Plaut. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*,—of meeting or, to meet, § 274, R. 5. Cic. *Opus sibi esse dōmīno ejus invento*. Liv.—or a *si*-pine is used; as, *Ita dictū opus est*, It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *opus est*, an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est te ānīmo vālēre*. Cic. *Mīhi opus est, ut lāvem*. Id.

(b.) *Opus* and *ūsus*, though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive. In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est*; *ūsus*, which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only. The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. Cic. *Verres multa sibi opus esse aiebat*. Id.; or, *Dūce nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, *Quod non opus est, a se cārum est*. Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *opus* and *ūsus* are commonly translated 'needful' or 'necessary'. Cf. § 210, R. 1.

NOTE For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6.

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, and frētus,* are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

*Dignus laude*, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox populi majestāte indigna*, A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestia eo contenta non querunt amplius*. Cic. *Homo scelere præditus*. Id. *Plerique ingenio frēti*. Id.—*Sq. Equum est me atque illo*. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne*, in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat iter nostrum orūce dignis*. Hor.—*Dignor*, also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno*, and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing. As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud equidem tali me hōnore dignor*. Virg.—Pass. *Qui tali hōnore dignāti sunt*. Cic. Conjūgio, *Anchisa, Veneris dignāte superbo*. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing; it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ego grammaticas ambire tribus et pulpitā dignor*. Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cogitātiōnem dignissimam tuar virtūtis*. Cic. *Indignus avōrum*. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scire quid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (b.)

(b.) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erat dignus amari*. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus qui impēret*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam pālum in pariētem*. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna relātus vociferans*. Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta paternas edidicisse fui*. Ovid.—So, *Naves pontum irumpere frēta*. Stat.

§ 245. I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Ad quem tum Jāno supplex his vōcibus ūsa est*,—addressed these words. Virg. *Fui voluptate*, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungitur officio*, He performs his duty. Id. *Oppido pōtiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescitur aurā*. Virg. *His rēbus perfruo*. Cic. *Lēgibus abuti*. Id. *Dēfuncti imperio*. Liv. *Grāvi opere perfungimur*. Cic. *O tandem magnis pēlāgi dēfuncte pēriclis*. Virg.

The compounds are *abutor, delator, perfruo, defungor*, and *perfungor*.

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have*; as, *Ille factū me ūtetur patre*, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mēdici ūtuntur*. Varr. *Ingenium frui*. Ter. *Daltes militem mūnus fungens*. Nep. *Gentem aliquam urbem nostram pōtāram patem*. Cic. *Sacras lauros vescar*. Tibull. *In prolōgis scribendis opēram abūtitur*. Ter.—*Pōtior* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nitor, innitor, fido* and *confido*, may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Hastā innixus*. Liv. *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. *Nātūrā loci confidebant*. Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscere pabula sālē*. Coll. *Aquas neotāre*. Ovid. *Aer multo calore admixtus*. Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuefacio, consuesco, insuesco*, and sometimes *acquiesco*, take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves sanguine et prædā assuetā*. Hor. *Nulla officio aut disciplinā assuefactus*. Cæs. Cf. § 224.

4. *Vivere* and *epâre*, 'to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as *Dâpibus epâlamur opâmia*. Virg. *Lacte atque pécôre vivunt*. Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to coast,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' 'to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in*; as, *Jam pulvère calum stâre vident*. Virg.—*Mullo sanguine ac vulneribus ea Panis victôria stetit*. Liv. *Stâre conditionibus*. Cic. *Omnis in Ascânio stat cûra parentis*. Virg.—*Consto*, 'to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex*, *de*, or *in*; as *Constat mâtêries sôlido corpore*. Lucr. *Homo ex ânimo constat et corpore*. Cic.

REMARK 1. *Fido*, *confido*, *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto*, *fido*, *confido*, *utor*, *inutor*, and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad*; *acquiesco*, *in*; and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum*.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *natus*, *prôgnatus*, *satus*, *creatus*, *cretus*, *editus*, *genitus*, *gênératus*, *ortus*; to which may be added *derivatus*, descended from.

Thus, *Nâte deâ!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantillo prôgnatus*, Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Satus Nêreide*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creatus rêge*. Id. *Alcânore creti*. Virg. *Edite rêgibus*. Hor. *Dis génite*. Virg. *Argôlico gênératus Alêmonê*. Ovid. *Ortus nullis mâjoribus*. Hor. *Celesti sêmine ôrundi*. Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo*, *gênêro*, and *nascor*; as, *U patre certo nascêrêre*. Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*. Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prôgnati ab Dite patre*. Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plêroque Belgas esse ortos a Germâniâ*. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patrial adjective; as, *Thrâsybûlus Athênienâs*, Thrasybulus of Athens. Livy often uses *ab*; as, *Turnus Herônîus ab Ariciâ*. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *On. Magius Crêmônâ*; and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres Rômiliâ*,—of the Rômilian tribe.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by*, *with*, *in*, etc.

1. The *cause*. (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative; as,

*Campâni fuerunt superbi bonitâte agrôrûm*. Cic. *Animal pâbulo latum*. Sen. *Prælio fessi lassique*, Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hômînes agri grâvi morbo*. Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative; as,

*Intērit fame, He perished with hunger. Laude aliēnā dōlet. Cic. Lustrā dignitātē. Id. Gaude tuo bōno. Id. Suā victoriā glōriārī. Cæs. Agrilōnibus labrant quercēta. Hor.—So with bene est and the dative; as, Mihi bene erat non piscibus urbe pētīs, sed pullo atque hædo. Hor. Ubi illi bene sit ligno, aqua cālidā, cibo, vestimentis, etc. Plaut.*

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation, the defective adjective *macte, macti*, either with or without the imperative of *esse* (*esto, esse, astite,*) is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtute*.

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, especially those of *care, grief, and sorrow*, the accusative *vicem*, with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vice*, to signify 'for' or 'on account of'; as, *Rēmittimus hoc tibi, ne nostram vicem irascāris*, That you may not be angry on our account. Liv. *Tuam vicem sæpe dōleo, quod, etc. Cic. Suam vicem magis anxius, quam ejus, cui auxilium ab se pētibatur. Liv.*

REMARK 1. When the cause is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob, propter, or per*; as, *Non est æquum me propter vos desipi. Ter.* These prepositions, and *a, or ab, de, e or ex, and præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adulterium cæsi. Virg. Nec loqui præ mœrōre pōtuit. Cic.*

REM. 2. (a.) After active verbs, the cause, unless expressed by an ablative in *u* from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rogātū and admōitū*, is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā, gratiā, ergo,* etc., with a genitive; as, *Lēgibus propter mētum parēt. Cic. Ne ob eam rem ipsos despiceret. Id. Dōnari virtutis ergo. Id. Si hoc hōnōris mei causā suscepis. Id.* But with *causā, etc.*, the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te abesse meā causā, mōleste fero. Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 3, (b.)*

(b.) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce'; as, *Cupiditātē ductus, inductus, incitātus, incensus, inflammātus, impulsus, mōtus, captus,* etc. *Mihi bēnē-volentiā ductus tribuebat omnia. Cic.* Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab irā, a spe, ab odio*, from anger, hope, hatred.

2. The manner. *Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided an additional circumstance, and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed. Thus:

*Cum voluptātē aliquem audire. Verres Lampscūm venit cum magnā cālāmitātē civitātis. Cic.* Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Præcedere cum veste purpureā*: in distinction from *Nudis pēdibus incedere*; *Aperto capite sedere*, etc., which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

But *mōdus, ratiō, mos, ritus,* etc., signifying manner, never take *cum*, and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, *Hoc mōdo scripsi; Constituērunt quā ratiōne agerētur; Mōre bestiārū vagari; Latrōnū ritu vivere; Equo animo fero; Maximā fide amictiūs coluit. Summā æquitātē res constitui; Viam incēdibili celeritātē confecit; Librum magnā cūrā diligentiaque scripsi*; the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative. So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, *Silentio præterire or facere aliquid; Lēge agere; Jure and injuriā facere; Magistratus vitio creatus; Recte et ordine fit.*

REM. 3. The manner is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative as, *De or ex industriā*, On purpose. Liv. *Ex integro*, Anew. Quitt.

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

*Amicos observantiā, rem parsimōniā retinuit*, He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrōque decōri*. Virg. *Ægrescūt mēdendo*. Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu ledēs se tiduntur*. Cic. *Causa est virgis*. Id. *Trabs saucia sēcūri*. Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of *filling*, etc., see § 249, I.

REM. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per*, or by the ablative *opérā* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā, tuā, suā, opérā*, which are equivalent to *per me, per te, per se*, and denote both good and bad services. *Benēficio meo*, etc., is used of good results only; as, *Benēficio meo patres sunt*. Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas depōpulatūs erat*. Cic.—When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cepit*, but *per vim ei bona eripuit*.

REM. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Conficere cervum sagittis; gladio aliquem vulnerare; trahere pectus ferro*.

§ 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clōdius me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clōdio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*. Hor.

REMARK 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prōbitas laudatur*, scil. *ab hominibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur*. Virg. *Toto certatum est corpore regni*. Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni genere scelērum cōlūtentur*, scil. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus perit ab Annibale*, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cadat*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec conjūge captus*. Ovid. *Cōlūtur linigērā turbā*. Id. *Pereat meis excisus Argivis*. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *duo*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as, *Maritimo dōlōre conficior*. Cic. *Frangi cupiditāte*. Id. *Æcides tēlo jacet Hector*. Virg.

**NOTE.** The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, *A voluptatibus deservi.* Cic. *A naturâ datum homini vivendi curriculum.* Id. *Vincti a voluptate.* Id. *Victus a labore.* Id.

**§ 249. I.** A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill*, *furnish*, *load*, *array*, *equip*, *endow*, *adorn*, *reward*, *enrich*, and many others.

**REMARK 1.** This rule includes such verbs as *afficio*, *aspergo*, *conspargo*, *inspergo*, *respergo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*, *cumulo*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *satio*, *exsatio*, *saturatio*, *sitio*, *consitio*, *obruo*, *onero*, *augeo*, *induo*, *vestio*, *armo*, *orno*, *circumdo*, *circumfundo*, *macio*, *lucuplento*, *instruo*, *imbuo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *remanero*, *honesto*, *adorno*, etc.; as,

*Terröre implētur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. *Sil. Instruere epulis mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. *Ovid. Ut ejus animum his opinionibus imbuas*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. *Cic. Naves onerant auro*, They load the ships with gold. *Virg. Cumulat altaria donis* He heaps the altars with gifts. *Id. Terra se gramine vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. *Id. Mollibus ornabat cornua sertis*. *Id. Multo cibo et potione completi.* *Cic. Libros puerilibus fabulis refercire.* *Id. Satiari delectatione non possum.* *Id. Homines saturati honoribus.* *Id. Senectus stipata studiis juven-tutis.* *Id. Me tanto honore honestas.* *Plaut. Equis Africam lucuplento.* *Colum. Studium tuum nulla me nova voluptate affecit.* *Cic. Terram nos obruit umbra.* *Lucr.*

**REM. 2.** Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

**REM. 3.** The active verbs *induo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circumdo*, and *circumfundo*, instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Cui quum Deiantra tunicam induisset.* *Cic. Donare munera civibus.* In the earliest writers *dono*, like *condono*, has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

**II.** A noun denoting that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Nostro more*, According to our custom. *Cic. Instit. suo Cæsar copias suas eduxit*, According to his practice. *Cæs. Id factum consilio meo*,—by my advice. *Ter. Pacem fecit his conditionibus*,—on these conditions. *Nep.*

**NOTE.** The prepositions *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Næque est facturus quidquam nisi de meo consilio.* *Cic. Ex consuetudine aliquid facere.* *Plin. Ep. Decet quidquid agas, agere pro vir*, as. *Cic. Secundum naturam vivere.* *Id.*

**III.** The ablative denoting accompaniment, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

*Vagâmur Igentes cum conjugibus et liberis*, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. *Cic. Sæpe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Lælio.* *Id. Julium cum his ad te literis misi.* *Id. Ingressus est cum gladio.* *Id. Romam veni cum febr.* *Cum occâsu solis copias educere*,—as soon as the sun set.

**REMARK.** But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cæsaris omnibus copiis contenderunt.* *Cæs. Inde toto exercitu profectus.* *Liv. Eodem decem navibus C. Furius venit.* *Liv.* And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as *Instra clamore invadunt.*

§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting in what respect their signification is taken; as,

*Pitātē filius, consiliis pater.* In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Reges nōmina magis quam imperio,* Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *(Appidum nōmine Bibraz.* Cæsar.—*Jure peritus,* Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo,* Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pedibus ager,* Lane in his feet. Sall. *Crine ruber,* miger ora. Mart. *Fronte laetus.* Tac. *Major natu.* Cic. *Prudentia non inferior,* deus vīro etiā superior. Id. *Maximus natu.* Liv.—*Animo angī,* To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrémisco totā mentē et omnibus artibus,* I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente,* Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Aliō oculo capitur.* Liv. *Ingenii laude floruit.* Cic. *Pallere nobilitate.* Tac. *Animoque et corpore torpet.* Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 218;—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

*Domus plena servis,* A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris,* Rich in land. Hor. *Ferox saculum bonis artibus.* Plin.—*Inops verbis,* Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba fratribus,* Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arboribus solam.* Colum. *Nudus agris.* Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 218, R. 3-5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Scintilem belluis pontum,* The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs redundat milibus,* The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinâ, lacte, caseo, melle.* Cic.—*Virum qui pecuniâ egeat,* A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cārere culpâ,* To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adolescentia indiget illorum bonâ existimatiōe.* Id. *Abundat audaciâ, consilio et ratione deficitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *abundo, exuberō, redundo, scæteo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, superfluo, suppedito, valeo, vigeo*;—*cæreo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor,* etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *fâcere* with *de*; as, *Quid de Tulliâ meâ fiet?* Cic; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc homine or huic homini faciatis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciat auro,*—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fiat parvi pendis,* You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Mētum cepērunt quidnam se futurum esset,*—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive, free, desart, drive away, remove, depart,* and others which imply separation.

**NOTE.** The principal verbs of this class are *arceo*, *pello*, *dépello*, *expello*, *ab-  
allico*, *interdico*, *défendo*, *déturbo*, *déjicio*, *éjicio*, *absterreo*, *déterreo*, *má eo*, *ámoveo*,  
*démoveo*, *rémoveo*, *sécerno*, *próhibeo*, *sépáro*, *exclúdo*, *interclúdo*, *débo*, *ezeo*, *cédo*,  
*décédo*, *discédo*, *désisto*, *évádo*, *abstíneo*, *spólio*, *privo*, *orbo*, *libéro*, *ez pécio*, *lazo*,  
*nádo*, *sóto*, *ezsolvo*, *ezónéro*, *lévo*, *purgo*, to which may be added the ad-  
jectives *liber*, *innúis*, *púrus*, *vácuus*, and *aliénus*; as,

*Núduantur árbóres fóliis*. The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libéra  
metu*. Free me from this fear. Ter. *Túne eam philósophiám séquere*, *quá spóliat  
nos júdicío*, *prívatí approbátíone*, *orbat sensíbus*? Cic. *Solvít se Teucríá fuctu*.  
Virg. *Te illa sádlbus arcébit*. Cic. *Q. Varíum pellére possessíoníbus cónátus  
est*. Id. *Omnes tribu rémóti*. Liv. *Lévére se sere aliéno*. Cic. *Me léves chóri  
sécernunt pópulo*. Hor. *Ánimus omní liber cárá et angóre*. Cic. *Utrunqúe  
hómíne aliéníssímu*. Id. When *aliénus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes  
the ablative with *ab*, or rarely the dative; as, *Id díclt, quód illi causá máxíme  
est aliénu*. Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the gen-  
itive; as, *Quis aliénym púter ejus esse dígnítatís*? Id.—*Álius* too, in analogy  
with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Néve  
pátes álum sápiénte bonóque beátum*. Hor.; but this may also be referred to the  
ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

**REMARK 1.** Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less fre-  
quently followed by *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with the ablative of the thing, and always by  
*ab* with the ablative of the person; as, *Tu Júpiter, hunc a tuis áris arcébis*. Cic.  
*Prasídíum ex arce pépúlerunt*. Nep. *Aquam de agro pellére*. Plin. *Ex íngráda  
cívítate cédere*. Cic. *Arceam ab incendio libérávit*. Id. *Solvére bellum ex cá-  
ténis*. Auct. ad Her.—*Sedes rémótas a Germánis*. Cæs. *Se ab Etruscis sécér-  
nere*. Liv.

**REM. 2.** *Arceo*, in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2,  
and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plágamque sédere cédendo arcébat*. Ovid.—  
*Próhibeo* and *défendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be  
defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—  
*áliquem* or *álicuód a pérícúlo*, or *pérícúlu ab álquo*. They are also sometimes  
construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes with infinitive or  
subjunctive clauses. *Próhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id te Júpiter  
próhibessit*. Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Captas próhi-  
bère Pámos áquilas*. Sil.—*Interdico* takes the person either in the accusative or  
the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *áliquem* or *álicuód álquá re*; as, *Quíbus  
quém áquá et igni interdícíssent*. Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive  
clause with *ne*, and more rarely with *ut*, sometimes follows *interdico*.—*Absum*,  
in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab*, and sometimes the dative; as,  
*Curtas nescio quíd semper ábeat rei*. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abdico* takes some-  
times an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as,  
*Abdicáre se mágrátrú*. Cic. *Abdicáre mágrátrú*. Sall. In Plautus, *cir-  
cumdico*, to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclúdo*, instead of an  
ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an  
accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *Itínérum angustías mul-  
títúdíní fúgam interclúserant*. Cæs.: and, instead of the ablative of the thing,  
a subjunctive clause with *quóminus* occurs: *Interclúdor dólore, quóminus ad te  
púra scribam*. Cic.

**REM. 3.** Verbs which signify to *distinguish*, to *differ*, and to *disagree*, are  
generally construed with *ab*, but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the  
ablative alone.

**NOTE.** Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo*, *discerno*, *sécerno*,  
*dífféro*, *discrepo*, *disideo*, *dispo*, *dissentio*, *discordo*, *áshorreo*, *aliéno*, and *abálienu*.—  
*Dissentio*, *disideo*, *discrepo*, and *discordo* are construed also with *cum*.—The  
verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as,  
*Distat infído scórrae ámicus*. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *dífférens*,  
as, *Níhil est tam Lysís dífférens, quam Isócrates*. Quint.



## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

*Quum te tricentis talentis regi Cotto vendidisses.* When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidit hic auro patriam.* This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse venditis.* Plin. *Constitit quadringentis millibus.* Varr. *Denis in diem assibus animum et corpus (militum) aestimari.* Tac. *Levi momento aestimare.* Cæs. *Istuc verbum vile est viginti milia.* Plant. *Asse carum est.* Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *aestimo, dūco, fūcio, fīto, habeo, pendō, pūto, depūto, taxo*; (2) *ēmo, mercor, vendo, do, vāneo, sto, consto, prosto, condūco, lūco, vāleo, luo*, and *liceo*.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, *Līvor quadrante.* Triginta millibus *Cælius habuit.* Cic. *Vix drachmis est obrutus decem.* Ter. *Dūceo talento,* etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth'; as, *Sextante sal in Italiā erat.*

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a general or indefinite manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, tantulo, plūre, minimo, plurimo, vili, viliori, vilissimo, nimio*, etc.; as, *Plūre venit.* Cic. *Conducit non magno dōmum.* Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *pretio, ære*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo pretio emendisse.* Cic.—The adverbs *bene, pulchre, recte, male, cære*, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, *Bene emere; recte vendere; optime vendere*, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *vāleo* with the accusative; as, *Dēnarii dicti, quod dēnos aris vālebant.*

REM. 5. *Mūto* and its compounds, *commūto* and *permūto*, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, *Chædōnum glaudem pingui mutavit aristā.* Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, *Cur valle permūtem Sabinā divitias opertiores?* Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the *time at* or *within* which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto decessit.* He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempore,* At this time. Cic. *Tertiā vigiliā eruptionem fecerunt,* They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *U hieme naviges,* That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Primo triennio omnes gentes subegit.* Nep. *Agamemnon cum universā Græciā cum decem annis unam cepit urbem.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die*; 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte*; and 'in the evening,' by *vespere* or *vesperi*; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) *Lūdis* is used for *in tempore ludorum*; and *Saturnālibus, Lātinis, gladiātoribus*, for *lūdis Saturnālibus*, etc. Other nouns not properly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without *in*; as *initio, principio, adventu* and *discessu dācijus, comitiis, amulio, ello, pace*, etc.; or *in initio*, etc. But *bello* is more common without *in*, if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Pánico secundo, bello Látinorum*; and so, also, *pugna Cannensi*. So we say in *pueritiâ*, but omit *in* with an adjective; as, *extrēmâ pueritiâ*. *In* is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra*, etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. *In tempore* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempore* alone is used, and *tempore* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempōri* or *tempēri*, whose comparative is *tempērius*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative. (a.) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno*.

(b.) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post dēcenviros*. Cic. So *Consul factus est annis post Rōmam conditam trēcentis duobus nōnāginta*.

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo; post paucis diebus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post aliquanto; ante paulo*.

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnerat; post tres annos quam vēnerat; tertio anno postquam vēnerat; post annum tertium quam vēnerat*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quam vēnerat*.

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo, quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Ipse octo diebus, quibus has lītēras dābam, cum Lēpidi cōpias me conjungam*; i. e. in eight days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Sex. Rosci quadriduo, quo is occisus est, Chrīstōno nuntiātur*,—four days after he had been killed. Cic. *Quem triduo, quum has dābam lītēras, exspectābam*,—three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diebus paucis, quibus hac acta sunt, moritur*. Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *abhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti abhinc annos quātuordecim*. Cic. *Cōmitiis jam abhinc triginta diebus habitis*. Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses maledixisti mihi*,—six months ago. Phæd. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *abhinc*; and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diebus*, or *paucis illis diebus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the reuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Venit id temporis*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See ‡ 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (a.) The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertiâ vigiliâ ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut iugulent homines surgunt de nocte latrones*. Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ipsâ profectiōne milites oppidum irrupērent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Romanorum*, While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(b.) The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *infra* with the accusative; as, *Dimittam partem nationum subegit intra viginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra decimum diem, quam Phēras vēnerat*, In less than ten days after. Liv

REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (a) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis in die altarium fieri*; *via ter in anno montium audire*; and (b), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in pueritiâ, adolescentiâ, iuventute, senectute*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, adolescens, juvenis, senex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *Ch. Pompeius, adolescens se et patrem consilio servavit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *ennarius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicero sexagennarius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Bâbylone est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. *Cic. Interdum multum*—*Thêbis nutritus an Argis*,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. *Hor. Natus Tibure vel Gâbiis*. *Id.*

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rûre*, or more commonly by *rûri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater filium rûri habitare iussit*. *Cic.* With an adjective only *rûre* is used; as, *Interdum nâgâris rûre pîerno*. *Hor. Cf. § 221, N.*

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciavit*. *Suet.*

(b.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dômus* and *hâmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrâ marique*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lôco* and *lôcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lôco, multis lôcis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, primo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tôtô, tôtâ, tôtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe tôtâ gemitus fit*. *Cic. Tôta Asiâ vagatur*. *Id. Tôto mari*. *Id.* But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctâ Asiâ*. *Liv.*

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphicrates in Thrâciâ vixit*, *Chares in Sigêo*. *Nep. Rûre ego viventem, tu âcis in urbe beatum*. *Hor. Aio hoc fieri in Græciâ*. *Plaut. In Bactriânis Sogdiânisque urbes condidit*. *Lacus in urbe fuit*. *Virg.* But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Mîstes altitôis castris habebat*. *Sall. Magnis in laudibus fuit tôta Græciâ*. *Nep. Pôpuli sensus maxime theâtro et spectâculis perspectus est*. *Cic. Pompeius se oppido tenet*. *Id.* In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nâvita puppe sedens*. *Ovid. Ibam forte Viâ Sacrà*. *Hor. Silvique agrisque viisq; corpôra fada jacent*. *Ovid. Mediô alveo concursus est*. *Liv.—Fôris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fôris cœnat*. *Cic. Cf. § 237, II. 5, (c.)*

§ 255. 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

*Brundisio præfecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Otrinski pueros docebat*. Id. *Demétratus Tarquinius Corintho fugit*. Id. *Accēpi tuas līteras dātas Placentiā*. Id. *Intērim Rōmē pō līteras certior fit*; scil. *dātas* or *missas*. Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, *Narbōne redītus*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dōmo*, *hūmo*, and *rūre* or *rūri*, are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds as,

*Dōmo præfectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit hūmo jūvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rūre huc advenit*. Ter. *Sī rūri cōmet*. Id. Virgil uses *dōmo* with *unde*; as, *Qui gēnus? unde dōmo?* and Livy instead of *dōmo abesse*, has *esse ab dōmo*. With an adjective, *rūre*, and not *rūri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dōmus* and *hāmus*, when answering the question 'whence?' *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandriā præfectus*. Cic. *Ex dōmo*. Id. *De vitiis venisse Viennā*. Mart. *Ab hāmo*. Virg.

REM. 3. (a.) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu præmisit*. Plaut. *Ex Asiā transis in Europam*. Curt. *Ex castris præfiscuntur*. Cæs. De Pompino, scil. prædio. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Mēdis ad adversāriōrum hibernācula pervenit*. Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Lītera Mācēdōniā allata*. Liv. *Clusis Cypro advenit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Ni cite vicis et castellis proximis subveniunt foret*. Id. *Ite sacris, præpērate sacris, laurumque capillis pōnite*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes præstare suis*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by*, *through*, or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Per Thēbas iter fecit*. Nep. *Exercitum vado transducit*. Cæs. *His pontibus pabulātum mittebat*. Id. *Tribuni militum portā Collinā urbem intrātere sub signis, mediāque urbe agmine in Aventinum pergunt*. Liv. *Lēgiōnes Penninis Cottianisque Alpibus, pars monte Graio, trādūcuntur*. Tac. *Equites viā breviorē præmisit*. Cic.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam*, *atque*, etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

*Nihil est virtūte formōsius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio cōmior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

*Sidēre pulchrior ille est, tu levior cortice*. Hor. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum*. Id. *Tullus Hostilius ferocior Rōmulo fuit*. Liv. *Lacrimā nihil citius arescit*. Cic. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undā?* Ovid. *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*. Ter. *Albanum, Mæcenas, sive Falerium te magis apēstis delectat*. Hor.

REM. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandusie splendidiôr vitro!* Hor.

REM. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Oratio quam hâbitus fuit miserabiliôr.* Cic. *Affirmo nullam esse laudem ampliôrem quam eam.* Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eodem* (scil. *dūce*) *plūra, quam grēgario milite, tōlērante.* Tac.

REM. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Meliôrem, quam ego sum, suppono tibi.* Plaut. *Ego hominem callidiôrem vidi nēnūm quam Phormiōnem.* Ter. *Adventus hostium fuit agris, quam urbi terribiliôr.* Liv. *Omnes fontes estâte, quam hieme, sunt gelidiôres.* Plin. *Thēmistoclis nōmen, quam Sōlōnis, est illustrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multo mājora, quam Africānus fuit, me non multo minôrem quam Lælium facile et in repūblica et in amicitia adiunctum esse patiāre.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The person or thing with which the object of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam*, (R. 4.) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attalo, quo grādiôrem inimicum non habui, sorōrem dedit.* He gave his sister to Attalus, than whom, etc. Curt. *Hoc nihil grātius facere pōtes.* Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiôrem mēmōriā tuā.* Id. *Ezēgi mōnumentum ære pērennius.* Hor. *Cur olivum sanguine vipēriño cautius vitat?* Id. *Quid prius dicam sōlitis pārentis laudibus?* Id. *Mājora viribus audes.* Virg. *Nullam sacrā vite prius sēvēris arbōrem.* Hor. *Nullus his mullen lūdos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 8.

(b.) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Meliôr tūtorque est certa pax quam sperāta victōria.* Liv. After *quam*, if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est, fuit, etc.*, must be added; as, *Hæc verba sunt M. Varrōnis, quam fuit Claudius, doctiōris.* Gell. *Drusum Germānicum minôrem natu, quam ipse erat, frātem amisit.* Sen.

REM. 6. (a.) *Minus, plus, and amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quatuor millia effugerunt, not effugit.* Liv. *Pictōres antiqui non sunt usi plus quam quatuor coloribus, not pluribus.* Cic.

(b.) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt.* Liv. *Milites Rōmāni sæpe plus dimidiati mensis cibaria ferebant.* Cic. *Quum plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv. *Seddecim non amplius eo anno lēgiōnibus defensum impērium est.* Id.

(c.) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quingue millia armatorum, non amplius, relictum erat præsidium.*—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longius; Cæsar certior est factus, magnas Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse.* Cæsar. See § 236.

(d.) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus eo in navi fui.* Ter. *Triennio amplius.* Cic. *Horæ amplius moriebantur.* Id. *Ne longius triduo ab castris abis.* Cæsar. *Apud Sæones non longius anno remanere ano in loco incolendi causâ licet.* Id. *Quum initio non amplius duobus millibus habuisset.* Sall.

REM. 7. *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *māior*, *mīnor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minores octōnum dēnum annōrum neu māiores quīnum quādrāgēnum*,.... of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbēno exercitu, qui minores quīque et trīginta annis erant, in nāres impositi sunt*. The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum*. Liv. *Annos nātas māgis quādrāginta*. Cic.

REM. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo māius quam ut fāvent frātēri auditor*. Cic.

REM. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opinione*, *spe*, *expectatione*, *fide*,—*dicto*, *sōlito*,—*æquo*, *crēdibili*, *necessario*, *vēro*, and *iusto*,—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opinione cēlerrime ventūrus esse dicitur*,—sooner than is expected. Cæs. *Dicto citius tāmēda æquora placat*, Quicker than the word was spoken. Virg. *Injūrias grāvius æquo habēre*. Sall.

(a.) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *grāvius æquo* is equivalent to *grāvius quam quod æquum est*. They are often omitted; as, *T. A. mistocles liberius vivēbat*, scil. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too*, *quite*, or *rather*, as in the above example—‘He lived too freely,’ or ‘rather freely.’ *Voluptas quum māior est atque longior, omne āntmi lūmen exstinguit*,—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic. *So tristior*, scil. *sōlito*, rather sad.

(b.) The English word ‘still,’ joined with comparatives, is expressed by *etiā* or *vel*, and only in later prose writers by *adhuc*; as, *Ut in corpōribus magnæ dissimilitūdines sunt, sic in ānīmīs existunt māiores etiā varietātes*. Cic.

REM. 10. (a.) With *infērior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullā arte cuiquam infērior*. Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut hūmānos cāsus virtūte infēriores pūtes*. Cic. But usually *infērior* is followed by *quam*; as, *Timōtheus belli laude non infērior fui*, *quam pāter*. Cic. *Gratiā non infērior*, *quam qui umquam fuerunt amplissimi*. Id.

(b.) *Qualis*, ‘such as,’ with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo pērunctum, quāle non perfectius meos libōrārint māmūs*; instead of *quo*. Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Animas quāles neque candidiōres terra tūlū*; for *quibus*. Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

REM. 11. *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Praeliū atrocius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium*, The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants. Liv. *Mīnor*, *quam pro tūmultu, cedes*. Tac.

REM. 12. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus clārior quam grātior*, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv. *Fortius quam fēlicius bellum gessērunt*. So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *māgis*; as, *Māgis audacter quam pārāte ul dicendum veniēbat*. Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Spēciem excelsæ glōriæ vēhementius quam caute appetēbat*; or even in both; as, *Clāris mājōribus quam vētustis*.

REM. 13. (a.) *Pōtius* and *māgis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *mallo* and *præstāre*, and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnibus se dēsertos pōtius quam abs te dēfensas esse mālunt*. Cic. *Qui māgis vēre vincēre quam dū impērāre mālūt*. Liv. *Ut enōri pōtius quam servīre præstāret*. Cic. *Mīhi quavis fūga pōtius quam ulla prōvincia esset optātior*. Id. *Quis māgis queat esse beatior*? Virg.

(b.) So, also, the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ cētēris fortior exurgit*, Apul. *Scēlōre ante ālios immanior omnes*. Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante ālios cārissimus*. Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant. See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or a casative; as, *Necesse patēs alium sapiente bonoque beatum*. Hor. *Alius Læippo*. Id. But compare § 251, N.

REM. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quanto constantior idem in vitis, tanto levius miser ac prior ille, qui*, etc. Hor. *Arctius atque hederā procera adstringitur ilex*. Id.

REM. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Minor uno mense*, Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquipède quam tu longior*, Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hibernia dimidio minor quam Britannia*. Cæs. *Dimidio minoris constabit*, It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam molestum est uno digito plus habere!*....to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean ‘to have more than one finger.’ *Superal capite et cervicibus altis*. Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *multo*, *parvo*, *paulo*, *nimio*, *aliquanto*, *tantulo*, *altero tanto* (twice as much); as, *Multo doctior es patre*, Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto*—*tanto*, *quo*—*eo*, or *quo*—*hoc*, signifying ‘by how much—by so much,’ are often to be translated by an emphatic *the*; as, *Quanto sumus superiores, tanto nos submissius geramus*, The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa est maior*. Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius*. Id. Poetically, also, *quam magis*—*tam magis* are used instead of *quanto magis*—*tanto magis*. Virg. *Æn.* 7, 787: and *quam magis*—*tanto magis*. Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iter multo facilius*,—much easier. Cæs. *Parvo brevius*, A little shorter. Plin. *Eo magis*, The more. Cic. *Eo minus*. Id. *Istoc magis viperulibus*, So much the more. Plaut. *Via altero tanto longior*,—as long again. Nep. *Multo id maximum fuit*. Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *maior, præsto, supero, excello, antecello, antecedo*, and others compounded with *ante*; and also with *ante* and *post*, in the sense of ‘earlier’ and ‘later’; as, *Multo præstat*. Sall. *Post paulo*, A little after. Id. *Multo ante lucis adventum*, Long before—. Id. *Multis partibus* is equivalent to *multo*; as, *Número multis partibus esset inferior*. Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, and *aliquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, *Aliquantum est ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Multum improbiōres sunt*. Plaut. *Quantum dōmo inferior, tantum glōriæ superior evasit*. Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3.).—So *longe*, ‘far,’ is frequently used for *multo*; as, *Longe melior*. Virg. *Longe et multum antecellere*. Cic. So, *pars pedis sesqui major*,—longer by one half. Id.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

*Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Læpus, stimulante fame, capta: ovile*, Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Milites, pecore e lœnginquioribus vicis lœdacto, extrēmam famem sustentabant*. Cæs. *Hac bratiōne lœbita, conciliam dimisit*. Id. *Galli, re cognita, obsidiōnem relinquant*. Id. *Virtute excepta, nihil incitiā præstabilis patiens*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when, since, while, although, after, as, etc.*, or by a verbal substantive; as, *Te adiuvante*, With thy assistance. *Non—nisi te adiuvante*, Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adiuvante*, Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.)

REMARK 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum, si, etsi, quamquam, quamvis*, etc.

Thus, for *Tarquinio regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnabat* might be used; for *hac oratione habita*;—*quum hanc orationem habuisset*, or *quum hæc oratio habita esset*,—*concilium dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

REM. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.* Mart. *Irrupturis tam infestis nationibus.* Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nomine recitando, dedisset*,—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum immolanda Iphigenia tristis Calchas esset.* Id. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officii præceptis tradendis, phyllosofum se audeat dicere*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.) and R. 9.

REM. 3. (a.) A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (a.)

(b.) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, *Se audiente, scribit Thucydides.* Cic. *Legio ex castris Varronis, adstante et inspectante ipso, signa sustulit.* Cæs. *Me dūce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni.* Ovid. *So M. Porcius Cato, vivo quoque Scipione, allatrare ejus magnitudinem solitus erat.* Liv.

NOTE 2. Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia sæpe maritum cogitantem invenerat*, but not, *Porcia marito cogitante invento*.

NOTE 3. Instead of the ablative absolute denoting a cause, an accusative with *ob* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Quinque milia Spartani, ob sepulchrum navis Cænopus.* Tac. *Decemviri libros Sibyllinus inspicere jussi sunt propter terribiles homines novis prædictis.* Liv.

REM. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus*, denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythagoras*, *Tarquinio regnante*, in *Italiam venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy during the reign of Tarquinius. *Galli, re cognita, obsidionem relinquunt*, The Gauls, having learned the fact, abandon the siege. *So, Rex opem non nisi migraturo examine foras procedit*, The king-bee does not go abroad, except when a swarm is about to emigrate. Plin.



NOTE 4. *Non prius quam, non nisi, ut, velut, and tamquam*, are sometimes joined with the participle; as, *Tiberius excessum Augusti non prius palam fecit, quam Agrippa juvène interempto*, —not until. Suet. *Galli laeti, ut explorata viciniora, ad castra Rômanorum pergunt*. Cæs. *Antiochus, tamquam non transisset in Asiam Rômanis*, etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (a.) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces, we find, '*Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequébatur omnibus cæptis*.'

(b.) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with a *or ab* is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar, his dictis, concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, '*Cæsar, having said this, or this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(c.) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locutus, concilium dimisit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Itaque....agros Remorum depopulati, omnibus victis, ædificisque incensis*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Orta luce*. Cæs. *Vel extincto vel elapso animo, nullum residere sensum*. Cic. *Tum multis gloriam ejus adeptis*. Plin. *Litras ad exercitus, tamquam adepto principatu, misit*. Tac.

REM. 7. (a.) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

*Quid, adolescentes dūce, efficere possent*, What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. *Me suāsore atque impulsore, hoc factum*, By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannibale vivo*, While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invitâ Minervâ*, in opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cælo sereno*, when the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignaro*, without my knowledge. Cic. With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rômam venit* Mârio consule, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(b.) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb. Such are *dux, cõmes, adjutor* and *adjutrix, auctor, testis, jûdex, interpres, mágister* and *mágistra, præceptor* and *præceptrix*; as, *dūce naturâ*, in the sense of *dūcente naturâ*, under the guidance of nature; *jûdice Polybio*, according to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Non dum comperto quam in rëgiõnem venisset rex*. Liv. *Audito venisse nuncium*. Tac. *Vale dicto*. Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audito, cognito, comperto, explorato, desperato, nunciato, dicto, edicto*. But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative; as, *Incerto prae tenebris quid pëterent*. Liv. Cf. R. 7, (a.) *Haud cuiquam dubio* quin hostium essent. Id. *Juxta përiculose vëra an ficta prömëret*. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (a) when it is contained in a preceding clause; as, *Atticus Serviliam, Bruti matrem, non minus post mortem ejus, quam floreute, coluit*, scil. eo,

i. e. Brūto. Nep. (b) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpias irājicū, præmissis, qui Alpium transitus spēcūlārentur.* Liv. (c) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In annis transgresso, multum certāto, Bardesiles vicit.* Tac. *Mihi, errāto, nulla vēnia, recte facto, exigua laus prōponitur.* Cic. *Quem, nonulum pālam facto, vivi mortuūque prōmiscue complōrērentur.* Liv. *Nam jam addit eā sum, ut non siet, peccāto, mi ignosci æquum; i. e. si peccātum fuērit.* Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo, scil. mări, the sea being tranquil.* Liv. *Serēno, scil. calo, the sky being clear.* Id. *Arānei serēno texunt, nūbilo texunt,*—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cōmitiis, lūdis, Cīrcensibus.* Suetonius has used *proscriptiōne* in the sense of 'during the proscription.' So *pāce et Principe.* Tac. *Impērio pōpuli Rōmāni.* Cæs.

REM. 10. This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar, quamquam obsidiōne Massilia retardante, brevī tamen omnia subēgit.* Suet. *Dēcēvtrī non ante, quam perlātis lēgibus, depōstūros impērium esse aiēbant.* Liv.

REM. 11. A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of naming, choosing, etc. § 210, (8.); as, *Hasdrūbale impērātore suffecto.* Liv.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ 258. Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical*.

A. The principal tenses are, the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *two futures*.

B. The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect*, the *historical perfect*, and the *pluperfect*.

I. In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence:—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite*, and by the periphrastic form with *sim*. And:—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and by the periphrastic form with *essem*.

NOTE. The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(a.) In the first class. *Scio quid agas. Scio quid egēris. Scio quid actūrus sis.*—*Audivi quid agas*, I have heard what you are doing. *Audivi quid egēris. Audivi quid actūrus sis.*—*Audiam quid agas*, etc.—*Audivēro quid agas*, etc.

(b.) In the second class. *Sciēbam quid agēres. Sciēbam quid egisses. Sciēbam quid actūrus esses.*—*Audivi quid agērēs*, I heard what you were doing. *Audivi quid egisses. Audivi quid actūrus esses.*—*Audivēram quid agērēs*, etc.

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal* tenses depending on,

(1.) The PRESENT; as, *Non sum ita hēbes, ut istuc dicam.* Cic. *Quantum dolōrem accēpērim, tu existimāre pōtes.* Id. *Nec dūbito quin rēctus ejus respōditur sūlis iris fūtūrus sit.* Id.

(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Satis prōvisum est, ut ne quid igne pos-  
sint. Id. Quis mīsticia, quis huic stādio librārum se dēdidit, quin omnia illārum  
artium vim comprēhenderit. Id. Defectiōnes solis prādictae sunt, quā, quantas,  
quando futūræ sint. Id.*

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic facillime, quanta orātrūm sit, semperque inērit  
paucitas, iudicābit. Id. Ad quos dies rēditūrus sim, scribam ad te. Id. Si  
sciēris aspiciē lītēre aspiciam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam assidēre,  
cujus mors tibi emolūmentum factūra sit, imprōbe facēris, nisi mōnueris, ne ausi-  
deat. Id.*

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of *present tenses*  
depending on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extimescēbam, ne quid turpiter facē-  
rem, vel jam effecissem. Cic. Non enim dubitābam, quin eas libenter lectūrus  
esses. Id.*

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Vēni in ejus villam ut libros inde prōmē-  
rem. Id. Hæc quum essent nuntiāta, Valērius classem extemplo ad ostium flūm-  
inis duxit. Liv.*

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor cēperat milites, ne mortifērūm esset vul-  
nus. Liv. Ego ex ipso audieram, quam a te liberrimē esset tractātus. Cic. Non  
satis mihi constiterat, cum aliquāne animi mei molestia, an potius libenter te Athē-  
nis viderus essem. Id.*

REMARK 1. (a.) When the present is used in narration for the historical  
perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Lēgātus mit-  
tunt, ut pacem impetrārent. Cæs.*

(b.) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its  
historical sense; as, *Pandite nunc Hēlicōna, dea, cantusque mōvete, Qui bello  
exciti rēges, quos quemque scēlūs Complērint campos acies. Virg.*

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when  
a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its pro-  
gress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent has  
an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the  
action; as, *Feci hoc, ut intelligeres, I have done this that you might under-  
stand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning. Sunt philōsophi et fuē-  
runt, qui omnino nullam habēre censērent hūmānārum rerum procuratiōnem  
deos. Cic.*

REM. 3. (a.) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect  
subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action in-  
definite.

(b.) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narra-  
tive of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *Factum est  
ut plus quam collēgas Miltiādes vāluērit. Nep.*

(c.) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical  
perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the  
other simply as a fact; as, *Ad eo nihil misēriti sunt, ut incursiōnes facērent et  
Vēios in animo habuērint oppugnāre. Liv.*

(d.) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a  
general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time  
indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antiōcho pacem pētenti ad priōres condiōnes  
nihil additum, Africāno prādicante, nēque Rōmānis, si vincantur, animos minui,  
nēque, si vincant, secundis rēbus insōlescere. Just.*

REM. 4. (a.) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their  
time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such  
tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictōres quōque eos peccāre  
dicēbat, qui non sentirent, quid esset satis. Cic. Ad te scripsi, te lītter accūsans  
in eo, quā de me cito credidisses. Id.*

(b.) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sei Phaedronti filio factūrum se esse dixit quicquid optasset.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitramur nos ea præstitisse, quas ratio et doctrina præscripsērit.* Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista loca vēnisse, ubi aliquid aspere viderēre.* Id.

(b.) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as, *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quales essent satis ostendisse.* Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(a.) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardebat autem Hortensius cupiditate dicendi sic, ut in nullo unquam flagrantius studium viderim;* i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scitote oppidum esse in Sicilia nullum, quo in oppido non isti delecta mulier ad libidinem esset:* (caset here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(b.) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the hypothetical imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Memorare possem quibus in locis maximas hostium copias populus Rōmānus parvā manu fuderit.* Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, and *etiamsi*, when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual; or, with *nisi*, makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plane negligenda est, si omnino exstinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit, ubi sit futurus æternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nisi ego insānio, stulte omnia et incaute fūni.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (a.) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, I. 3.—(b.) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *si* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *defende si pōtes.*—(c.) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ego in Sicilia sum, nulla statua dejecta est.* Cic. It is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asia bellum geritur, ne in Etolis quidem quiesce res fuerant.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (a.) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect definite, denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, *Exegi monumentum ære p̄rennius;* and Ovid, in like circumstances, *Jamque opus exegi.* So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de-

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, *Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium* i. e. we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(b.) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rubicōnem transiit*, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon. (c.) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *etiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *etiamtum*.

(d.) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam asperi, illico cognōvi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteaquam*, *tibi, tibi primum, ut, ut primum, quum primum, simul, simul ut, simul ac, or simul atque*, all of which have the signification of 'as soon as,' and sometimes after *præquam*. But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem simulac se remiserat, neque causa suberat, quare animi laborem perferret, luxuriosus reperiebatur*. Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam dōmo profugerat, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit*. Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam*.

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, *Dixerat, et spissis noctis se condidit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Valebis*, Farewell. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio loco de fratrum animo et injuriis vidēro*, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Naturam si sequemur dicem, nunquam aberrabimus*. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero*. Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Faciam si potero*, I will do it, if I can. *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(a.) This construction occurs with the verbs *oportet, necesse est, debeo, conueni, possum, decet, licet, reor, puto*; and with *par, fas, copia, æquum, justum, consentaneum, satis, sapius, æquius, melius, utilius, optabilis, and optimum*—*est, erat, etc.*

(b.) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te duci jam pridem oportebat*, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to take place. Cic.—*Longe utilius fuit angustias actus occupare*, It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Citilina erupit e senatu triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vivum illinc extri non oportuerat*. Cic.

(c.) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tam dñi constanter præda tēnenda fuit*,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(d.) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quas si dubia aut præcul essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicæ consilire decebat*. Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen erat mittendus*. Cic.—*Delēri totus exercitus pōuit, si fugientes persecuti victōres essent*. Liv. *Quas nisi mōnūmisset, tormentis etiam dedendi fuērunt*. Cic. *Si te non inveniēsem, pēriturus per præceptū fui*. Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

REM. 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(a.) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred; whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fāmes quam pestilentia tristior erat; nī annōnæ foret subventum*,—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *capi* instead of *jam*; as, *Britanni circumire terga vincētiū cōpērant, nī*, etc. Tac. And without *jam*; *Effigies Pisonis traxerant in Gemonias ac divellēbant* (would have entirely destroyed them) *nī*, etc. Id.

(b.) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et pēractum erat bellum sine sanguine, si Pompeium opprimere Brundisii (Cæsar) pōtuisset*. Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum erat mōnere, nisi fieret*. Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the condition; as, *At fuērat melius, si te puer iste tēnēbat*. Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo*, and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem*; as, *Possum persequi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum, sed*, etc., I might speak of the many pleasures of husbandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *difficile est, longum est, infinitum est*, e. g. *narrare*, etc., for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cumque*; as, *quisquis, quotquot, quicumque, utut, utrumque*, etc., see §§ 189, 5, (8.) and 191, I. R. 1, (6.); as, *Quidquid id est, ameo dānos et dōna ferētes*. Virg. *Quem fors cumque dabit, lucro appōne*. Hor. *Sed quōquo mōdo sēsē illud hābet*. But however that may be. Cic.—In like manner sentences connected by *sive*—*sive* commonly have the verb in the indicative, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sive verum est, sive falsum, mihi quidem ita rēnūciātum est*. Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sive*—*sive*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its substance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but my believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented not as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Edo ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions*, in clauses expressing a *result*, and after *adverbs of time*; as,

*Rogas me quid tristis sim*,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellârum tanta est multitudo ut numerâri non possint*,—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar caset in Galliâ*, When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty, and desire*.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Médiocribus et quis ignoscas vitis læneor*, I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsare ut det sibi veniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fata fuissent ut caderem*, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sanior essem*, I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Ceteros rapere et prosternerem*, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errârim fortasse*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it has a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id responderunt se facturos esse, quum ille vento Aquilina venisset Lemnum*.... when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfects *vellem, nollem, and mitem*, in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem*, I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dico, puto, arbitror, credo*; also with *video, cerno, and discerno*; as, *Mestique (credères victos) redeunt in castra*,—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pecunia an fama minus parceret, haud facile discerneres*. Sall. *Qui videret equum Trojânum introductum, urbem captam diceret*. Cic. *Quis unquam crederet?* Id. *Quis putaret?* Id.—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrâtes quum rogaretur cuiusdem se esse diceret, Mundânus, inquit, Id. Quod si quis deus diceret, nunquam putarem me in Academiâ tamquam philosophum disputaturum*, If any god had said.... I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, *Vendat odes vir bonus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixerit Epicurus*, Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Ierum anceps pugna fuerat fortuna*.—Fuisse, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mâlus ceteris Ch. Carbo fuit*. Fuisse, He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut*.

REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forſitan querātis*, You may perhaps ask. *Velim sic exiſtītes*, I would wish you to think so. *Nemo iſtud tibi concedat*, or *conceſſerit*, No one will grant you that. *Hoc ſine ulla dubitatione confirmāverim*, *illoquētiā rem eſſe omnium difficillimā*, This I will unhesitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nūl ego contulērīm iacundo ſānus amico*. Hor. The form which is called the perfect subjunctive, when thus used for the future, seems to be rather the subjunctive of the future perfect: see Rem. 7, (1.) *Volo* and its compounds are often so used in the present; as, *Velim obvias mihi lītras crebro mittere*, I wish that you would frequently send, etc. Cic. The perfect subjunctive is also rarely used in the sense of a softened perfect indicative; as, *Forſitan temere fecerim*, I may have acted inconsiderately.

REM. 5. The subjunctive is used in all its tenses, in independent sentences, to express a doubtful question implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither shall I go? *Quo irem?* Whither should I go? *Quo itūrem?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo itissem?* Whither should I have gone? The answer implied in all these cases is, 'nowhere.' So, *Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiis sint?* Who can doubt that riches consist in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nāmen Jūnōnis adorēt prædrea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit, meminērīm?* Cic. *Quis vellet tanti nominis eſſe māk?* Ovid.

REM. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, asseveration, request, command, or permission; as,

*Mōriar, ſi*, etc. May I die, if, etc. Cic. *Peream, ſi non*, etc. May I perish, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne ſim ſalvus*. Cic. *In mēdia arma ruāmus*, Let us rush.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, ſcēleste!* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. *Fāciat quod libet*, Let him do what he pleases. Id. The perfect is often so used; as, *Ipsē vidērīt*, Let him see to it himself. Cic. *Quam id recte faciām, vidērīnt sapiētes*. Id. *Meminērīmus, ſitiam adverſus infimos juſtitiā eſſe ſervandā*. Id. *Nihil incommōdo vāletudinis tuus feceris*. Id. *Emas, non quod opus eſt, ſed quod nēceſſe eſt*. Sen. *Dōnis impij ne placāre audeant deos; Plātōnem audiant*. Cic. *Nātāram expellas furca, tamen uſque rēcurret*. Hor.

(a.) The examples show that the present subjunctive, in the first person singular, is used in asseverations; in the first person plural, in requests and exhortations; in the second and third persons of the present and sometimes of the perfect, in commands and permissions, thus supplying the place of the imperative, especially when the person is indefinite.

(b.) With these subjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is usually not *non* but *ne*; as, *ne dicās*; *ne dicat*; *ne dixeris*. So, also, *ne fuērīt*, for *licet ne fuērīt*.

(c.) The subjunctive for the imperative occurs most frequently in the third person. In the second person it is used principally with *ne*; as, *ne dicās*. In the latter case the perfect very frequently takes the place of the present; as, *ne dixeris*. The subjunctive is also used in the second person, instead of the imperative, when the person is indefinite.

(d.) In precepts relating to past time, the imperfect and pluperfect, also, are used for the imperative; as, *Forſitan non nēmo vir fortis dixerit*, *reſtituiſſes, mortem pugnans oppetuiſſes*,—you should have resisted. Cic.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or passive voice.

(1.) When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future subjunctive by the present and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of these four tenses is to be used depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expressed. The perfect subjunctive appears to be also the subjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be so called; as,



*Tantum moneo, hoc tempus si amisseris, te esse nullum unquam magis tibi meum repperitum*, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* and *essem*; as, *Non dubitat quin brevi Trója sit peritura*, He does not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuérin* takes the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis enim dubitat, quin, si Ságuntinis impigre talissémus opem, totum in Hispániam áversári bellum fuérinus*. Liv. The form in *fuisse* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Appáruit, quantam excitátura mólem véra fuisset cládes, quum*, etc. See *Periphrastic Conjugation*, § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *ens*, but by *futúrum sit* or *esset*, with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin futúrum sit, ut laudétur*, I do not doubt that he will be praised.

### PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protasis*, the latter the *apodosis*.

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the supposition in the *protasis* been a valid one; as,

*Nisi te attis incitátum esse confidérem, scribérém plúra*, Did I not believe that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does believe*, and therefore *will not write*. *Si Neptúnus, quod Théseo prómiserat, non fécisset, Théseus filio Hippólýto non esset orbátus*. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis*, imply the *real or possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

*Si vélit*, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either does wish, or, at least, may wish. In the *apodosis* the present or perfect either of the subjunctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, etc.; as, *Si váles, bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea mirábátur quid esset, ex hoc tempore mirétur pótius....* Id.—The conjunction *si* in the *protasis* is often omitted; as, *Libet agros éni. Primum quero quos agros?* If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the *protasis* may be rendered without *if*, and either with or without an interrogation, as, *You will buy lands, or, Will you buy lands?* The future perfect often occurs in the *protasis* of such sentences; as, *Cúsus médicusve levárit agrum ex præcipiti, máter délira nécábit*, (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as, *Abque te esset, hódie numquam ad sólem occásum víderem*. Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the indicative, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunctive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were definite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mémória minúitur, nisi eam exerceas*. Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *oratio obliqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flamma trahit*. Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Afrida*, i. e. *si possint*. Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis, etsi a multitudine victus, gloria tamen omnes vicit*. Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dona-rem tripodas*—*divite me scilicet artium, quas aut Parrhasius protulit, aut Scipias*. Hor. C. *Mucius Porcenum interficere, proposita sibi morte, conatus est*. Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quamquam*, and *quomodo* are expressed with the participle, but *tamen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a *protasis*.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the *protasis* or the *apodosis*, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certe non fecisset, si suum numerum (navium) naves haberent*. Cic. *Cimbri si statim infesto agmine urbem petissent, grande discrimen esset*. Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the *protasis* and the *apodosis*.

REM. 6. *Nisi*, *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nisi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescio*; *nisi hoc video*. Cic. *Nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nemo fere salutat sobrius, nisi forte insanit*. Cic. *Nisi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

### A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, and *quominus*; as,

*Ea non, ut te instituërem, scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irritant ad pugnandum, quo fiant acriores*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut* or *utrum*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

*Id mihi sic erit gratum, ut grätius esse nihil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ita hebes, ut istuc dicam*. Id. *Negue tam eränuus ämentes, ut explorata nobis esset victöria*. Id. *Tantum inclulit a föri, ut eum pietus vinceret*. Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epaminondas fuit etiam disertus, ut nemo Thëbanus ei par esset eloquentia*, instead of *tam disertus*. Id. *Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivere ut edas*. Auct. ad Her. *Id efficit ut omnia floreat*. C. C.

REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying 'even if' or 'although,' expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive as,

*Ut* dēsint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas, Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as, *Exercitus si pacis nomen audierit, ut non referat pedem* (even if it does not withdraw) *insistet certe*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows*, etc.; as,

Qui sit, ut nemo contentus vivat? How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huc* contigit, ut patriam ex servitute in libertatem vindicaret. Nep. Sequitur igitur, ut sua vitia sint parca. Cic. Reliquum est, ut egomet mihi consilium. Nep. Restat igitur, ut motus astrorum sit voluntarius. Cic. Extrēmum illud est, ut te orem et obsecrem. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases signifying 'it happens,' viz. *fit, fieri non potest, accidit, incidit, contingit, evenit, fieri venit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it that);—and the following, signifying 'it remains,' or 'it follows,' viz. *futurum, extrēmum, prope, proximum*, and *reliquum—est, relinquitur, sequitur, restat*, and *superest*; and sometimes *accidit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuius homini contingit adire Corinthum*. Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning, the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sequitur* and *efficitur*, 'it follows,' have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascitur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *mōris est, consuetudo* or *consuetudinis est*, and *natura* or *consuetudo fert*, are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.—*Ut* also occurs occasionally after many such phrases as *nōvum est, rārum, naturāle, necesse, assiduum, mirum, singulare—est*, etc., and after *aequum, rectum, verum, utile, verisimile*, and *integrum—est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting willingness and permission; also after verbs of asking, advising, reminding, etc., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac*; as,

Quid vis faciam? What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insani fēriant sine lōbra fluctus*. Virg. *Tentes dissimulare rogat*. Ovid. *Id sinas oro*. Id. *Se suadere, dixit, Pharnabazo id negotii daret*. Nep. *Accedat oportet actio vōria*. Cic. *Fac cogites*. Sall. So, *Vide ex navi efferantur, quae*, etc. Plaut

Verbs of willingness, etc., are *velo, malo, permitto, concedo, pōtior, stno, licet, vōto*, etc.; those of asking, etc., are *rogo, oro, quāso, mōneo, admōneo, jūdeo, mando, pōto, pōtior, cōseco, suadeo, oportet, necesse est, posūlo, hortor, cōro, dēcerno, opto, impēro*.

REM. 5. *Nē*, 'that not,' 'in order that not,' or 'lest,' expresses a purpose negatively; as,

Cura ne quid ei dēsit, Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nemo prudens punit, ut aī Plāto, quia peccatum est, sed ne peccetur*. Id. *Ut ne* is frequently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as, *Opēra dētur, ut iudicia ne fiant*. Id. *Quo ne* is used in the same manner in one passage of Horace. *Missus ad hoc—quo ne per rācium Rōmāno incurreret hostis*.—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood as, *Tum forte agrōtābam, ut ad nuptias tuas vēire non possem*. In a few cases, however *ut non* is used for *ne*.—*Ut non* is further used, when the negation re-

fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *si non* must be used, and not *nisi*; as, *Confer te ad Manium, ut a me non tectus ad alienos, sed invitatus ad tuos esse videaris.* Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *cave*; as,

*Cave putes,* Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 3.

REM. 7. After *mēto*, *timeo*, *vēreor*, and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that* not.

NOTE 3. To the verbs *mēto*, *timeo*, and *vēreor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension or danger, and the verbs *terreo*, *conterreo*, *deterro*, *caveo*, to be on one's guard, *video* and *obsevo* in requests (as, *vide, videte and videndum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

*Milo mētuebatur, ne a servis indicārētur,* Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Vēreor, ne, dum minuire vēlīm labōrem, augeam.* Id. *Favor erat, ne castra hostie aggrēderētur.* Liv. *Ille duo vēreor, ut tibi possim concedere,* I fear that I cannot grant... Cic. *Ovendum est ne assentātoribus patēfaciāmus aures, ne dūlārī nos sināmus.* Cic. *Vide ne hoc tibi obsit.* *Terrui gentes, grāve ne rēdiret sēcūlum Pyrrhæ.* *Multitudinem deterrēt, ne frumentum conferant.* Cæs. *Me mētrum! ne prōna cādas.* Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nēve* or *neve* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne*. It is properly equivalent to *aut ne*, but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut*; as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne*; as, *Lēgem tūlit, ne quis ante actūrum cōrum accusārētur, nēve multārētur.* Nep. *Cæsar milites non longiore oratione cōhortātus, quam tūi suas pristinas virtutis mēmōriam rēminerent, ne perturbārēntur animo—prælii committendū signum dedit.* Cæs. *Nēque*, also, is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne*; as, *Ut ea prætermittam, nēque eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sanctis ne vicinus patricio sit plebeius, nec eodem itinere eat.* Liv.—*Ne* is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Timeo ne non impetrem,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singulos nōminem.* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nēdum*, like *ne*, takes the subjunctive; as, *Optimis temporibus clariissimi vii tribunatici sustinere non potuerunt: nēdum his temporibus sine iudiciorum remediis salvi esse possumus,—still less, etc.* Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nēdum*; as, *Novam eam potestatem (scil. tribunorum plebis) eripere patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcedine semel capti ferant desiderium.* Liv.—*Nēdum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Ægre inermis tanta multitudo, nēdum armata, sustineri potest.* Liv. *Ne*, also, is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō*, 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative *non quō*, or *non quod*, 'not that,' 'not as if'; *non quin*, 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apodictic by *sed quod*, *sed quia*, or *sed alone*; and *quōminus*, 'that not,' after clauses denoting hinderance, take the subjunctive; as,

*Ajūta me, quo id fiat facilius,* Aid me, that that may be done more easily. 1st. *Non quo republica sit mihi quicquam carius, sed desperatis etiam Hippocrates vult adhibere medicinam.* Cic. *Non quod sola ornent, sed quod excellent.* Id. *Nēque recusavi, quo minus legis penam subiret.* Nep. *Ego me dūcem in civili bello negavi esse, non quin rectum esset, sed quia,* etc. Cic. And instead of *non quin* we may say *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*; and for *non quod*, *non eo quod*, or *non ideo quod*.

REM. 10. *Quin*, after negative propositions and questions with *quis* and *quid* implying a negative takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*....*est*, *repperitus invenitur* etc., *vix est, ægre reperitur*, etc.; as, *Messinam nemo venit, quin viderit*, i. e. *qui non viderit*, No one came to Messina who did not see. Cic. *Nego ullum pietatem fuisse....quin conquiesceret*, i. e. *quam non*, etc. Id. *Nihil est, quin miles narrando possit depravari*. Ter. *Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus!* Cic.

NOTE 6. When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo*, as the ablative of time; as, *Dies ferre nullus est, quin hic Satrius domum meam ventilet*, i. e. *quo*—*non ventilet*. Cic.—*Qui non* is often used for *quin*; as, *Quis enim erat, qui non sciret*. Id.; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non*, *is* and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleanthes negat illum cibum esse tam gratum, quin is die et nocte concuatur*. Cic. *Nihil est quod sensum habent, quin id intereat*. Id.—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non*; as, *Augustus numquam filios suos populo commendavit ut non adiceret* (without adding) *si mererentur*. Suet. And if no negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin*.

2. For *ut non*, 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *facere non possum, fieri non potest, nulla causa est, quid causæ est? nihil causa est*; as, *Facere non possum quin ad te mittam*, i. e. *ut non*, etc. Cic. *Numquam tam male est Scullis, quin aliqui facere et commode dicant*. Cic. *Numquam accedo, quin abs te abeam doctior*,—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7. *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dubito, non est dubium, non ambigo*, I doubt not; *non abest; nihil, paulum, non procul, haud multum abest; non, viz, ægre abstinere; tenere me, or temperare mihi non possum; non impedio, non recuso, nihil pratermitto*, and the like. In these cases, however, the negation in *quin* is superfluous, and it is generally translated into English by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dubito quin domi sit*, that he is at home. *Non multum abest, quin miserrimus sim*, Not much is wanting to make me most wretched. Cic. Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quibus non dubito quin offensionem negligentie vitare atque effugere non possim*. Cic. *Dubitandum non est quin nunquam possit utilitas cum honestate contendere*. Id.

NOTE 8. In Nepos, *non dubito*, in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always followed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dubito* and *non dubito* are generally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cicero non dubitabat conjuratos supplicio afficere*.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dubito sitne, dubito utrum*—*an, dubito sitne*—*an, or dubito num, numquid*, for *dubito an*, and *dubium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9. *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old ablative *quæ* and *ne*, i. e. *non*, and in this sense is joined with the indicative in questions implying an exhortation; as, *Quin conscendamus equos?* Why not mount our horses? In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, *Quin dis statim*, Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive. Hence without being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11. The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quominus* occurs, and after which *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *deterreo, impedio, intercedo, obsisto, obsto, officio, prohibeo, recuso*, and *repugno*. It occurs also after *stat* or *fit per me*, I am the cause, *non pugno, nihil moror, non contineo me*, etc.

NOTE. *Impedio, deterreo*, and *recuso* are sometimes, and *prohibeo* frequently followed by the infinitive. Instead of *quominus*, *quo secius* is sometimes used.

§ 263. The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utinam*, *ut*, *O!* and *O' si*; as,

*Utinam minus vitæ capti fuissēmus!* O that we had been less attached to life! Cic. *O si solita quicquam virtutis adesset!* Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—'Would that not' is expressed in Latin both by *utinam ne* and *utinam non*. *Utinam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Tecum habere sicut ipse possem!* Catull.

#### B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis*, however; *licet*, although; *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *quasi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *vêlut*, *vêlut si*, *vêluti*, *sicuti*, and *ceu*, as if; *môdo*, *dum*, and *dummôdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

*Quamvis ille felix sit, tamen*, etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat*, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Tamquam clausa sit Asia, sic nihil perfertur ad nos*. Id. *Sed quid ego his testibus ūtor, quasi res dubia aut obscura sit?* Id. *Me omnibus rebus, iuxta ac si meus frater esset, sustentavit*. He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Similiter facere eos*,—ut si nauta certarent, etc. Id. *Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent*. Cæs. *Inque sinus caros, veluti cognosceret, ibat*. Ovid. *Sicuti iurgio læcessitus foret, in senatū veni*. Sall. *Hic vero ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam bella forent*. Virg. *Odierint dum metuant*. Att. in Cic. *Mangunt ingenia senibus, môdo perinaneat studium et industria*. Cic. *Omnia honesta negligunt dummôdo potentiam consequantur*. They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Môdo*, *dum*, and *dummôdo*, when joined with a negation, become *môdo ne*, *dum ne*, and *dummôdo ne*.

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, *Quamvis non fuëris sudor, approbator certe fuisti*. Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Felicem Niobem, quamvis tot funera vidit*. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, *Quamvis patrem suum nunquam viderat*. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis*, as a conjunction, in the sense of 'however much,' is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis Ti. fratrem visum esse dicere*, quam vellet cunctaretur, tamen, etc.—*Quamvis* 'however much,' as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Et si*, *tametsi*, even if, although, and *quamquam*, although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*Et si* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, *Quamquam præsepe Lucullo loquar*. Cic. *Vi regere patriam quamquam possis*. Sall. Jug. 2. *Filius quamquam Thetidos marinas Dardanas turres quatēret*. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si*, etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnatii rem ut tueare aque a te peto, ac si mec negotia essent*, i. e. *ac peterem, si mea negotia essent*, as I would pray if, etc. Cic.

3. After *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. / The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

*Ea causa ante mortua est, quam tu natus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit equos, priusquam pabula gustassent Trōja, Xanthusque bibissent*. Virg. *Priusquam incipias, consulo opus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sal.

4. (1.) *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

*Dum hic veniret, locum relinquere nōluit*, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil pāto tibi esse ātilius quam oppōrti quoad scire possis, quid tibi āgendum sit*. Id. *Ornu tēdendū, et duxit longe, dōnec curvata cōfrent inter se cōpita*. Virg.—In the sense of 'as long as,' these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (a.)

5. *Quum* (*cum*), when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

*Qui nō defendit injūriam, nēque rēpulsat a suis, quum pōtest, injūsto facit*. Cic. *Quum recte nōvigāri pōterit, tum nāviges*. Id. *Crēdo tum, quum Sicilia florēbat opibus et cōpiis, magna artificia fuisse in eā insula*. Id. *Quum tot sustineas et tanta nēgōtia, peccem, si mōrer tua tēpōra*, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time. Hor. *Quum vita sine amicis mētus plēna sit, ratio ipsa mōnet amicitias comparāre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum tēpōral* takes the indicative, *quum causal* the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is merely a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. / But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of 'though' or 'although,' it is joined with the subjunctive. (b.) *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when*, *while*, or *after*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as*, *since*, *though* or *although*, *because*; but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

*Gracchus, quum rem illam in rēligiōnem pōpulo vēnisse sentiret, ad sēnātum rēlāt*. Cic. *Alexander, quum intērēmisset Clitum, via mētus a se abstinuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum tēpōral*, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, *Quum autem vir esse cōpērat, dābat se labōri*. Cic. *Quum rōcam vidērat, tum incipēre ver arbitrabātur*. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of 'while' is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intērea* or *intērīm*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Citulus cēpit magnum suus virtūtis fructum, quum omnes pōpō and vice, in eo ipso vos spēm hābitūros esse, dixistis*. Cic. *Cadēbāt virgēs*

in medio foro Messena civis Rōmānus, iudices, quum intērea nulla vox alia istius miseri audiebātur, nisi hæc: civis Rōmānus sum. Id.

REM. 4. *Quum*, for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *jam*, *nondum*, *vix*, *aggre*, or joined with *repente* or *sūbito* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

### C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER QUI.

§ 264. Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a *consequence*, an *innate quality*, a *cause*, *motive*, or *purpose*.

1 (a.) When the relative *qui*, in a clause denoting a *result* of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *tam* with an adjective, *tantus*, *talis*, *ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, and *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *hic* in the sense of *talis*; as,

*Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut ille in tantis*, etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Talem te esse oportet, qui ab impiorum civium societate sejungas*; i. e. *ut tu*, etc. Id. *At ea fuit legatio Octavii, in qua periculi suspicio non subesset*, i. e. *ut in ea*. Id. *Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui fratris carissimam morore non movear*, i. e. *ut ego non movear*. Id. *Non sumus ii, quibus nihil verum esse videatur*, i. e. *ut nobis nihil*, etc. Id. *Nulla gens tam fera est, cujus mentem non imbuerit decorum opinio*, i. e. *ut ejus mentem*, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

*Res parva dictu, sed quæ studiis in magnum certamen excesserit*, i. e. *talis res*....of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dicis aliquid, quod ad rem pertineat*, i. e. *tale ut id*, etc. Id. *So quis sum, for num talis sum*; as, *Quis enim, cujus aures lædē nefas sit?* Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule:—

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam* *is*, *etsi* *is*, or *dummodo* *is*, it takes the subjunctive; as, *Quamquam is, etsi is, or dummodo is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Laco, consilii quamvis egregii, quod non ipse afferret, inimicus*, Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pumice postulas, qui ipsas altiat*. Plaut. *Nihil molestum, quod non desideres*, i. e. *dummodo id*. Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod meminērim*, as far as I recollect; *quod ego intelligam*; *quod intelligi possit*; *quod conjecturā providēri possit*; *quod salvā fide possim*; *quod commōdo tuo fiat*, etc.—*Quidem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sine molestiā tuā fiat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum*, *quantum ego perspicio*, on the other hand, the indicative is used.



4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Māior sum, quam* cui possit *fortūna nocēre*, i. e. *quam ut mihi*, etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Audīta vōce præcōnis mājus gaudium fuit, quam* quod *universum hōmīnes* cāperēt, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his lītēris longior fui, quam aut vellem, aut quam me pātēre jōre*:—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose, aim, or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacedæmoniū lēgātos Athēnas misērunt, qui eum absentem accūsārent*: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsārent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitātum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quas in partes iter faciānt*. Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur*. Cic. *Assidue rēptant, quas perdant, Bēlides undas*. Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampedum ei (Thémistocli) rex dōnarat, unde vinum sūmēret*, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde*, etc. Nep. *Sæper tabernaculum régis, unde ab omnibus conspecti posset, imāgo solis crystallo inclusa fulgebāt*. Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

*Fuerunt eā tempestāte, qui dicērent*, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appēntior fāma, vidērētur*, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt, qui censeant, una ānimum et corpus occidēre*. Cic. *Erunt, qui existimāri vellent*. Id. *Sī quis erit, qui perpētuum orātōnem dēsideret, aliērā actiōne audiet*. Id. *Venient legiōnes, quæ neque me inultum neque te impānitum pātiantur*. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est quod gaudeas*, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod visam dōmum*. Id. *Sī est quod dēsit, ne beātus quidem est*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, adest, præsto sunt, existunt, exōriuntur, invēniuntur, rēperiuntur*, (scil. *hōmīnes*); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus vēniat*, etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant. Sī est culpam ut Antipho in se admisērit*, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ubi id isto modo vāleat*. Cic. So *est cur* and *est ut* in the sense of *est cur*; as, *Ille erat, ut odisset dēfensōrem sālūtis meæ*, i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est igitur ut mirandum sit*, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi*, etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt orātiones quædam, quas Menocrito dābo*. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui* even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos jūvat*. Hor. *Sunt qui ita dicunt*. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum laborem*, There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor*. Id. *Nihil est, quod tam miseros faciat, quam impietas et scelus*. Cic. *In fovea vix decimus quisque est, qui ipse sese noscat*. Plaut. *Quis est, qui ultra fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ latebra est, in quam non intret metus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam habere, quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than the definite *quicumque*, § 186, R. 1.) *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est mali, quod non dixeris?* Ter.

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *onus non*, *alius non*, *non quisquam*, *vix ullus*, *nec ullus*, etc., with *est*; *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quemquam*, etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis*, *quid*; *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *quantus*, *uter*, *ecquis*, *numquis*, *an quisquam*, *an aliquis*, *quidus quisque*, *quidus*, etc., with *est*? *quot*, *quam multi*, etc., with *sunt*?

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est*, *nihil est*, *quid est*, *numquid est*, etc., followed by *quod*, *cur*, *quære*, or *quomobrem*, and denoting there is no reason why, 'what cause is there?' 'is there any reason?' as, *Quod timeas, non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adventum nostrum pertimescas*. Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Queris a me, quid ego Cælinam metuam*. *Nihil, et curavi ne quis metuere*. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.—So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accusarem*. Cic. *Nil habeo, quod agam*, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam*. Cic. So without a negative, *De quibus habeo ipse, quid sentiam*. Id. *Causa or*, with *quid* and *nihil*, *causæ*, is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa, cur postulares*. Id. *Quid erat causæ, cur metuere*. Id.

NOTE 4. (a.) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut*; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, There is no one who is ignorant, i. e. no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are some who blame this, i. e. some blame this. Vell.

(b.) If the relative clause is to be construed as a part of the logical subject it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infirmum est* Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Pecavisse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortunate adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homërum præconem invenëris!*—in having found. Id. *Cæcilius fuit mirificæ vigilantia, qui suo ioto consiliu somnum non vidërit*,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui*, *quippe qui*, or *utpote qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Optima cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in optidum quidem nisi perarare vëniasset*. Cic. *Næque Antionius præcul abërat, utpote qui magno exercitu sequeretur*. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, *Quippe qui omnia vicerat*. Sall.

9. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Videtur, qui aliquando impëret, dignus esse*, He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rustici nostri quum aliquis bonitatemque laudant, æquam esse dicunt, quicum in tenebris mices*. Id. *Nulla vidëbatur aptior per-*

*sōna, quæ de ædite lōquērētur. Id. Pompeius Idōneus non est, qui impetret. Id. Et rem Idōneam, de quā quærātur, et hōmīnes dignos, quibuscum dissērātur, pēlant. Id.*

NOTE 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus libertate dignus fuit*, cui *nostra aīlus cæra non esset*? The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

NOTE 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit cantāri dignus. Virg.*—and sometimes as; as, *Eras dignus, ut hābēres integram māmum. Quint.*

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, primus*, etc., restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Hæc est una contentio, quæ adhuc permānsērit.* This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Voluptas est sōla, quæ nos vocet ad se, et allīceat suapte naturā.* Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a dependent clause, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

*Semper hābiti sunt fortissimī, qui summam impērii pōtrentur.* Those were always accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. *Quemcumque lictor jussu consilii prēhendisset, tribūnus mītti jubēbat. Liv. Ut quisque maxime laborāret locus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut aliquos mīttebat.* So after *si quis* or *qui*; as, *Si qui rem mālitiōsius gessisset, dēdēcus existimābant.* Cic. *Quōtiens super idē negotio consultāret, eādē dōmās parte atībātur. Tac. Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quē tulisset impētum, sustinēre vāli.*—It is sometimes found in like manner after *quum, ubi, ut*, and *si* when used in the sense of *quum*, when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum emittēbat. Liv. Sin Nūmidæ prōpius accessissent, tibi vērō virtutem ostendēra. Sall.* Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when employed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, *Ubi de magnā virtute et glōriā bonōrum mēmōres, quæ sibi quisque, etc. Sall.*

NOTE 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality*, inasmuch as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case. The indicative, however, is used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

— § 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

NOTE 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent clause without the interrogative form. Indirect questions generally depend upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. § 272. Thus:—

*Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Crēdibile non est, quantum scribam.* It is incredible how much I write. Id. *Quis ego sim, me rōgitas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut. *Ad te quid scribam nescio.* Cic. *Nec quid scribam hābeo.* Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Dōce me, ubi sint dī.* Inform me where the gods are. Id. *Incertum est, quo te lōco mors expectet.* Sen. Ep. *Quam pridem tibi hērēditas vēnisset, dāret.* Id. *Nunc accipe, quāre dēsiptiant omnes.* Hor. *Id utrum illi sentiant, an*

*sic similes, tu intelliges.* Cic. *Quero, num tu scindis causam tuam permittas.* Id. *Vides, ut alia stet nive candidum Soracte.* Hor. *Nesci, vidne fruatur, an sit apud mænes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or particles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect questions; as,

*Quantus, qualis, quæ, quid, quidus, quidusque, uter; quis, qui, cujus; ubi, quò, unde, quòquersum, quamdiu, quamdiudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quemobrem, quemadmodum, quomodo, ut, quam, quantiùpre, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions, especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Vide dæritus quid facit.* Ter. So Virg. *Ecl.* 5, 7. In the best prose writers the indicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is not a question; as, *Queramus ubi malficium est.* Let us seek there, where the crime actually is. Cic. *Nihil est admirabilius, quam quomodo ille mortem filii tulit.*

REM. 2. In double questions, 'whether—or,' the first may be introduced by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*, or without an interrogative particle. Hence there are four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*an*. 2. *utrum*,—*an* (*anne*). 3. *ne*,—*an*. 4. *ne*,—*ne*; as, *Multum interest, utrum laus imminuatur, an alius dæseratur.* Cic. The interrogative particle *utrum* is not used in a single question; and *num—an* is used only in direct questions. The English 'or not' in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne*, either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs only in indirect questions; as, *Dixi utrum sint, necne sint, queritur.* Cic.—*Ne—ne, an—an*, or *num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical language.

REM. 3. *Dubito, quibum est, or incertum est an, delibero or hesito an*, and especially *haud scio an, nescio an*, though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative. Compare § 198, 11, R. (a.)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis*, used nearly in the sense of *aliquis*, does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed cæu nescio quo in ea tempora atas nostra incidit.* Cic. *Lucus, nescio quo cæu, nocturno tempore incensus est.* Nep. So, also, *nescio quomodo*, 'somehow' or 'in some way'; as, *Sed nescio quomodo, inhaeret in mentibus quæsi augurium.* Cic. In like manner *mirum quam, mirum quantum, nimium quantum*, and the like, when united to express only one idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Sales in dicendo nimium quantum videntur*,—very much. Cic

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

*Quid enim potest esse tam perspicuum, quam esse aliquod nūmen, quo hæc regantur?* For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic. Here the thing which is stated to be clear is, not merely *esse aliquod nūmen*, that there is a god, but also that the world is governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quo hæc regantur* is an essential part of the general proposition. *Illud sic fere definiti solet, decorem id esse, quod consentaneum sit hominis excellentiæ.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quod Epicurum non probes,* I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Jussu ut, quæ venissent, naves Eubæam peterent.* Liv.

REMARK 1. Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est enim ulciscendi et puniendi mōdus, atque haud scio an satis sit cum qui læcesserit injuriæ suæ pōnere*, i. e. each individual offender of the class.

REM. 2. When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a result, after *ita*, *tam*, *tālis*, etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asia vtro tam optima est et fertilis, ut—multitudinē eārum rerum, quæ exportantur, facile omnibus terris antecellat*. Cic. The same is the case in definitions; as, *Videns igitur oportet, quæ sint convenientia cum ipso negotio, hoc est, quæ ab re separare non possunt*. Cic.—So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Itaque ille Mārius item eamie L. Plōtium dilexit, cūjus ingenio putabat ea, quæ gesserat, posse celebrari*. Cic.

NOTE. To this rule belongs the construction of the *oratio obliqua*, 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus, Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *oratio obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius make use, the former of the *oratio directa*, the latter of the *oratio obliqua*:—*Antōnius inquit, 'Ars eārum rerum est, quæ sciuntur'*, Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antōnius inquit, artem eārum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur*, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Sōcrates dicere solēbat, omnes, in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Cito mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret hāruspez, hāruspicem quum vidisset*. Id. *Negat jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnare cum hoste*. Id. *Indignabatur ibi esse impērium, ubi non esset libertas*. Liv. *Itaque Athēnienses quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem (esse) putaverunt*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *oratio directa*, to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *oratio obliqua*; and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hoc Ariovistus respondit, quum vellet, congregēretur*. To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *oratio directa*, this would be *congrēdiat*.

(b.) The imperative in the *oratio directa* is, in the *oratio obliqua*, changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dicite*, which in the *oratio obliqua* is, *hoc sibi dicant*, or *hoc sibi dicērent*, according to the tense of the leading verb.

(c.) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiamsi veleris contumēlia oblivisci velim, num possum etiam recentium injuriarum mēmōriam depōnere?* The *oratio obliqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit (histor. perf.)—si veleris contumēlia oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum—mēmōriam depōnere posse?* Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is less uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis pati posset? for quem pati posse? Quis hoc sibi persuāderet? for quem sibi persuāsurum?* See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *oratio obliqua* either present in the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regularly expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *se*; as, *Ille necessitate coactus domino navis qui sit operta, multa pollicens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspitionem venisset, aliquid in epistola de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspitionem venisset*, are equivalent to *quum suspicâretur*. See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *oratio directa* into the *obliqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future. >

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Impêravit Alexander Lysippo, ut eorum equitum, qui apud Granicum ceciderant, faceret stâtuas*, Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

*Socrâtes accusâtus est, quod corrupêret juventutem*, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocâbant, cujus ad sôllemne venissent*, They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vicêris amicos tibi esse cave crêdas*, Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vicisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative*, in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. supra, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dico*, *puto*, *arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum enim, Hannibâlus permissu, exisset de castris, râtui paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quod dicêret*,...because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Athênienstibus, locum sêpulturas intra urbem ut darent, impetrâre non pôtui, quod religiône se impêdîri dicêrent.* Id.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used to express a *command*, *wish*, *advice*, or *exhortation*; as,

*Nosce te*, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam memento servîre mentem*, Remember to pre-serve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc âdes*, Come hither. Virg. *Pasce cæpella*, and *pôtum pastus âge*, and *inter âscendum occurrâre capro cûvêto*. Id.

(1.) The imperative present denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lege*, read; *mórere*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vive*, live.

(2.) The imperative future denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum cónsiliū tuū cónsulueris, tū cónsulto ratiōnatiōni*. Cic. *Pris audiēte paucis; quā quū dixero, si placuit, facitōte*. Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scito* and *scitōte*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts, laws, and wills*; and also in *precepts and rules of conduct*; as, *Rēgio impērio duo sunt, itque cōsules appellantor, miltia summu jus hābento, nēmini pārento, illis scitus pōpuli suprema lex esto*. Cic. *Non scitis est pulchra esse pōemata, dulcia santo*. Hor. *Ignoscito saepe alibi, numquam tibi*. Syr.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nē*, and *nor* by *nēve*; as,

*Ne tantū inlmis assuescite bella*. Virg. *Ne crēde cōlōri*. Id. *Hōminem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, nēve trito*. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nēque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Vos quūque non cāris aures inērate lāpillis, nec prōdite grāves insūto vestibis auro*. Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nēque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (6.)—In Plautus and Terence *nē* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *ne* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nōli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui dāpiaci vērā glōriam vōlet, justitia fungātur officiis*. Cic. *Quod dāctas, ne fēcēris*. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos admōniti nostris quūque cāsibus este*. Ovid. *Jaeta ālea esto*. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, *Jaeta sit ālea*. Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed vālēbis, medāque nēgōtia vidēbis, mēque diis jūvantibus ante brām exspectābis*, instead of *vāle, vide, exspecta*. Cic. *Ubi sententiam meam vōbis pōrēgō, tū quibus eādē plācēbunt, in dextrā partē tūcti transibitis*, instead of *transibite*. Liv. With the future the negative is *non*. See § 259, R. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cūra* or *cārēdo ut, fac ut, or fac* alone is used with the subjunctive; as, *Cūra ut quā primum vēnias, Come as soon as possible. Fac trūctas*, instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne, cāve ne* or *cāve* alone, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nōli* with the infinitive; as, *Nōli pētāre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Alve existimes*, Do not think. Id. *Nōlite id velle quod non fieri pōtest, et cāvēte ne spe pārentis pācis perpētuum pācem omittātis*. Id.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.

2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

*Hoc facere possum*, I am able to do this. Cic. *Vidi nostros inimicos cupere bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gemere atria cessabit turris ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg. *Victorem victis succubuisse queror*, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a senibus audisse dicabant*, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. *Audiet cives acuisse ferrum juvenis*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor. *Negat esse verbum esse facturum*, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam audierat non datum tri filio uxorem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper existimabitis nihil horum visuros fore*, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *memini*; but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me memini dicere*, I remember my saying this. Cic. *Teucrum memini Sidona venire*, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg. So with *memoria teneo*. Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scribit* also is construed like *memini*; as, Cic. Off. 3, 2: and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maximum accepimus facile celare, tacere, dissimulare, etc.*, though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *recordor*:—*Recordor longe omnibus unum anteferre Demosthenem*. Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *memini*; as, *Meministi me ita distribuisse causam*. Cic.

(b.) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse*; as, *amatus esse*, to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, *Constrictam jam horum conscientia teneri conjurationem tuam non vides?* Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning as, *Apua Plutonium est, omnem morem Lacedaemoniorum inflammatum esse cupiditate vincendi*. Id. Here *inflammatum esse* expresses a continued or habitual state.—*Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Subel bono animo esse; scriptum fuisse regem subito ictu*. Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *adde habeo*, *scitis mihi est*, *pudet*, *contentus sum*, *melius erit*, *volo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Bacchatur vites, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum*. Virg. *Quum illam nemo velis attigisse*. Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pelion imposuisse Olympo*. Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Desine fata deum flecti sperare*, Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trojana a sanguine duci audierat*. Id. *Cras mihi argentum dare dixit*, i. e. *se daturum esse*. Ter. *Cato affirmat se vivo illum non triumphare*. Cic.

REM. 4. (a.) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*; as, *amaturus esse*; the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*; as, *amatum iri*. These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *rus* which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *fuisse* to express a past intention; as, *Scio te scripturum fuisse*, I know that



you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (cf. § 162, 14, R. 3.); as, *Etiamsi obtemperasset auspiciis, idem eventurum fuisse puto*. Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Libertus, nisi jurnasset, scilicet se facturum (esse) arbitrabatur*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *futurum esse* or *fore*, followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam putavi fore, ut supplex ad te venirem*, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspitor fore, ut infringatur hominum improbitas*. Id. *Credebam fore, ut epistolam scripseris*.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Credebo fore, ut epistolam scribatur*, and, *Credebam fore, ut epistola scriberetur*. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos spero brevi tempore tecum copulatos fore*. Cic. *Quod videret nomine pacis bellum involutum fore*. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spero fore ut sapias*.—*Fore* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me fore venturum*. Cic. Att. 5, 21; and *Quum senatus censeret libenter facturos fore*. Liv. 6, 42.

REM. 5. (a.) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos labores suscepturum fuisse, a iisdem finibus gloriam meam quibus vitam essem terminaturus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut perspicuum sit omnibus, nisi tanta acerbitas injuria fuisset, numquam illos in eum locum progressuros fuisse*,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(b.) *Futurum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nisi nuncii essent allati, existimabam plerique futurum fuisse, ut oppidum amitteretur*,....that the town would have been lost. Cæsar.

(c.) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *amandum esse*, *amandum fuisse*, and *amandum fore*; as, *Instare hiemem, aut sub pellibus habendos milites fore, aut differendum esse in aestatem bellum*. Liv.

REM. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, (*Dixit*) *sibi vitam filiae suae cariorem fuisse, si liberâ ac pudicâ vivere licitum fuisset*, (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equidem Plutonium existimo, si genus forense dicendi tractare voluisset, gravissime et copiosissime potuisse dicere*,—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ 269. The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (a.) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive passive of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vides ne properari libere*, You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209 R. 3, (2.), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(b.) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject-accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

# THE INFINITIVE AS THE SUBJECT OF A VERB

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb; as,

*Ad rempúblicam pertinet me conservári*, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Numquam est útile peccáre*, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Május dedécus est parta ámittere quam omnino non parávisse*. Sall. In the first example *conservári* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertinet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccáre* is the subject of *est útile*. See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Fáctus est vincire civem Rómánum*, To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *case* and verbs denoting *to appear*, *to be considered* or *called* (§ 210, R. 8.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Æquum est peccátis véniam poscentem reddere rursus*. Hor. *Atticus maximum astinávit quæstum*, mêmórem grátumque cognosci. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *aliquem* or *aliquos* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos*, cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Fáctus est vincire civem Rómánum*, may also be expressed by *Fáctus est vinciri civem Rómánum*. So, *Quum viderent de eórum virtúte non despérari*. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet*, *décet*, *oportet*, *opus est*, and *nécesse est*, when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction; as, a c. t. *licet hoc fácere*; *décet spéctmen capère ex hac re*; p. a. s. *licet hoc fieri*; *décet spéctmen capí*.

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum*, *æquum*, *vérsimile*, *consentáneum*, *ápertum*—*est*, *erat*, etc., *nécesse est*, *opus est*;—*appáret*, *constat*, *convénit*, *décet*, *licet*, *oportet*; *intelligitur*, *perspíctur*, etc.; as, *Cui verba dare difícilé est*. Ter. *Mendácem mêmórem esse oportet*. Quint. *Légem brévem esse oportet*. Sen. *Constat prófecto ad salútem civium inventas esse léges*. Cic. *Non enim me hoc jam dicere pudébit*. Id. See § 209, R. 3, (5.), (a.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licere cuiquam in náve cápillos depónere*. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impúne qualibet fácere, úl est régem esse*. Sall. In this sentence *fácere* is the subject, and *régem esse* is the predicate; for *úl*, which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impúne qualibet fácere*, can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse*, (or others of similar meaning, as, *fieri*, *vivere*, *vítam degère*, *cédere*, *abire*, etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet*, such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet*; as, *Uí eum liceat ante tempus consiliúm fieri*. Aut. ad Her. *Médios esse jam non licebit*. Cic. *Si civi Rómáno licet esse Gáditánus*. Id.—*Licent enim esse otíoso Thémistocli*. Id. *Mihi negligenti esse non licet*. Id. *Sibi vítam filius suá caríorem fuisse, si libère ac pudíce vítam licitam fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nécesse est* with the predicate in the

**dative.** *Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse.* Liv.—But *Acet*, *hortei*, an *nece* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *Acet* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

### THE INFINITIVE AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the object of a verb; as,

*Hæc vitare cupimus.* We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Postas omnino non cæcor attingere*, I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. *Sententiam valere cupierunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spero te valere*, I hope that you are well. Id.

**NOTE.** The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the thing, and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the person, cf. § 231, R. 3, (b.), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, *Consules jubentur scribere exercitum.* *Muros adire vetiti sunt.* Cf. § 234, I.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(a.) It may depend upon relative adjectives, (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cedere nescius.* Hor. *Avidi committere pugnam.* Ovid. *Cupidus moriri.* Id. *Cantare petiti Arcades.* Virg. *Callidus condere furto.* Hor. *Quilibet impotens sperare.* Id. *Subrinus facere inscius.* Varr. *Insuetus vera audire.* Liv. *Certa mori.* Virg. *Felleior ungere tela.* Virg. *So, Audax omnia perpeteri*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers ornare Cypassis*, Skilful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes solvere nodum.* Hor. *Indocilis pauperem pati.* Id. *Non lenis fata recludere.* Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(b.) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying usefulness, fitness, etc., which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tibia*) *aspirare et adesse choris erat utilis.* Hor. *Ætas mollis et apta regi.* Ovid. *Fons etiam vivo dare nomen Idoneus.* Hor. *Fruges consumere nati.* Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus*; as, *Dignus amari.* Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (b.)

(c.) Upon a noun; as, *Tempus est hujus libri facere finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Initi consilia reges tollere*, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea erat confessio caput rerum Romam esse.* Liv. *Cupido inaccesserat Æthiopiam invisere.* Curt. *Quibus in otio vivere copia erat.* Sall. *So, Nec mihi sunt vires inimicos pellere tectis*, instead of *pellendis inimicis*, or *ad pellendos inimicos.* Ovid.

(d.) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

REM. 2. (a.) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *credibile est?* or *verumne est?* may be supplied; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me miserum! te in tantas ærumnas propter me incidisse!* Cic.—But *ut*, also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Eine (scil. patri) ego ut adverser?* Liv. *Tu ut unquam te corrigas?* Cic. *Judicio ut drator decumantum persequatur?* Id.; where *fieri potest?* may be supplied.

(b.) So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said*, *saying*, etc., are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id facile effari posse*, scil. *duxit*. Nep. *Quem signum datūrum fugientibus?* Curt.

REM. 3. The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *visse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving*; as, *Vos cognōvi fortes*. Sall. *Quem pulsum mēmōrāvī*. Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *volo, nolo, cupio*, and *oportet*; as, *Adolescenti mōrem gestum oportuit*. Ter. *Quod jam pridem factum oportuit*. Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition; as, *Quos voluit omnes interfecit*, scil. *interficere*. *Ne illam quidem consequuntur, quam putant, gratiam*; i. e. *quam se consecuturos putant*. Cic.

## THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 271. The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting *ability, obligation, intention or endeavor*; after verbs signifying *to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate, or be wont*; and after the passive of verbs of *saying, believing, reckoning, etc.*

NOTE 1. To these classes belong *possum, queo, nēqueo, vāleo, dēbeo*; *cāro, cōgito, discerno, statuo, constituo, insituo, pāro*; *cōnor, nitor, tendo, contendo, tento, māturo, prōpero, aggredior, persēvērō*;—*capī, incipio, pergo, dēstino, dēstino, intermitto, parco, recūso*; *sōleo, assuesco, consuesco, insuesco*; *audeo, vīdeor, mētuo, rēformido, timeo, horreo, dubito*;—*audior, crēdor, existimor, fēror, nēgor, nuntior, pērhībeor, putor, trador, jūbeor, videor, and cōgor*.

NOTE 2. When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse, habēri, judicāri, vidēri*, etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative; as, *Sōlet tristis vidēri*; *aude sapiens esse*; *capit mihi molestus esse*; *dēbes esse diligens*; *pōtest liber esse*; and so also *mērētur, scil. dīcīt liber esse*.

NOTE 3. The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *fūge, aufer, cāve, parce, memento*; *pāveo, rēfūgio, quero, urgeo, lāborō, amo, gaudeo, fāro, calleo, sūmo, mitto, rēmitto, pātor, jūro, conjūro, pugno, nātus*, and some other verbs, especially to denote a *wish or purpose*; as, *Introitū vidēre*. Ter. *Non te frangere persēquor*. Hor. *Non pōpūlāre pēnātes vēnimus*. Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

REMARK 1. Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut, ne*, etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam ne dicēret, recūsavit*. Cic.

REM. 2. The passives *dicor, trador, fēror, existimor, rēpōrior, videor*, etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Māter Pausānias eo tempore vixisse dīcītur*, or, *Dīcītur eo tempore mātrē Pausānias vixisse*, The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *videor*, see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntiātur*, and very common with the compound tenses, *trādītum est, prōdītum est*, etc., and with the participle future passive; as, *crēdendū est, intelligendū est*, etc.; as, *Quōrum nēmīnem tālem fuisse crēdendū*, etc. Cic.

REM. 3. The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

REM. 4. The verbs to *wish or desire, volo, nolo, mālō*; *cupio, opto, stūdeo*, have a twofold construction:—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them, when the subject remains the same; and when followed by *esse, habēri*, etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. } We say, therefore, *volo erūdītum fieri*, and on the other hand, *volo te erūdītum fieri*, and *volo me erūdītum fieri*. So, } *Vo is esse, quem tu me esse voluisti*. Cic. *Cupio me esse clementem, cupio—*

me non dissolutum vidēri. Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cipio esse clēmens nec dissolutus vidēri*.—*Omnis hōmīnes qui sese student prestāre cēteris animābus*, etc. Sall.

NOTE 4. *Volo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me amāri volo*, I wish to be beloved; *hoc velim intelligi*, I wish this to be understood; and also with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished; as, *Lēgātī quod erant appellātī superbius, Cōrīnthum patres vestri*—extinctum esse *vōluerunt*. Cic.; but it occurs most frequently with the omission of *esse*; as, *hoc factum volo*; *nunc illos commōnitōes velim*: so, *patriam extinctam cipit*.

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiving, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom, which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject remains; as, *Phāsēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospites, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus*. Catull. *Quia retulit Ajax esse Jōvis nēpos*, instead of *se esse Jōvis nēpōtem*. Ovid. *Sensit mēdīos dēlapsus in hostes*, instead of *se dēlapsum esse*. Virg.

## THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like; as,

*Vidēbat, id non posse fieri*, He saw that that could not be done. Nep. *Sentit animus, se suā vi, non aliēnā, mōvēri*. Cic. *Audivi te vēnīre*. *Me in ejus potestate dixi fore*. Id. *Affirmant militum jacere animos*. Liv. *Sepe venit ad aures meas, te istud nimis crebro dicere*. Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Pērūsiā pugnātā (esse), quidam auctōres sunt*. Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others; as, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, nescio, censeo, spero, despero, cogito, fādo, credo, arbitror, pūlo, optinor, dūco, stātuo, mēmīni, recordor, oblitiscor, opinio est, spes est*, etc.;—*dīco, trādo, prōdo, scribo, rēfēro, narro, nūntio, confirmo, nēgo, ostendo, indicō, dōceo, certībrem, faciō, dēmonstro, pērhībeo, prēmīto, pollicēor, spondeo*, etc.; but with most of these a different construction often occurs. See § 273

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their verbs in the infinitive, are those which are directly dependent on the verbs of saying and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see § 286, 1.

NOTE 3. (a.) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the subject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te suspīcor eisdem rēbus, quibus me ipsum, commōvēri*. If the verb is expressed we must say, *eisdem rēbus commōvēri, quibus (ēgo) ipse commōveor*. So, also, in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the subjunctive, (see § 286, 2.); as, (*Verres*) *aiebat se tantūdem aestimasse, quanti Sacerdōtem, for quanti Sacerdos aestimasset*. Cic. *Confitetur se in eā parte fuisse quā te, quā virum omni lūde dignum patrem tuum*. Id.

(b.) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see § 256, R. 5, (a.) But sometimes when *quam* connects a clause to a preceding proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction follows that precedes *quam*, even when the verb of the latter clause is expressed; as, *Nōne tibi affirmāvi quidvis me pōtius perperessurum, quam ex Itāliā ad bellum ciuile me exiturum*; instead of *quam exirem* or *quam ut exirem*. Cic.

(c.) In long speeches in the *oratio obliqua*, relative clauses, having a verb of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the accusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the one with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving,

but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illorum urbem ut præpugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium; for et apud eam jam bis*, etc.—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of 'while,' see § 268, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia*.

NOTE 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs 'to promise' and 'to hope' are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, 'He promised to come,' is in Latin, *Præmisit se venturum* (scil. esse, see § 270, R. 3). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollicentur obsides dare*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

REMARK 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem auditum est, crocodilum violatum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of *Ægyptium crocodilum violasse*. Cic.

REM. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

REM. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis me flere*, If you wish me to weep. Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc. by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentimus nivem esse albam*, We perceive that snow is white. Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crêchant se negli*, They think they are neglected. Ter.

REM. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venire*, He said that Cæsar was coming. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venisse*, He said that Cæsar had come. See § 268, 2.

REM. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, *Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma rutilare vident*. Id. *Videbis collucere faces*. Id. *Nec Zephyros audis spirare*? Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sæpe hoc majores natu dicere audiri*. Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Medium video discedere cælum, palantesque polo stellas*. Virg.

REM. 3. The subject-accusative after verbs of saying, showing, and believing; as, *dico, nego, trado, fero, memoro, narro, nuntio, perhibeo, prædo, scribo, demonstro, ostendo, arguo, credo, puto, existimo*, and the like, and also after *jubeo, vëto*, and *prohibeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the object after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dicunt* (they or people say) *virum primum esse*, or *dicor vir probus esse*. So, *Vetâmur hoc facere*, instead of, *Nos hoc facere vetant*. Instead also of the impersonal *videtur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *videor, vidëris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *videor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (a.) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stātuo*, *constituo*, *dēcerno*, *tento*, *libēro*, *pāro*, *mēdītor*, *cāro*, *nātor*, *contendo*, *consilium cāpio*, *ānīmum* or *in ānīmum indūco*. Cf. § 271, N. 1. After *spērāram* do, I exert myself, *id, hoc*, or *illud āgo*, I endeavor, *nihil antiquius hābeo* or *dūco quam*, nothing is of more importance to me, and *video* for *cāro*, the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(b.) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *fācio*, *effīcio*, *perfīcio*, *evīnceo*, *pervīnceo*, *impetro*, *assēquor*, *consequor*, etc. But *fācere* 'to effect' occurs in Cic. Brut. 38, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. *Fācio* with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invitus quidem fēci*, *ut L. Flāminium e sēnātū ējicerem*, for *invitus ējēcī*. Cic.—*Fāc*, 'suppose' or 'granting,' and *effīcere*, 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *efficitur*, 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive. —*Fācere*, 'to introduce' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Laelium et Scipionem fācimus admirantes*. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, *Isocrātem Plātō laudārī fācit a Socrāte*. Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request*, *to demand*, *to admonish*, *to advise*, *to encourage*, *to command*, and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (a.) Such are *rōgo*, *oro*, *prēcor*, *pōro*; *posco*, *postūlo*, *flagito*; *mōneo*, *admōneo*, *commōneo*, *hortor*, *cōhortor*, *exhortor*, *suādeo*, *persuādeo*, *instīto*, (I instruct) *impello*, *cōgo*, *mando*, *præscribo*, *edico*, *dēcerno*, *lēgem do*, *censeo*, *perpello*, *excito*, *indico*, *impéro*, etc.; as, *Te non hortor solum, sed etiam oro, ut ista mente in república in incumbas*. Cic.

(b.) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prōteus pēcus ēgit alios visere montes*. Hor.

(c.) *Nuntio*, *scribo*, *mitto*, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hæc ut fācias, scribo*. Cic.

(d.) *Jūbeo* and *veto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut*. Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Castra mūnīre jubet*, scil. *mīlites*. Cæs. *Lex recte fācere jubet*, scil. *hōmīnes*. Cic. With the subjunctive the dative of the person sometimes follows *jūbeo*, as, *Britānnico jussit, exurgēret*. Tac.—*Impéro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo*, I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *dus* with *censē* expressed or understood; as, *Carthāginem dēlendum censēo*.

(e.) *Moneo* and *admoneo*, 'I remind,' and *persuadeo*, 'I convince' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (a.) In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

*Virginium animum Ap. Claudium legum expertum esse aiēbat: respicerent tribunal homines castellum omnium scellerum.* Liv.

(b.) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orābat ne se ut parricidam liberum averterentur: sibi vitam filius suā carērem fuisse, si....* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (b.)

4. (a.) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity*, commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *volo, nolo, malle, opto, permitto, potior, stuo, concedo, licet, praebeo, oportet*, and *necesse est*. Cf. § 271, R. 4. *Volo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nolo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(b.) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *oportet*; as, *Non oportuit relictae, scil. esse ancillas.* Ter. *Ut ut erat, mansum tamen oportuit, scil. esse.* Id. *Non putabant de tali viro suspicionibus oportere iudicari.* Nep.

(c.) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod*, 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 286, 3.

*Quod* is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bene, male, prudenter facio; bene, male fit; evenit, accidit*, and the like; *praetereo, mitto*; and generally *adde, accedit*, etc.; as, *Bene facis, quod me adjuvas.*

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum beneficium est naturae, quod necesse est mori.*

(3.) After verbs signifying an affection of the mind, and the outward expression of such feeling; and also after verbs of praising, censuring, accusing, and thanking.

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, delector, gratum, or jucundum est mihi, angor, doleo, aere, moeste, or gratiter fero, succenseo, paenitet, miror, admīror, gloriōr, gratulor, gratias ago, quēror, indignor*, and others of similar meaning; as, *Scipio saepe quērebatur, quod omnibus in rebus homines diligentiores essent, ut, etc.* Cic. *Gaudeo quod te interpellavi.* Id. *Quod sperāns, quod vocem mittis, quod formas hominum habētis, indignantur.* Liv. *Cato mirari se aiēbat, quod non rideret hāruspez, hāruspicem quum videret.* Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, doleo, miror*, the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod*; but sometimes this distinction is reversed. *Gratulor* is commonly joined with *quod*.



NOTE 8. A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *addo*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *facio* joined with an adverb; as, *Addo quod p̄bes tibi crescit omnes*. Hor. *Addo huc quod mercem sine fūcis gestat*. Id. *Fecit hūmāniter Licinius, quod ad me vesp̄ri vēnit*. Cic. In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought*, so that it resembles an abstract noun; by *quod*, with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact*. To the latter is frequently joined *hoc, id, illud, istud, or huc*, etc.; as, *Illud quodque nō accēdit incommōdum, quod M. Junius dēst*. Cic. *Huc accēdebat, quod, etc.* Sall. *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grātissimum mihi est, quod ad me tua m̄nu scripsisti*; but with the infinitive, *Grātissimum mihi est te bōne vāl̄re*.

(a.) *Quod*, with the indicative, in the sense of *as to*, or *with regard to*, is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Aḡtimem̄d̄nem am̄l̄ari p̄tas, fall̄eris*. Nep. *Quod scribis te velle scire, qui sūt reip̄b̄lic̄is st̄tus, summa d̄ssensio est*. Cic. Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(b.) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc, id, etc.*, unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mihi quidem videntur hōm̄ines hac re maxime sellis pr̄st̄are, quod loqui possunt*. Cic.

NOTE 9. The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender:—

(a.) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as *Tōtum hoc philōsōph̄ari disp̄cet*. Cic. *Quum viv̄re ipsum turpe sūt nob̄is*. Id. *Me hoc ipsum nihil āḡere d̄lectat*. Id. *Meum intelliḡere nullā pecuniā vendo*. Petr. See § 205, R. 8.

(b.) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, *Cūjus non d̄mic̄are fuit vinc̄ere*. Val. Max.

(c.) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5.) and 229, R. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te accēpisse meas l̄t̄ras gaud̄e*. Ter. See §§ 232, (2.) and 273, 5.

(d.) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vid̄re est persp̄c̄ere aliquid*. Cic. See § 210.

(e.) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(f.) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho inter opt̄ime vāl̄re et gr̄viss̄ime agr̄t̄are, nihil prorsus dic̄ebant int̄resse*. Cic. *Quod cr̄imen dicis pr̄ter āmasse meum?* Ovid. *Inv̄niet nil sibi l̄ḡatum, pr̄ter pl̄r̄are*. Hor.

(g.) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Aud̄ito r̄gem in Siciliam tend̄re*. Sall.

(h.) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *du*, (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Loricam d̄nat h̄b̄ere viro*. Virg.; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs; as,

*Quidam, poeta nōmīnātus.* A certain one, called a poet. Cic. *Cātilōnā nō oblīta leonē,* The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Fāventes rēbus Carthāgīniensium,* Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sidēra palmas.* Virg. *Accūsātus rei cāpitālis.* Cic. *Primā dicte mīhi summā dicende cūmēnd.* Hor. *Omina doctus.* Stat. *Cāsus ābies visāra mārinos.* Id. *Alitūri arbōre montes.* Ovid. *Parcendum est tēneris.* Juv. *Utendum est sētāte.* Ovid. *L. Brūtus arcens rēditu tyrannūm, in praeiō concidit.* Cic.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

*Stetit hoc dicens attollit se.* Virg. *Tum ad Thrāseam in hortis āgentem missus est.* Tac. *Turnum fūgientem hāc terra vidēbit?* Virg. *Qui missus ab Argis Itālā consēderat urbe.* Id. *Lāmia mūnere cōclitātis perfunctus, pētū praeiuram.* Cic. *Jussus cum fide pēnas luam.* Hor. *Jūvenis mēdicos mōritūrus in hostes irruit.* Virg. *Pēritūrus injecit sēse in agmen.* Id. *Illā tibi ventūra bella expēdiēt.* Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1-3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English 'having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle 'being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclāsīt hiems, et terruit Austēr euntes,* .... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via falsū euntes.* Id.

— REM. 2. (a.) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant, orantes vēniā,*....to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurypylū scitāntem orācula Phaebi mittimus.* Id. (b.) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans,* from ignorance; *mētuenē,* from fear; *consulātum pētens,* in his suit for the consulship; *omne mālū nascens facile opprimitur,*—in its origin.

REM. 3. (a.) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nōtus evōlut piceā tectus caligine*....covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 113, 708; 6, 385; Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as, *Mānu pectus percussa dēcorū, flāventesque abscissa cōmas,* i. e. *percūtiens, abscindens.* Virg. *Tunsæ pectōra palmis.* Id. So, also, *sōlitus, ausus, fissus,* and the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum cantu sōlātā lābōrem.* Id. *Vox auditur fractos sōnitus imitāta tūbārū.* Id. *Divitiācūs Cēsārem complexus, obsecrāre cōpit.* Cæs. *Concrētōs sanguine crines gērens.* Virg. *Tonsis in valībūs,* i. e. *quæ tondentur.* Id.

(b.) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Ezercitūm fundit fūgāque, fūsum persequitur.* Liv. This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hābeo*, with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination; as, *cognitūm, perspectum, perceptum, comprēhensum, explorātum, sūtūtūm, constitūtūm, delēbērātūm, persuāsum mīhi hābeo,* etc., forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognōv, perspezi, percēpi,* etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdii dētūm perspectum* or *cognitūm hābeo*; for *perspezi,* etc., I perceive, know. *Persuāsum mīhi hābeo* and *persuāsissimūm hābeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mīhi persuāsi* or *persuāsum mīhi est.* When *hābeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me hortūris ut absolvā;* *hābeo absolūtā* *sulve ēpos ad Cēsārem;* i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cāro,*

*habeo, possideo, and missum facio*, are sometimes so construed with participles as, *Missam iram faciet*, for *mittet*. Ter. *Hostes victos dare*, for *vinctos*. Sall.

REM. 5. (a.) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *is* or *us*, the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Ante Rōmam conditam*, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consilia urbis delendæ*, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, II. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad, ante, ab, post, propter*; *ab* and *ex*; as, *Hæ lictæ rectitæ magnum luctum fecerunt*, The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tarentum captum*, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob receptam Hannibalem*, On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque cæsi regis capitebus decus*, The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam domitam*. Eutrop. *Ante Epaminondam natum*. Nep. *Post Christum natum*. *Ab conditâ urbe ad liberatam*. Liv. The oblique cases only of participles in *us* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(b.) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, *Tentatum per dictatorem, ut ambo patricii consules crederentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit*: i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (c.)

(c.) The English 'without' with a verbal substantive; as, 'without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or particle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercitum nunquam per insidiâs itinera duxit, nisi perspicillatus locorum situs*, without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athēnienses non expectato auxilio adversus ingentem Persarum exercitum in prælium egrédiantur*, without waiting for assistance. So, *nullâ præstitutâ diæ*, Without fixing any time. Cic. *Miserum est nihil perficientem angere*. Id.

REM. 6. (a.) The participle in *us*, especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jovem Ammonem pergīt consulturus de origine suâ*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(b.) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since, when, although, etc.*, is employed; as, *Plura locuturos abire nos jussit*, When or although we intended to say more. *Herculem Germani, utri in prælium cœnunt*. Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egréditur castris Rōmānus, vallum invasturus, ni cōpia pugnae fieret*. And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Dedit mihi quantum maxime potuit, daturus amplius, si potuisset*, i. e. *ac dedisset amplius*. Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (a.) The participle in *us*, also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake, etc.* Such are *do, trado, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, permitto, concedo, redimo, conduco, loco, habeo, accipio, suscipio, relinquo, cæro, depono, rogo*; as, *Testamentum tibi tradit legendum*, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos trucidandos Cethego*. Cic. *Quod utendum accēperis, reddito*. Luc. *Unon muros dirutos a Lysandro reficiendos curavit*,—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(b.) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar optatum ad diripiendum militibus concessit*.—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Tristitiam et morbus trādam prōtervis in mare Caspium portare ventis*. Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Esse dare*. Cic.

REM. 8. (a.) The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety*; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility*; as,

*Is vénérandus a nobis et cōlendus est*, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Dēlenda est Carthāgo*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc spērandā fuērunt*. Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Urūm pāce nobis an bello esset atendum*. Cic.

(b.) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas dissimulanda sibi*, You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto principe hujus maxime conservandi gēneris et nōminis*. Cic.

REM. 9. The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occipitū sum in lītēris scribēndis*, in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Triginta magnos volvendis menibus orbes impērio explebit*. Virg. *Volvenda diēs*. Id. *Volventibus annis*. Id.

REM. 10. After participles in *dus*, the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab*. See § 225, III.

REM. 11. The neuter of the participle in *dus*, joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of necessity; as, *Audendum est*, We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc pācem orandum, nunc—arma repōnendum, et bellum extētile cavendum*. Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtutem laudandum est*, we usually find *virtus laudanda est*. The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Utendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quum suo cuique iudicio sit atendum*.

REM. 12. In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility*, except when joined with *vix*; as, *Vix optandum nobis vidēbatur*. Cic. *Vix erat crēdendum*, i. e. *vix crēdi pōtērat*. Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of possibility as well as in that of necessity.

3. (a.) A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

*Cūrio, ad focum sēdenti* (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnīus attulerunt*. Cic. *Tridui viam progressi, rursus rēvertērunt*; for, *quum progressi essent*. Cæsar. *Diōnysius tyrānnus, Syracūsīs expulsus, Ōbrinthis puēris dōcēbat*. Cic. *Diōnysius, cultros mētens tonsōrios, candēti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum*. Id. *Risus interdum ita rēpente erumpit, ut eum cūpientis tēnere nōqueāmus*. Id. *Acōniz abituras congregantur in loco certo*. Plin.

NOTE 1. If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

NOTE 2. (a.) The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as*, *when*, *after*, *although*, *since*, *because*, etc.; as, *Nemo observat lānam nisi laborantem*. Sen. *Ut dōulus, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit*,—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servilius Ahala Sp̄rium Maelium, regnum appetentem, intērēmit*,—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. Cic. (b.) When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ea dōna dicenda, quibus abundantem licet esse miseritimum*,—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Sēdulus absurdum esse dicebat, ignorāre rēgem, quid spērans aut pētens vēnerit*,—with what hope or request he had come. Liv.

(b.) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the act denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille (Arion) sedens citharam tñnet*. Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in ægrum se fémur*. Virg. i. e. *hoc dicit et attollit*. But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fūgāvit*. Submersas obrue puppes, i. e. *Submerge et obrue*. Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tāmen*. Later writers in such case join the particles *quamquam*, *quomvis*, *etiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsarem milites, quomvis rēcūsantem ultro in Africam suni sēcūti*. Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes*, *audientes*, for *ii qui adstant*, *audiunt*, i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(c.) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tēnentem*. Plin. In English the infinitive is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audiui te cānentem*, I heard you sing. *Audiui te cānēre*, would be, I heard that you sung. *Vidēmus Pōlyphēmum vastā se mōle mōventem*. Virg.

NOTE 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amāvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Mētus pārendi sibi*, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effēror studiō patres vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Pētendi consulātum grātiā*. Sall. *Vēnit ad rēctpiendum pecūnias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *du*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occūpandi*, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*,—of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas erūdiendi grātiā missus*,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dōmandum*. Virg. *Ades ad impērandum*. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as, *Multum intērest inter dāre et accipēre*. Sen. *Non solum ad discendum prōpensū sumus, sed etiam ad dōcendum*. Cic.

— II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendû*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendû*, Plans for destroying the city. *Rêpârândarum classium causâ* (Suet.), for *rêpârândi classes*. *Perpétiendo lâbôri idôneus*. Colum. *Ad dèfendendam Rômam ab oppugnandâ Căpuâ dăces Rômanos abstrâhere*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pôtior*, and rarely of *mêdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc ütendâ idôneâ*. Ter. *Justitiâ fruendæ causâ*. Cic. *In mănere fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem pôtiundorum castrorum vênérant*. Cæs. *Aquæ salubritâtè mēdendisq; corpôribus nôbiles*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendû râtio* (Cic.), not *âlcijus*. *Artem ei vëra et falsa dijûd candû* (Id.), not *vërôrum dijûd candorum*: because it would not be known whether *âlcijus* and *vërôrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ab-lative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when it is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

— REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

*Amor habendi*. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet nâtura, ut âliarum omnium rerum, sic vivendi môtum*. Cic. *Barbâra consuetûdo hómînum immô-landorum*. Id. *Postremo Cătilina dissimulandi causâ aut sui expurgandi, in senitum vênit*. Sall. *Inta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nômînis Rômâni exstinguendi*. Id. *Venandi studiôsi*. Cic. *Certus eundi*. Virg. *Insuetus nâvîgandi*. Cæs. *Pêritus civitâtis rêgendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *côpia*, *cupiditas*, *dêsiderium*, *difficultas*, *finis*, *făcultas*, *forma*, *grâtia*, *illêcebra*, *libido*, *locus*, *licentia*, *môdus*, *mâtéria*, *mos*, *occăsiô*, *ôtium*, *pôtestas*, *râtio*, *spâtium*, *spes*, *studiûm*, *tempus*, *ûsus*, *vënia*, *vis*, *vôluntas*.

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus ômnia hônesta atque inhônesta vendêre mos erat*. With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est âbire*, It is time, i. e. *tempestivum est*, it is proper to go.

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *desidus, cōpichus, studiōsus, pēritus, impritius, inscītus, certus, conscius, ignōrus, rādus*, etc. See § 212, R. 1, (2.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund; as, *Exemplōrum eligendī pōtestas*, instead of *exempla eligendī*, or, *exemplōrum eligendōrum*. Cic. *Eārum rerum instigandī rātio*. Id. *Fūcillas agrōrum condōnandī*. Cic. *Nōminandī istōrum erit cōpia*. Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui*, even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *dī*; as, *Quōniam tui videndī est cōpia*. Plaut. *Non vereor, ne quis hoc me vestri adhortandī causā magnifice loqui existimet*. Liv. *In castra vēnerunt sui purgandī causā*.—With the demonstrative pronouns, *ejus, hujus, illius*, the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ejus*, though referring to a woman, has the participle in *dī*, not in *da*; as, *Ego ejus videndī cupidus rectā consequor*. Ter. *Tis* in the first example and *ejus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency or purpose*, with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Rēgium impērium initio conservandae libertātis fuit*. Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quae postquam glōriosa mōdo, nēque belli patrandī cognōvit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Causā* or *grātiā* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *dī* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Māneat provinciālibus pōtentiam suam tāli mōdo ostentandī*, scil. *fūcillas*. Tac. *Quum habērem in animo nāvigandī*, scil. *prōpōsitum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness or fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta empōrētica est inātilis* scribendo. Plin. *Cāpessendae reipūblīcae hābilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumviri accipiundo, nec scribae rēfērundo sufficērent*. Liv. *Lōcum oppido condendo cāpere*. Id. *Non fuit consiliū agrum cōlendo aut vēnando intentum atq̄tem agere*. Sall. *Tibērius quāsi firmandae vllētudinī in Campāniam concessit*. Tac. *Quum solvendo aere aliēno reipūblīca non esset*. Liv. *Quum solvendo citilītes non essent*,—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Stūdēre, intentum esse, tempus impendēre, tempus consūmere* or *insūmere, optam dāre, sufficere, adis esse, deesse, esse*, signifying to *serve for*, to be *adequate to*, and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idōneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 8.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Dēcēviri lēgibus scribendis*, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Cōmitia creandis dēcēviris*. Id. *Triumetros agro dando creat*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut*, than by the dative; as, *Pēcus ad vescendum hōminibus apta*. Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad*, *to*, or *inter*, during or amid, and sometimes *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*; as,

*Ad poenitendum pręperat, qui cito jędcat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum,* While drinking. Just. *Ad tolerandos faciendus labores.* Quint. *Ad castra facienda.* Cic. *Ob abolevendum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, (*ab*), *de*, *e*, (*ex*), or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

*Aristotēlem non deterruit a scribendo.* Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non video a defendendis hominibus discēdere.* Cic. *Crescit eundo.* Virg. *Rem quarum mercaturis faciendis.* Cic. *Oratōnem Lātinam legendis nostris officis plenis.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro capulando.* Plaut. *Cum loquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum officium referendę grātię magis necessarium est,* instead of *relatiōne grātię.* § 256. Cic. *Nec jam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *Is finis fuit ulciscendę Germanici morte,*—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time. § 253.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *a* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Non Gręcis servitum matribus ibo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Te id admōnitum venio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the purpose of the motion; as,

*Cubitum discessimus.* Cic. *Ire dejectum mōnimenta regię.* Hor. *Lęgati vērunt questum injurias, et res repētum.* Liv. *Quum spectatum ludos iret.* Nep. So after participles; as, *Patriam defensum revocatus.* Nep. *Spectatum admissi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um*, considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of purpose arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, *Do filiam nuptum.* Ter. *Vos ultum injurias hortor.* Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glycērium, quid agis? cur te is perditum?* Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut. *Bōnorum pręparę ereptum eunt.* Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the



supine is formed; as, *Ne bonos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iri* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injuriis festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causæ* or *gratiæ*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *quæ*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitu atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Factia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile memoratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditu*, *cognitu*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu* and *natu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis, major, minor, maximus*, and *minimus natu*. In *magno natu*, of an advanced age, and *maximo natu filius*, the eldest son, *natu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis, arduus, asper, bonus, deformis, dignus, indignus, dulcis, durus, facilis, difficilis, fedus, gravis, honestus, horrendus, incredibilis, jucundus, injucundus, magnus, memorabilis, mollis, proclivis, pulcher, rarus, turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nefas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastidicienda sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 260.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci attila*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proseriptione dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint. With *opus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est maturato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligentiam*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis, difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *quæ* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

— § 277. I. A verbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bene mōves*, You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes*, Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Māle narrando*. Ter. *Longe dissimilis*. Cic. *Valde bene*. Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpulus lāle rex*, for *lāte regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum*, Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noster*,—entirely ours that is, devoted to us. Id. *Hōmērus plāne brātor*. Id. *Admōdum puella*. Liv. *Lāte tyrannus*. Hor. *Grāvibus sūperne icibus conficiābantur*, i. e. *sūperne accidentibus*. Tac. *Multum circa civitatum*, i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *sāpienter* for *cum sāpentiā*; *hic* for *in hoc lōco*; *bene* for *in bōno mōdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnihil*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *āliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non pārere nōluit*, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignōra māli*, Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est*, It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc ille non vidit*, And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli*, some; *nonnumquam*, sometimes. *Non*, before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hōmo non indoctus*, i. e. *hōmo sine doctus*. *Non semel*, i. e. *sāpius*; *non ignōro*, *non nescio*, *non sum nescius*, I know very well. *Qui mortem in mālis pōnit*, *non pōtest eam non timere*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nemo non videt*, Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque hac non evēnerunt*, And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quidem*, the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fugio ne hos quidem mōres*: and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque—neque*, *neque—nēve*, or *non—non*, these negative particles are equivalent to *aut—aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus*. Virg. *Nēmīnem, non re, non verbo, non vultu denique offendit*. Cic. *Nullius rei nēque præs, nēque mōnceps factus est*. Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jura te non noctūram hōmīni nēmīni*. Plaut.

(c.) *Nemo, nullus, nihil*, and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nemo*, some one; *nemo non*, every one; *non nuli*, some; *nullus non*, every; *non nihil*, something; *nihil non*, every thing; *non numquam*, sometimes; *numquam non*, at all times. So, *nusquam non*, every where, but instead of *nonnusquam, ālicubi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mōdo* or *non solum*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem*, if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,

*Mihi non modo irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non modo non irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, or *Mihi non modo irasci, sed dolere quidem impune non licet*. Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum senatus non solum iudicare rempublicam, sed ne lugere quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non modo* when followed by *sed* or *verum*, with *etiam*, and also after *vix*; as, *Qui non modo ea futura timet, verum etiam fert, sustinetque presentia*. Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hæc genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris reperiuntur*. These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Facile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ facile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo regionis illius virtute facile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *modo—modo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Modo hoc, modo illud dicit; modo huc, modo illuc volat*. Instead of the second *modo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *illiquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita republicâ aversi, ut, etc.*—*Simul—simul*, 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quâ—quâ* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *modo—modo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Eruptunt sæpe citia amicorum tum in ipsos amicos, tum in diânes*. Cic. *Hæc (beneficia) tum in universam rempublicam, tum in singulos cives conferuntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *verò, certe, etiam, quæque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortana quum in reliquis rebus, tum præcipue in bello plurimum potest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingeniî atque eloquentiæ multo molestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pater moriens quum tutoribus et propinquis, tum legibus, tum æquitati magistratuum, tum iudiciis vestris commendatum præstitit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum verò*.

REM. 10. *Non modo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—verum etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non modo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by 'I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam* or *non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico oratoris, sed hominis*.

REM. 11. *Tum—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by 'the—the' and comparatives; as, *Vitiosus quam plurimum bibit, tam maxime sitit*. The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quisque pessime fecit, tam maxime tutus est*. Sall.—*Tam—quam quod maxime* signifies, 'as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, 'not so much—as,' or 'less—than'; as, *Prævincia non tam gratioſa et illustris, quam negotioſa ac moleſta*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non magis—quam* are equivalent to *æque—ac*, 'as much as,' but in *non magis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non dâcis magis quam*

*mūltis mūnia exsequēbātur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *magna*.

(a.) *Sic* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tamen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Prædii tantum est, ut ne mirus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut—ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque illa ut semper fuit apertissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dénique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accēdit*, *huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dénique* is followed by *postremo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dénique* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus evēniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus—at*, 'if not—yet;' and *sin minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated.—The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non cūrābat, quid homines de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me elidunt* or *eliderunt*; but 'in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat eluisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *illa*. See § 207, R. 23, (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *nequid*, 'and not yet'; *nihilum*, 'no one yet'; *nihilum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vidum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vidum epistolam tuam legēram, quum ad me Curtius venit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut puto*, *ut censeo*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Credo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem dicere*; *hæc cum eo, partim ab eo dictæ*. Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *Quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra*. Cic. *Cis Padum utraq.* Liv Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extraque munitiões*. B. Civ. 3, 72.

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

*Quid dicam de thesauro omnium rerum, memoria?* Hoc apparet in bestiis, volucribus, nantibus, agrestibus, cicuribus, feris, ut se ipsæ diligant. Cic. Sapissime inter me et Scipionem de amicitia disserébatur. Id. Quid faceres si in aliquam domum villamve venisses? Id. Nihil per iram aut cupiditatem actum est. Id. Themistocles non minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam exco-gitandis erat. Nep.

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et*, etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et*, *nec—nec*, etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eorum et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis vigeat industria*. Cic.—*Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid intersit inter populum—civem, et inter constantem, severum et gravem*. Cic. *Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime ferunt et inter P. Decium*. Liv.

5. (a.) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quas nemora, aut quos agor in specus*, (Hor.) for, in *quas nemora aut in quos specus agor*. So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.—

(b.) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eadem opinione fui, quâ reliqui omnes*, (Cic.), properly in *quâ reliqui omnes fuerunt*.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (a.) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(b.) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Onctidant venti, fugiuntque nubes*. The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non cœquit sol, et tangit ros*. Varr. *Laus decem per dies, facti sunt, neque res ulla prætermissa est*. Cic. *Vides, ut aliâ steterit nive candidum Socrate, nec jam sustineant unus silvas librorum, gelique flumina constiterint acuto*. Hor. *Intellegitis et animum ei præsto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse*. Cic. *Gèneri animantium omni est a naturâ tributum, ut se tueâter, declinetque ea, quæ nocturna videantur*. Id. *Aut nemo, aut Cato sapiens fuit*. Id. *Pulvis et umbra sumus*. Hor. *Si tu et Tullia vâletis, ego et Cicero vâlemus*. Cic. *Aggère jacto turribusque constitutis*. Cæs. *Clârus et honorâtus vir, An illustrious and honorable man*. Id. *Cæsar Rêmos cœhortâtus, libéraliterque oratione præsecutus*. Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem cœlui et dilexi*. Cic. *Belgæ spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem*. Cæs. *Nâvibus junctis, râtibusque complartibus factis*. Id. *Lêge, vel tabellas redde*. Plaut. *Allobroges trans Rhodanum vicis possessionesque habebant*. Cæs. *Quum triumphum egeris, censorque fuëris, a bberis latus*. Id. *Quum ad oppidum accessisset, castrâque ibi pôneret*. Cæs.

*Ades dñm et omittite timorem.* Cic. *Ea vidēre ac perspicere potestis.* Id. *Grāviter et cōpiōse diciasse dicitur.* Id. *Cum fratre as sine.* Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Cui carmina cordi, nūmērosque intendere nervis.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clarum nōmen ardrum, sed prōbitas magnos ingēniumque fātū.* Ovid. *Philosophi nōgant quemquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapiētem.* Cic. *Glōria virtutem tamquam umbra sequitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Mea et reipublicae interest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive es Rōmæ, sive in Epiro.* Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.) *In Mettū descendat iudicis aures, et patris et nostras.* Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like manner, *Hannibal nō aliter vinci potuit, quam morā.*

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, *Disce nec invidias.* Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunctions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stuporem hominis, vel dicam pecūdis, vidēte.* Cic. *Nec scitis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multis* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multis et magnas arbores,* Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is*, introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 26, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (a.) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *velim, nōlim*, whether I would or not; *maxima minima*, the greatest as well as the least; *prima postrēma*, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos adire*; *ire redire*, to go to and fro. *Ædificiis omnibus publicis privatis, sacris profanis sic pēpercit.* Cic. *Nam glōriam, hōnorem, impērium bonus ignavus æque sibi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(b.) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consules declarati sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentulo L. Triario, questoribus urbanis.* Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Adstant amici, propinqua.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsunt, queruntur Siculi.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non modo Curiis, Catōnibus, Pompeiis, antiquis illis, sed his recentibus, Mariis et Didis et Cæliis commemorandis jacebant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not conclude the enumeration with *et alii*, *et reliqui*, *et cetera*, etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *alii*, *reliqui*, *cetera*, etc. But though *et*, *ac* and *atque* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* frequently occurs in this position; as, *Precor ut ea res vobis pacem, tranquillitatem, dium, concordiamque afferat.* Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 3, 9.

(c.) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et*, *atque*, or *que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case obtaining the meaning of the adversative *sed*; as, *Mōnere capit Pōrum, ne ultima experiri perseveraret, dederetque se victori.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, *Et pecunia persuadet, et gratia, et auctoritas decens, et dignitas, et postrēma aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc et turpe, nec tamen tutum.* Cic. *Nēque nata est, et aterne est.* Id. *Et tibi et mihi voluptati fore.* Id. Before clauses the disjunctive *cor*

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa aut inevitabit aut dehortabitur*. Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, simul...simul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum...tum, quum...tum*, are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu*, rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed; as, *Mars sive Mavors*. Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nemo, nihil, nullus*, and *numquam, neque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, and *usquam*. But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam*, see § 207, R. 31, (a.); as, *Ekra quidem cédunt, et dies, et menses, et anni: nec præteritum tempus unquam révertitur*. Cic. *Sénatus décrēvit, dicerent opēram consules, ne quid respública detrimēti capēret*. Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *igitur, verum, verumtamen, sed*, and *sed tamen*, indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *itāque*.

REM. 11. *Vēro* and *autem* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincere scit Hannibal, victoriā autē nescit*. Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro*; as, *aliēna vitia videt, sua non videt*. But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quāsi nunc id agātur,—ac non hoc querātur*. Cic.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209 R. 13:—with the dative, § 238, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ 279. 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (a.) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words*. In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(b.) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb*.

(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, *Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sērvānos plūrimū pōtērat*. Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, *Cito ārescit lacrima, pressertim in aliēnis mōlis*, Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. *Sua etiā insipientes et suam culpam in sēnēctūtem cōfērunt*. Id.

(e.) If there be no emotive or pathetic word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the significant word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*. Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus accidērat numquam*. Id. *Quod aliud iter hābērent nullum*. Id. *Quæ virtus ex prōtēdendo est appellāta prūdētia*. Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, ētēnim, ac, at, atque, atqui, nēque* or *nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, vērūm*, and the relatives *quāre, quōcirca, and quāobrem*.

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *U*, even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *viz, pōne*, and *prōpe*, and also after the negatives *nullus, nēmo, nihil*, and the word *tantum*. In Cicero, *itāque* stands first and *igitur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) *Autem, ēnim, and vērō* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Ille ēnim revōcātus resistere cōpit*. Cæs. *Ego vērō vellem, affuisse*. Cic. *Incrēdibile est ēnim, quā sit*, etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Our non de integro autem dātum*. Id. The enclitics *que, ne, ve*, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, *Rōmam Cito dēmigrāvit*, in fōrōque esse cōpit; and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob*. So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque*. Cic.

(d.) *Quidem* and *quōque*, when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem vērō Oppianicus*. Cic. *Me scilicet maxime, sed proxime illum quōque fēfelligem*. Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, *Ne ad Cūtōnem quidem prōvōcābo*. Cic.—*Quidem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibique persuāde, esse te quidem mihi cārissimum, sed nullo fōre cārīōrem, si, etc.*, instead of, *te cārissimum quidem mihi esse*.—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quidem*; as, *Ne in fānis quidem*. Cic. *Ne si dubitētur quidem*. Id. *Ne quum in Sicilia quidem fuit*. Id.; and even *Ne cuius rei arguēretur quidem*.—So, also, in Cicero, *non nisi*, 'only,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, *Et tu, pōtes nam*, etc.. Hor. *Vivos et rōtūrat*



*ungues*. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it, as, *Audre et videor pios errare per lacos*. Id. So, *Auctius atque diu melius fœdere*. Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *ve* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrâ dum sequiturque mari*, instead of *terrâ matrique*. Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, & distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, *Hominibus hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt*. Cic. *Equites alii alio dilapsi sunt*. Liv. *Ligipue virum vir*. Virg. *Manus manum lavat*. Petr. So, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Sequere quo tua te natura docet*. *Suum se negotium legere dicunt*.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum tacent, clamant*. Cic. *Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet*. Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *aito*, introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, '*Non nosti quid pater*,' inquit, '*Chrysippus dicat*.' Hor. '*Quid*,' aito, '*tua crimina prodixit*?' Ovid. When a nominative is added to inquit, it usually follows this verb; as, *Mihi vero*, inquit Cotta, *videtur*. Cic.—*Dicit* and *dixit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (a.) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla officii præcepta*. Cic. *Tuum erga dignitatem meam stultum*. Id.

(b.) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ecce res*. Cæs. *His ipsis verbis*. Cic. *Media nox*. Cæs. *Relliqua Egyptus*. Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clarissimus*. Cic. *Di immortales*. *Res innumerabiles*. *Vis tempestatis*. Cæs.

9. (a.) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes irritamenta malorum*. Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cicero consul*; *C. Curioni tribuno plebis*; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius poeta*; *Plato philosophus*; *Dionysius tyrannus*; and such epithets as *vir honestissimus*; *homo doctissimus*. But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, *rex Deiotarus*; and so the title *Imperator* after it became permanent.

(b.) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *prænomen* stands first, next the *nomen* or name of the *gens*, third the *cognomen* or name of the *familia*, and last the *agnomen*; as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*. The *prænomen* is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nomen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (a.) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

*Populi Romani laus est*. Cic. *Laudis avidi, pecuniæ liberales*. Sall. *Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus æquus*. Sen. *Momentum vere perennius*. Hor. *Hanc tibi dono do*. Ter.—*Ad meridiem spectans*. Cic. *Extra periculum*. Id.

(b.) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last, as, *Incerta fortuna*. Liv. *Nec tibi plus cordis, sed minus oris inest*. Ovid.

REMARK. This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives, is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *frātris tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *animi mōtus, animi morbus, corpōris partes, terræ mōtus*.—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends; as, *and significātiōe* *litr̄arūm*, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.—The genitive dependent on *causā* or *gratiā*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *glōriæ causā mortem obire*; *emōlūmenti suæ gratiā*.

(c.) When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A primā luce ad sextam hōram*. Liv. *Ad animi mei lætitiā*. Cic. *Ad bene beatēque vivendum*. Id.

(d.) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullā in re*. Cic. *Iustus de causis*. Id. *Suos inter æquales*. Id. *Hanc ob causam*. Id. *Magno cum mōtu*. Id. *Quā in urbe*. Id. *Eā in re*. Id. *Etatis suæ cum primis*. Nep.—So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vērō Sullæ victōriam*.

(e.) *Per*, in adjurations, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ego te deos oro*. Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulnēra, quæ circum plurima muros accēpit patriæ*. Virg.

(f.) *Tenus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1,) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic*. This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*; more rarely with *circa*, *circum*, *pēnes*, *ultra* and *adversus*; and with still less frequency with *post*, *per*, *ad*, and *de*; as, *quam ante*, *quem contra*, *quos inter*, *quem propter*, *quos ad*, *quem ultra*, *hunc post*, *quam circa*.—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos*. Virg. *Ripam apud Euphrātis*. Tac. *Māria omnia circum*. Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa super*. Id. *Vitiis nemo sine nascitur*. Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

*Jūgurtha, ubi eos Africā dēcessisse ratus est, nēque propter loci naturā Cirtam armis expugnare possit, moenia circumdat*. Sall. *Servire magis quam impārē parāti estis*. Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir gravis et sapiens*. Cic. *Clārus et hōnōrātus vir*. Id. *In scriptōribus legēdis et imitandis*, or *In legēdis imitandisque scriptōribus*, but not *In legēdis scriptōribus et imitandis*. *Quum respondere nēque vellei nēque possēt*. *Hābentur et dicuntur tyranni*. *Amicitiam nec usu nec ratiōe habent cognitam*.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

*Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognosces*. Sall. *Litr̄as ad te misi, per quas grātiās tibi ēgi*. Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se*, *suus*, *qui*, ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos quisque debet tueri*. Cic. *Satis superque est sibi suarū cuique rerū cura*. Id. *Sēvēritas animadversōnis infimo cuique grātissima*. Id. *Maxime decet, quod est cuiusque maxime suum*. Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.

15. (a.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Māle par̄ta māle dilabuntur*. Cic. *Nihil tam asp̄rum n̄que tam difficile esse, quod non cupidissime factūri essent*. Sall.—*Imp̄rium facile iis artibus retinetur, quibus initio partum est*. Id. *Sed maxime adolescentium familiarit̄ates appet̄bat*. Id. *Non tam in bellis et in pr̄liis, quam in promissis et fide firmiorem*. Cic.—(b.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it; as, *non te repr̄hendo, sed fort̄nam*. But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantop̄re te angas, intelliḡere s̄c̄e non possum*. Instead of *non dico, n̄go* is generally used; as, *n̄gavit eum adesse*.—The negatives *non, n̄que, n̄mo, nullus*, when joined to general negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, umquam*, always precede them though not always immediately; as, *n̄mini quidquam n̄gavit; non m̄mini me umquam te vidisse*. § 207, R. 31.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Civis Rōmānus, p̄pulus Rōmānus, jus civile, as d̄iēnum, terrā m̄trique, Pontifex maximus, m̄gister ēquitum, tribūnus militum, tribūnus militum cons̄lārī p̄t̄estate, Jūpiter optimus maximus, via Appia; ne quā resp̄blica d̄trimenti c̄piat*. Cic. The ablatives *opinione, spe, justo, solito*, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

NOTE 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (a) from emphasis; (b) from poetic license; and (c) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

NOTE 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

NOTE 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse vid̄etur*; nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiatus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

## II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

§ 280. A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. (a.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis; as, *Quum Pausānias s̄mīn̄tm̄is de templo ēlātus esset, confestim ān̄imam efflavit*. When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, *Pausānias, quum s̄mīn̄tm̄is de templo ēlātus esset, confestim ān̄imam efflavit*, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(b.) A sentence, such as *Scipio exercitum in Africam trāḡcit, ut Hannib̄ilem in Italiā d̄d̄aceret*, is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when w

say, *Scipio, ut Hannibalem ex Italia deduceret, exercitum in Africam trajecit*. Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions; as, *Quum igitur Rōmam vēnisset, statim imperatōrem adiit*, are made still more strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole, and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, *Itaque, quum Rōmam vēnisset, statim imperatōrem adiit*.

2. (a.) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, *Antigōnus, quum adversus Sēleucum Lyfimāchumque dimicāret, in praelio occisus est*. *Nep. Quem, ut barbari incendium effūgisse iminus viderunt, telis missis interfecerunt*. *Id.*

(b.) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, *L. Manlio, quum dictātor fuisset, M. Pompōnius, tribūnus plēbis, diem dixit*. *Cic.*

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, *Lātæ (sunt) deinde lēges, non solum quæ regni suspiciōne consulem absolvērent, sed quæ adeo in contrārium verterent, ut populārem illiari facerent*. *Liv.* The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause*, a *condition*, a *time*, or a *comparison*, usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

### III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal adjectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent recurrence of *et*, *autem*, and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as, *qui* for *et is*, *quālis* for *et talis*, *quo* for *et eo*, etc. They are used also before those conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposition; as, *si*, *nisi*, *ut*, *quum*, etc. (see § 206, (14.)); as, *quod quum audivissem, quod si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem, for et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis hoc; or quum autem hoc, etc.*; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui facit, eum ego impium iudico*, i. e. *et qui hoc facit*, or, *qui autem hoc facit*. In the ablative with comparatives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Cito, quo nemo tui erat prudentior*, i. e. *Cato, who was more prudent than all others*.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in, *Qui, quum ex eo quæreretur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vitā, Nihil habeo, inquit, quod accēsem senectūtem*. *Cic. de Sen. 6.* But is more frequent with the protasis or secondary clause; as, *A quo quum quæreretur, quid maxime expēdiret, respondit*. *Cic. Off. 2, 25.* When it is joined with the protasis, the nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the ablative. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui mos quum a posterioribus non esset retentus, Arcesilas eum revocavit*. *Cic. de Fin. 2, 1.* The accusative is sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Hērāclitus) quōniā intelligi nōluit, omittāmus*. *Cic. N. D. 3, 14.* When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Et nūc Pompeio, quibus ille si pāruisset, Cæsar tantas opes, quantas nunc habet non habēret.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6. *Nōli adversus eos me velle dūcere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiā relāqui.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where i. English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *vērū*, or the relative alone implying the adversative conjunction; as, *multa mihi prōmisit, sed ea non præstitit*, or, *quæ non præstitit*, but not *quæ autem* or *quæ vērō*. *Qui autem* and *qui vērō* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis petunt, eis nihil malum videri potest, quod naturæ necessitas afferat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative; as, *Sed ipsius in mente insidebat species pulchritudinis eximia quædam, quam intuens, in eāque defixus, ad, etc. for et in quā.* Cic. Orat. 2. And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Philurtem vēnisse fēerunt, eumque cum Leonte disseruisse quædam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 8; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Nēque* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9. *Nēque* or *nec* is added to *enim*, *vērō*, and *tāmen*, where we cannot use 'and.' To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *nēque enim non* is equivalent to *nam*; *non vērō non*, to *atque etiā*, a stronger *et*; *nec tāmen non*, to *attāmen*.

## ANALYSIS.

§ 281. I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out the relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

### Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.

- (1) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.
- (2) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7), and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)
- (3.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound, in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.

*Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.*

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1—3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound:—
2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex:—
3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.
4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.
5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.
6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

*Rules for Parsing.*

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.
2. If it is an inflected word:—
  - (1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.
  - (2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case:—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb:—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.
  - (3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.
  - (4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.
3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.
4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.
5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.
6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

NOTE. The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

*Examples of Analysis and Parsing.*

1. *Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Analysis.* This is a simple sentence: its subject is *equus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1—3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

**Parsing.** *Equus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 38; masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 35, 2; its root is *equ-*, § 40, 10; decline it, § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (b.); the subject of *currit*, § 209, (a.)—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 142, 2, from *curro*; its principal parts are *curro*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, *currere*, § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr-*; give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, I.; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *equus*, § 209, (b.)

**NOTE.** The questions to be asked in parsing *equus* are such as these, Why is *equus* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the second declension? Why masculine? etc.—In parsing *currit*, the questions are, Why is *currit* a verb? Why a neuter verb? Why of the third conjugation? Which are the principal parts of a verb? Of what does the first root of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the first root? etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Sævius ventis agtātūr ingens pinus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

**Analysis.** This also is a simple sentence;—its subject is *ingens pinus*, its predicate *sævius ventis agtātūr*; both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 3, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pinus*, the pine; this is modified by *ingens*, great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 202, 6, (3.)

The grammatical predicate is *agtātūr*, is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *sævius*, more violently, and *ventis*, by the winds, § 203 II. 3, Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.)

**Parsing.** *Pinus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 38 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pin-*, § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *agtātūr*, § 209, (a.)

*Ingens* is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens*, § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3.);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, R. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pinus*, § 205.

*Agitātūr* is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 149, 2; from the first root of its primitive *ago*, § 187, II. 1, (b.); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, 4; and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 156.);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pinus*, § 209, (b.)

*Sævius* is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2-4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *sæve* or *sæviter*, which is derived from the adjective *sævus*, § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *agtātūr*, by expressing its degree, § 277.

*Ventis* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *agtātūr* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mithridātes, duodrum et viginti gentium rex, totidem linguis jura dixit*, Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

**Analysis.** This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mithridātes, duodrum et viginti gentium rex*, its predicate is *toidem linguis jura dixit*, both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 3, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridātes*; this is modified directly by *rex* § 202, I. (1.)

*Rex* is limited by *gentium*, § 202, I. 1, (2.)

*Gentium* is limited by the compound addition *duarum* and *viginti* connected coordinately by *et*, § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*; this is limited by *jura* and *linguis*, the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *totidem* § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

*Parsing.* *Mithridātes* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mithridāt-*, § 40, 10; genitive *Mithridātis*, § 73, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 95, (a.);—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dixit*, § 209, (a.)

*Rex* is a common noun—third declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *rég-*, § 40, 10; genitive *régis*, § 78, 2; (decline it);—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mithridātes*, § 204.

*Gentium* is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent-*, § 56, I. R. 1; genitive *gentis*, § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it);—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 3; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

*Duarum* is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo*, *duo*; from the root *du-*; (decline it, § 118, 1.);—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium*, § 205.

*Et* is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duarum* and *viginti*, § 278.

*Viginti* is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium*, § 205.

*Dixit* is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dico*, (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1;) it is formed from the second root *dix-*, (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mithridātes*, § 209, (b.)

*Jura* is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus*, root *jūr-*, § 56, I. R. 1. genitive *jūris*, § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dixit*, § 229.

*Linguis* is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender from *lingua*, root *lingu-*, (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dixit*, § 247.

*Totidem* is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 139, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis*, § 205.

4. *Pausānias, quum semidñimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflavit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausānias confestim animam efflavit*, § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) semidñimis de templo elātus esset*, § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausānias*, § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim animam efflavit*, § 203, 3; in which *efflavit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, 2; which is modified by *confestim* and *animam*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (3.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum semidñimis*, etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 3.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum*, § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *semidñimis, de templo elātus esset*, § 203, 3.—The grammatical predicate is *elātus esset*, § 203, 2; which is modified by *semidñimis*, § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo*, § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.



*Parsing.* *Pausanias*, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausan-*; found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflavī*, § 209, (a.)

*Confestim*, an adv. of time § 190, 8; limiting *efflavī*, § 277.

*Animam* is a com. noun of 1st decl., fem. gender, § 41; from *animā*, root *anim-*; (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflavī*, § 229.

*Efflavī*, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo*, compounded of *ex* and *flo*, § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

*Quum* is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

*Sēmiclavis* is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gen., nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (a.)

*De* is a preposition, expressing the relation between *elātus esset* and *templo*, § 195.

*Templo* is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gen., from *templum*, root *templ-*; (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de*, § 241.

*Elātus esset* is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *effero*, compounded of *ex* and *fero*, § 196, 6; (see *fero* and compounds, § 172); (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *elāt-*, (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

5. *Rōmāna pūbes, sēdāto tandem pāvōre, postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit, ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit, etsi sātis crēdebat patrībūs, qui proximī siēlērant, sublīmēm raptū prēcēllā; tāmen, vėlut orbītātis mētū icta, mcestum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* Liv. 1, 16.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. *Rōmāna pūbes [tāmen] mcestum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* This is the leading clause. The following are dependent clauses.

2. *vėlut orbītātis mētū icta,*

3. *sēdāto tandem pāvōre,*

4. *postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit,*

5. *ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit,*

6. *etsi sātis crēdebat patrībūs,*

7. *qui proximī siēlērant,*

8. *sublīmēm raptū prēcēllā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is the adversative *tāmen*, which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate. The connective of the 2d clause is *vėlut*, of the 4th *postquam*, of the 5th *ūbi*, of the 6th *etsi*, followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui*. The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes*, which is limited by *Rōmāna*.—The grammatical predicate is *obtinuit*, which is limited by *āliquamdiu* and *silentium*, and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses. *Silentium* is itself modified by *mcestum*.

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silentium obtinuit*, § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *vélut* (*ea* scil. *púbes*); *orbítatis métu icta esset*, § 274, 8, (a.)

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quam tandem pávor seditus esset*, § 257, R. 1; and hence *pávore* represents the subject, and *sedito tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam*, § 201, 9, is *lux*, which is modified by *séréna* and *tranquilla*.—The grammatical predicate is *rediiit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbido die*, § 203, I. 1, (3.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vidit*, which is modified by *ubi* and *vácuam sēdem régiam*, § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea*. Its grammatical predicate is *crēdebát*, which is modified by *atq̃* and *patribus*, § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui*. Its grammatical predicate is *steterant*, which is modified by *proximi*, § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patribus*, § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 204, Rem., is *cum*, i. e. *Rómulum*, understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum* (*esse*), which is modified by *sublimem* and *prócellá*.

**Parsing.** *Rómāna* is a patrial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rōma*, § 128, 6, (a.) and (c.); of the 1st and 2d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *púbes*, § 205.

*Púbes*, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *púb-*, § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *púbis*, § 78, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *obtinuit*, § 209, (a.)

*Tāmen*, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

*Mestum*, a qualifying adj., § 205, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.

*Aliquamdiu*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *aliquis* and *dies* § 193, 6; and limiting *obtinuit*, § 277.

*Silentium*, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. number, acc. case the object of *obtinuit*, § 229.

*Obtinuit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obteneo*, compounded of *ob* and *teneo*, see § 168; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *púbes*, § 209, (b.)

*Vélut* for *vélut si*, an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut*, § 193, 10; modifying *icta*, and *obtinuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

*Orbitatis*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbis*, § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbitat-*, § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *métu*, § 211.

*Métu*, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

*Icta*, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *púbes*, § 205.

*Sedito*, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sēdo*, of the 1st conj., § 149, 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105, R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *pávore*, § 205.

*Tandem*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sedito*, § 277.

*Pávore*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102, 1; (from *páveo*), 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *pávor*, § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, abl. case, absolute with *sedito*, § 257.

*Postquam*, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, § 193, 10; modifying *rediiit*, and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

*Ex*, a prepositional, § 195, R. 2.

*Tam*, an adverb of degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbido*, § 277.

*Twitido*, an adjective, agreeing with *die*.

*Die*, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1.; sing. number abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

*Sérēna*, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

*Et*, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sérēna* and *tranquilla*, § 278.

*Tranquilla*, like *sérēna*.

*Lux*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *luc-*, § 56, I., and R. 2; genitive *lucis*, § 78, 2.

*Rēdiit*, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *rēdeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red-*, § 196, (b.), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 209, (b.)

*Ubi*, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *vidit*, § 277.

*Vacuam*, an adj., qualifying *sēdem*.

*Sēdem*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sēd-*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sēdis*, § 78, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vidit*, § 229.

*Rēgam*, a denominative adj., § 128, I., 2, (a.); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sēdem*.

*Vidit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root); found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pūbes*, understood.

*Etsi*, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tāmen*, § 198, 4, R. and 9.

*Satis*, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crēdebat*, § 271.

*Crēdebat*, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pūbes*, understood.

*Patribus*, a common noun, § 26, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr-*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 28, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crēdebat*, § 228, R. 2.

*Qui*, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (a.); and is nominative to *alitrant*, § 209, (a.)

*Proximi*, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, § 205, § 210, R. 1, (a.) and R. 3, (2.)

*Alitrant*, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *qui*, § 209, (b.)

*Sublimem*, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 109; masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*, (i. e. *Rōmānum*), understood and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 205, R. 15.

*Raptum (esse)*, an act. verb, 3d conj.; (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; but, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 263, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crēdebat*, § 272.

*Ivēcclā*, a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

## PROSODY.

§ 282. Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

### QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short*, *long*, or *common*.

(a.) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time*.

(b.) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *āmārē*.

(c.) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tēnēbræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental*;—*natural*, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; *accidental*, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rēsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēsūtū* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēdūco* is naturally long, but in *dēorro* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established rules, or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *dico*, *dūco*; *pāter*, *āvus*, *cādo*, *māneo*, *grāvis*, etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the *gradus* or *lexicon*.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

### GENERAL RULES.

§ 283. I. (a.) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mēus*, *i* in *patriæ*. Thus,

*Conscia mens recti fāmæ mendācia ridet.* Ovid. F. 4, 311.  
*Ipsæ etiam extimæ laudis succensus amōre.* Virg. A. 7, 496.

(b.) So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nihil*: (see § 2, 6.) Thus,

*De nihilo nihil, in nihilum nil posse reverti.* Pers. 4, 84.

Exc. 1. (a.) *Fio* has the *i* long, except in *fū* and when followed by *er*; as *fiunt*, *fiēbam*. Thus,

*Omnia jam flant, fieri quæ posse negābam.* Ovid. Tr. 1, 8, 7.

(b.) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fiēret*. Ter.; *fiēri*. Plant and, on the contrary, Prudentius has *fū* with *i* short.

Exc. 2. (a.) *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*; as, *fāciē*. Thus,

*Non rādī sōlis, nēque lūcidā tēla diēi.* Lucr. 1, 148.

(b.) In *spei*, *rei*, and *fidei*, *e* is short.

NOTE. In Lucretius, the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long, and that of *fidei* is lengthened once in Lucretius and once in a line of Ennius.

Exc. 3. (a.) *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *at* of the first declension; as, *aulāt*, *pictāt*. Cf. § 43, 1.

(b.) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *atus*, *etus*, or *eta*; as, *Cātus*, *Pompētus*, *Aquilēa*; and in the adjectives *Grātus* and *Vētus*. Thus,

*Æthērium sensum, atque aurāt simplicis ignem.* Virg. A. 6, 747.

*Accipe, Pompēi, dēductum carmen ab illo.* Ovid. Pont. 4, 1, 1.

*Necnon cum Vēnētis Aquilēia perfūrit armis.* Sil. 8, 606.

Exc. 4. (a.) *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *ūnius*, *illius*. Thus,

*Illius et nitido stillent unguenta capillo.* Tibull. 1, 7, 51.

*Illius puro destillant tempora nardo.* Id. 2, 2, 7.

(b.) But *i* in the genitive of *aliter* is commonly short; and in that of *alius* it is always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Dīana*, *īo*, and *ōha* is common.

Exc. 6. Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many Greek words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

*āēr*, *Achāta*, *Achēlōus*, *diā*, *ēos*, *Lāertes*, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*u* or *au*). See also § 298, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ει* (*eu*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Enēas*, *Alexandria*, *Cassio-pēa*, *Chio*, *Dārtus*, *ēlēgia*, *Gālātēa*, *Mēdēa*, *Mausōlēum*, *Penēlōpēa*, *Thāla*, *Atrides*.

Hence, most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* long; as, *Cythērēus*, *Pelōpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *et* is restored; as, *Pelōpēta*.

Exc. Acādēmia, chōrea, Mālea, plātea, and some patronymics and patrials in *ets*; as, *Nērēts*, have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphēos*, *Orphēa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos*, *Thiōnēa*.

(3.) Greek words in *ais*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis*, *Minōis*, *Grātus*, *Nērētus*, *Minūtus*, *Māchāon*, *Ixon*. But *Thēdis*, *Simōis*, *Phāon*, *Deucālōn*, *Pygmālōn*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

NOTE 1. Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amgithāon* *-ōnis*; *Deucālōn*, *-ōnis*.

NOTE 2. In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II. A diphthong is long; as, *aurum*, *fœnus*, *Eubœa*, *Pompæus*, *Orphœu*. Thus,

*Infernique læus, Mœque insula Cires. Virg. A. 8, 336.*  
*Thesuros ignotum argenti pondus et ævi. Id. A. 1, 359.*  
*Harpyiæque cœlunt diæ, Phinæia postquam. Id. A. 8, 212.*

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *præustus*, *præcûsus*. Thus,

*Nec totâ tamen ille prior præsumit carinâ. Virg. A. 5, 186.*

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

*Insula Ionio in magno, quas dira Cœlæno. Virg. A. 3, 211.*

Exc. 3. The diphthongs consisting of *a* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quâ*, *quî*, *quærum*, *quâ*, *quibus*, *quâtio*, *quæror*, *æquôr*, *linguâ*, *sanguis*.

III. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as,

*alius* for *alîus*; *côgo* for *côdgo*; *nil* for *nîl*; *jûnior* for *jâjûnior*. Thus,

*Tityre coge pécus, tu post cærecta latêbas. Virg. E. 3, 20.*

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position; as, *ârma*, *bêllum*, *âxis*, *gâza*, *mâjor*. Thus,

*Pæchre ûpôrtes ôves dêfectum dicere cårmen. Virg. E. 6, 5.*  
*Nec mîrûs vincet cœrylos; nec laurea Phœbi. Id. E. 7, 64.*  
*At nobis, Pax alma, vênî, spicamque ténêto. Tibull. 1, 10, 67.*  
*Rara jûvant: primis sic mâjor grâtia pœmis. Mart. 4, 29, 8.*

NOTE 1. A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *mâjor* is equivalent to *mai'-or*, which would be pronounced *mâ'-yor*. See § 2, 1.

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jûgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bijûgus*, *quadrîjûgus*. Thus,

*Intêrâ bijûgis infert se Lûcâgus albis. Virg. A. 10, 575.*

REMARK. The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

*Tolle mûras; semper nûcui differre parâtis. Lucan. 1, 281.*  
*Ferte citi ferrum; date iêlâ; scandite mûros. Virg. A. 9, 37.*  
*Ne tamen ignôrêt, quæ sit sententiâ scripto. Ovid.*

NOTE 2. A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

NOTE 3. In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.

EXC. 2 A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *āgrīs, phārētra, volūcrīs, pōplītēs, cōchlea*. Thus,

*Et prime similis cōstiteri, mox vērā cōstiteris. Ovid. M. 12. 607.*  
*Nātum ante ūra pātis, pātrem qui obruncat ad āras. Virg. A. 2, 662.*  
*Nox tēnēbras prōfert, Phœbus fugat inde tēnēbras. Ovid.*

REM. 1. If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *sālābris, ambālācrum*.

REM. 2. In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ābhūo, ōbruo, sūlēvo, quāmōbrem*.

REM. 3. A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word, except in the arsis of a foot; as,

*Terrasquē tractasque mārīs oclumque prōfundum. Virg. E. 4, 51.*

REM. 4. In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tēcnessa, Prōcne, Ojcnus*.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

#### L DERIVATIVE WORDS.

§ 284. Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *āma, āmat, āmābat, āmāvī, āmātus*, etc.; by declension, *āmor, āmōris, āmōri, āmōribus*, etc.; so, *ānimal, ānimātus*, from *ānima*; *gēmēbundus*, from *gēmere*; *fāmilia*, from *fāmilius*; *māternus*, from *māter*; *prōpinquus*, from *prōpe*.

NOTE 1. *Lār, pār, sāl*, and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sālīs, pēdis*, etc.

NOTE 2. The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

REM. 1. Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives as,

*puērtitia*, from *puēri*; *virgineus*, from *virgīnis*; *sālūber*, from *sālūtis*.

REM. 2. In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

*mōvēbam, mōvēbo, mōveam, mōvērem, mōve, mōvēre, mōvens, mōvendus*, from *mōv*, the root of the present, with *ō* short;—*mōvēram, mōvērim, mōvissem, mōvēro, mōvisse*, from *mōv*, the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus*:—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor*, and *mōtus, -as*, from *mōt*, the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

REM. 3. (*a*). *Sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum* from *solvo* and *volvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *sōluo, vōluo*. So, from *gigno* come *gēnus, gēnitum*, as if from *gēno*, and *pōtus*, from *pōtis sum* (*possum*).

(b.) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(c.) The *o* in *pōsi* and *pōsitum* is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

*vēni, vidi, fēci*, from *vēnio, video, facio*; *cānum, mōtum, visum*, from *cādo, mōveo, video*.

NOTE 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vēnio*, perf. *vēvēni*, by syncope *vēvēni*, by crasis *vēni*, or by the omission of a consonant, as *video*, perf. *vidi*, by syncope *vidi*, the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

NOTE 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *video, viduum*, by syncope *visum*; *mōveo, mōvittum*, by syncope *mōttum*, by contraction *mōtum*.

(1.) (a.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bibi, dēdi, fidi*, (from *findo*), *scidi, stēti, stiti, tūli*. So also *percūli*, from *vercello*.

(b.) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, I.); as, *rēi*.

(2.) (a.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*citum*, (from *cio*), *dātum, tūm, litum, quātum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, situm*, and *stātum*.

(b.) So, also, had the obsolete *fātum*, from *fāl*, whence comes *fāturus*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

*scidi, cecidi, tēgi, dēci*, from *cādo, cāno, tango*, and *disco*.

(b.) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mōmōrēdi, tētēndi*.—*Cēcidi* from *cādo*, and *pēpēdi* from *pādo*, retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *candāturio* from *candāto*, the third root of *caneo*. So *partāurio, esāurio, nuptāurio*.

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmāto, volūto*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

*Dēni*, from *dēcem*.  
*Fōnes* and } from.  
*Fōmentum*, } *fōveo*.  
*Hūmānus*, from *hōmo*.  
*Lāterna*, from *lāteo*,  
*Litēra* from *lino*.  
*Lex* (*lēgis*), from *lēgo*.

*Mōllis*, from *mōveo*.  
*Persōna*, from *persōno*.  
*Rēgula* and } from  
*Rex* (*rēgis*), } *rēgo*.  
*Sēcūs*, from *sēcus*.  
*Sēdes*, from *sēdeo*.  
*Sēmen*, from *sēro*.

*Stipendium*, from *stips*  
(*stīpis*).  
*Suspicio*, *ōnis*, from *sus*  
plor.  
*Tēgula*, from *tēgo*.

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are,

*Dicax*, from *dīco*.  
*Dux* (*dūcis*), from *dūco*.  
*Fides*, from *fīdo*.  
*Lābo*, from *lābor*, dep. v.  
*Lūcerna*, from *lūceo*.

*Mōlestus*, from *mōles*.  
*Nāto*, from *nātu*. sup.  
*Nōto*, from *nōtu*. sup.  
*Ōdium*, from *ōdi*.  
*Quāsillus*, from *quālus*.

*Sāgax*, from *sāgio*.  
*Sōpor*, from *sōpio*.  
*Vādum*, from *vādo*.  
*Vōco*, from *vox* (*vōcā*).



NOTE 1. *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *dis* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirimo* and *diribeo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196, (b.) 2.

NOTE 2. Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

REMARK 1. Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mōbilis* may have been *mōvibilis*; *mōtum*, *mōvitum*, etc.

REM. 2. Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nāx*, *nācis*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel, it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant: as, *hibernus*, from *hiems*.

REM. 3. The first syllable in *liquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *liquor* or *liqueo*; as,

Crassique convēniant *liquidis*, et *liquida* crasis. *Lucr.* 4, 1255.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. 1. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

*dēfer*, of *dē* and *fēro*; *ādōro*, of *ād* and *ōro*. So *ābōrior*, *āmōveo*, *circāmēo*, *comēdo*, *ēmitor*, *prōdūco*, *sūbōrno*.

2. The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

*concido*, from *cādo*; *concido*, from *cādo*; *ērtigo*, from *rēgo*; *reclādo*, from *clāudo*; *iniquus*, from *āquus*.

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnitus* and *cognitus*, from *nōtus*; *dējēro* and *pējēro*, from *jāro*; *hōdie*, from *hōc diē*: *nihilum* and *nihil*, from *hilum*; *causidicus*, and other compounds ending in *dicus*, from *dico*.

Exc. 2. *Imbēcillus*, from *bēcillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambitus* has the penult long from *itum*, but the nouns *ambitus* and *ambitio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innūba*, *prōnūba*, and *subnūba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short; but in *consubium*, it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (a.)

NOTE 1. Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 284, (a.)); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trans* is long; as, *trādo*, *trādūco*.

Exc. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfectus*, *prōfēctus*, *prōficiacor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōcella*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōnēptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *procūro*, *profundo*, *propāgo*, *propello*, and *propino*.—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel see § 288, II. Exc. 1.

REM. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prōphēta*. In *prōēqus*, *propōla*, and *propino*, it is common.

REM. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dīs*) and *se* are long; as,

*diadūco*, *sēpāro*. Respecting *disertus*, see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.

REM. 3. (a) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rēmitto, rēfēro, rēdāmo*.

(b.) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *religio, reliquias, reliquus, repērit, retulit, repulit, rectāit, redicere*, where some editors double the consonant following *ra* Cf. § 307, 2. In the impersonal verb *rēfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

REM. 4. A ending the former part of a compound word, is long the other vowels are short; as,

*mālo, quāpropter, trādo, (trans do); nēfas, valēdico, huiuscēmōdi; biceps, tridens, omnipotēns, significo; hōdie, quandōquidē, philosophus; dūcenti, locuples, Trōjagēna; Polydorus, Eurypylus, Thrāsibulus.*

Exc. 1. A. A is short in *quāsi, eādē, when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, catagula, hexameter.*

Exc. 2. E. E is long in *crēdo, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquis, nēquitia; mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, sēsē, vēcōre, vēsānus, vēnēficus, and videlicet*;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *sēmi*; as, *sēdecim, sēmemstris, sēmōdius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

NOTE 2. (a.) The first *e* in *videlicet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(b.) E is common in some verbs compounded with *fācio*; as, *liquefācio, pātesfācio, rarefācio, tābefācio, tēpēfācio.*

Exc. 3. I. (1.) I is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296;) as, *quidam, quivis, quilibet, quantivis, quantumque, tantidem, unicuique, eidem, reipublica, utriusque.*

(2.) I is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§ 296;) as, *lūdimāgister, siquis, agricultūra.*

(3.) I, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tibicen* for *tibicen*, from *tibia* and *cāno*. See § 283, III.

(4.) I is long in *biga, quadriga, iacet, scilicet.*

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *s* of *ubique* and *utrobique*, the second in *ibidem*, and the first in *nimirum*, are long. In *ubicumque*, as in *ubi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dies* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *ididum, tridum, meridies, quotidianus, quotidianus, pridie, postridie.*

NOTE 3. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Callimachus*; unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (u), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4. O. (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro, intro, retro, and quando* (except *quandōquidē*), is long; as, *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōcēdo, quandōque*. O is long also in *aliōqui* (—quin), and *utroque*.

(2.) O is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo*; as, *quōmōdo, quōcumque, quōnam, quōlibet, quōminus, quōcirca, quōvis, quōque* (i. e. *et quo*); *eādē, eōne*; but in the conjunction *quōque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omega* (ω) have the *o* long; as, *gōmetra, Minotaurus, lōgōus.*

Exc. 5. U. U is long in *Jūptier* (*Jovis pater*), and *jūdico* (*jus dico*).

### III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax, pācis; sermo, sermōnis*. The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *iter*, *sūpellex*, compounds of *cāpit* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jēcūr*, have two increments; as,

*iter*, *i-tēr-ē-ris*; *sūpellex*, *sū-pel-lec-tī-tis*; *anceps*, *an-cēp-tīs*; *jēcūr*, *jē-cū-j-ris*.

REMARK. The double increase of *iter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itāter*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

<i>rex</i> ,	Gen. <i>rē-gis</i> ,	D. and Ab. <i>rēg-t-bus</i> .
<i>sermo</i> ,	<i>ser-mō-nis</i> ,	<i>ser-mōn-t-bus</i> .
<i>iter</i> ,	<i>i-tēr-ē-ris</i> ,	<i>it-tēr-ē-ris</i> .

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

*ser-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, *ser-mōn-t-bus*; *i-ter*, *i-tēr-ē-ris*, *it-tēr-ē-ris*.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

*sermōnis*, *sermōni*, *sermōnem*, *sermōne*, *sermōnes*, *sermōnum*, *sermōnibus*. *Bābus*, or *bābus*, from *bos*, *bōvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bōvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

## INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

### OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 288, I.

Thus, *aura*, gen. *aurāi*, § 288, I. Exc. 3, (a.): *fructus*, dat. *fructūi*, § 288, I. (a.): *diēs*, gen. *diēi*, § 288, I. Exc. 2, (a.)

### INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

*gēner*, *gēnēri*; *sātūr*, *sātūri*; *tēnēr*, *tēnēri*; *vīr*, *vīri*. Thus,

*Ne, puērī, ne tanta animis assuescitis bella.* Virg. A. 6, 833.

*Monstra sinunt; gēnēros externis affōre ab ōris.* Id. A. 7, 270.

Exc. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtiber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius* see § 288, Exc. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

*animal, animālis*; *audax, audācis*; *sermo, sermōnis*; *ferox, fērōcis*; *opus, opēris*; *celer, cēleris*; *miles, militis*; *supplex, supplicis*; *murmur, murrūris*; *dux, dūcis*; *chlāmys, chlāmīdis*; *Styx, Stygis*. Thus,

*Prōnāque cum spectent animālia cōstera terram. Ovid. M. 1. 84.*

*Hæc tum multiplici pōpulos sermōnis replēbat. Virg. A. 4. 180.*

*Incumbent gēneris lapī sarcire ruinas. Id. G. 4. 249.*

*Quālem virgineo dēmessum pollice flōrem. Id. A. 11. 68.*

*Adspice, ventōsi cōciderunt murrūris aures. Id. M. 9. 68.*

Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. (a.) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annibal, Annibālis*; *Amilcar, Amilcāris*.

(b.) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*anas, mas, vas (vādis), bac-car, hēpar, jābar, lar, nectar*, and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps, dāpis*; *Arabs, Arābis*.

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*adis, ānis, or ātis*) increase short; as, *lampas, lampadis*; *Mēlas, Mēlānis, poēma, poēmātis*.

4. The following in *as* increase short:—*ābaz, anthraz, Arctōphylax, Ataz, Atraz, clīmaz, cōlaz, cōraz, and nycticōraz, drōpaz, fax, harpaz, pānaz, smīkaz, and stīraz*.—The increment of *Sīphaz* is doubtful.

Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as, *marmor, marmōris*; *corpus, corpōris*; *ebur, ebōris*. But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ador* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron*, but long in those which have *omega*; as,

*Aēdon, Aēdōnis*; *Agāmēmon, Agāmēmōnis*:—*Plāto, Plātōnis*; *Sīnon, Sīnōnis*; *Sīcyon, Sīcyōnis*. *Sidon, Orion, and Egāson*, have the increment common.

3. (a.) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

*Mācēdo, Mācēdonis*. So, *Amazōnes, Abnes, Myrmidōnes, Santōnes, Saxōnes, Sēnōnes, Teutōnes*, etc.

(b.) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vetīōnes, Burgundīōnes*. *Britōnes* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector, Hectōris*; *rhētor, rhētōris*; *Agēnor, Agēnōris*.

5. Compounds of *pūs*, (*πούς*), as *tripus, pōlypus, Cēdipus*, and also *arbor, mōmor, bos, compos, impos, and lēpus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

*scrobs, scrōbis; inops, inōpis; Dölōpes.* But it is long in the increment of *cercoops, Cyclops,* and *hydrops.*

7. The increment of *Allobrox, Cappadox,* and *præcox,* is also short.

#### *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. Nouns in *en, enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment as, *Stren, Strēnis.* So, *Aniēnis, Neriēnis,* from *Anio* and *Nerio,* or rather from the obsolete *Anien* and *Neriēnes.*

2. *Hæres, locuples, mansues, merces,* and *quies*—also *Iber, ver, lex, rex, alec* or *alex* (*hâl-*) *narthez* and *vervez*—*plebs* and *seps*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *æther*) increase long; as, *magnes, magnētis; cräter, crätēris.*

#### *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix,* increase long; as, *victrix, victricis fēlix fēlicis.*

Exc. *Cūlix, Cūlix, coxendix, filix, fornix, hystrix, lūrix, nix, pix, edix, stris* and rarely *sandix* or *sandyx,* increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis, glis, lis, vis, Nis, Quiris,* and *Samnis.* The increment of *Psōphis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin, delphīnis; Sälāmis, Sälāmīnis.*

#### *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

1. Genitives in *udis, uris,* and *utis,* from nominatives in *us,* have the penult long; as,

*pālus, pāludis; tellus, tellūris; virtus, virtūtis.* But *intercus, Ligus* and *plēus pēcūdis,* increase short.

2. *Fur, frux,* (obs.), *lux,* and *Pollux,* increase long.

#### *Exceptions in Increments in Y.*

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis,* increase long; as, *Trāchyn, Trāchynis.*

2. The increment of *bombyx, Cefx, gryps,* and *mormyr,* is long; that of *Bebrux* and *sandyx* is common.

### INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 288. 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment as, *sa* in *mādrum,* *no* in *dōmīnōrum,* *p* in *rāpīum* and *rāpībūs.*

3. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short as,

*dōnārum, dōnābus, rērum, rēbus, gēnērōrum, amōbus; sermōnibus, lītābus*  
Thus,

*Appia, longārum, tēritur, rēgna vītrūm. Stat. S. 2, 2, 12.*  
*Sunt lacrymas rērum, et mentem mortālia tangunt. Virg. A. 1, 462.*  
*Atque illi, quōrum cōmœdia prisca vītrūm est. Hor. S. 1, 4, 2.*  
*Portūbus ēgrēdior, ventisque fērentibus ūsus. Ovid.*

#### IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dā-tis; dōces, dō-cē-mus*.

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

<i>ā-mas,</i>	<i>mō-nes,</i>	<i>au-dis,</i>
1	1	1
<i>ā-mā-mus,</i>	<i>mō-nē-tur,</i>	<i>au-di-tis,</i>
1 2	1 2	1 2
<i>ām-ā-bā-mus,</i>	<i>mōn-ē-rē-tur,</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bas,</i>
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
<i>ām-ā-vē-rā-mus.</i>	<i>mōn-ē-bīm-i-ni.</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bām-i-ni.</i>

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

Thus the increments of *lō-lā-tur, lōt-ā-bā-tur*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *lōto, lōtas*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

*dnāre, mōnēre, faciōle, vōlāmus, rēgēbāmini.* Thus,

*Et cantāre pāres, et respondēre parāti. Virg. E. 7, 5.*  
*Sic ēquidem dūcēbam ānimo, rēbarque fūtūrum. Id. A. 6, 680.*  
*Cumque lōqui pōtērit, mātrem faciōle salūtet. Ovid. M. 9, 378.*  
*Scindūtur incertum stūdia in contrāria vulgus. Virg. A. 2, 39.*  
*Noe nūmērus sūmus, et frūges consūmēre nāti. Hor. Ep. 1, 2, 37.*

#### (a.) Exceptions in Increments in A.

The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus, dābāmus, dāret, dā-tus, circumdāre, circumdābāmus*.

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *dēris* and *dēre*; as,

*rēgere* (infin. and imperat.), *rēgeris* or *rēgere* (pres. ind. pass.), *rēgerem* and *rēgerer* (imp. subj.); *amāberis*, *amābere*; *mōnēberis*, *mōnēbere*.

NOTE 1. In *vēlim*, *vēlis*, etc., from *volo*, (second person, regularly *vōlis*, by syncope and contraction *vis*), *ē* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *o*, and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

*amāveram*, *amāverat*, *amāverim*, *mōnuērīmus*, *reorō*, *audīveritis*.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram*, for *flēveram*.

For the short *e* before *rum*, in the perfect indicative, as, *stēlerunt*, see *Systole*, § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. *I* before *v* or *s*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long; as,

*pētiui*, *audīui*, *quāsiui*, *divisiui*, *audīcimus*, *divisimus*, *audīvērām*.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *fācesso*, *lācesso*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo* and *oblīviscor*; as,

*gāvisus*, *arcessitus*, *divisus*, *fācessitus*, *lācessitus*, *pētītus*, *quāsitus*, *rēcensitus*, *oblītus*; *gāvisūrus*, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *īmus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

*audīre*, *audīrem*, *audītus*, *audītūrus*, pres. *vēnimus*, but in the perfect *vēnimus*. So in the ancient forms in *ībam*, *ībo*, of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutribat*, *lēnībunt*; and also in *ībam* and *ībo*, from *eo*.

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audīunt*, *audībām*.

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, etc., (§ 162, 1.); as, *simus*, *sitis*, *vēlimus*, *vēlitis*, and their compounds; as, *possimus*, *adsimus*, *mālimus*, *nōlimus*. So also in *nōlīto*, *nōlīte*, *nōlītōte*, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris*, *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

*vidēris*, Mart., *occidēris*, Hor.; *vidēritis* (Ovid), *didēritis* (Id.); *fēcērimus* (Catull.), *egērimus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

*U* is long in the increment of supines, and of participles, formed from the third root of the verb; as,

*secūtus*, *scītus*, *secūtūrus*, *scītūrus*.

# RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPENULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

## I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus*, *icus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult; as,

*amāricus*, *Ægyptiacus*, *rusticus*, *triticum*, *viaticum*.

Except *Dācus*, *māricus*, *ōpācus*; *āmicus*, *apricus*, *ficus*, *mendicus*, *pious*, *posticus*, *pudicus*, *epicus*, *umbilicus*, *vicus*.

2. Words ending in *abrum*, *ubrum*, *acrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*candelābrum*, *dēlūbrum*, *lāvācrum*, *vērātrum*.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

*apōthēca*, *cloāca*, *lactāca*, *lōrica*, *phōca*.

Except *dāca*, *brassica*, *dica*, *fūlca*, *mantica*, *pēdica*, *perīca*, *scūtica*, *phāldrica*, *tūnica*, *vōmica*; and also some nouns in *ica* derived from adjectives in *icus*; as, *fabrica*, *grammatica*, etc. So *mānica*.

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantiūdes*, *Prīamīdes*.

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (*us*); as, *Atrīdes*, from *Atrēus*; *Neoclīdes*, from *Neoclēs*; except, also, *Amphidraīdes*, *Bēlīdes*, *Amīclīdes*, *Lycurgīdes*.

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Achāis*, *Chrījēis*, *Minīis*. Except *Phōcāis* and *Thēbāis*. The penult of *Nāreis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

*vādo*, *cēdo*, *dulcēdo*, *formido*, *rōdo*, *testūdo*. Except *cādo*, *divido*, *ēdo* (to eat), *comēdo*, *Macēdo*, *mōdo*, *sōlido*, *spādo*, *trēpido*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it; as,

*calidus*, *herbidus*, *limpidus*, *lividus*, *perfidus*; *crūdus*, *lūdus*, *nūdus*, *sūcus*, *ūcus*. Except *idus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, *nichus*, *sidus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

*sāga*, *collēga*, *auriga*, *rāga*; *imāgo*, *cālīgo*, *arāgo*. Except *cālīga*, *ostīfrāga*, *lōga*, *plāga*, (a region, or a net), *fūga* and its compounds, *stēga*, *ecloga*, *ēgo*, *harpāgo*, *lūgo*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*crināle*, *riantēle*, *ancile*; *āles*, *mīles*, *prōles*; *annālis*, *crūdēlis*, *civilis*, *cūrālis*.—Except *māle*;—verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; as, *āgilis*, *amābilis*;—adjectives in *atilis*; as, *umbrātilis*;—and also, *indōles*, *vōbōles*; *pērisclēlis*, *dapalīs*, *grācilis*, *hēmīlis*, *pārīlis*, *simīlis*, *stērīlis*, *māgilis*, *strīgīlis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*phāscus*, *quērēla*, *prēlum*. Except *gēlus*, *gēlum*, *solus*.

11. Diminutives in *ulus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also words in



*ilus*, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

*urceolus, filiōla, lectulus, ratiunculā, corcūlum, pābūlum; rātilus, garrūlus, fabūla.* Except *asilus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

*fāma, poēma, rīna, plāma.* Except *ānima, cōma, dēcima, lacrima, victima, sūma.*

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

*lōdāmen, grāmen, crīmen, flāmen, jūmentum, ātrāmentum.* Except *tīmen, cōlūmen, Hymen, ēlémentum*, and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *āmentum, dōctimen* or *dōctimentum, emōlimentum, mōnāmentum, rēgimen, spēcimen, tēgimen*, etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

*ānīmus, dēctīmus, finitīmus, fortissīmus, maximus.* Except *bīmus, līmus, mīmus, opīmus, quadrīmus, sinus, trīmus*, and two superlatives, *imū* and *primū*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *unus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *dēctūmus, optūmus, maztūmus*, for *dēctīmus*, etc.

15. *A, e, o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

*rāmus, vēmus, extrēmū, prēmū, dūmū, pōmū, vōlēmū.* Except *diōmus, balsāmum, cinnāmum, dōmū, glōmū, hūmū, postūmus, thālāmū, iōmū, cālāmū, nēmū*.

16. (a.) Words in *na*, *ne*, *ni*, and *nis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lāna, drēna, cārīna, mātīrīna, lūna, māne, septēni, octōni, tnānis, finis, immānis.* Except *advēna, cottāna, ptisāna, mīna, gēna, bēne, sine, cānis, cinis, jūvēnis*; and the following in *ina*,—*buccīna, dōmīna, fiscīna, fēmīna, fuscīna, lāmīna, māchīna, pāgina, pālīna, sarcīna, tibicīna, trūlīna*: and in plur. *āpīna, mīna, nuncīna*. So compounds of *gēno*; as, *incāgēna*.

(b.) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

*destīno, fascīno, inquīno, sīno, criminor.* Except *festīno, propīno, sūgīno, opīnor*, and the compounds of *cīno*; as, *inclīno*, etc.

17. (a.) Adjectives in *inus*, when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

*crastīnus, diūtīnus, pristīnus, pērendīnus; fāgīnus, crōcīnus, hydcīnthīnus, addmantīnus, crystallīnus, oleāgīnus, bombīcīnus.* Except *mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus, vespertīnus*.

(b.) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

*canīnus, bīnus, pēgrīnus, mārīnus, clandestīnus, sūpīnus; līnum.* Except *ācīnus, āsinus, coccīnus, cōmīnus, ēmīnus, cōphīnus, dōmīnus, fācīnus, fāctīnus, prōtīnus, sinus, terminus, gēmīnus, circīnus, mīnus, vāctīnus, succīnum, fāctūm*.

18. *A, e, o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long; as,

*urbānus, sērēnus, patrōnus, prōnus, mīnus, tribūnus, fānum, vērēnum, dōnum.* Except *ānus*, an old woman, *galbānus, mānus, dēcānus, plūtānus, ēbēnus, gēnus, limīgēnus, pēnus, tēnus, Vēnus, ōnus, bōnus, sōnus, thrōnus; lāgānum, poucdōnum, pōpānum, tympanum, abrotōnum*.

19. Words ending in *ba*, *bo*, *pa*, and *po*, shorten the penult; as, +

*fāba, jūba, syllāba; bībo, cūbo, prōbo; ālāpa, līpa, scōpha; crēpo, partīcipa.* Except *glēba, scriba, bābo, glābo, lībo, nābo, scribo, sīpho, cēpa, rūpa, pāpa, pēpa, rūpa, scōpa, stūpa; cāpo, rēpo, stīpo*.

20. Words in *al*, *ar*, *are*, and *aris*, lengthen the penult; as,  
*tribūnāl*, *vectigāl*: *lāpānar*, *pulcrinar*; *allāre*, *liqueāre*; *nāris*. Except *ānimal*  
*cāpitāl*, *cūbitūl*, *tōrāl*, *jūbar*, *sālar*, *māre*, *bimāris*, *hilāris*, *canthāris*, *cappāris*,  
*lēcāris*.

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long  
as,

*āro*, *pāro*, *fēro*, *gēru*, *sēro*, *cēlēro*, *tempēro*, *quēror*; *mīror*, *spīro*, *tīro*; *auctōra*,  
*ignōvo*, *ōro*; *cūro*, *dūro*, *figūro*; *lāror*. Except *dēclāro*, *pēro*, *spēro*; *fōro*, *mō*  
*ror*, *sōror*, *vōro*, *fūro*, *sātūro*; and derivatives from genitives increasing short  
as, *augūror*, *dēcōro*, *mēmōro*, *murmāro*, etc.; from *augur*, *augūris*; *dēcus*, *dēcō*  
*ris*, etc.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels are  
long; as,

*mērum*, *mērus*, *hēdēra*, *sērum*, *cēlērum*; *cārus*, *mīrus*, *mōrus*, *mūrus*, *gīrus*;  
*āra*, *spīra*, *ōra*, *nātūra*, *lōrum*.

Except, 1. *austērus*, *gālērus*, *plērus*, *prōcērus*, *sincērus*, *sērus*, *sēcērus*, *vērus*,  
*crātēra*, *cēra*, *pēra*, *panthēra*, *stātēra*.

Exc. 2. *barbārus*, *cammārus*, *cāmūrus*, *canthārus*, *chōrus*, *fōrus*, *hellēbōrus*,  
*nūrus*, *ōpīpārus*, *ōvipārus*, *phosphōrus*, *pīrus*, *sātīrus*, *scārus*, *spārus*, *tartūrus*,  
*tōrus*, *zēphīrus*; *amphōra*, *ancōra*, *cithāra*, *hāra*, *līra*, *mōra*, *purpūra*, *philīra*,  
*pīra*, *sātīra*; *fōrum*, *gārum*, *pārum*, *suppārum*.

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,

*fūmōsus*, *vinōsus*.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as,

*pīetas*, *civitas*, *bōnitas*.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, (those in *iter* and *itus*  
shorten it; as,

*stātīm*, (constantly), *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*; *acriter*, *funditus*. Except *stātīm*, (im-  
mediately), *affātīm*.

26. (a.) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *otis*, and in *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen  
the penult, as,

*vātes*, *pēnātes*, *vītis*, *mītis*, *cāryōtis*, *lēcāriōtis*, *pirāta*, *mēta*, *poēta*, *ālūta*, *cicūta*.  
Except *sītis*, *pōtis*, *drāpēta*, *nōta*, *rōta*.

(b.) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,

*āmīta*, *nāvīta*, *orbīta*, *sēmīta*. Except *pīuīta*.

27. Nouns in *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lāpātum*, *acōnītum*, *vērūtum*. Except *dēfrūtum*, *pulpītum*, *pēlōritum*, *lūtum*  
(mud), *compītum*.

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

*barbātus*, *grātus*, *bōlētus*, *fūcētus*, *crīnītus*, *pērītus*, *acgrōtus*, *tōtus*, *argūtus*, *hir*  
*sūtus*. Except *cātus*, *lātus*, (-ēris), *impētus*, *mētus*, *vēgētus*, *vētus*; *anhēlītus*, *dīgī*  
*tus*, *grātātus*, *hālītus*, *hospītus*, *servītus*, *spīritus*; *antidōtus*, *nōtus*, *quōtus*, *tōtus*  
(iso great); *arbītus*, *pūtus*; *inclītus*; and derivatives from perfect participles  
having a short penult; as, *exercītus*, *hābītus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

*clīva*, *ōlīva*, *āves*, *nāvis*, *civis*, *pāpāver*, *pāvo*, *prīvo*, *ovum*, *prāvus*, *astīvus*  
*fūrtīvus*. Except *āvis*, *brēvis*, *grāvis*, *lēvis*, *ōvis*; *cāvo*, *grāvo*, *jūvo*, *lāvo*, *lēvo*  
*hū* - *āvus*, *cāvus*, *fāvus* *nōvus*, *fāvor*, *pāvor*, *nōvem*.

30. Words ending in *dex*, *dix*, *mex*, *nix*, *lex*, *rex*, lengthen the penult; as,

*oddez*, *jūdez*; *lōdix*, *rādix*; *cīmez*, *pāmez*; *jānix*; *īlex*; *cārez*, *mārez*. Except *cūlex*, *sīlex*, *rīmez*.

## II. ANTEPENULTS

§ 292. 1. *I* is short in diminutives in *icūlus* and *icellus* (*a*, *am*) whether nouns or adjectives; as,

*collīcūlus*, *dolīcūlus*, *crātīcūla*, *pellīcūla*, *mollīcellus*. Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cātīcūla*, *cānīcūla*: or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornīcūla*, from *cornix*, *-icis*.

2. Numerals in *ginti*, *ginta*, *ēni*, and *estmus*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*vīginti*, *quādrāginta*, *trīcēni*, *quīnquāgēsīmus*.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

*vinōlentus*, *fraudūlentus*, *pulvērūlentus*, *trīcūlentus*.

4. A vowel before final *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nīus*, *nīum*, is long; as, *ārānea*, *līnea*, *cāneo*, *mūnia*, *pūnio*, *Fāvōnīus*, *patrimōnīum*. Except *castānea*, *ānea*, *māneo*, *mīneo*, *mōneo*, *sēneo*, *tēneo*, *ignōmīnia*, *luscīnia*, *vēnia*, *līnio*, *rēnio*, *ingēnīum*, *gēnīus*, *sēnio*, *sēnīum*; words in *cinīum*, as, *lēnōcīnīum*; and derivatives in *onīus*, when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agāmēmōnīus*, from *Agāmēnon*, *-ōnis*.

5. Words ending in *areo*, *arius*, *arium*, *erium*, *orius*, *orium*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*ārēo*, *cibārius*, *plantārium*, *dictērīum*, *censtrīus*, *tentōrium*. Except *cāreo*, *vārius*, *desīdērīum*, *īmpērīum*, *māgīstērīum*, *mīnīstērīum*.

6. Adjectives in *ālicus*, *ālīs*, lengthen the antepenult; as, *āquātīcus*, *phymātīlis*. Except some Greek words in *ālicus*; as, *grammātīcus*.

7. *I* before final *tūdoris* short; as, *ālītūdō*, *longītūdō*.

8. Verbals in *ālis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as, *āmābīlis*, *mārābīlis*; *crēdībīlis*, *terrībīlis*. In *hābīlis*, *b* belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short; (except in *Jūverna*); as, *jūvēnis*, *jūvēnālīs*, *jūvēnīlītās*, *flūvīus*, *dīlūvīum*.

## III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, shorten the penult:—

ba,	de,	o, <sup>6</sup>	ges,	dus, <sup>18</sup>	ena, <sup>19</sup>	arus,	atus, <sup>22</sup>
ca,	le, <sup>4</sup>	on, <sup>7</sup>	les,	eus, <sup>14</sup>	anes,	erus, <sup>21</sup>	itus, <sup>23</sup>
la, <sup>3</sup>	pe, <sup>5</sup>	os, <sup>8</sup>	lis, <sup>10</sup>	gus, <sup>15</sup>	enes,	yrus,	otus, <sup>24</sup>
be,	re,	er, <sup>9</sup>	bus,	lus, <sup>16</sup>	aris,	asus,	
ce, <sup>3</sup>	al,	mas,	cus, <sup>11</sup>	mus, <sup>17</sup>	yris,	osus,	
che,	il,	ras,	chus, <sup>12</sup>	phus, <sup>18</sup>	asis, <sup>20</sup>	usus,	

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Mārica, Nāsica.—<sup>2</sup>Eriphyla, Messala, Philomela, Suadela.—<sup>3</sup>Bereulce.—<sup>4</sup>Eriphyle, Neobule, Perimela.—<sup>5</sup>Europe, Sinope.—<sup>6</sup>Carthago, Cypavo, Cupido, Origo, Theano.—<sup>7</sup>Almon, Anthedon, Chalcedon, Iason, Philémon, Polyphemon, Sarpëdon, Thermëdon.—<sup>8</sup>Cercyros, Pëparsthos, Pharsalos, Seriphos.—<sup>9</sup>Mëleager.—<sup>10</sup>Bessalis, Eumelis, Juvënalis, Martialis, Phaselis, Stymphalis.—<sup>11</sup>Bënacus, Calvus, Granicus, Nümicus, Trivicus.—<sup>12</sup>Ophiuchus.—<sup>13</sup>Abýdus.—<sup>14</sup>Caphareus, Enipeus, Promëtheus, Phioroneus, Salmoneus, Oileus.—<sup>15</sup>Cethogus.—<sup>16</sup>Names in -clus, in -olus (*except* Eölus, Naubölus), in -bulus, (*except* Bibülus) Eumelus, Gætülus, Iulus, Massylus, Orbëlus, Pharsälus, Sardänäpulus, Stymphälus.—<sup>17</sup>Some in -dëmus and -phëmus; as, Acädëmus, Polyphëmus.—<sup>18</sup>Seriphus.—<sup>19</sup>Alcmëna, Athënä, Camëna, Fldëna, Messëna, Mürëna, Mýcëna.—<sup>20</sup>Amäsis.—<sup>21</sup>Hömërus, Ibërus.—<sup>22</sup>Arätus, Cærätus, Torquätus.—<sup>23</sup>Hëräclitus, Hermäphrödus.—<sup>24</sup>Büthrötus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana, <sup>1</sup>	sa,	num, <sup>7</sup>	tas,	nus, <sup>12</sup>	urus,	etus, <sup>16</sup>
ina, <sup>2</sup>	ta, <sup>4</sup>	tum,	des, <sup>9</sup>	pus, <sup>18</sup>	esus, <sup>15</sup>	utus,
ona, <sup>8</sup>	tæ, <sup>5</sup>	or, <sup>8</sup>	tes, <sup>10</sup>	irus,	isus,	ytus, <sup>17</sup>
yna,	ene, <sup>6</sup>	nas,	tis, <sup>11</sup>	orus, <sup>14</sup>	ysus,	vus.

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Sëquäna.—<sup>2</sup>Mütina, Pröserpina, Ruspina, Sarsina.—<sup>3</sup>Axöna, Matröna.—<sup>4</sup>Dalmäta, Próchyta, Sarmäta, Läpitha.—<sup>5</sup>Gälätæ, Jaxämëtæ, Massagëtæ, Mäcëtæ, Saurömätæ.—<sup>6</sup>Clymène, Hëlène, Melpömène, Nyctimène.—<sup>7</sup>Ariminum, Drëpanum.—<sup>8</sup>Nümitor.—<sup>9</sup>Miltiades, Pylades, Sötades, Thücydides; *patronymics* in -des, (§ 291, 4), and *plurals* in -ades.—<sup>10</sup>Antiphätes, Charites, Eurybates, Ichnobates, Euergetes, Massagetes, and *all names* in -crates.—<sup>11</sup>Derçetis.—<sup>12</sup>Apidänus, Apönus, Cäränus, Chrysogonus, Ciminus, Clymënus, Concänus, Dardänus, Diädümënus, Earinus, Eridänus, I ücinus, Hëlënus, Libänus, Möriñi, Mýcönus, Nebröphönus, Olënus, Përiclymënus, Rhödänus, Santönus, Sëquäni, Stëphänus, Telëgonus, Terminus, and *names* in -gonus and -xenus.—<sup>13</sup>Ödipus.—<sup>14</sup>Päcorus, Bospörus, and *names* in -chorus and -phorus; as, Stëlichorus, Phosphorus.—<sup>15</sup>Ephësus, Vogësus, Völësus.—<sup>16</sup>läpëtus, Täygëtus Vënëtus.—<sup>17</sup>Äpytus, Anytus, Eurýtus, Hippölýtus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Enëas, Ethion, Achëlous, Achillëus, Alcýonëus, Alexandria, Alceus, Alpheus, Aminëus, Amphiaräus, Amphigënia, Amphion, Amythäon, Arion, Anchisëus, Atlantëus, Antiöchia, Biönëus, Cäsärräa, Cälaurëa, Calliöpëa, Cassiöpëa, Cleanthëas, Cydonëus, Cymödöcëa, Cythërëa, Därius (-ëus), Dëldantä, Didymäon, Diömëdëus, Dolichäon, Echion, Eleus, Endymionëus, Enyo, Eöus, Erëbëus, Erechthëus, Gälätæa, Gigantëus, Hëräclëa (-ëus), Hippodämia, Hypëriön, Ilihyia, Imäon, Iöläus, Iphigënia, Ixion, Lädämia, Lätous, Lesbous, Lycäon, Mächäon, Mausölëum, Mëdëa, Mënëläus, Mëthion, Myrtous, Ophion, Orion, Örithyia, Orphëus, Pallantëum (-us), Pandion, Paphagëa, Pënëus, Penthësläa, Phæbëus, Poppëa, Prötësläus, Pyrëneus, Sardëus, Thälia.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Alceus, Cæneus, Orpheus, Pëleus, Perseus, Pröteus, Thëseus, Tydëus*, which are dissyllables; *Briäreus, Enipheus, Macötreus, Typhëus*, which are trisyllables, *Idömëneus*, etc. Cf. § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written *uoc* (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphëus*. So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erëbëus, Erechthëus, Orphëus; aurëus, lignëus*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. VOWELS.

## MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 294. (a.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

*ā, āh, dā, dā, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ī, fī, hī, quī, nī, sī, O or ōh, dō, prē, prēt, quō, sō, tū.*

## POLYSYLLABLES.

## A final.

1. A final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsā, templā, cāpī-tā, Tŷdeū*. Thus,

*Mūsā mīhī causas mēmōrā; quo nāmīne laseo.... Virg. A. 1, 8.*

Exc. A final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*; as,

*Mūsā, fundā; O Ānēā, O Pallā, O Anchisā.*

2. A final, in words not declined, is long; as, *āmā, frustrā, antēā, ergā, intrā*. Thus,

*Extrā fortūnam est quidquid dōnātur kīncis. Mart. Epig. 5, 42, 7.*

Exc. A final is short in *ciā, tūā, quāā*, and in *pūtā*, when used adverbially, in the sense of 'for example.' It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta*; as, *trīginta*, etc. In *postea*, it is common.

A final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphā, bētā*, etc., and in *tārātānūdrā*, the imitated sound of the trumpet.

## E final.

§ 295. E final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nātē, patrē, ipsē, currē, rēgērē, nempē, antē*. Thus,

*Incipē, parvū puer, risu cognoscere matrem. Virg. E. 4, 60.*

REMARK. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -te, -pte*, etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nēquē, hūjuscē, suaptē* Cf. § 294, (a.)

Exc. 1. E final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions as,

*Ulliōpē, Tŷdidē, fidē*. So also in the compounds of *rē* and *diē*; as, *quadrē, hōdiē, pridē, postridē, quōtidē*, and in the ablative *fāmē*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. E final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippōmēnē*; and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mētē, pētāgē, Tempē*.

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dōcē, mōnē*;—but it is sometimes short in *cāre, vāle* and *vīde*.

Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension; as,

*placide, pulchre, valde* for *valide*, *maxime*; but it is short in *bene, male, inferne*, and *superne*.

Exc. 5. *Fere, ferme*, and *ohē*, have the final *e* long.

### I final.

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *dōminī, fili, classi, doceri, si*.  
Thus,

*Quid dōminis fūcient, audent cum tālla fūres.* Virg. E. 8, 16.

Exc. 1. (a.) *I* final is common in *mīhi, tibi, sibi, ibi*, and *ubi*.

(b.) In *istiusque* and commonly in *istidem* it is long, but in *istius* and *istidem* it is short.—(c.) In *nisi, quasi*, and *cui*, when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *istam* and *istiusque*, and rarely, also, in *isti*, it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Palladi, Minid, Tithyi*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in *-is*; as, *Alexi, Daphni, Parti*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *-is*, (*us*) *-entes*; as, *Simoi, Pyroli*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *-ei*, or, before a vowel, *-eis*: as, *Dryad, heret, Troia*.

### O final.

§ 297. *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common; as, *virgō, amō, quandō*. Thus,

*Ergo mētu cōpita Boylla est inimica pāterno.* Virg. Cir. 396.

*Ergo sollicitus tu causa, pēdunia, vites es!* Prop. 8, 5, 1.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dōminō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, mēritō, vulgō, eō, quō*; and also in *omniō*, in *ergō*, 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *idō*.

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *ideo, ideo, ergo, sēro, vērō, porro, retro, immo, idcirco, subito*, and *postremo*, is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cito, illico, prōfecto*, and the compounds of *mōdo*; as, *dummodo, postmodo*, etc.; and in *ego* and *homo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omēga (ω) is long; as, *Chō, Didō, Aithō*, and *Andrōgeō*, (gen.);

### U final.

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dictū, diū*. Thus,

*Vultu, quo cœlum tempestatesque cōrēnat.* Virg. A. 1, 255.

Exc. *Adi* and *adā*, ancient forms of *is* and *non*, have *a* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *s* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentē* for *contentis*. See § 205, 2.

### Y final

2. Y final is short; as, *Mōly*, *Tīphy*. Thus,

*Mōly* vocant sup̄eri: nigrā radicē tīnētur. *Ovid.* M. 14, 292.

Exc. Y in the dative *Tīphy*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 282, III

## II. CONSONANTS.

### MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 299 1. Monosyllabic substantives ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short; as,

*ad*, *vir*, *fār*, *jūs*, *sp̄lēs*, *vēr*, *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, *pār*, *Sār*, *fār*, *fās*, *mās*, *rēs*, *pēs*, *Dīs*, *glīs*, *līs*, *vīs*, *flōs*, *mōs*, *rūs*, *Trēs*, *ēs*, (*ōris*), *dēs*, *grās*, *rās*, *tās*;—*nēc*, *in*, *ān*, *dē*, *quid*, *quis*, *quāt*, *et*; as,

*Ipsē docet quid āgam. Pēs est et āb hoste dūc̄ri.* *Ovid.* M. 4, 428.  
*Vēr adeo frondī nēm̄brum, vēr ātillē silvis.* *Virg.* G. 2, 522.

NOTE. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 288, IV. and II.

Exc. 1. *Ōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *pōl*, *cīr*, *ēs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vidēs*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *nēm*, *quān*, *sīn*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cār*, and *pār*, are long: so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c*, except *nēc*, which is short, and the pronouns *hic* and *hēc*, in the nominative and accusative, which are common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *es*, *es*, and *is*, are long; as, *hās*, *quās*, *hēs*, *nēs*, *vēs*, *quēs*, *hīs*, *quīs*;—*dēs*, *flēs*, *glēs*, *in*, *fīs*, *sīs*, *vīs*; except *ēs* from *sum* which is short.

Exc. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dāc*, from *dico*, *dāco*; *fāc*, *fēr*, from *fācio*, *fēro*.

### POLYSYLLABLES.

### D, L, N, R, T, final.

2. Final syllables ending in *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *t*, are short; as—*illūd*, *consūl*, *carmēn*, *pātēr*, *cāpūt*. Thus,

*Obstipuit simul ipse, simul percussus Achīlēs.* *Virg.* A. 1, 518.

*Nōmēn Artōnium Sicūlas implēcēt urbes.* *Ovid.* P. 2, 24.

*Dum loquor, horrōr, habet; parque est mēm̄ināssē dūlōris.* *Id.* M. 9, 291.

Exc. 1. *E* in *hēn* is long.

Exc. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on* written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en*, and genitives plural in *on*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*Tūm*, *Orīōn*, *Enēdā*, *Anchiēsā*, *Cūliōpēn*; *ēpigrammātōn*.

EXC. 2. *Æt̄r*, *æth̄er*, and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēris*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*crat̄ēr*, *not̄ēr*. So also *l̄ēr*; but the compound *Celt̄iber* has sometimes as Martial its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t̄*, may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, by syncope, or by position; as, *aut̄*, *abit̄* for *abūt̄*, *f̄um̄d̄t̄*, for *fum̄dūt̄*, *d̄m̄d̄t̄*. See § 289, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (d.)

### M final.

NOTE. Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ech̄lipsis*, § 305, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short as,

\* *Quam laudas, pl̄imā?* cec̄to n̄m̄ ad̄est h̄n̄or id̄em. *Hor.* S. 2, 2, 23.

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short; as, *c̄m̄m̄do*, *c̄r̄c̄m̄d̄go*.

### C final.

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *ā̄t̄ec*, *ill̄ic*, *ist̄ac*, *ill̄uc*. Thus,

*Ill̄ic* indocto pr̄imum se ex̄ercuit arcu. *Tib.* 2, 1, 69.

EXC. The final syllable of *d̄n̄ec* is short; as,

*D̄n̄ec* t̄ris f̄elix, multos n̄m̄r̄ab̄is am̄icos. *Ovid.* *Trist.* 1, 2, 5.

### AS, ES, and OS, final.

§ 300. Final syllables in *as*, *es*, and *os*, are long; as,

*m̄n̄d̄a*, *p̄it̄id̄a*, *d̄m̄d̄a*; *Æn̄t̄id̄a*, *qūid̄a*, *serm̄on̄is*, *d̄ic̄a*, *P̄en̄t̄ip̄t̄a*, *d̄ic̄ent̄id̄a*, *m̄n̄d̄a*, *d̄on̄d̄a*, *t̄r̄it̄a*, *d̄im̄id̄a*. Thus,

*H̄as* aut̄em *terr̄as*, *It̄al̄ique* hanc *It̄or̄is* *fram̄*. *Virg.* A. 2, 296.

*Si* m̄d̄o d̄es *f̄il̄is* *c̄ult̄us*, *c̄unt̄il̄esque* *p̄ir̄atus*. *Ovid.* M. 6, 454.

EXC. 1. (a.) AS. *As* is short in *d̄n̄d̄s*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *d̄n̄is* or *d̄nos*; as, *Arc̄as*, *Pall̄is*; and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *h̄er̄t̄as*, *lamp̄ad̄as*.

(b.) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as*, *d̄nos*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *App̄id̄as*.

EXC. 2. ES. (a.) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hosp̄ēs*, *d̄m̄ēs*, *h̄eb̄ēs*; gen. *hosp̄it̄is*, etc.

(b.) But it is long in *ā̄b̄ēs*, *ā̄r̄t̄as*, *p̄ōr̄t̄as*, *Cr̄ēs*, and *p̄ēs*, with its compounds *corn̄ip̄ēs*, *s̄on̄ip̄ēs*, etc.

(c.) *Es*, in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *p̄n̄ēs*, is short.

(d.) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es*; as, *C̄ic̄ōth̄ēs*, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Arc̄ad̄ēs*, *Tr̄ōēs*, *Am̄az̄on̄ēs*; from *Arc̄as*, *Arc̄ad̄is*, etc.

EXC. 3. OS. (a.) *Os* is short in *comp̄ōs*, *imp̄ōs*, and *de* (*oasis*), with its compound *ōas̄is*



(b.) *O* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omacron*-*omega*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chalcis*, *epos*, *Argos*; (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Iliis*, *Tyris*, *Dilis*; except those whose genitive is in *is*, (Greek *omega*); as, *Athos*, gen. *Athos*; (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Palladis*, *Tethyos*, from *Pallis* and *Tethys*.

### IS, US, and YS, final.

§ 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as,

*terris*, *multis*, *malis*, *amulis*, *medis*; *pectus*, *bonis*, *ejus*, *amulus*, *rursus*, *omnis*; *Cicero*, *litis*. Thus,

Non *epus* inde tūlit collectos sēdula flores. *Ovid.* M. 13, 923.

*Servus* aut ostium sēdem prōpterāvis ad ōnam. *Id.* M. 10, 38.

At *Cicero*, et quōrum mēllor sententia menti. *Virg.* A. 2, 35.

Exc. 1. IS. (a.) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

*malis*, *nōbis*; *omnis*, *urbis*, (for *omnes*, *urbes*); *quis*, (for *quēis* or *quibus*). So also in the adverbs *gradis*, *ingradis*, and *fortis*, which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

Et liquidī simūl ignis; ut *his* exordia p̄mis. *Virg.* A. 6, 38.

*Quis* ante ōra patrūm Trōjæ sub moenibus altis. *Id.* A. 1, 96.

Non *omnis* arbusta jūvant, hūmilesque myricæ. *Id.* E. 4, 2.

Adde tōt *egregias urbis*, *oparūmque liborem*. *Id.* G. 2, 155.

(b.) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *is*, *ius*, or *entis*; as, *Samnis*, *Sikaniis*, *Stimolis*.

(c.) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

*audis*, *nescis*. So also in the second persons, *fis*, *is*, *sic*, *vis*, *vellis*, and their compounds; as, *adis*, *possis*, *quomvis*, *malis*, *nōtis*, etc. Cf. § 299, 1, Exc. 3.

(d.) *Ris*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *videris*.

Exc. 2. US. (a.) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.); as,

*tellus*, *virtus*, *incus*;—*fructus*. But *pallus*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

(b.) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ou* (*ou*) whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amulius*, *Opus*, *Edipus*, *tripus*, *Panthus*; gen. *Didus*, *Sapphus*. But compounds of *pus* (*πυς*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *polypus*.

NOTE. The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapaestic and the Ionic *a minore*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK. By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

Sanguineūque mānu crepitanē concutit armā. *Ovid.* M. 1, 143.

No- ēget Mauri mēllis, nec arcē. *Hor.* Od. 1, 23, 2.

## VERSIFICATION.

## FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

## I. SIMPLE FEET.

## 1. Of two Syllables.

<i>Spondee</i> ,.....	two long, — — ; as,.....	<i>fandant</i> .
<i>Pyrrhic</i> ,.....	two short, — — ; as,.....	<i>Dés.</i>
<i>Trochee</i> , or <i>choree</i> ,.....	a long and a short, — — ; as,.....	<i>armé.</i>
<i>Iambus</i> ,.....	a short and a long, — — ; as,.....	<i>éclat.</i>

## 2. Of three Syllables.

<i>Dactyl</i> ,.....	a long and two short, — — — ; as,.....	<i>corpore.</i>
<i>Anapæst</i> ,.....	two short and a long, — — — ; as,.....	<i>domini.</i>
<i>Tribrach</i> ,.....	three short, — — — ; as,.....	<i>factis.</i>
<i>Molossus</i> ,.....	three long, — — — ; as,.....	<i>contendant.</i>
<i>Amphibrach</i> ,.....	a short, a long, and a short, — — — ; as,.....	<i>amars.</i>
<i>Amphimæcrus</i> , or <i>Cretic</i> ,.....	a long, a short, and a long, — — — ; as,.....	<i>castide.</i>
<i>Bacchius</i> ,.....	a short and two long, — — — ; as,.....	<i>Citons.</i>
<i>Antibacchius</i> ,.....	two long and a short, — — — ; as,.....	<i>Romains.</i>

## II. COMPOUND FEET.

<i>Dispondee</i> ,.....	a double spondee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>confiterunt.</i>
<i>Proceleusmatic</i> ,.....	a double Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>hominibus.</i>
<i>Ditrochee</i> ,.....	a double trochee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>comprobat.</i>
<i>Diambus</i> ,.....	a double iambus, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>amaverunt.</i>
<i>Greater Ionic</i> ,.....	a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>correzimus.</i>
<i>Smaller Ionic</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and a spondee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>propterant.</i>
<i>Choriambus</i> ,.....	a choree and an iambus, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>terrificant.</i>
<i>Antispast</i> ,.....	an iambus and a choree, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>adhesiss.</i>
<i>First epitrit</i> ,.....	an iambus and a spondee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>amaverunt.</i>
<i>Second epitrit</i> ,.....	a trochee and a spondee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>conditoris.</i>
<i>Third epitrit</i> ,.....	a spondee and an iambus, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>discorsus.</i>
<i>Fourth epitrit</i> ,.....	a spondee and a trochee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>adduxistis.</i>
<i>First pæon</i> ,.....	a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>temporibus.</i>
<i>Second pæon</i> ,.....	an iambus and a Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>potentis.</i>
<i>Third pæon</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and a trochee, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>animatus.</i>
<i>Fourth pæon</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and an iambus, — — — — ; as,.....	<i>clertus.</i>

REMARK. Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

## METRE.

§ 303. 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapestic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure*, in a specific sense, is either a single foot or a combination of two feet. In the *dactylic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic* metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy*.

## VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *senarius*, consisting of six feet; *octonarius*, of eight feet; *monometer*, consisting of one measure; *dimeter*, of two; *trimeter*, *tetrameter*, *pentameter*, *hexameter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, *Glyconic*, *Phalæcian*, *Sotadic*, *Archilochian*, *Alcmanian*, *Pherecratic*, *Aristophanic*, etc., from *Sappho*, *Anacreon*, *Alcæus*, *Asclepiades*, *Glycon*, *Phalæcus*, *Sotades*, *Archilochus*, *Alcman*, *Pherecrates*, *Aristophanes*, etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac*, from its use in solemn processions, the *paræmiac*, from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermeter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species*, the second to the *number of metres*, and the third to the *ending*; as, the *dactylic trimeter catalectic*.

5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihēmimēris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *penthēmimēris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *hepthēmimēris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehēmimēris*. A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmidius*, as being the half of a *trimeter*.

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### SYNALÆPHA.

— § 305. 1. *Synalæpha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua*; *Dardānida infensi*, *Dardānid' infensi*; *vento huc*, *vent' huc*. So,

*Quidve mōros? si omnes uno ordine hābētis Achivos.* Virg. A. 2, 102.

Which is scanned thus—

*Quidve mōros? s' omnes un' ordin' hābētis Achivos.*

(1.) The interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *va*, *vah*, are not elided; as,

*O et de Latia, O et de gente Sibina.* Ovid. M. 14, 332.

REMARK. But *O*, though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

*Te Cōrydon O Alexi; trāhit sua quæque voluptas.* Virg. E. 2, 65.

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

*Victor apud rapidum Simoēnta sub Ithō alto.* Virg. A. 5, 261.

*Anni tempore eo qui Etēsia esse sēruntur.* Lucr. 6, 717.

*Ter sunt cōditi impōnere Pelis Ossam.* Virg. G. 1, 281.

*Glaucō et Pāndōptā, et Inō Mēliortēs.* Id. G. 1, 436.

(3.) Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

*Et vēra incassū pātāt dāi. Ille ubi mātrem....* Virg. A. 1, 405.

(4.) Synalæpha in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

*Si ad vitulam spectas, nihil est, quod pocula laudes.* Virg. E. 3, 43.

For synalæpha at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

*O cūras hōminum, O quantum est in rebus ināne!* Pers. 1, 1.

Which is thus scanned—

O cūras hōmīnū? O quant' est in rēbus ināne.

*Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ādemptum.* Virg. A. 3, 638.

- (1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,  
*Corpōrū officium est quānam prēmāre omnia deorsum.* Lucr. 1, 383.

See § 299, 2

- (2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque*; *omnibu' rēbus.* (Lucr.) So,

*Tum lātērali' dōlor, certissimū' nūnciat' mortis.* Lucil.

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapsis*, § 307, 3.

## SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. Synæresis is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

*Aurē percussus virgā, verumque vēnētia.* Virg. A. 7, 190.

*Eodem habuit ōcum, quibus est ōlata, cāpillo.* Prop. 4, 7, 7.

*Tityre, pascentes a flūmine reice cāpellas.* Virg. E. 3, 93.

REMARK 1. So *Phæthon* is pronounced *Phæthon*; *alveo*, *alve*; *Orphae*, *Orpha*; *deorsum*, *dorsum*.

- (1.) Synæresis is frequent in *et*, *īdem*, *isdem*, *dū*, *quā*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *deest*, *debat*, *debro*, *debrū*, *deesse*; as,

*Præcipitātur āquis, et āquis nox surgit ab īdem.* Ovid. M. 4, 92.

*Sint Mæcēnātes; non deerunt, Flacce, Mārōnes.* Mart. 8, 56, 5.

REM. 2. *Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

- (2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambulo*, *anteire*, *antehac*, *dehinc*, *mehercule*, etc., and *a* in *contraire*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *ābitte*, *āritte*, *ābiēgnæ*, *pāriētibus*, *consiliū*, *fortitū*, *Nāsidēnus*, *vindēmīator*, *omniā*; *gēnuā*, *tēnuā*, *pītuā*, *flūviōrum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *ābyēte*, *pāryētibus*, *consilyū*, *fortwoitū*, *Nāsidyēnus*, *omn-yā*, *tenwis*, *pīwoitā*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tēnuibre* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *uo*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tēn-wo-re*.

- (4.) Sometimes, after a synalopha or ecthipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*: *consilium et*,—*consil-yet*.

(5.) If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called *crasis*; as, *dū*, *consili*, for *dū*, *consiliū*.

## DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diaerēsis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

*aulā*, *Trōia*, *sīlva*, *sūddent*; for *aula*, *Troia* or *Troja*, *silva*, *suddent*. So, *sūssop* for *suesco*; *rēlūqūis* for *reliquis*; *ecquīs* for *ecquis*; *mīlūis* for *milvus*, etc., as

*Æthereum sensum, atque cordi simplicis ignem. Virg. A. 6, 747.*  
*Atque illos illi irrident, Veneremque stident. Lucr. 4, 1153.*  
*Grammatici certant; et adhuc sub iedice lis est. Hor. A. P. 78.*  
*Aurum et stiles mætu. Et. O. 1, 22, 4.*

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (α or ι); as, *Ælægia* for *ellægia*, *Bacchæid* for *Bacchæa*, *Rhætiids* for *Rhætius*, *Plæds* for *Phæds* and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Væiis* for *Veius*, *Aquilæid* for *Aquileid*.

REMARK. This figure is sometimes called *dialysis*.

### SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. *Systole* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

*vidē'n* for *viderne*, in which *e* is naturally long; *sitt'n* for *sittine*, in which *i* is long by position;—*hōdie* for *hōc die*; *multimōdis* for *multis mōdis*. So,

*Ducere multimōdis voces, et flectere cantus. Lucr. 5, 1405.*

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ab*, *de*, *ob*, *sib*, and *re*; in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *abici*, *deici*, *obici*, etc. Thus,

*Si quid nostra tuis dæciis variatio rēbus. Mart. 10, 82, 1.*

REMARK. In some compounds the short quantity of *de* and *ob* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *dperio*, *omitto*, etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *steterunt*, *tulerunt*, etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

### DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastole* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re*; as, *Præmides*, *religio*, etc. Thus,

*Hanc tibi Præmides mitto, Lædaea, militem. Ovid. H. 16, 1.*

*Religione patrum multos servata per annos. Virg. A. 2, 715.*

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re*; as, *relligio*.

(3.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectasis*.

### SYNAPHEIA.

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapestic verse, and in the *Ionic a minore*.

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

*Præcepit silvas montesque fugit  
 Citus Actæon. Sen.*

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc*.

Omnia Mercurio similis, vocemque citharamque  
 Et crines flavos.... *Virg. A. 4, 568.*  
 Dissidens plēbi nūmēro beatōrum  
 Eximit virtus. *Hor. O. 2, 2, 18.*

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalcepha are combined, *est* being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar combination of synapheia and eothlipsia.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses; as,

.... si non offendēret aemum-  
 Quinque postūrum līnes līber et mōra.... *Hor. A. P. 290.*

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided before a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and often tends to magnify the object; as,

Quōs sup̄er- | -ātrā st- | -lēx, jān- | -jām lāp- | -sūrū cā- | -dēnti- | -que  
 Imminet assuillīs. *Virg. A. 6, 602.*

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthesis*, *aphorēsis*, *syncope*, *epenthesis*, *apocope*, *paragoge*, *emēsis*, *anastrophe*, and *metathesis*. See § 322.

## ARISIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depressing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arisis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural *arisis* is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence, in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when considered in itself, the place of the *arisis* is undetermined; but when such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its *arisis* is determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the *arisis* on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapestic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The *arisis* is either equal in duration to the *thesis*, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — — —, and anapest, — — —, it is equal; in the trochee, — —, and iambus, — —, it is twice as long. This difference in the proportionate duration of the *arisis* and *thesis* constitutes the difference of rhythm. A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its *arisis* is at the beginning, and the *ascending*, when the *thesis* is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the *arisis* of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the *arisis* of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the *ictus* falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arisis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the *thesis* was the syllable which received the *ictus*.

NOTE 2. As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalœpha and œthlipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

## CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

Cæsura is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot*; 2, of the *rhythm*; and 3, of the *verse*.

1. Cæsura of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

Stilves- | -tram tenu- | -i Mu- | -sam medi- | -târis a- | -vênâ. Virg. E. 1, 2.

2. Cæsura of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

REM. 1. It hence appears that the cæsura of the rhythm is always a cæsura of the foot, as e. g. in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the cæsura of the foot is not always a cæsura of the rhythm, as e. g. in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) Cæsura of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus*; as,

Pœtœri- | -jâs inhi- | -ans spl- | -rântiâ | cœnsiliâ | âxta. Virg. A. 4, 64.

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

REM. 2. Cæsura of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. Cæsura of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

REM. 3. The cæsura of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause*. In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the cæsural pause will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

REM. 4. The effect of the cæsura is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

### DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,



Āt tūba | tērrībi- | -lēm sōni- | -tām prēcū | ārē cā- | -nōrp. Virg. A. 9, 503.  
Intōn- | -et cri- | -nēs lōn- | -gā cēr- | -vīcū flū- | -stānt. Tibull. 3, 4, 27.  
Lūddēs | quā vā- | -lēm cālā- | -mō pār- | -mīst ā- | -grēstī. Virg. E. 1, 10.

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic*; as,

Cārē dē- | -ām sōbē- | -lēs māg- | -nūm Jōvis | -incrē- | -mēntām. Virg. E. 4 49.

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quādrūp- | -stantē pū- | -tēm sōni- | -tā quātū | -ānglīā | -cāmpū. Virg. A. 8, 506.  
Illī in- | -tēr sē- | -sē māg- | -nā vī | -brāchiā tollunt. M. A. 8, 452.

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Stērnitū- | -stānī- | -mīsqū, trē- | -mēns prē- | -cāmbūt hū- | -mī bēs. Virg. A. 5, 481.  
Pārtūrī- | -ant mōn- | -tēs nās- | -cētūr | -rīdīcū- | -lūs māg. Hor. A. P. 139.

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmā | mēnīā | tērrīt | Impīgēr | Hānnībāl | ārmīs. Enn.

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as the *heroic cæsura*. Thus,

Āt dōmūs | Intērī- | -ōr | -rē- | -gālī | -splēndidā | -lūxā. Virg. A. 1, 637.

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Infān- | -dūm rē- | -gīnā | -jā- | -bēs rēnō- | -vārē dē- | -lōrem. Virg. A. 2, 3.  
Indē tō- | -rō pātēr | -Ānō- | -ās | -sīc | -ōrīs āb | -āltō. Id. A. 2, 2.

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *apthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Primā tē- | -nēt, | -plāū- | -sūquē vō- | -lāt | -frēmī- | -tūquē sē- | -cūdo. Virg. A. 5, 393.

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cui nōn | dictūs Hī- | -lās pūr | -ēt Lā- | -tōnī | -Dēlos. Virg. G. 3, 6.

REM. 4. The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic cæsura*; as,

Stānt vitū- | -lī ēt tēnē- | -rīs mū- | -gītībūs | -ādrā | -cāmplēt. Nemes.

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic cæsura*; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*, as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxīnūs | in sīl- | -vīs pūl- | -chērrīmā, | -plūūs īn | -hōrtīs. Virg. E. 7, 65.

(a.) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the second and third feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,

Una En- | -rūquē Nō- | -tūquē rā- | -ānt erā- | -bēquē prō- | -cēllis. *Virg. A. 1. 86.*

(b.) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, but are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first, third* and *fifth*. See *Virg. A. 6, 851: 1, 94: and 6, 522.*

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura of the foot; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Bellis | terrā- | -sē pō- | -tes, | pō- | -tūquē rē- | -frēgīt. *Hor. S. 1, 4, 61.*

II. The *Priapean* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cō- | -lōnā | quē cūpis | pōntē | lādērō | lōngō. *Catull. 17, 1.*

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cō- | -lōnā, quē | cūpis  
Pōntē | lādērō lōn- | -gō.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapean*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtū | pāre pā- | -tū dātā | pāre dātā | tērtū | mātrī. *Catull. 62, 64*

See above, &

### § 311. III. A pentameter verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -rē sēquī- | -tār || sēmīnā | quēquē sū- | -m. *Prop. 2, 7, 20.*  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mō- | -lō. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapaests; as,

Nātū- | -rē sēquī- | -tār || sēm- | -īnā quē- | -quē sūm.  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēm- | -pūs īn ōm- | -nē mōis.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penhemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In *Ovid*, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac* verse. Thus,

Flēbilis indignōs, Mīgētū, cūlō cūpīllōs.  
Ah nimis ex vēro nūc tibi nōmēn ērit! *Ovid. Am. 2, 2, 2.*

§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priore*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gärräk | pär rē- | -mäs, kvīs | öbetröpt. *See*. *Od.* 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriore*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Dimäs, | ö ööl- | -i, ööml- | -töque. *Her.* *Od.* 1, 7, 23.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Mäns- | -räm ööl- | -bäst Ar- | -öhtä. *Her.* *Od.* 1, 23, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Gräs | Pörräk sūb | äntro. *Her.* *Od.* 1, 5, 2.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pulvis ät | ämbrä sū- | -mäs. *Her.* *Od.* 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Riät Ä- | -pöllo. *Her.* *Od.* 1, 30, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus. Thus

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

X. The *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic pentamimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Vist- | -bät göll- | -däs | äldärä | brūms. *Boethius.*

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meivrus*, or *Faliscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ut näv | frögä grä- | -vis Öörä | änt. *Boethius.*

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ömne höml- | -nūm göntä | in tär- | -räs. *Boethius.*

#### ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapestic monometer* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ömäs- | -ö ömäs. *See.*

• II. The *anapestic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapests; as,

Phởởởở- ! -quả gỏiởở ! ỏỏỏ ởở- ! -về ởở... ởở.

REMARK 1. The first foot in each measure of anapaestic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

**REM. 2.** Anapestic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or three measures.

**LAMBIC METRE.**

**§ 314.** L. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet; as,

Final - 456 12-1-34, London / VIII - 456 12-1-34... Oct 24, 1.

2. The *cæsura* commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

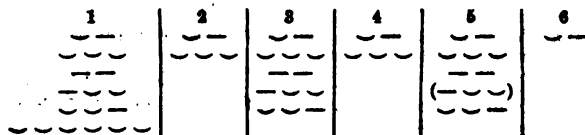
3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapest or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare; as,

Quō, quō | scōlōe- | -ti rūi- | -tis? Nūt | eūr dēx- | -tōris.... *Hor. Epod. 7, 1.*

Áliti- -bās āt- -quē cānī- -bās hōmī- -cīdām Hēc- -tōrēm.... *Id. Epod. 17. 12.*

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapaest) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—



6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet; as,

**Tbā- | Lībār- | -nā- | tār- | -tā- | -vām- |**

Utān- -nē jās- -ē pār- -pēvū'- -mār ō- -tām.

II. The *scazon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth: as.

Oür fu | thöä- | -gräm, Oüü | sävü- | -rö, vö- | -näst!

An Idô. | ô tân- | -tâm vên- | -êrās, | üt êx- | -l-rēs? Mart. Ep. 1, 1, 8.

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic trimeter*, from its inventor Hippodax.

III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrātus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nāne hīc | diēs | āliām | vītām āf- | -fert, āli- | -cā mō- | -rēs pōe- | -tūlat. Ter. A. 1, 2, 12.

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hyponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -cū nā- | -vis in | mārī, | vōcā- | -nān- | -tē vēm- | -te. Catull. 26, 12.

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vōcā- | -tūs āt- | -quē nōn | vōcā- | -tūs āt- | -dit. Hor. Od. 2, 13, 40.

Trāhēt- | -quē sic- | -cās māch- | -inē | cārī- | -nas. Id. Od. 1, 4, 2.

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

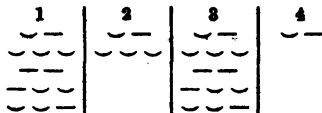
Fert | sēquē- | -mār pōe- | -tūre. Hor. Epod. 1, 14.

Cānidi- | -ā trāc- | -tāvīt | dāpēs. Id. Epod. 3, 8.

Vide- | -rē prōpē- | -rāntēs | dūmum. Id. Epod. 3, 62.

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—



VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēdē- | -gīt in | vōrē | tūmē- | -rēs. Hor. Od. 1, 37, 15.

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | sēūr | nēque āt- | -rēm.... Hor. Od. 2, 13, 1.

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut ti- | grīs ēr- | -bā guā- | -tis. Sen. Med. 868.

X. The *Gallimbus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Galli* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.



It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

NOTE 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitrite in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic syzygy catalectic; thus,

Intēgēr vī- | -tē, solētia- | -quē pāris.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

Nōn set | vivēre, | sed vā- | -lētē | vīm. Mæv.

REMARK 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

REM. 2. The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nōn ē | -bār nā- | -que sēre- | -am. Mæv. Od. 2, 13, 1.

Lēnīs | āc mōdī- | -cūm sū- | -s

Aūtē, | nōc vā- | -gēs lī- | -tus. Sen. Oed. 387.

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acéphalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

## CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. (a.) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an iambic syzygy.

NOTE. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitrite, are sometimes used in place of the iambic syzygy.

(b.) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitrite, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nō | quāstēris, | sēre nōs, | quā mīhī, quā tibi. Hor. Od. 1, 11, 1.

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

Omne nōmē | cūm sūvīs, | omne cūmē | prōfūdum. Claud.

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

Tū dēs ē- | -rō, sūbīrīn | cūr prōpēris | iūmēdō. Hor. Od. 1, 8, 2.

3. Some scan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitrite.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mēs- | -rō, kīvīs | sūbīrēg- | -ibus. Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.

2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The natural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Miles | -nā, lū- | vīs | dūns | rēgibus.

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tū | divā pēns | Ōypri... Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. Thus,

Sic tū | divā pē- | -tēns Ōypri.

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrates), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable; and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Gaūā, | Pērrā, sūb ān- | -trō. Hor. Od. 1, 5, 2.

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lpāā dū | pē ānās. Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (a.)

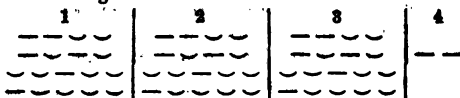
## IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotades), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in these feet into two short ones; as,

Hās, cūm gēmi- | -nā cōmpōdē, | dēdicāt eū- | -tēnās,  
Sātūrnē, tī- | -bi Zōilās, | ānnūlō pri- | -ōrās. Mart.

2. Hence the following is its scale:—



NOTE. The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minore* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

Pūēr ālēs, | tibi tēlās, | ōpērcē- | -quē Minērvā... Hor. Od. 2, 12, 4.

2. In this verse, as in the anapaestic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.



COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre or *Elegiacus* consists of a dactylic penthemimēris (§ 312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scītibŕē | vīctōŕē- | -tē | āmā- | -rē pŕē- | -cŕīcūm | grāvi. *Hor. Epod. 11, 2.*

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nivē- | -quē dē- | -dŕōcūm | Jŕvēm : | nāne mŕrē, | nāne sŕlŕ- | -cē. *Hor. Epod. 12, 2.*

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a chor-iambus, and an iambus; as,

Vīdēs | ŕē ŕī- | -tā | stŕt nŕvē cān- | -dīdum. *Hor. Od. 1, 9, 1.*

REMARK 1. The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2. The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3. This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Salvītŕ | ŕŕis hī- | -ŕms grā- | -tā vīŕē | vŕŕis | ŕē pŕē- | -vŕnī. *Hor. Od. 1, 4, 1.*

REMARK. The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter* or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lŕvŕ | pŕsŕnŕ- | -ŕŕē | sŕlŕ. *Hor. Od. 1, 17, 12.*

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. 1. A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocolon*; that which has two kinds, *dicolon*; that which has three kinds, *tricolon*.

3. When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrophon*; when after the third line, *tristrophon*; and when after the fourth, *tetrasrophon*.

4. The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe*.

5. A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicolon distrophon*, (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dicol-*

lon *tristrophon*, (Auson. Profess. 21); when four, *diclon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 2) and when five, *diclon pentastrophon*.

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *triclon tristrophon*, (§ 320, 15); when four, *triclon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 1).

### HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

#### SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, v.); *as*,

Vides, ut altæ stæt nivè candidum  
Sorsitæ, nêo jam sustinentur onus  
Silvæ laborantæ, gelluquæ  
Flumina constitierint ædæto. (Lib. 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); *as*,

Jam satis tærris nivis atquæ diræ  
Grandinis mist pater, et, rubentis  
Dactylæ sacris bellatis ærom,  
Tærrult urbem. (Lib. 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); *as*,

Sic tæ Divæ pôtens Cypri,  
Sic fratre Hælonæ, lætæ stætra... (Lib. 1, 3.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); *as*,

Ibis Libænis intèr altæ nâvium,  
Ambo, præpugnacula. (Epod. 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); *as*,

Scribæris Vârto fortis, et hæstium  
Victor, Mæonii cæminis alitæ,  
Quâm rêu omniquæ fôræ nâvibis æt æquis  
Miles, tæ ducæ, gænerit. (Lib. 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Phæreætic (§ 316, v.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); *as*,

Dianam, tînære, diættæ virgines:  
Intænæm, pæri, diættæ Cynthium,  
Lætônâquæ supremo  
Dilectam pænitas Jovi. (Lib. 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; *as*,

Mæonæis ætævis æditæ rêgibus. (Lib. 1, 1.)

8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriori* (§ 312, V.); as,

LŒtābant illi cōrām Rhōdōn, sūt Mitylēnā,  
Aut Ephēseā, hīmarōvē Cōrīnthi... (LŒ. 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,  
Tū nō quāstōrīs, scīrē mēis, quēm mīhi, quēm tibi... (LŒ. 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Hic dicit, et cōis fulgēbat lūm cōrūpō  
Inter mīnūtā stēla. (Epid. 16.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees; as,  
Jūm, jūm efflēt dē mīnīs scīentīa. (Epid. 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

LŒm, dō, pōr dūm  
Tū dōis dō, sūbāra cōr pōpōrīs lūmāda... (LŒ. 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.); as,

Altēr jūm tērtiū bellis cōvīlībīs sūm;  
Sūm et ipē Rōmā virībīs rūt. (Epid. 18.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

Dū ōgērē nīvīs: rōdūt jūm grāmīnē cāmpis,  
Irbōrībōsqū cōmā. (LŒ. 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Pētī, nīhīl mē, stētū antēā, jūvāt  
Scribērē vērēlīcō,  
Amōrē pōrōlūm grāvī. (Epid. 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, I.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

Hōrīdā tēmpōrīs cōlām cōntrāxī; ēē lūm  
Nīvēsquē dēdūcūt Jōvem:  
Nūc mārē, nūc sūm... (Epid. 12.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Solvītūr acris hīlīs grātī vīō vērīs et Pāvāt,  
Trāhūtquē stōcīs mīchīlīs cōrīnās. (LŒ. 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Nōn ēbār nēque sūrūm  
Mēā rōnīdēt in cōmō lūcār. (LŒ. 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minore* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,  
Mīōtrūm ēēt nēque lūmēt dīrē lūm, nēque dālet... (LŒ. 2, 12.)

§ 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.*

<i>Æn; vetusto</i> .....	No. 1	<i>Mollis inertia</i> .....	No. 10
<i>Æquam memento</i> .....	1	<i>Montium custos</i> .....	2
<i>Albi, ne doleas</i> .....	5	<i>Motum ex Metello</i> .....	1
<i>Altèra jam testitur</i> .....	18	<i>Masis amicus</i> .....	1
<i>Angustam, amice</i> .....	1	<i>Natis in usum</i> .....	1
<i>At, O deorum</i> .....	4	<i>Ne forte credas</i> .....	1
<i>Audivære, Lyce</i> .....	6	<i>Ne sit auxillas</i> .....	2
<i>Bacchum in remõtis</i> .....	1	<i>Nolis longa feras</i> .....	5
<i>Beatus ille</i> .....	4	<i>Nondum subacta</i> .....	1
<i>Cælo supinas</i> .....	1	<i>Non ebur neque aureum</i> .....	18
<i>Cælo tonantem</i> .....	1	<i>Non semper imbres</i> .....	1
<i>Cur me querelis</i> .....	1	<i>Non usitata</i> .....	1
<i>Delicta majõrum</i> .....	1	<i>Non vides, quanto</i> .....	2
<i>Descende coeli</i> .....	1	<i>Nox erat</i> .....	10
<i>Diānam, tenèræ</i> .....	6	<i>Nullam, Vare, sacræ</i> .....	2
<i>Diffugære nives</i> .....	14	<i>Nullus argento</i> .....	2
<i>Dive, quæm proles</i> .....	2	<i>Nuge est bibendum</i> .....	1
<i>Divis orte bonis</i> .....	5	<i>O crudelis adhuc</i> .....	2
<i>Donærem patêas</i> .....	7	<i>O diva, gratum</i> .....	1
<i>Donec gratus eram tibi</i> .....	3	<i>O fons Bandusie</i> .....	6
<i>Eheu! fugâces</i> .....	1	<i>O matre pulchrâ</i> .....	1
<i>Est mihi nonum</i> .....	2	<i>O nata mecum</i> .....	1
<i>Et ture et fidibus</i> .....	3	<i>O navis, referent</i> .....	6
<i>Exegi monumentum</i> .....	7	<i>O sæpe mecum</i> .....	1
<i>Extremum Tanaim</i> .....	5	<i>O Venus, regina</i> .....	2
<i>Faune, nympharum</i> .....	2	<i>Odi profanum</i> .....	1
<i>Festo quid potius die</i> .....	3	<i>Otium Divos</i> .....	2
<i>Herculis ritu</i> .....	2	<i>Parcius junctas</i> .....	2
<i>Horrida tempestas</i> .....	16	<i>Parcus Deorum</i> .....	1
<i>Ibis Liburnis</i> .....	4	<i>Parentis olim</i> .....	4
<i>Ioci, beatis</i> .....	1	<i>Pastor quum traheret</i> .....	5
<i>Ille et nefasto</i> .....	1	<i>Periclos odi, puer</i> .....	2
<i>Impios parre</i> .....	2	<i>Petti, nihil me</i> .....	16
<i>Incolâsam Danâen</i> .....	5	<i>Phoebe, silvarumque</i> .....	2
<i>Intactis opulentior</i> .....	3	<i>Phœbus volentem</i> .....	1
<i>Intèger vitæ</i> .....	2	<i>Pindarum quisquis</i> .....	2
<i>Intermissa, Venus, diu</i> .....	3	<i>Poscimus: si quid</i> .....	2
<i>Jam jam efficaci</i> .....	11	<i>Quæ cura Patrum</i> .....	1
<i>Jam pauca aratro</i> .....	1	<i>Qualem ministrum</i> .....	1
<i>Jam satis terris</i> .....	2	<i>Quando repostum</i> .....	4
<i>Jam veris comites</i> .....	5	<i>Quantum distet ab Inacho</i> .....	3
<i>Justum et tenacem</i> .....	1	<i>Quem tu, Melpomene</i> .....	2
<i>Laudabunt alii</i> .....	8	<i>Quem virum aut herõa</i> .....	2
<i>Lupis et agnia</i> .....	4	<i>Quid bellicosus</i> .....	1
<i>Lydia, dic, per omnes</i> .....	12	<i>Quid dedicatum</i> .....	1
<i>Mæcenas atavis</i> .....	7	<i>Quid fies, Asterie</i> .....	6
<i>Malâ soluta</i> .....	4	<i>Quid immerentes</i> .....	4
<i>Martis cæiebs</i> .....	2	<i>Quid obseratis</i> .....	11
<i>Mater sæva Cupidinum</i> .....	3	<i>Quid tibi vis</i> .....	3
<i>Mercûri, facunde</i> .....	2	<i>Quis desiderio</i> .....	5
<i>Mercûri, nam te</i> .....	2	<i>Quis multa gracilla</i> .....	6
<i>Miserarum est</i> .....	19	<i>Quo me, Bacoche</i> .....	3

Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis.....	No. 4	Tu ne quasiëris.....	No. 9
Quum tu, Lydia.....	8	Tyrrhëna regum.....	1
Rectius vives.....	2	Ulla si iuris.....	2
Rogare longo.....	4	Uxor paupëris Ibyci.....	3
Scriberis Varro.....	5	Velox amicum.....	1
Septimi, Gades.....	2	Vides, ut altä.....	1
Sic te Diva potens.....	8	Vile potäbis.....	2
Solvitur acris hiems.....	17	Vitas hinnuleo.....	6
Te maris et terræ.....	8	Vixi puellis.....	1

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Dactylic Hexameter.                       | 11. Choriambic Pentameter.   |
| 2. Dactylic Tetrameter <i>a posteriori</i> . | 12. Choriambic Tetrameter.   |
| 3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.             | 13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.  |
| 4. Adonic.                                   | 14. Glyconic.                |
| 5. Trimeter Iambic.                          | 15. Pherecratic.             |
| 6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.               | 16. Choriambic Dimeter.      |
| 7. Iambic Dimeter.                           | 17. Ionic <i>a minore</i> .  |
| 8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.   | 18. Greater Alcaic.          |
| 9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.                | 19. Archilochian Heptameter. |
| 10. Sapphic.                                 | 20. Lesser Alcaic.           |

## APPENDIX.

## GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

## I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasms*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus*; *tētūli*, for *tūli*. These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est*; *rābōnem*, for *arrābōnem*.

3. *Epenhesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *āltitum*, for *ālitum*; *Māvors*, for *Mars*.

4. *Syncope* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *deim*, for *deōrum*; *meām factum*, for *meōrum factorum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcula*; *festi*, for *festisti*; *repostus*, for *repositus*; *aspris*, for *asperis*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cōāgo*; *nil*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragoge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudē*.

7. *Apocope* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mēne*; *Antōni*, for *Antōnia*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *olli*, for *illi*; *optūmus*, for *optimus*; *afficio*, for *adfficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v*; as, *vollus*, for *vullus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris*, for *priētis*.

## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallage*, and *hyperbāton*.

1. (a.) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

*Aiunt*, scil. *hōmīnes*. *Dīrius Hystaspis*, scil. *filius*. *Cāno*, scil. *ēgo*. *Quid multa?* scil. *dicam*. *Ex quo*, scil. *tempōre*. *Fērīna*, scil. *caro*.

(b.) *Ellipsis* includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllepsis*, and *prolepsis*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit* scil. *et*. *Cic.* This is called in pure Latin *dissolutio*.

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gerens*: (Sall.) where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *agere*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fugā versābimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nego* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Negant Castrum mansurum, postulādaque interpōita esse*, for *dicuntque postulāda...* Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*, but more commonly *syllipsis*; as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior aliquid est*. Hor. *Cāper tibi salvus et hōdī*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidi es*. Id.

(3.) *Syllipsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another, as, *Attōliti nōtāte pārent* Baucis, *amicūque Philēmon*. Ovid. *Prēcumbit āterque prōnus hāmi*, i. e. *Deucāliōn et Pyrrha*. Id. *Sustūlimus mēnus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipsē cum frātre dēdesse jussī sūmus*. Id. *Prōjectisq̄ue amīcūlo et lītēris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prolepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Prīncipes utrīq̄ue pugnam cēdant, ab Sabinis Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostus Hostilius*. Liv. *Bōni quōniam convenimus ambo, tu cāktamos inflāre, ego dēcre sorsus*. Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*. Virg. *Qui mūgis vēre vincere quā diu impērare mālīt*. Liv. *Nemo ānus*. Cic. *Forte fortunā*. Id. *Prādens sciens*. Ter.

(b.) Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndēton*, *hendīdys*, and *periphrāsis*.

(1.) *Pārelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *ēgomet, agēdum, fortasseam*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Pōlysyndēton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurūque Nōtus que ruunt creberq̄ue prōcellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendīdys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et* or *atque*, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātōris libāmus et auro*, for *aureis pātēris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri sūbēre clausum* for *libro sūbēris*. Id. *Cristis et auro*. Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Pēriphrāsis* or *circumlocūtio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tē nēri fātus ovum*, i. e. *agni*. Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallāge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) *Enallāge* includes *antimeria*, *heterōsis*, *antiptōsis*, *synēsis*, and *anacolūthon*.

(1.) *Antimeria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vivēre triste*, for *nostra vita*. Pers. *Alīu nras*. Id. *Conjūgium vidēbit?* for *conjūgem*. Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another as *Ego quōque una pereō, quod mīhi est cārū*, for *qui mīhi sum cārīor*. Ter.

*Rōmānus praelio victor*, for *Rōmāni victōres*. Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ōra*, etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cērebro sustulērat*, for *sustulisset*. Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(8.) *Antiptōsis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo*, for *Iulus*. Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Iōvis esse necis*, for *te esse uxorē*. Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synēsis*, or *synthēsis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Sūbeunt Tēgæa jūventus auxilio tarli*. Stat. *Concursus popūli mirantium quid rei est*. Liv. *Pars in crucem acti*. Sall. *Ubi illic est scēlus, qui me perdidi?* Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui sum nātus maximus*. Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (8.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Andōlōthōn* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est ālicunde āliquis objectus lābos, omne quod est intērea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est*, lucro est. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habēmus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus*, leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (a.) *Hypērbāton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(b.) *Hypērbāton* includes *ānastrophē*, *hystēron prōtēron*, *hypallāge*, *synchysis*, *tmēsis*, and *pārenthēsis*.

(1.) *Anastrophē* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos*, for *per transtra*. Virg. *Collo dare brāchia circum*, for *circumdāre*. Id. *Nox erit ūna super*, for *supererit*. Ovid. *Et faciū āre*, for *ārēfaciū*. Lucr.

(2.) *Hystēron prōtēron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mōriāmur, et in mēdia arma ruāmus*. Virg. *Vālet atque vivit*. Ter.

(8.) *Hypallāge* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nōva fert ānimus mētātus dicere formas corpōra*, for *corpōra mētāta in nōvas formas*. Ovid. *Dare classibus Austros*, for *dare classes Austris*. Virg.

(4.) *Synchysis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vōcant Itālī, mēdiis quæ in fluctibus, āras, for quæ saxa in mēdiis fluctibus, Itālī vōcant āras*. Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *diacōpe* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens*, for *septentriōni*. Virg. *Quæ me cumque vōcant terræ*. Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, grātum fēcēris*. Cic.

(6.) *Pārenthēsis* or *dialysis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Tiŷŷre dum rēdeo*, (*brēvis est via*), *pasce cāpellas*. Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulā*, for *aulæ*; *senātū*, for *senātūs*; *fuat*, for *sit*; *prohibesso*, for *prohibuero*; *impetrassere*, for *impetrātūrum esse*; *fārter*, for *fārī*; *nēnu*, for *non*; *endo*, for *in*;—*Opēram abūltur*, for *opēra*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūratiō est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hēlēne*, for *Hēlēna*; *Antiphon*, for *Antīphō*; *aurās* (gen.), for *auræ*; *Pallūdos*, *Pullūda*, for *Pallādīs*, *Pullādem*; *Trōāsīm*, *Trōādas*, for *Trōādibus*, *Trōādes*;—*Abstīnēto irārum*. Hor. *Tempus dēsistere pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical figure is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a trope.



1. (a.) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas aurea*, The golden age. Ovid. *Naufragia fortune*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis oculi*, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus animum gloriæ stimulis concitat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quasi*, *tamquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In æn' philosophi quasi tabernaculum vitæ suæ collocarunt*. Id. *Optimum quoddam ac tamquam adpâtæ dictionis genus*. Id.

(b.) *Cîtachrêsis* or *abusio* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, *Vir grægis ipse cæper*. Virg. *Eurus per Sicûlus æquâtavit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; place and time for the persons or things which they comprise, etc.; as, *Mortâles*, for *hômînes*. Virg. *Amor dâri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Frûges Cêrêrem appellâmus, vinum autem Libêrum*. Cic. *Cæpio vigiliam meam tibi tradere*, i. e. *meam curam*. Id. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hausit pateram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina cômiant*, i. e. *pâtêram*. Id. *Necte ternos cölôres*, i. e. *tria fili diversi cölôris*. Id. *Cédant arma togæ*, i. e. *bellum paci*. Cic. *Sæcûla mitescent*, i. e. *hômînes in sæcûlis*. Virg. *Vivat Pâciûs vel Nestôra tötum*. Juv. *Doctrinâ Græcia nos supêrâbat*, for *Græci supêrâbant*. Cic. *Pâgi centum Succôrum ad ripas Rhêni consédêrant*, for *pâgôrûm incêlæ*. Cæs. *Tempôra amicôrûm*, for *res adversæ*. Cic. *Claudius lêge prædâtorîâ vênâlis pèpénit*, for *Claudii prælium*. Suet. *Vici ad Jânium mædium sêdentes*, for *Jâni vicum*. Cic.

3. *Synecdôche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it, a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, *Fontem fêrêbant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dômus*. Id. *Armâtô mîlite complent*, for *armâtis mîlitibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *glâdius*. Id. *Qui Córinthiis ôpêribus abundat*, i. e. *vâsis*. Cic. *Urbem, urbem, suæ Rûfæ, cole*, i. e. *Rômam*. Cic. *Centum puer artium*, i. e. *multarum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve bonæ vir, curasti probe*. Ter. *Egrégiam vëro laudem, et spolia ampla refertis, tâque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hýperbôle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse arduus, altâque pulsat sulcra*. Virg. *Ociore Euro*. Id.

6. *Métalepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot aristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (a.) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O nâvis, refèrent in mâre te nôvi fluctus*. Hor.

(b.) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *enigma*; as, *Dic, quibus in terris tres piteat cæli spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Antônômasia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et est subito, qui nûdo Cræsus erat, for pauper and dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *pôtor Rhôdâni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. *Eversor Carthâgînis*, for *Scipio*. Quint. *Elôquentia princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. *Týdides*, for *Diômêdes*. Virg.

9. *Lýtotes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innocia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphrâsis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning, as, *Auri sacra fâmes*. Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæstri*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Vell.

12. *Antanáclâsis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses as, *Quis néget Ænêæ nâtum de stirpe Nêrônem? Sustulit hic mâtrem, sustulit ille patrem*. Epigr. *Amâri jucundum est, si cûrêtur ne quid inât amâri*. Cic.

13. *Anaphōra* or *ēpanāphōra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum praesidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populi*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, solo in litore secum, te, veniente die, te, decedente, cānebat*. Virg.

14. *Epistrophe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Poenos populus Rōmānus justitiā vicit, armis vicit, liberālitāte vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplōce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphōra and the epistrophe; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus: Quis majorem populi partem suffragiis privavit? Rullus: Quis comitiis praefuit? Idem Rullus*. Cic.

16. *Epāndalepis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Geor.* II. 4—7.

17. *Anadiplosis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Sequitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur equo fidens*. Virg. *A.* 10, 180. *Nunc etiam audes in horum conspectum venire, venire audes in horum conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *ēpanastrophe*.

18. *Epāndiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Epāndos* or *rēgressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order, as, *Crūdēlis māter māgis, an puer imprōbus ille? Imprōbus ille puer, crūdēlis tu quōque, māter*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Exultate, exultate eum ab inferis*. Cic. *Ah Cōrydon, Cōrydon, quae te dementia cepit?* Virg. *Ibimus, ibimus, utcumque praecedes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Quae reliqua spes manet libertatis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *gradatio*.

22. *Incrēmentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Facinus est, inciri civem Rōmānum; scelus, verberari; prope parricidium, necari; quid dicam in crucem tolli?* Cic.

23. *Polyptōton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbōne repellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspidē cuspis*. Stat.

24. *Paregmēnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non potest, quin ejusdem hominis sit, qui imprōbos probet, probos imprōbare*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnabo*. Plaut.

25. *Pārōnōmāsia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound, as, *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Civem bonarum artium bonarum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt amantes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnōminatio*.

26. *Hōmoeoprophēron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tite, tute Tati, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti*. Enn. *Neu patriae vādas in viscera vertite vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithesis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hujus orationis difficultius est exitum quam principium invenire*. Cic. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur; integritate vitæ Cato*. Sall.

28. *Oxymōron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum iacent, clamant*. Cic.

29. *Synōnymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*. Cic. *Præmitto, recipio, spondeo*. Id.

30. *Pārdōla* or *Stilis* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rēpente te, tamquam serpens e lātibus, oculis eminentibus, inflāto collo, tūmidis cervicibus, intāliasti.* Cic.

31. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēdētis āvectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quā me aqūbra possunt accipere?* Id.

32. *Epānorthōsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filiū anticum adolescentū habeo: ah! quid dixi? me habere? Imo habui.* Ter.

33. *Apōstrophēsis*, *Rētēcentia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed mōles prestat componere fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prōsōpōia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quæ (patria) tēcum, Cātilina, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sēcures.* Hor.

35. *Apostrophe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vī pōtūtur; quid non mortalia pectora cōgis, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

36. *Pārdleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

37. *Epiphōnēma* or *Acclāmatio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tanta mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.* Virg.

38. *Ecphōnēsis* or *Exclāmatio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempora! O mōres!*

39. *Apōria*, *Diapōrēsis*, or *Dūbtitatio*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prōlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērūm anceps pugna fūerat fortūna. Fūisset: Quem mētui mōritūra?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigōrēus*, for *rigidus* or *sēvērus*; *domīnus*, for *dōminus*; *davi*, for *dēdā*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vēnus pulcher; vos invēdēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constābularius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos āciem, et prœlia, et hostem poscitis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibolia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, Gaul, or a cock. *Aio te, Aētāda, Rōmānos vincere posse.* Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is introduced in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certidorem*, is an Anglicism.

## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### I. OF TIME.

#### 1. The Roman Day.

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise

#### 2. The Roman Month and Year.

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

Jānuārius . 31 days.	Maius . . 31 days.	September 30 days.
Februārius 28 or 29.	Jūnius . . 30 "	Octōber . . 31 "
Martius . . 31 days.	Quintilis 31 "	Nōvember 30 "
Aprīlis . . . 30 "	Sextilis . 31 "	Dēcember 31 "

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Jūlius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārias*, or *Jānuārii*, scil. *die ante*: the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridio Nōnas*; and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo Idus*; the seventh

*septimo Idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigésimo Calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii*; and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas*, etc., scil. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Januariæ*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e.  $4-1=3$ , and  $5-3=2$ ): this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprilis*: the Ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take ( $6-1$ , i. e.) 5 from 13, which leaves 8 (i. e.  $6-1=5$ , and  $13-5=8$ ): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(a.) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is  $15-2=13$ , and  $30-13=17$ ; i. e. the Roman date *XV. Cal. Quint.* is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(b.) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have  $5+1-3=3$ ; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have  $13+1-10=4$ ; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus,  $31+2-22=11$ , and the date is *XI Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bisextus*, and the year itself *annus bisextus*, bissextile or leap year.

(a.) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, etc.

(b.) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

<i>Days of our months.</i>	MAR. JUL. MAY. OCT.	JAN. DEC. AUG.	APR. SEPT. JUN. NOV.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonas.	Nonas.	Nonas.
6	Pridie Non.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonas.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Id.	XIX. Cal.	XVIII. Cal.	XVI. Cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Cal.	
31	Pridie Cal.	Pridie Cal.		

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

23. VII. <i>Calendas Martias.</i>	27. IV. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>
24. <i>bisexto Cal. Mart.</i>	28. III. " "
25. VI. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>	29. <i>pridie Cal. Mart.</i>
26. V. " "	

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is  $29+2-27=4$ , and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:—*bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is  $8-2=1$ , and  $29-1=28$ , and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *præter*, etc., *Calendas*, etc., but also *ante diem tertium*, etc., *Calendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. Cal.*, etc.

(9) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Látinas fêrias in ante diem tertium Idus Scætiis edixit*, The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octôbris*. Id. So, *Ad pridie Nônas Maias*. Cic.

(10) The week of seven days (*hebdomas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Solis*, Sunday; *dies Lûnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercûrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jovis*, Thursday; *dies Vênêris*, Friday; *dies Sâturni*, Saturday.

(11) The term *nundinæ* (from *nôvem*—*dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis condita*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c. 684*. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is  $754 - 684 = 70$  before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c. 767*, and the corresponding year of our era is  $767 - 753 = 14$ .

## II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

### OF THE AS.

§ 327. The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (*libra*), or of measure (*jûgêrum*). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hères*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dîpondius* (*duo pondo*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e. 2½ Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quadrassus*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *uncie*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

	Uncia.		Uncia
As.....	12	Quincunx.....	5
Deunx.....	11	Triens.....	4
Dextans.....	10	Quâdrans, or Têruncius.....	3
Dodrans.....	9	Sextans.....	2
Bes.....	8	Uncia.....	1
Septunx.....	7		
Semis.....	6	Sescuncia.....	1½

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

1 <i>Uncia</i> contained	2 <i>Sēmuncias</i> .
"	" 3 <i>Duellæ</i> .
"	" 4 <i>Sicilici</i> .
"	" 6 <i>Sextulæ</i> .
"	" 8 <i>Drachmæ</i> .
"	" 24 <i>Scrāpula</i> .
"	" 48 <i>Obolæ</i> .

#### ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Theruncius*, *Sembellæ*, and *As* or *Libellæ*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victriciātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

		\$	Cts.	M.
The <i>Theruncius</i> .....		0	0	3.9
2 <i>Theruncii</i> make 1 <i>Sembellæ</i> .....		0	0	7.8
2 <i>Sembellæ</i> " 1 <i>As</i> or <i>Libellæ</i> ....		0	1	5.6
2½ <i>Asses</i> * " 1 <i>Sestertius</i> .....		0	3	9
2 <i>Sestertii</i> " 1 <i>Quinārius</i> .....		0	7	8
2 <i>Quinārii</i> " 1 <i>Dēnārius</i> .....		0	15	6
25 <i>Dēnārii</i> " 1 <i>Aureus</i> .....		3	90	0

\* Sometimes also (in copper) the *triens*, *sextans*, *uncia*, *sextula*, and *dāpendius*.

#### ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

##### *Sestertii Nummi.*

	\$	Cts.	M.
<i>Sestertius</i> (or <i>nummus</i> ) .....	0	3	9
<i>Dēcem sestertii</i> .....	0	39	0
<i>Centum sestertii</i> .....	3	90	0
<i>Mille sestertii</i> (equal to a <i>sestertium</i> ) .....	39	0	0

##### *Sestertia.*

<i>Sestertium</i> (equal to <i>mille sestertii</i> ).....	39	0	0
<i>Dēcem sestertia</i> .....	390	0	0
<i>Centum, centum sestertia</i> , or <i>centum millia sestertiūm</i> .....	3900	0	0
<i>Dēcies sestertiūm</i> , or <i>dēcies centēna millia nummūm</i> .....	39000	0	0
<i>Centies</i> , or <i>centies H. s.</i> .....	390000	0	0
<i>Millies H. s.</i> .....	3900000	0	0
<i>Millies centies H. s.</i> .....	4290000	0	0

N. B.—The marks denoting a *Sestertius nummus* are *IIS.*, *LIS.*, *HS.*, which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 *asses*. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, *H. S. MC.* is *millies centies HS.*; whereas *HS. MC.* is only 1100 *Sestertii*.

#### ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *semisses*, *trientes*, *quadrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—



	Per cent. a year.
Asses ūsūræ or centēsīmæ.....	12
Sēmīsses ūsūræ.....	6
Trientes ūsūræ.....	4
Quadrantes ūsūræ.....	3
Sextantes ūsūræ.....	2
Unciæ ūsūræ.....	1
Quinounces ūsūræ.....	½
Septunces ūsūræ.....	⅓
Beases ūsūræ.....	⅔
Dodrantes ūsūræ.....	⅓
Dextantes ūsūræ.....	10
Denunces ūsūræ.....	11

## ROMAN WEIGHTS.

		Os.	Dwt.	Gr.
Siliqua.....		0	0	3.086
3 Siliquæ make 1 Obolus.....		0	0	9.107
2 Oboli " 1 Scrupulum....		0	0	18.214
3 Scrupula " 1 Drachma.....		0	2	6.648
1½ Drachmæ " 1 Sextula.....		0	3	0.857
1½ Sextula " 1 Sicilicus.....		0	4	18.286
1½ Sicilicus " 1 Duella.....		0	6	1.714
3 Duellæ " 1 Uncia.....		0	18	5.148
12 Unciæ " 1 Libra* (As)...		10	18	18.714

\* The Libra was also divided, according to the fractions of the As, into Deunx, etc

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

			English Corn Measures.			
			Peck.	Gal.	Pint.	Sol. in.
Ligula.....			0	0	0 1-48	0.01
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyathus.....			0	0	0 1-12	0.04
1½ Cyathus " 1 Acetabulum....			0	0	0 1-8	0.06
4 Acetabula " 1 Hæmina.....			0	0	0 1-2	0.24
2 Hæminæ " 1 Sextarius.....			0	0	1	0.48
16 Sextarii " 1 Modius.....			1	0	0	7.68

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

			English Wine Measures.		
			Galls.	Pints.	Sol. in.
Ligula.....			0	0 1-48	0.117
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyathus.....			0	0 1-12	0.469
1½ Cyathus " 1 Acetabulum.....			0	0 1-8	0.704
2 Acetabula " 1 Quartarius.....			0	0 1-4	1.409
2 Quartarii " 1 Hæmina.....			0	0 1-2	2.876
2 Hæminæ " 1 Sextarius*.....			0	1	5.636
6 Sextarii " 1 Congius.....			0	7	4.942
4 Congii " 1 Urna.....			3	4 1-2	5.38
2 Urnæ " 1 Amphora (or Quadrantal)..			7	1	10.66
20 Amphoræ " 1 Culeus.....			148	8	11.096

\* The *Sextarius* was also divided into twelve equal parts, called *cyathi*, and therefore the *cûlices* were denominated *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, *trientes*, according to the number of *cyathi* which they contained.

N. B.—*Cadus*, *congiarius*, and *dolium*, are the names of certain vessels, not measures, of capacity.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

			English paces.	Feet.	Inch. Dec
	Digītus transversus .....		0	0	0.725 1-4
1 1-5	Digītus make	1 Uncia.....	0	0	0.967
8	Unciæ .....	1 Palmus minor....	0	0	2.901
4	Palmi minores .....	1 Pes .....	0	0	11.604
1 1-4	Pes .....	1 Palmipes.....	0	1	2.505
1 1-5	Palmipes .....	1 Cūbitus.....	0	1	5.408
1 2-3	Cūbitus .....	1 Grādus .....	0	2	5.01
2	Grādus .....	1 Passus .....	0	4	10.02
125	Passus .....	1 Stādium.....	120	4	4.5
5	Stādia .....	1 Milliārium.....	967	0	0

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

	Roman sq. feet.	English rods.	Sq. pls.	Sq. feet.
Jūgērūm (As) .....	28,800	2	18	250.05
Deunx.....	26,400	2	10	183.85
Dextans .....	24,000	2	02	117.64
Dodrans.....	21,600	1	34	51.42
Bes.....	19,200	1	25	257.46
Septunx .....	16,800	1	17	191.25
Sēmis.....	14,400	1	09	125.03
Quincunx.....	12,000	1	01	58.82
Triens.....	9,600	0	32	264.85
Quādrans .....	7,200	0	24	198.64
Sextans.....	4,800	0	16	132.43
Uncia.....	2,400	0	08	66.21

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents*.

REM. 2. The *as*, as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (a.) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses*.

(b.) The *sestertius*, or sesterce, was one fourth of the *dēnārius*, or two *asses* and a half (*sēmistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(c.) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii*, or 100 sesterces.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten sesterces; *centum sestertii*, a hundred sesterces.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille*, *millia*, with *sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium*, which itself signified a *thousand* sesterces. Thus they said *quadrāginta millia sestertiūm*, or *quadrāginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiūm*, *millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiūm centum*, soil. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *décies centēna millia sestertiūm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *décies sestertiūm*, and sometimes merely *décies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

**REM.** 1. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. The *Quinquagies sestertii*, 5,000,000 sesterces. *Id.* But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius</i>	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Caius</i> , or <i>Gaius</i> .	<i>Cicero</i> .	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
On., <i>Onés</i> .	M., <i>Mānius</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Décimus</i> .	Mam., <i>Māmercus</i> .	Sp., <i>Spūrius</i> .
L., <i>Lācius</i> .	N., <i>Nūmīrius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	Tl., or Tib., <i>Tibérius</i> .

---

A. d., <i>ante diem</i> .	F., <i>Filius</i> ; as, M. F.,	Pont. Max., <i>pontifex</i>
A. U. C., <i>anno urbis con-</i>	<i>Marci filius</i> .	<i>maximus</i> .
<i>ditā</i> .	Ictus, <i>jārisconsultus</i> .	Pr., <i>prætor</i> .
Cal., or Kal., <i>Calendas</i> .	Id., <i>Idus</i> .	Proc., <i>præconsul</i> .
Cos., <i>Consul</i> .	Imp., <i>impérator</i> .	Resp., <i>respublica</i> .
Coss., <i>Consules</i> .	J. O. M., <i>Jovis, optimo</i>	S., <i>sacrum, or</i>
D., <i>Divus</i> .	<i>maximo</i> .	<i>sénatus</i> .
D. D., <i>dono dedit</i> .	N., <i>nepos</i> .	S. D. P., <i>sacramentum dedit</i>
D. D. D., <i>dedit, dedit, dedit</i> .	Non., <i>Nōna</i> .	<i>plurimum</i> .
<i>cat, or dono dedit, dedit</i> .	P. C., <i>patres conscripti</i> .	S. P. Q. R., <i>Sénatus populi</i>
Des., <i>designatus</i> .	Pl., <i>plēbis</i> .	<i>lusque Rōmānus</i> .
D. M., <i>diis manibus</i> .	Pop., <i>pōpulus</i> .	S. C., <i>sénatus consultum</i> .
Eq. Rom., <i>æques Rōmānus</i> .	P. R., <i>pōpulus Rōmānus</i> .	Tr., <i>tribūnus</i> .

To these may be added terms of reference; as, c., *caput*, chapter; cf., *confer*, compare; l. c., *loco citato*; l. l., *loco laudato*, in the place quoted; v., *versus*, verse.

## DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden, silver, brazen, and iron ages*.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronicus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical*, *Classical*, and *Post-classical*. The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (a.) *Ciceronian*, (b.) *Augustan*, (c.) *post-Augustan*, and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin*.

## LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

### WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronicus.	L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.
Lævius.	P. Nigidius Figulus.	C. Q. Atta.
C. Nævius.	C. Decius Laberius.	L. Cassius Hemina.
Statius Cæcilius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Fenestella.
Q. Ennius.	Varro Attacinus.	Q. Claud. Quadrigarius.
M. Pacuvius.	Titinius.	Cælius Antipater.
L. Accius.	L. Pomponius.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Asellio.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpilus.	Cn. Matius.	L. Piso, and others.
L. Afranius.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plautus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovanus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
C. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hurtius, or Oppius.
C. Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Severus.
M. Tullius Cicero.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævola.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabinus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

## WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.	M. Annæus Lucānus.	M. Fabius Quintiliānus
P. Velleius Patercūlus.	T. Petronius Arbiter.	Sex. Julius Frontinus.
L. Junius Moderātus	C. Plinius Secundus.	C. Cornelius Tacitus.
Columella.	C. Silius Italicus.	C. Plinius Cæcilius Se-
Pomponius Mela.	C. Valerius Flaccus.	cundus.
A. Persius Flaccus.	C. Julius Solinus.	L. Annæus Florus.
Q. Asconius Pedianus.	D. Junius Juvenālis.	C. Suetonius Tranquill-
M. Annæus Seneca.	P. Papinius Statius.	lus.
L. Annæus Seneca.	M. Valerius Martiālis.	

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rūfus.	Scribonius Largus.	L. Fenestella.
Valerius Prōbus.	Sulpitia.	Atteius Capito.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius, Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius, and Curtius.

## WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.	Vulcatius Gallicānus.	Ammiānus Marcel-
L. Apuleius.	Trebellius Pollio.	linus.
Q. Septimius Tertullia-	Flavius Vopiscus.	Vegetius Renātus.
nus.	Cœlius Aureliānus	Aurel. Theodōrus Macro-
Q. Serēnus Sammonia-	Flavius Eutropius.	bius.
cus.	Rhemnius Fannius.	Q. Aurelius Symmachus
Censorinus.	Arnobius Afer.	D. Magnus Ausonius.
Thascius Cæcilius	L. Cœlius Lactantius.	Paulinus Nolānus.
Cypriānus.	Ælius Donātus.	Sex. Aurelius Victor.
T. Julius Calpurnius.	C. Vettus Juvencus.	Aurel. Prudentius Clē-
M. Aurelius Nemesiānus.	Julius Firmicus.	mens.
Ælius Spartiānus.	Fab. Marius Victorinus.	Cl. Claudianus.
Julius Capitolinus.	Sex. Rūfus, or Rūfus	Marcellus Empiricus
Ælius Lampridius.	Festus.	Falconia Prōba.

*Of an Age not entirely certain.*

Valerius Maximus.	Terentiānus Maurus.	Sosipāter Charisius.
Justinus.	Minutius Fēlix.	Flavius Avianus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Proculus.	Herennius Modestinus.	Julius Paulus.
Neratius Priscus.	Salvius Juliānus.	Sex. Pomponius.
P. Juventius Celsus.	Caius.	Venuleius Saturninus
Priscus Jabolēnus.	Callistrātus.	Ælius Marcianus.
Domitius Ulpianus.	Æmilius Papiniānus.	Ælius Gallus, and others

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius, and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Emiliānus.	Auctōres Priapeiōrum.	Interpres Darētis Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretenensis.
Emilius Mācer.	Catalecta Virgillii et Ovidii.	Scholiastæ Vetēres.
Messāla Corvinus.	Auctor oratiōis Sallustii in Cic. et Cicerōnis in Sall.; item illius <i>Antiquam Iret in exilium</i> .	Grammatici Antiqui.
Vibius Sequester.	Auctor Epistōlæ ad Octavianum.	Rhetōres Antiqui.
Julius Obséquens.	Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisōnem.	Medici Antiqui.
L. Ampelius.	Declamatiōes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliāno, Porcio Latrōni, Calpurnio Flacco.	Catalecta Petroniāna.
Apicius Cœlius.		Pervigilium Venēris.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.		Poemata et Epigrammata vetēra a Pithæo collecta.
Prōbus (auctor Notarum.)		Monumentum Ancyranum.
Fulgentius Planciādes.		Fasti Consulāres.
Hyginus.		Inscriptiōes Vetēres.
C. Cæsar Germanicus.		
P. Victor.		
P. Vegetius.		

# WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatiānus.	Latinus Pacātus.	Ruf. Festus Aviēnus.
Servius Honorātus.	Claudius Mamertinus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetēres.	Arātor.
D. Hieronȳmus.	Alcimus Avitus.	M. Aurelius Cassidōrus.
D. Augustinus.	Manl. Severinus Beathius.	Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Sulpicius Sevērus.	Prisciānus.	Venantius Fortunātus.
Paulus Orosius.	Nonius Marcellus.	Isidōrus Hispalensis.
Cœlius Sedulius.	Justiniani Institutiōes et Codex	Anonȳmus Ravennas.
Codex Theodosiānus.		Aldhelmus or Althelmus.
Martiānus Capella.		Paulus Diaconus.
Claudiānus Mamertus.		
Idonius Apollināris.		

# INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the Sections and their divisions: a. stands for remark, n. for note, e. for exception, w. for with, and pr. for prosody.

A, sound of, 7 and 8; nouns in, of 1st decl., 41; gender of, 41; of 3d decl. gender of, 66; genitive of, 68, 2; in acc. sing. of masc. and fem. Greek nouns, 79 and 80; in nom. acc. and voc. plur. of all neuter nouns, adjectives and participles, 40, 8; 83, 1; 85; 87; 105, 2; verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); change of in compd. verbs, 189; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; in plur., 288; of verbs, 290; ending the first part of compds., 285, n. 4; final, quantity of, 294.

A, ab, abs, how used, 195, n. 2, and 10; in composition, 196, 1, 1; before the abl. of distance, 236, n. 6; ab, de, or ex, with abl. of depriving, etc., 251, n. 1.

Abbreviations, 323.

Abdico, constr. of, 251, n. 2.

Abest mihi, 226, n. 2; non multum abest quin, 262, n. 7.

Abhinc, 253, n. 2.

Abblative, 37; sing. 3d decl., 82; of adjs. of 3d decl., 113; plur. 1st decl., 40, n. 6, and 43; 2d decl., 40, n. 6; 3d decl., 84; 4th decl., 89, 5; used adverbially, 192, 1, II; of character, quality, etc., 211, n. 6; after prepositions, 241; after compd. verbs, 242; after opus and usus, 248; after dignus, etc. 244; after utro, etc., 245, 1; after nitor, etc., 245, II; after parts denoting origin, 246; of cause, etc., 247; of means and agent, 248; of means, 249, 1; of accordance, 249, II; of accompaniment, 249, III; denoting in what respect, 250; after adjectives of plenty or want, 250, 2, (1.); after verbs of abounding, etc., 250, 2, (2.); after fucio and sum, 250, n. 3; after verbs of depriving, etc., 251; of price, 252; of time when, 253; of place where, 254; of place whence, 255, 1; of place by or through which, 255, 2; after comparatives, 256; of degree of difference, 256, n. 16; abl. absolute, 257; how translated, 257, n. 1; equivalent to what, 257, n. 1; only with pres. and perf. parts., 257, n. 2; without a participle, 257, n. 7; with a clause, 257, n. 8; how it marks the time of an action, 258, n. 4; noun wanting, 256, n. 9.

Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with abl. 250 with gen. 220, (3.)

"About to do," how expressed, 102, 14, "about to be done," how expressed, 162, 14, n. 4.

Abstineo, w. abl., 251, n.; viz or agere abstineo, quin, 262, n. 7.

Abstract nouns, 26; formation from adjs. 101; their terminations, 101, 1 and 2, (8.); from verbs, 102.

Abundo, 250, (2.) n. 1.

-abus, dat. and abl. plur. in, 48.

Ac or atque, 198, 1, n. (b.) and 2, n.; in stead of quam, 256, n. 15; ac si with subj., 263, 2, and n.

Acatalectic verse, 304, 3, (1.)

Accent in English, 16; place of secondary accent, 16, 1 and 2; in Latin, 14 and 15; of dissyllables, 14, 4; of polysyllables, 14, 4, and 15—written accents, 5, 2, and 14, 2.

Accentuation, 14—16.

Accidents of nouns, 26, 7; of verbs, 141.

Accipio, w. part. in dus, 274, n. 7.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 249, III.

Accordance, abl. of, 249, II.

Achivom for Achivorum, 53.

-acis, genitives in, 78, 2, (1.)

Accusative, 37; sing., terminal letter of in masculines and feminines, 40, 2; plural, terminal letter of in do., 40, 7; of 3d decl., 79; of Greek nouns, 80; plur. 3d decl., 85; do. of adjs. of 3d decl., 114; neuter in all declensions, sing. and plur., 40, 8; in em and im, 79; of Greek nouns in im, in, or a, 79, (b.) and 80; in idem, 80, n. 1; in ym or yn, 80, II; in ca, 80, III; in etem, etia, cor, or en, 80, IV; neuter used adverbially, 192, II, 4, and 206, n. 10; acc. after verbs, 229—234; omitted, 229, n. 4; inf. or a clause instead of, 229, n. 5; of a person after miseret, etc., 229, n. 6; after jucat, etc., 229, n. 7; after neuter verbs, 232; after compound verbs, 233; after verbal nouns and verbal adjs., 238, n.; of part affected, 234, II; a limiting acc. instead of the abl. in partem, vicem, cetera, etc., 234, II, n. 3; after prepositions, 235; of time and space, 236; of place, 237; after adverbs and interjections, 238; acc. as subject, 239; acc. of the thing supplied by the inf., 270, n., acc. w. inf., 272; do. exchanged for the subjunctive

278, 8.—two accusatives after certain verbs, 230 and 231; acc. of thing retained in passive voice, 234; places supplied by infinitives, 229, n. 2; pred. acc. how supplied, ib. n. 4.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, constr., 217, and n. 4.

*Accuso*, constr., 217, and n. 2–5.

Acephalous verse, 304, 3, (8.)

*Acer*, declined, 108, i.

*Achilles*, declined, 86.

*Acquiesco*, 245, ii., 8.

Acute accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; when used, 11, 3.

Active voice, 141.

Active verb, 141; used impersonally, 184, 2; object of act. verb, 229; two tenses after, 229, n. 1; verb omitted, 229, n. 3.

*Ad*, how used, 196, n. 5; in composition, 196, i. 2; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; *ad* used for *in*, 224, n. 4.

*Adde quod*, 278, n. 8.

Additions to simple subject, 202, 6, etc.; to simple predicate, 203, 5, etc.

*Adco*, adv., 191, n. 5; *adco non*, 277, n.

14.—verb, constr., 233, 3, and n.

*-ades*, patronymics in, 100, i; (a.)

*Adesi*, *qui*, with subj., 264, 6.

*Adhuc locorum*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.

*Adipiscor*, w. gen., 220, 4 *fin*.

Adjectives, 104–131; classes of, 104, 1–15; declension of, 105; of 1st and 2d decls. 105–107; of 3d declension, 108–114; of three terminations, 108; of two terminations, 109, 110; of one termination, 111; their gen. sing., 112; their abl. sing. 113; their nom., acc., and gen. plur., 114; irregular, 115–116; defective, 115; redundant, 116; numeral, 117–121; cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; multiplicative, 121, 1; proportional, 121, 2; temporal, 121, 3; interrogative, 121, 5; comparison of, 122–127; irregular comparison, 125; defective comparison, 126; derivation of, 128–130; composition of, 131; amplificative, 123, 4; patial, 123, 6; verbal, 129; participial, 130; composition of 131;—how modified, 202, ii., 1, (2.); agreement of, 205; qualifying and limiting, 205, n. 1; modifiers or predicates, 205, n. 2; with two or more nouns, 205, n. 2; with a collective noun, 205, n. 3; sing. with a plur. noun, 205, n. 4; dat. of, for acc. in the predicate of acc. with the inf., 205, n. 6; without a noun, 205, n. 7; with infinitive, a clause, etc., 205, n. 8; in the neuter with gen. of their noun, 205, n. 9, and 212, n. 3; neuter adjs. used adverbially, 205, n. 10; gender of, when used participatively, 205, n. 12; in genitive with possessive adj. or pronoun, 205, n. 13; agreeing with the governing noun instead of the genitive, 205, n. 14; two or more with one noun, 205, n. 16; instead of an adverb, 205, n. 15; first, last, etc. part expressed by the adj. alone, 205, n. 17; agreeing with relative instead of its antecedent, 206, (7.); with gen. 218; w. gen. or abl., 218, n. 5; w. dat., 222; w. gen. or dat., 218, n. 6, and 222, n. 2; of

plenty or want with abl., 250; w. inf. 270, n. 1; place of, 279, 7.

Adjective pronouns, 184–189; nature of, 182, 5; classes, 184; agreement, 206.

Adjective clauses, 201, 7; how connected, 201, 9.

Adjective pronoun, 185, n. 1.

*Adjuvo* and *adjuvo*, constr., 223, n. 2, (2.)

Admonishing, verbs of, w. gen. 218; other constructions, 218, n. 1 and 2; 278, n. 4.

*Adolescens*, its gender, 2; as adj. how compared, 126, 4.

Adorning, verbs of, w. abl., 249.

Adonic verse, 312.

*Adulari*, constr., 223, n. 2, (b), and (1), (a.)

Adverbial correlatives, 191, n. 1;—clauses, 201, 7, 9.

Adverbs, 190, 2–194; primitive, 191; of place and order, 191, i.; correlative, 191, n. 1; of time, 191, ii.; of manner, quality, degree, 191, iii.; division of, 191, n. 2;—derivation of, 192; numeral, 192, ii., 3, and 119; diminutive, 192, iv., n.; composition of, 193; signification of some adverbs of time and manner, 193;—comparison of, 194;—how modified, 277, i.; used as adjectives, 205, n. 11; w. gen., 212, n. 4; w. dat., 223, (1.); w. acc., 238; use of, 277; two negatives, force of, 277, n. 3–5; equivalent to phrases, 277, n. 8; of likeness, as connectives, 278, n. 1; place of, 279, 15.

Adversative conjunctions, 198, 9.

*Adversus*, how used, 195, n. 7.

*Æ*, how pronounced, 9.

*Æqualis*, construction of, 222, n. 2.

*Æque* with abl., 241, n. 2; *æque* acc., 198, 8, n.

*Æqui boni facio* or *consulo*, 214, n. 1.

*Æquo* and *adæquo*, construction of, 214;

*æquo*, adj. w. comparatives, 256, n. 9.

*Ær*, acc. of, 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.

*Æolic pentameter*, 312, ix.

*Æs*, gender of, 61, 2; gen. of, 78, n. 2.

*Æstimo*, constr., 214.

*Æther*, acc., 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.

*-æus*, adjs. in, 123, 6, (A.)

*Æquum est*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 2; *æquum*

*erat*, indie. instead of subj., 259, n. 3;

*æquum est*, with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.

*Æffatim*, w. genitive, 212, n. 4.

*Æffuo*, constr., 250, 2, n. 1.

*Æfficio*, constr., 249, n. 1.

*Æffinis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Æger*, declined, 48.

Agent, verbal nouns denoting, 103, 6; dative of, 225, iii., n. 1; 248, n. 1; abl. of, 248.

Ages of Roman literature, 329.

*Ægnitus*, pr. 235, i, n. 1.

*Ægnominatio*, 324, 25.

*Ægo* w. gen. of the crime, 217, n. 1;—*ægo* w. plur. subject, 183, 10;—*id ægere ut*, 273, n. 1.

Agreement: defined, 203, iii., 6; of adjs., etc., 205; of relatives, 206.

*Æi*, how pronounced, 9, i.—*æi*, old gen. in, 43; quantity of the *æ* in do., 283, n. 3.

*Æio*, conjugated, 183, 4; *æin* for *æisne*;

*æit*, elipsis of, 209, n. 4; its place in a sentence, 279, 6.



- al, abl. of nouns in, 83; increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
*Alcaco* verse, 804, 2;—greater, 818, III.; lesser, 818, IV.  
*Alcmanian* verse, 804, 2;—dactylic tetrameter, 812.  
*Alec*, gender of, 66; genitive, 70.  
*Ales*, gender of, 80 and 61, 2; genitive sing., 78, 2; gen. plur., 88, II., n. 2.  
*Alex*, gender of, 66, 2.  
*Alieno*, and *abalieno*, constr., 261, n. 2, and n.  
*Alienus*, constr., 222, n. 1 and 6.  
*Aliquanto*, 127, 2; 256, n. 16, (2).  
*Aliquantum*, 256, n. 16, n.  
*Aliquis*, declined, 138; how used, 138, 2; 207, n. 80.  
*Aliquo*, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
*Aliquot*, indeclinable, 115, 4; correlative, 121, 5.  
*Aliquoties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
*-alis*, adjs. in, 128, 2; how compared, 126, 4; *alis*, old adj., for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
*Aliter*, from *alis* for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
*Alius*, how declined, 107; how used, 207, n. 32; *alius*—*alium*, with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, 4; refers to more than two, 212, n. 2, n. 1, (b.); w. abl., 256, n. 14; pr. 283, 1, n. 4.  
*Allegory*, 324, 7.  
*Alliteration*, 324, 26.  
*Alphabet*, 2, 1.  
*Alter*, how declined, 105, 8; 107, and n. 2; gen. *alterius*, quantity of 288, I., n. 4, (b.); used for *secundus*, 120, 1; answers to *uter*, 139, 5, (1.), (b.)—*altero tanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16.  
*Alteruter*, 107; 189, 5, (1.), (b.)—*alterutroque*, 107.  
*Alus* and *alto*, w. acc. of space, 236, and n. 2.  
*Ambi*, *amb*, *am*, or *an*, 197, (b.)  
*Ambio*, how conjugated, 182, n. 3.—*ambisus*, pr. 286, 2, n. 2.  
*Ambo*, how declined, 118, n. 1.  
*Amicus*, constr., 222, n. 2, (c.)  
*Amo*, conjugated, 155, 156.  
*Amphibolia*, 326, 5.  
*Amplificatives*, nouns, 100, 4, (a.); adjectives, 104, 12; 128, 4.  
*Amplius*, with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
*An*, 198, 11; use of, 198, 11, n. (d.) (c.); 265, n. 2 and 3; *an*—*an*, 265, n. 2.  
*Anabasis*, 324, 22.  
*Anacoluthon*, 323, 3, (5.)  
*Anacreontic* verse, 804, 2;—*iambic dimeter*, 814, IX.  
*Anadiplosis*, 324, 17.  
*Analysis* of sentences, 231.  
*Anapestic* metre, 818; 808;—*monometer*, 818, I.;—*dimeter*, 818.  
*Anaphora*, 324, 18.  
*Anastrophe*, 324, 4, (1.)  
*Anas*, gen. of, 72, n. 1; pr. 300, n. 1.  
*Anceps*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 11; n. 8.  
*Anicle*, 98, 2.  
*Androgeos*, declined, 54, 1.  
*-aneus*, adjs. in, 128, 8.  
*Angor*, constr., 273, 5, n. 6.  
*Animal*, declined, 67.  
*Animans*, gender of, 34.  
*Animo*, 250.—*animi* for *animi*, 220, 1 213, n. 1, (a.)  
*Anio*, genitive of, 69, n. 2.  
*Anne*, in double questions, 265, n. 2;—*anna*, 1b.  
*Anuus*, compds. of, 121, 8.  
*Antanacrisis*, 324, 12.  
*Ante*, w. superlatives, 127, 6; in composition, 196, I., 8; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; with titles, 235, n. 2; with comparatives, 256, n. 13, (b.);—*ante* and *post* w. acc. and abl. of time, 253, n. 1; w. *quam* and a verb, 253, n. 8; for *abinc*, 253, n. 2.  
*Antecedent*, 196; ellipsis of, 206, (3.), (4.), its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, 8, (a.); in the case of the relative, 206, (6.), (b.); implied in a possessive pronoun, 206, (12); may be a proposition, 206, (13.)  
*Antecedo* and *antecello*, constr., 256, n. 16, (8.)  
*Antepenult*, 13; quantity of, 292.  
*Antequam*, constr., 263, 8.  
*Antimeria*, 323, 3, (1.)  
*Antiphrasis*, 324, 10.  
*Antiptosis*, 323, 8, (8.)  
*Antithesis*, 322; 324, 27.  
*Antonomania*, 324, 8.  
*-anus*, adjs. in, 128, 6.  
*Aorist* tense, 145, IV., n.  
*Apage*, 183, 10.  
*Apertum est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*Aphæresis*, 323.  
*Apiscor* and *adipiscor*, w. gen., 220.  
*Aplustre*, nom. plur. of, 83 and 94, 4.  
*Apocope*, 322.—*Apodosis*, 261.  
*Apollo*, gen. of, 69, n. 2.  
*Aposiopesis*, 324, 33.  
*Apostrophe*, 324, 35.  
*Apparet*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*Appellative* nouns, 26, 8.  
*Appello*, constr., 230, n. 1.  
*Appetens*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
*Appendix*, 322—329.  
*Apposition*, 204; to two or more nouns, 204, n. 5; to nouns connected by *cum*, 204, n. 5, (1.); to proper names of different genders, 204, n. 5, (2.); genitive instead of, 204, n. 6; 211, n. 2, n.; abl. with gen., 204, n. 7; of a proper name with *nomen*, etc., 204, n. 8; of a clause, 204, n. 9; of parts with a whole, 204, n. 10; 212, n. 2, n. 5; place of nouns in apposition, 279, 9.  
*Apprime*, 127, 2; 193.  
*Aptotes*, 94.  
*Aptus*, constr., 222, n. 1 and 4, (1.); *aptus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. gerund, 275, n. 2 and 8.  
*Apud*, 196, n. 6.  
*-ar*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genitive of, 70, 71; abl. of, 82, increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
*Arbitror*, in imperf. or pl., 260, n. 2.  
*Arbor* (-os), gender of, 11.  
*Arceo*, w. abl., 261, n. 2.  
*Arcesso*, constr., 217, n. 1.  
*Archaism*, 323, n., (1.)  
*Archilochian* verse, 804, 2;—*penthemimeris*, 812;—*iambic trimeter*, 814, v.; do

**Hexameter**, 314, vii.;—**heptameter**, 318, iv.  
*Arenæ*, as gen. of place, 221, n. 3, (4.)  
*Argo*, genitive of, 69, n. 3.  
*Argos* (-gi), 92, 4.  
*Arguo*, constr., 217, n. 1.  
**Aristophanic verse**, 304, 2.  
*-arium* and *-arius*, nouns and adjs. in, 190, 8; 123, 3; 121, 4.  
**Arrangement of words**, 279; poetical, 279, n. 4; of clauses, 280.  
*Ars*, declined, 57.  
**Arts and thesias**, 308.  
**Article**, wanting in Latin, 41, n.  
*-as*, genitives in, 43; nouns in of 3d decl., gender of, 62; genitive of, 72; gen. plur. of, 82, ii., 4; in acc. plur. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 85, n. 2.—*-as* and *-anus*, adjs. in, 128, 6; *-as* final, quantity of, 300.  
*As*, value of, 327; how divided, 327;—gender of, 62, n. 1; 72, n. 1; gender of parts ending in *as*, 64, 2; *assis non habere*, 214, n. 1.  
**Asclepiadic verse**, 304, 2;—**tetrameter**, 316, iii.  
**Asking**, verbs of, with two accs., 281; constr. in the pass., 284, 1.  
*Aspergo*, 249, i. and n. 1 and 3.  
*Aspirate*, 3, 1.  
*Assuor*, ut, 273, n. 2.  
*-asse* for *-avero*, 162, 9.  
*assuesco* and *assuefacio*, w. abl., 245, ii.; w. dat., 245, ii., n. 1.  
**Asyndeton**, 323, 1, (1.)  
*-at*, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., n. 5.  
*At*, conj., 198, 9; *at enim*, *atque*, 198, 9, (b.)  
*-atim*, adverbs in, 192, i., 1.  
*Atque*, composition and meaning, 198, 1, n. (b.) See *ac*.  
**Attraction**, 206, (6.); 209, n. 6 and n. 8; 210, n. 6; 272, n. 8.  
*Attribuo*, w. participle in *dus*, 274, n. 7.  
*-aus*, adjs. in, 123, 7.  
*Au*, how pronounced, 9, 2 and n. 2.  
*Audeo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2.  
*Audio*, conjugated, 160; used like *appello*, 210, n. 2; constr., 272, n. 1; *audes* for *audies*, 183, n. 3;—*audiens*, constr., 222, n. 1.  
*-aus*, nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 76, n. 4.  
*Auscullo*, constr., 222, n. 2, (b.), and (1.), (a.)  
*Ausim*, 183, n. 1.  
*Aut* and *vel*, 198, 2, n. (a.); *aut* and *ve*, 198, 2, n. (d.); *aut—aut*, 198, 2, n. (e.); *aut* with the singular, 209, n. 12, (5.)  
*Autem*, 198, 9; its position, 279, 3, c.); ellipsis of, 278, n. 11.  
**Authority**, in prosody, 282, 4.  
**Auxiliary verb**, 158.  
*-av* and *-atu* in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 164.  
*Avarus*, with gen., 213, n. 1.  
*Ave*, 183, 8.  
*Avidus*, with gen., 213, n. 1; w. gen. of gerand., 275, (2.); w. inf. poetically, 270, n. 1.  
*-æ*, nouns in, gen. of, 78, 2, (1.); adjs. in, 129, 6; verbals in with gen., 213, n. 1.

## B.

*B*, roots of nouns ending in, 56, i. changed to *p*., 171, 2.  
*Bainum*, plur. *-æ* or *-æ*, 92, 6.  
**Barbarism**, 325, 1.  
*Barbiton*, declined, 54, 1.  
*Bello*, *bellissime*, 192, iv. n.  
*Belli*, construed like names of towns, 222, n. 3; *bello*, 253.  
*Bene*, derivation, 192, ii., 1; constr. of its compounds, 225, i.; *bene est*, w. dat., 228, 1; *bene*, w. acc., 239, n. 2; with verbs of price, 252, n. 3.  
*-ber*, names of months in, how declined, 71 and 108.  
*Bes*, gen. of, 73, n. 2.  
*Bibi*, pr., 284, n., (1.)  
*Bicorpor*, abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Biduum*, *triduum*, etc., *biennium*, etc., 121, 2.  
*-bilis*, adjs. in, 129, 4; how compared, 126, 4; with dative, 222, n. 1.  
*Bimestris*, 113, n. 1.  
*Bipes*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Bonus*, declined, 105, 2; compared, 125, 5; *boni consulo*, 214, n. 1.  
*Bos*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, n. 1; 283, 5; gender of, 80; genitive of, 76, n. 1; gen. plur., 83, ii., n. 1.  
*-br*, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., n. 8.  
**Brachycatalectic verse**, 304, 3, (2.)  
**Brasen age of Roman literature**, 329, 4.  
*-brum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
**Bucolic cæsure**, 310, 6, n. 4.  
*-bulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*-bundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1; comparison of, 126, 5; with acc., 233, n.

## C.

*C*, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, i., n. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70; c final, quantity of, 299, 4; *C* for *Caius*, i. q. *Gaius*, 323.  
*Calebs*, 112, 2; in abl. sing., 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
**Cæsura**, 309; kinds of, 309; in hexameter verse, 310, 3; *cæsural pause*, 300, 3; in hexameter verse, 4—6; in pentameter verse, 311, 2; in iambic verse, 314, i. and x.; in trochaic verse, 315, 1; in choriambic verse, 316, iii.  
*Calco*, change of *a* to *u* in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
**Calendar, Roman**, 323, 6.  
**Calends**, 326.  
*Callitus*, 270, n. 1; 213, n. 1.  
*Canalis*, abl. of, 82, 5, (c.)  
*Cano receptui*, 227, n. 2.  
*Capax*, w. genitive, 213, n. 1, (1.), and n. 5, (1.)  
*Capio*, conjugated, 159; adjs. compounded of, 112, 2.  
**Capital letters**, how used by the Romans, 2, 2; as numerals, 113, 7.  
*Caput* declined, 57; *capitis* and *capite damnare*, *accusare*, etc., 217, n. 3.

- Cardanus*, plur. -i and -a, 92, 3.  
*Cardinal numbers*, 117 and 118.  
*Careo*, 250, 2, n. 1.  
*Carmen*, declined, 57.  
*Caro*, gender of, 59, 3; gen. of, 69, n. 2;  
 gen. plur., 83, n. 5.  
*Carthagini*, in abl. of the place where, 82,  
 n. 5, (c.)  
*Case-endings*, table of, 39.  
*Cases of nouns*, 86 and 87.  
*Casus recti and obliqui*, 87, n.  
*Causa*, *gratia*, etc. with *mea*, etc., 247,  
 n. 2; their place with *genitive*, 279, n.  
*Causal conjunctions*, 198, 7.  
*Cause*, abl. of, 247; after active verbs,  
 247, n. 2; acc. of with prepositions, 247,  
 n. 1.  
*Causo*, change of *ca* in its compounds,  
 189, n. 3.  
*Cave or cave ne*, w. subj., 267, n. 3; 263,  
 n. 3.  
 -ce and -cine, enclitic, 184, n. 4.  
*Cedo*, constr., 223, n. 2, (1), (d.)  
*Cedo*, imperative, 183, 11.  
*Celer*, how declined, 108; gen. plur., 114,  
 n. 2.  
*Celo*, with two accs., 231; w. *de*, 231, n. 3.  
*Censo*, 273, n. 4.  
*Centena millia*, ellipsis of, 118, 5.  
 -ceps, nouns in, gen. of, 77, n.; adjs. in,  
 gender of, 112, 2; abl. of, 118, n. 2, and n. 3.  
*Ceres*, genitive of, 78, n. 2.  
*Certe* and *certo*, 192, n. 1.  
*Certus*, 218, n. 1; 275, n. 1, (2.); 270, n. 1.  
*Cetera and reliqua* for *ceteris*, 234, n., n. 3.  
*Ceterum*, 198, 8, n., (b.)  
*Ceu*, w. subj., 268, 2.  
*Ch*, sound of, 10, 1; when silent, 12, n.;  
 in syllabication, 18, 2.  
 Character or quality, gen. of, 211, n. 6.  
*Chaos*, 61, n. 3.  
*Chelys*, declined, 86.  
*Choliambus*, 314, n.  
 Choriambic metre, 316; 303;—pentame-  
 ter, 316, i.;—tetrameter, 316, n.;—trime-  
 ter, 316, iv.;—trimeter catalectic, 316, v.;—  
 dimeter, 316, vi.  
*Cicur*, gen. plur. of, 114, n. 2.  
*Circum*, in composition, 196, 4.  
*Circumdo* and *circumfundo*, 249, n. 3.  
*Circumflex accent*, 15, 2, and 14; how  
 used, 14, 3.  
*Cis* and *citra*, constr., 235, n. 1.  
*Citior*, compared, 126, 1.  
*Citum*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)  
*Clam*, constr., 235, (5.)  
*Clanculum*, 192, iv., n.; 235, (5.); 126, 1.  
*Claudo*, its compounds, 189, n. 3.  
*Clause*, 201, 13; as the subject of a pro-  
 position, 202, n. 1, n. 2; as an addition to  
 the predicate, 203, n., 3; its gender, 34, 4;  
 as the object of a verb, 229, n. 5; in abl.  
 absolute, 256, n. 3; connection of clauses,  
 198, i. and ii.; 278, n. 1; 280, n. 1; arrange-  
 ment of, 280; similar clauses, 278, n. 1.  
*Climax*, 324, 21.  
 Clothing, verbs of, 249, i.  
*Calestis*, abl. of, 113, n. 1; gen. plur. of,  
 114, n. 3.  
*Calum*, plur. *cali*, 92, 4.  
*Cum*, w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1, (b.)  
*Cupi* and *captus sum*, 183, 2.  
 Cognate object, 232;—subject, 234, n.  
*Cognatus*, pr., 285, 2, n. 1.  
*Cognomen* follows the gentile name, 279,  
 9, (b.)  
*Cognominis*, abl. of, 118, n. 1.  
*Cogo*, 273, n. 4.  
 -cola, compounds in, gen. plur. of, 43, 2  
 Collective nouns, 28, 4; number of *their*  
 verbs, 209, n. 11.  
*Com* for *cum* in composition, 196, 5;  
 197, 5.  
*Comitiis*, as abl. of time, 253, n. 1.  
 Common, nouns, 26, 3;—gender, 80;—  
 syllables, 282, 2; 283, n., n. 2.  
*Commoneo* and *commonefacio*, constr.,  
 218; 273, n. 4.  
*Communis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.) and n.  
 5, (a.)  
*Commuto*, constr., 252, n. 5.  
*Compar.*, gen. plur. of, 114, n. 2.  
*Comparo*, constr., 224, n. 1, 3.  
 Comparative conjunctions, 198, 3.  
 Comparative degree, 122, 6; uses of, 122,  
 n. 1, 2, 3; formation of, 124; by *magis*,  
 127, 1.—comparatives declined, 110; abl.  
 sing. of, 113, 2; w. gen., 212, n. 2.; denotes  
 one of two, 212, n. 2., n. 1; w. abl., 256;  
 used pleonastically, 256, n. 12, 13.  
 Comparison, 26; of adjs., 122—127; de-  
 grees of, 122, 3; terminal, 124;—irregular,  
 125; defective, 126; by *magis* and *maxime*,  
 127;—of adverbs, 194.  
 Complex subject, 202, 1, 3, 6; complex  
 predicate, 203, 1, 3, 5; complex sentence,  
 201, 11.  
*Complures*, how declined, 110.  
*Compono*, constr., 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.  
*Compos* and *impos*, gen. of, 112, 2; *ab*  
 of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); pr. 300, n. 3.  
 Composition of nouns, 103;—of adjs.  
 181;—of verbs, 183;—of adverbs, 198.  
 Compound verbs, how conjugated, 163,  
 4;—subject, 202, 4;—predicate, 203, 4;—  
 sentence, 201, 12;—metres, 318;—words, in  
 syllabication, 28;—nouns, declension of,  
 91; how formed, 103; quantity of compd.  
 words, 235.  
*Con*, adjs. compd. with, w. dat., 222, n. 1;  
 verbs compd. with, w. dat., 224; w. *cum*,  
 224, n. 4.  
*Concedo*, constr., 273, n. 5; 274, n. 7.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 198, 4.  
*Concoro*, and *discoro*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, n. 2.  
 Concrete, nouns, 26, n. 2.;—adjs., 131,  
 n.; used for abstracts, in expressions of  
 time, 253, n. 6.  
*Conditio*, in abl., 249, n.  
 Conditional conjunctions, 198, 5.  
*Conduco*, with part. in *duo*, 274, n. 7.  
 Condemning, verbs of, w. gen., 217.  
*Confero*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 3.  
*Confido*, w. abl., 245, n.; w. dat., 245, n. 1  
*Confit*, 183, 12; 180, n.  
*Confinis*, 222, n. 1.  
*Congruo*, 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.  
 Conjugation, 25; 149; first, 155 156  
 second, 157; third, 158, 159; fourth, 160

of dependent verbs, 161; periphrastic, 162; general rules of, 163; of irregular verbs, 178—182; of defective verbs, 183; of impersonal verbs, 184; regular and irregular verbs in the four conjugations, 164—177.—conjugations, how characterized, 149; remarks on, 162.

Conjunctions, 198; classes of, 198; coördinate, 198, i.; sub ordinate, 198, ii.; enclitics, 198, iii. 1; copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; use of coördinate and sub ordinate conjs., 198, i. 1; repeated, 278, i. 7; when omitted between adjs., 205, i. 16;—between words opposed, 278, i. 6.

*Conjungo*, 224, n. 1, 3, and i. 4.

*Conjunctus*, 222, i. 6.

*Conjux*, gender of, 80; gen. of, 78, 2, (5.)

Connecting vowel, 160, 5; omitted in 2d root, 162, 2; in verbal nouns, 102, 5, (b.); in verbal adjs., 129, 1 and 4, (b.); in compd. nouns and adjs., 103, i. 1; 181, i.

Connection of tenses, 258;—of words by conjunctions, 278;—of clauses by do., 278, i. 3.

Connectives, 201, 8, 9; place of, 279, 3.

*Conor*, 271, n. 1.

*Conscious*, 213, i. 1; 275, iii., (2.)

*Consentaneus*, w. dat., 222, i. 1, w. abl., 222, i. 6; *consentaneum erat*, the indie. instead of the subj., 259, i. 3, (a.); with inf. as subject, 269, i. 2.

*Consentio*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 3.

*Consequor*, ut, 278, i. 2.

*Consido*, 241, i. 5.

Consonants, 3, 1; division of, ib.; double, 2, 1, 2; sounds of, 10—12.

*Consors*, 213, i. 1.

*Constat*, w. inf. as subject, 269, i. 2.

*Constituo*, 272, n. 1.

*Consto*, w. abl., 245, ii., 5.

*Consuetudo est*, constr., 262, i. 3, n. 2.

*Consuesco*, 245, ii., 3.

*Contendo*, 278, n. 1.

*Contentus*, w. abl., 244; w. perf. inf., 268, i. 2.

*Conterminus*, w. dat., 222, i. 1, (a.)

*Continens*, abl. of, 82, i. 4, (a.)

Continental pronunciation of Latin, 6.

*Contingit*, conjugation, 184; w. ut, 262, i. 3; w. dat. and inf., 262, i. 3, n. 1.

*Continuo*, 198, ii., 1.

*Contra*, how used, 196, i. 7.

Contracted syllables, quantity of, 283, iii.

Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7.

*Convenio*, 283, n.

*Conveni*, the indie. for the subj., 259, i. 3; w. inf., 269, i. 2.

*Convincio*, 217, i. 1.

*Copia est*, w. inf., 270, i. 1, (c.)

*Copula*, 140, 4.

Copulative conjs., 198, 1; repeated, 198, i. (c.)

*Cor*, gender of, 61; genitive of, 71, i. 2; compds. of, 112, 2.

Correlative adjs., 139, (2.), (3.); 104, 14;—i. verbs, 191, i. 1.

*Cornu*, declined, 87.

*Crasis*, 306, (5.) and 322.

*Crater*, genitive of, 71.

*Credo*, 272, i. 1 i. 6;—*credere*, in the

sense of a pluperfect, 260, ii., i. 2;—*credendum est*, 271, i. 2.

*Creo*, *nascor*, etc., 246, i. 1.

Crime, in genitive after verbs, 217.

*Crimine*, without a preposition, 217, i. 2, (b.)

Crude form or root, 40, 10.

-*crum*, verbals in, 102, 5.

Ct, initial, 12, 3.

*Cui* and *huic*, how pronounced, 9, 5; pr. 306, i. 2.

*Cujas*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Cujus*, how declined, 137, 5; *cujusmodi*, etc., 134, i. 5.

-*culum*, verbals in, 102, 5; contracted to -*clum*, 102, 5, (b.)

-*culus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, and i. 1, 2; 128, 5.

*Cum*, prep., affixed to abl., 241, i. 1; 133, i. 4; 136, i. 1; how used, 196, i. 11; w. abl. of manner, 247, 2; in composition, 196, 5.

*Cum* or *quum*, mood of the verb following it, 263, 5.

*Cum*, 'while', 263, 5, i. 4.

-*cumque*, used to form general indefinites, 191, i. 1, (b.); 139, 5, i. 1; composition and meaning, 139, 5, n. 1; sometimes separated from *qui*, etc., 323, 4, (5.)

*Cumprimis*, its meaning, 193, ii., 2.

*Cuncti* and *omnes*, w. gen. plur. 212, i. 2, n. 6.

-*cundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1.

*Cupido*, gender of, 59, i. 2.

*Cupidus*, constr., 213, i. 1; 275, (2.); 270, i. 1.

*Cupio*, 271, i. 4; *cupiens*, 213, i. 1, (2.)

*Curo*, 273, n. 1; 274, i. 7; *cura ut*, 267, i. 3.

*Curritur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)

*Custos*, gender of, 80; 61, 3; genitive, 75, i. 1.

## D.

D final in prosody, 299, 2; before s in roots of nouns, 50, i. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and i. 5.

*Da*, pr., 284, i. 2, (b.)

Dactylic metre, 310 and 303;—trimeter, 312, vi.;—dimeter, 312, vii.;—hexameter, 310, i. Dactylo-iambic meter, 318, i.; dactylo-trochaic heptameter, 318, iv.;—tetrameter, 318, v.

*Dama*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Damni infecti satis*, etc., 217, i. 3.

Dative, 37; sing. of 3d decl., 79, plur. always like abl., 40, 6; exceptions in do 1st decl., 43; of 3d decl., 84; of 4th decl., 89, 5; used for predicate nom., 210, n. 3; for gen., 211, i. 5; *commodi et incommodi*, 222, 1 and 2; dative of the end, 227; dat. of the object, after adjs., 222; different constructions instead of, 222, i. 4 and 6; after *idem*, 222, i. 7; after verbs, 223—227; after verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, etc., 224; with *ab*, *ex*, *de*, *circum* and *contra*, 224, i. 1 and 2; with *dis*, 224, i. 3; with *satis*, *hens* and *male*, 225, i.; dat. of the agent, 225, i.

- and *iii.*; of the possessor after *est*, 226; after particles, 226; dat. with the acc., 223, (1.); two datives after *sum*, etc., 227; wanting, 225, *iii.*, *n.*; *dativus ethicus*, 223, *n.*
- Datum*, *pr.*, 284, *n.* 1, (2.)
- De*, 186, *n.* 12; with abl. instead of acc., 229, *n.* 5, (b.); 231, *n.* 8.
- Dea*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 43.
- Debebas*, indic. instead of subj., 259, *n.* 3.
- Decedo*, *w. abl.*, 251.
- Decerno*, 273, *n.* 1 and 4.
- Decet*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, *n.* 7; 223, *n.* 2, (b.); indic. for subj., 259, *n.* 3.
- Declarative sentences, 200, 3.
- Declaro*, 230, *n.* 1.
- Declension, 33; parts of speech declined, 26, 3; of nouns, 38-40; rules of, 40; first, 41-45; exceptions in do., 43; paradigms of, 41; second, 46-54; paradigms of, 46; exceptions in do., 52; third, 55-86; paradigms of, 57; exceptions in do., 63-85; fourth, 87-89; paradigms of, 87; exceptions in do., 89; formed by contraction, 89; fifth, 90; paradigms, 90; exceptions in, 90;—of adjs., 1st and 2d, 105-107; third, 108-111;—declensions, how distinguished, 38; tabular view of, 39.
- Dedi*, *pr.*, 284, 2, *n.* 1.
- Deest mihi*, 226, *n.* 2; *pr.*, 306, 1, *n.* 1, (1.)
- Defective nouns, 94-96;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 183.
- Defendo*, 251, *n.* 2.
- Defero*, *w. gen.* of the crime, 217, *n.* 1.
- Deficior*, *w. abl.*, 250, 2, *n.* 1.
- Defit*, 183, 18, and 180, *n.*; 226, *n.* 2.
- Deflecto*, 229, *n.* 4.
- Defungor*, 245, *i.*
- Degree, acc. of, 231, *n.* 5; 232, (3.)
- Degrees of comparison, 122 and 123; inferior degrees, 123, 1; equal degrees, 123, 3; a small degree, 123, 2; superior degrees variously expressed, 127, 2, 3, 4.
- Dejoro*, 189, *n.* 3; *pr.*, 285, 2, *n.* 1.
- Dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *pr.*, 306, 1, *n.* 1, (1.)
- Delectat*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, *n.* 7; 223, *n.* 2.
- Delector*, *w. quod*, 273, *n.* 6.
- Deligo*, *w. two accs.*, 230, *n.* 1.
- dem*, enclitic, 134, *n.* 6.
- Demonstrative adjs., 104, 15; 189, 5, *n.*;—pronouns, 134; constr. of, 207; in apposition to a clause, 207, *n.* 22; 206, (3.); used when the reference is not to the subject, 208, (6.); place of, 279, 7; ellipsis of demonstratives before their relatives, 206, (3.), (a.); constr. of dem. adjs., 206, (16.); dem. advs. for dem. pronouns, 206, (20.); dem. pronouns *is*, etc., used for the oblique cases *him*, *her*, etc., 207, *n.* 20; redundant, 207, *n.* 21; dem. prons. and advs. announcing a proposition, 207, *n.* 22.
- Demoveo*, *w. abl.*, 251, *n.*
- Denarius*, value of, 327, *n.* 3; divisions of, *ib.*
- Denique*, its use, 277, *i.*, *n.* 13.
- Denominatives, adjs., 123;—verbs, 187, 1.
- Dens*, gender of, 64, 1; compds. of, 64, 1.
- Depello*, *w. abl.*, 251, *n.*
- Dependence, defined, 203, *iii.*, 3; *e* tenses, 258.
- Dependent or subordinate propositions, 201, 6.
- Deponent verbs, 142, *n.* 4; conjugated, 161; participles of, 163, 17; lists of in 1st conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174; 4th conj., 177; increment of, 238, 3.
- Deposco*, 274, *n.* 7.
- Depriving, verbs of, *w. abl.*, 251.
- Derivation of nouns, 100;—of adjs., 123—of verbs, 187;—of advs., 192.
- Derivative words, quantity of, 234.
- Deses*, *gen.* of, 112, 1; *abl.* of, 113, *n.* 2; defective, 115, 2; compared, 123, 4.
- Desiderative verbs, 137, *ii.*, 3; 176, *n.*; quantity of the *w. in*, 234, *n.* 3.
- Designo*, with two accs., 230, *n.* 1.
- Despero*, constr., 224, *n.* 1.
- Desuper* and *insuper*, 235, *n.* 3.
- Deterior*, compared, 126, 1.
- Deterreo*, *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 232, *n.* 11; *w. inf. ib. n.*
- Deturbo*, *w. abl.*, 251, *n.*
- Dexter*, how declined, 106; how compared, 125, 4.
- Deus*, declined, 53; *deum* for *deorum*, 53.
- Di* or *dei*, 53; ellipsis of, 205, *n.* 7.
- di* or *-dis*, see *-dis*.
- Diacresis, 306, 2; mark of, 5, 2.
- Dialysis, 306, *n.*
- Diana*, *pr.*, 282, *i.*, *n.* 5.
- Diastole, 307, 2.
- Dico*, *w. two accs.*, 230, *n.* 1; ellipsis of, 229, *n.* 3, 2; 209, *n.* 4; 270, *n.* 2, (b.); *w. inf.* and *acc.*, 272, *n.* 1; *w. ut*, 273, 2, (c.); *dicunt*, 'they say', 209, *n.* 2, (2.); *dicor*, *w.* predicate nominative, 210, *n.* 3, (3.), (a.) and *n.* 1, cf. 271, *n.* 2; 272, *n.* 6; *dic*, imperative, 162, 4.
- Dicolon, 319, 2.
- Dicto audiens*, *w. dat.*, 222, *n.* 1; *dicta w. comparative*, 256, *n.* 9.
- dicus*, words ending in, *pr.*, 284, 2, *n.* 1.
- Dido*, declined, 86; genitive of, 69, *n.* 3.
- Dies*, declined, 90; its gender, 90, *n.* 1, compds. of with numerals, 121, 3; quantity of, 285, *n.* 4, *n.* 3, (6.)
- Difference, degree of, how expressed, 2f, *n.* 10.
- Differo*, constr., 251, *n.* 3, *n.*; 229, *n.* 4, 1.
- Differing, verbs of, 251, *n.* 3.
- Difficile est*, the indic. for the subj., 259, *n.* 4, (2.); with an inf. as subject, 269, *n.* 2; with supine in *w.*, 276, *iii.*, *n.* 1; *w. ad* and a gerund, 276, *iii.*, *n.* 4.
- Digne*, *w. abl.*, 244, *n.* 1.
- Dignor*, *w. abl.*, 244, *n.* 1; *w. acc.* of the person, *ib.*; *w. inf.*, *ib.*; *w. two accs.*, *ib.*
- Dignus*, *w. abl.* of the thing, 244; *w. gen.* 244, *n.* 2, (a.); *w. acc.* of neut. pron. or adj., 244, *n.* 2, (a.); *w. inf.* or a subj. clause, 244, *n.* 2, (b.); with relative and subj., 264, 9; *w. supine* in *w.*, 276, *iii.*, *n.* 1.
- Dimeter, 304, 2.
- Diminutive nouns, 100, 3;—adjs., 104, 11 123, 5;—verbs, 187, *ii.*, 4;—adverbs, 192, 4.
- Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 18 4; 233, *ii.*
- Diptotes, 94.

*Dis* for *dis*, 196, (b.), 2.  
*Dis* or *di*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.), 2;  
 construction of some verbs compounded  
 with, 251, r. 3, n.; pr., 285, 2, n. 2.  
*-dis*, genitives in, 77, n. 1; *dis*, adj., gen.  
 plur. of, 114, n. 8.  
*Discerno*, 251, n. 3, n.; in imperf. subj.  
 for pluperf., 260, II., n. 2.  
*Discolor*, abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
*Discordo* and *discrepo*, 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Disertus*, pr., 284, n. 5, 2, n. 1.  
 Disjunctive conj., 198, 2.  
*Dissideo*, constr., 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Dissimilis*, 222, n. 1, and n. 2.  
*Distich*, 304.  
*Distinguo* and *disto*, 251, n. 3, and n.  
 Distributive numbers, 119, 120; gen. plur.  
 of, 105, n. 4; used for cardinal numbers,  
 120, 4;—for multiplicatives, 120, 4, (b.)  
*Distrophon*, 319, 8.  
*Dux*, compared, 104, 6.  
*Dives*, gen. sing., 112, 1; gen. plur., 114,  
 n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
 Division of words into syllables, 17—23.  
*Do*, 149, n.; w. perf. participles, 274,  
 n. 4; w. participles in *dux*, 274, n. 7; incre-  
 ment of, 290, n.; 284, n. 4.  
*-do*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive  
 of, 69, n. 1.  
*Doceo*, 231, n. 1; w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1.  
*Doleo*, w. *quod*, etc., 278, n. 7.  
*Dominus*, declined, 46.  
*Domus*, declined, 89; different use of  
*domitis* and *domi*, 89, (a.); constr. of gen.,  
 221, n. 3; of acc., 287, n. 4; of abl., 255,  
 n. 1; 254, n. 2.  
*Donec*, w. subj., 263, 4; pr., 299, 4, n.  
*Dono*, w. abl., 249, I., n. 1; w. two da-  
 tives, 227, n. 1.  
*Dos*, gen. of, 61, 8; *doti dicare*, 227, n. 2.  
 Double consonants, 3, 1.  
 Doubtful gender, 30.  
*Dubito* and *non dubito*, 262, n. 7 and 8;  
*subito an*, 198, 11, (c.); *dubito sit ne*, etc.,  
 262, n. 8.  
*Duco*, constr., 214; 227, n. 1; 230, n. 1;  
 in *numero*, or in *loco*, 230, n. 4; *duc*, im-  
 perat., 162, 4.  
*Dudum* and *jamdudum*, 191, n. 6.  
*Duim*, *duis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*Dum*, w. subj., 263, 4; *dum ne* and *dum-  
 modo ne*, 263, 2, n.; *dum*, 'until,' 263, 4,  
 1.;—while, 263, 4, (2.)—compounded  
 with a negative, 277, n. 16.  
*Duntaxat*, 193, II., 8.  
*Duo*, declined, 118; *duum* for *duorum*,  
 113, n. 1.  
*-dus*, participle in, how declined, 103,  
 n. 2; of nouter deponent verbs, 161; with  
*sum*, 162, 15, neuter in *dum* with *est*, 274,  
 n. 11; w. dat. of person, 162, 15, n. 5; 226,  
 III.; of dep. verbs, 162, 17, (b.); w. acc.,  
 234, n. 2; its signification, 274, 2, n. 7 and  
 8; used for a gerund, 275, II.

E.

*E*, sound of, 7 and 8; *e* changed to *ü* or *y*,  
 16, n. 4 and 5; nom. in *e* in 3d decl., 56, I,  
 n. 1, 7; gender of nouns in *e* of 3d decl.,

66; genitive of, 63; abl. of, 82; old lat. in,  
 79; acc. plur. in, 54, 5; nom. plur. in, 83,  
 I., 1; voc. in, 81, n.; in gen. and dat. sing.  
 5th decl., 90, n. 2; cf. 40, 11; advs. in, 192,  
 II.; syncope of in imperf. of 4th conj., 162,  
 2; increment in *e* of 3d decl., 237, 3; plur.,  
 238; of verbs, 290; *e* ending the first part  
 of a compound word, 285, n. 4; *e* final,  
 quantity of, 295.—*e* or *ez*, prep., see *ez*.  
*-ea*, Greek acc. sing. ending in, 54, 5, and  
 80, III.  
*Eapae*, etc., 135, n. 3.  
*Ecce*, compounded with demonstrative  
 pronouns, 184, n. 2; w. nom., 209, n. 13;  
 w. acc., 238, 2.  
*Eccum*, *ecillum*, *eccistam*, etc., 184, n. 2;  
 238, 2.  
*-ectis*, gen. in, 73, (2.)  
*Equus* and *equi*, how declined, 137, 3,  
 and n. 3; *ecque* and *ecqua*, 137, 3, n. 4;  
*ecquis est qui*, 264, 7, n. 2; *ecquid*, interrog.  
 particle, 198, 11, and n. 3 and 6.  
*Equisnam*, 137, 4.  
*Ectasis*, 307, 2, (3.)  
*Ecthiplis*, 305, 2.  
*Edepol*, 199, n. 8.  
*Edico*, 273, n. 4.  
*Edim*, *edis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*-edis*, gen. in, 73, n. 1 and 112, 1.  
*Editus*, w. abl., 245.  
*Edo*, 'to eat,' conjugated, 181; compds.  
 of, 181, n.  
*-edo*, abstracts in, 101, 1.  
*Edoceo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1.  
*Efficio*, 273, n. 2;—*efficiens*, w. gen., 218,  
 n. 1, (2.);—*efficitur*, w. ut, or the acc. with  
 the inf., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Effugio*, w. acc., 233, n. 1.  
*Egeo* and *indigeo*, 250, 2, n. 1; 220, 3.  
*-egis*, genitives in, 73, 2.  
*Ego*, declined, 133.  
*Eheu*, pr., 233, I., n. 5.  
*Ei*, how pronounced, 9, 1, and n. 1; gen-  
 itive in, 73, n.; pr., 233, I., n. 6, (1.)  
*-eia*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*-eis*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (5.)—  
 acc. plur. in, 85, n. 1, and 114, 2.  
*-eius*, pr., 233, I., n. 6, (3.)  
*Ejus*, use of, 208, (6.)  
*Ejusmodi* and *eiusdemmodi*, 189, 5, n. 2  
*-ela*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Elegiac* verse, 311, n. 2.  
*Ellipsis*, 323; of pronoun in case of appo-  
 sition, 204, n. 4; of the noun of an adj.,  
 205, n. 7; 252, n. 3; of the antecedent, 206,  
 (3.) and (4.); of *meus*, etc., 207, n. 38; of  
 nom., 209, n. 2 and 3; of verb, 209, n. 4;  
 229, n. 8; of a noun limited by a genitive,  
 211, n. 8; of gen., 211, n. 9; of a partitive,  
 212, n. 1, n. 3; of subject acc., 239; 269,  
 n. 1; of acc. after transitive verb, 229, n. 4;  
 of prep., 232, (2.); 235, n. 5; 241, n. 4; 248,  
 n. 3; of voc., 240; of *quam*, 256; of partici-  
 ple, in abl. absol., 257, n. 7; of ut w. subj.,  
 262, n. 4; of ne after *cave*, 262, n. 6; of *non*  
 after *non modo*, etc., 277, n. 6; of conjunc-  
 tions, 278, n. 6; of *q* in composition, 307;  
 of *centena milia*, 327, n. 6.  
*-ellus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 8,  
 n. 3.

- ent* and -*en*, accs. in, 45, 1; 80, IV.; -*ent* in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80.  
*Eni*, 262, n. 1.  
*Enn* hatic word, its place in a sentence, 279, 2 and 16.  
*En*, interrogative particle, 198, 11, and n. (a.); 187, n. 3; *en*, interjection, 199; w. nom., 200, n. 12; w. acc. 238, 2; -*en*, acc. in, 45, 1; 80, IV.  
*Enallage*, 323, 8.  
*Enallitica*, in accentuation, 15, 3; -*enallitica*, 198, n. 1.  
*Endeavoring*, verbs of, 273, 1, (a.)  
*-endus* and *-undus*, 163, 20.  
*English pronunciation of Latin*, 6.  
*Enim* and *nam*, 198, 7, and n.; 279, 2, (a.) and (c.)  
*Enisvero*, 198, 9, n. (a.)  
*Enehemmeris*, 304, 5.  
*Ens*, participle, 154, n. 1.  
*-ensis*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (a.)  
*-entissimus*, superlatives in, 126, 3  
*-enus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (c.)  
*Eo*, conjugated, 182; compds. of, 182, n. 3; w. supine in *um*, 276, II., n. 2; w. two datives, 227, n. 1.  
*-eo*, verbs in of 1st conj., 165, n. 3.  
*Eo*, pron. w. comparatives, 256, n. 16.  
*As* adverb of place. w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.)—of degree. w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 3. *As* an illative conj., 198, 6.  
*Eodem*, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 3.  
*eos*, Greek gen. in, 76, n. 7; 54, 5; pr., 263, I., n. 6, (2.)  
*Epanadiplosis*, 324, 18.  
*Epanasos*, 324, 19.  
*Epanalepsis*, 324, 16.  
*Epanaphora*, 324, 13.  
*Epanastrophe*, 324, 17.  
*Epanorthosis*, 324, 33.  
*Epenthesis*, 322, 3.  
*Epicene nouns*, 33.  
*Epistrophe*, 324, 14.  
*Epizeuxis*, 324, 20.  
*Epulor*, with abl., 245, II., 4.  
*Epulum*, 92, 6.  
*Equality*, how denoted, 123, 3.  
*Eques*, gender of, 31, 2; used collectively, 309, n. 11, (1.), (b.)  
*Equidem*, its composition and use, 191, n. 4.  
*-er*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46—syncopeated, 48, 1; of 3d decl., gender of, 68 and 60; genitive of, 70 and 71; syncopeated, 71;—adjectives in, superlative of, 126; annexed to pres. infin. pass., 162, 6.  
*Erga*, how used, 195, n. 7.  
*-ere*, in 3d pers. plur. of perf. indic. active, 162, 8.  
*-eris*, genitives in, 76; 73, n. 2; 74, n. 1; and 112, 1 and 2.  
*Ergo*, w. gen., 147, n. 2, (a.)  
*Erotosis*, 324, 31.  
*-errimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.  
*-es*, proper names in, 44, 1; -*es* and -*e* in Greek nouns changed to a, 46, 3; nouns in of 3d decl. increasing in genitive, gender of, 53; 61; genitive of, 73; genitive of adjs. in, 112; not increasing, gender of, 63; genitive of, 73; in nom., acc., and voc. plur. of mass. and fem. nouns of 3d decl., 83, I.; 85; final, sound of, 8, n. 2; quantity of, 306.  
*Escit*, 154, n. 4.  
*Esse* and *uisse*, ellipsis of, 270, n. 3.  
*-esso*, -*isso* or -*so*, intensives in, 187, II., b.  
*Est*, w. dat. of a possessor, 226; *est*, qui, with subj., 264, 6; so *est*, *unde*, *ubi*, *cui*, or *ut*, 264, 6, n. 3.  
*Et* and *que*, 198, 1, n. (a.); *et ipse*, 207, n. 27, (b.); ellipsis of *et*, 238, n. 6, (b.); *et is*, *et id*, *et is quidem*, 207, n. 28, (c.); *et—et*, *et—que*, *et—neque* or *nee*, 198, 1, n. (a.); *et non*, 198, 1, (c.)  
*Etiam*, 198, 1, n. (d.); with comparatives, 256, n. 9, (b.); 127, 3; *etiamquam*, *etiam tam*, 191, n. 7.  
*-etis*, genitive in, 73; 112, 1.  
*Eti* and *etiam*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*-etum*, derivative nouns in, 100, 7.  
*Etymology*, 24—199.  
*Eu*, the diphthong, 10, 3; when not a diphthong, 10, 3, n. 3; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in *eus*, 81.  
*Euphemism*, 324, 11.  
*Eus*, nouns in of 2d decl., 54, 5;—adjs. in, 128, 1 and 2; Greek proper names in, 288, n. 2; gen. of, 76, n. 7; acc. of, 180, III.  
*-ev* and *-eu*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
*Evada*, constr., 251, n.  
*Evenit*, conjugated, 184; *evenit ut*, 262, n. 3.  
*Ex* and *e*, prep., how used, 195, n. 2 and 18;—used with participles instead of the genitive, 212, n. 4; sometimes omitted, 251; and n. 1; *ex qua*, scil. *tempore*, 253, n. 4.  
*-ex*, gender of nouns in, 65, 2.  
*Exadversus*, w. acc., 185, n. 3.  
*Excedo*, w. acc., 233, (3.), n.  
*Excello*, constr., 256, n. 16, (3.)  
*Exciso*, w. ut, 273, n. 4.  
*Excludo*, constr., 251, n.  
*Exeo*, constr., 251, n.  
*Existimo*, w. gen., 214; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *existimor*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Exter*, 112, 2; 196, I., 6.  
*Exos*, genitive of, 112, 2.  
*Exosus*, 133, 1, n.  
*Exsistunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Exter*, 106, 3, and n.; comparison of, 125, 4.  
*Expedio*, 251, n.; *petit*, w. dat., 222, n. 2, (b.)  
*Exterior* *st*, 198, 11, (c.)  
*Expers*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (3.), and n. 5, (2.)  
*Extemple*, 198, II., 1.  
*Extrema*, how compared, 125, 4; *extremus*, how used, 205, n. 17; *extremum est*, ut, 262, n. 3.  
*Exue*, const., 225, n. 2; *exuer*, 234, I., n. 1.  

F.

*Fabula*, ellipsis of, 29, 2.  
*Fac*, imperative, 132, 4; *fac ut or ne*, 267, n. 3; *fac*, 'suppose or granting,' w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 3; pr., 290, n. 4.

*Facile*, adv., 192, 4, (b.); w. superlatives, etc., 277, 2. 7.

*Facilis*, constr., 276, III., 2. 4; 222, 2. 1, (a.)

*Facio* and compds., passive of, 180 and n.; changes of in the compds., 189, n. 1; w. gen. of value, 214, 2. 2; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. abl., 250, 2. 8; w. *ut* and subj., 274, 1, n. 2 and 3; w. participle, 273, 1; w. *de*, etc., 250, 2. 8; *facere non possum* quin, 262, 2; *facere quod*, 278, n. 8; ellipsis of, 209, 2. 4; *facere certiores*, 280, n. 8.

*Faliscan* verse, 312, xi.

*Fallit me*, 229, 2. 7.

*Familia* with *pater*, etc., gen. of, 43, 2.

*Familiaris*, w. dat., 222, 2. 1, (a.); with gen., 222, 2. 1, (c.)

*Far*, its root, 56, II., 2. 6; gen. of, 71, 2; abl., 62, 2. 1, (b.); 94 and 96.

*Fas*, gender of, 62, 2. 2; 94; *fas erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, 2. 8; *fas est*, w. supine in *u*, 276, III., 2. 2.

*Fazo*, *fazim* and *fazem*, 162, 9, and 183, 2. 1.

*Fauz*, genitive of, 78, 2, (5.); but of, 94, p. 50; gen. plur., 58, II., 3.

*Faveat*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.) constr., 223.

Fearing, verbs of, w. *ut* and *ne*, 262, 2. 7.

*Febris*, ellipsis of, 205, 2. 7, (1.)

*Fecundus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, 2. 5, (3.)

Feet, in poetry, 302; isochronous, 302, 2.

*Fel*, its root, 56, II., 2. 6; its genitive, 70, 2. 94.

*Felix*, declined, 111; 218, 2. 4, (1.)

*Femina*, added to epicene nouns, 133, 2.

Feminine nouns, of 1st decl., 41; of 2d decl., 49—51; of 3d decl., 62; exceptions in, 62—65.

*Femur*, genitive of, 71, 3.

*Fer*, 162, 4; quantity of, 299, 2. 4.

*Fero*, conjugated, 179; its compds., 172, (p. 184); *fertur*, constr. of, 271, 2. 2.

*-ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 125, 3, (a.)

*Fido*, how conjugated, 142, 2. 2; w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, II., 2. 1; 223, 2. 2.

*Fidi*, (from *findo*), pr., 284, 2. 1, (1.)

Figures of prosody, 306—307; of orthography and etymology, 323; of syntax, 323; of rhetoric, 324.

*Filia*, dat. and abl. plur., 43.

*Filius*, voc. sing., 52.

Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 249, 1.; w. gen., 230, 3.

Final syllables, quantity of, 294—301;—conjunctions, 198, 8.

*Finitimus*, w. dat., 222, 2. 1, (a.)

*Fio*, conjugated, 180; w. gen. of value, 214, 2. 2; w. two datives, 227, 2. 1; *fit* and *feri non potest* *ut*, 262, 2. 3; *fit per me*, 362, 2. 11; quantity of *i* in *fio*, 283, 2. 1.

*Flagito* w. two accs., 231, 2. 1; w. *ut*, 273, n. 4.

*Flecto*, used reflexively, 229, 2. 4, 1.

*Flocci habere*, etc., 214, 2. 1.

*Fluo* and *struo*, 2d and 3d roots of, 171, n.

Follow, in what sense used, 203, 9.

*Fons*, gender of, 64, 1.

*Foras* and *foris*, 237, 2. 5, (c.)

*Forem*, *fore*, etc., 154 2. 3; 162, 12, (1.); 2 two datives, 227, 2. 1.

Fractional expressions, 151, 6.

Freeing, verbs of, 251.

*Frenum*, plur. *freni* and *frena*, 92, 5.

*Frequens*, w. gen. or abl., 213, 2. 3, (3.); cf. 2. 4, (1.)

Frequentative verbs, 187, II., 1; quantity of *i* in, 284, 2. 4.

*Fretus*, w. abl., 244; w. dat., 223, 2. 6; w. inf., 244, 2. 2, (b.)

*Fructus*, declined, 87.

*Frugi*, 115, 4; comparison of, 125, 5.

*Fruor*, w. abl., 245, 1.; w. acc., 245, 1, 2. *Fruz*, genitive of, 78, 2, (5.): 94.

*Fugio*, constr., 225, IV.; 210, 2. 3, (2.); *fuge*, poetically, w. inf., 271, n. 8; *fugimus*, 229, 2. 7.

*Fui*, etc., in compound tenses, 162, 12, (1.); *fuisset*, w. perf. pass. participles, 268, 2. 1, (b.)

*Fungor*, w. abl., 245, 1.; w. acc., 245, 2., 275, II., 2. 1.

*Fuo*, root of *firi*, 154, 2. 2 and 3; *futurum*, pr., 284, 2. 1, (2.)

*Furo*, 183, 2. 2.

*Furor*, w. dat. or abl., 224, 2. 2.

Future tense, 145, III.; how supplied in the subj., 260, 2. 7; future perfect tense, 145, VI.; old form in *so*, 162, 9 and 10;

future indic. for imperative, 267, 2. 2; 259, 2. 1, (4.); fut. imperative, 267, (2.), (3.);

future pass. part. w. acc., 234, 1, 2. 2; fut. perf. for fut., 259, 2. 1, (5.)

*Futurum esse* or *fore*, w. subj., 268 2. 4, (b.); *futurum fuisset*, *ut*, 268, 2. 5.

## G.

G, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots o nouns, 56, 2. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1, and 2. 5.

Gallambus, 314, x.

*Gaudeo*, how conjugated, 142, 2. 2; with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, 2. 1; with *quod*, etc., 273, n. 6.

*Gemo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.

Gems, gender of names of, 29.

*-gena*, compounds in, 43, 2.

*Gener*, declined, 46.

General relatives, 139, 5, 2.; how used, 207, 2. 29.

General indefinites, 139, 5, 2.

Gender, 26, 7 and 27; its divisions, 27; general rules of, 27—34; natural and gram-

matical, 27; masc. from signification, 28; fem. from do., 29; common and doubtful,

30; epicene, 33; neuter appellatives of persons, 32, 2; of Greek nouns, 34, 2. 1; neuter, 34; of 1st decl., 41; exes in 1st decl.,

42; of 2d decl., 46; exes in 2d decl., 49; of 3d decl., 58, 62, and 66; exes in 3d decl.,

59—67; of 4th decl., 87; exes in 4th decl., 88; of 5th decl., 90; exes in 5th decl., 90,

gender of adjs., 206.

*Genero*, w. abl., 246, 2. 1; *generatus*, w. abl., 246.

Genitive, 87; sing., 1st decl., exes in, 48; of 3d decl., 68; of adjectives, 3d decl., 112

plur., 1st decl., contracted, 43; 2d decl. do., 58; 3d decl., 83; terminal letters in all

the declensions, 40, 5; of adjectives, 34



decl., 112 and 114; after nouns, 271: its place, 279, n.; what relations it denotes, 211, n. 1; subjective and objective, 211, n. 2; of substantive pronouns objective, 211, n. 3; possessive adjective used for, 211, n. 4; dative used for, 211, n. 5; of character or quality, 211, n. 6; of measure, 211, n. 6, and (8.) and (6.); noun limited by, omitted, 211, n. 7; wanting, in the predicate after *sum*, 211, n. 8; in other cases, 211, n. 8, (4.); omitted, 211, n. 9; two genitives, 211, n. 10; gen. after *opus* and *usus*, 211, n. 11; how translated, 211, n. 12; after partitives, 212; after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212, n. 8; its place, 279, 10; after adverbs, 212, n. 4; after adjectives, 218; of *cause* or *source*, 218, n. 2; different constructions instead of, 218, n. 4; after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, n. 2; after verbs, 214—220; after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214; of *crime*, 217; after verbs of admonishing, 218; after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220; instead of abl. after verbs of abounding, etc., 220, 3; instead of predicate acc., 230, n. 4; of place, 221; after particles, 221, II., III.; of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1; plur. depending on a gerund, 275, n. 1, (3.); place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.

Genitives, two, limiting the same noun, 211, n. 10.

*Genitus*, w. abl., 246.

*Genius*, voc. sing., 52.

*Genium*, 212, n. 4, n. 2.

*Genus*, in acc. instead of the gen. or abl., as, *id genus, omne genus, etc.*, 234, II., n. 2, *fin.*; 209, n. 7, (4.); 231, n. 6; used with the genit. instead of an apposition, 211, n. 2, n.

*Georgicon*, 54, 4.

*Gero* and *fero*, compounds of, in nouns of 2d decl., 47; in adjs. of 1st and 2d decls., 105, 8; not compared, 127, 7.

Gerundives, defined, 275, n. 2; how used, 275, II.

Gerunds, 25, and 148, 2; by what cases followed, 274; and gerundives, genitive of, 275, III., n. 1; nouns which they follow, ib. (1.); adjectives, ib. (2.); after *sum* denoting tendency, 275, (5.); instead of a noun in apposition, 211, n. 2, n.; dat. of, 275, n. 2; acc. of, 275, n. 3; abl. of, 275, n. 4; infin. for, after adj., 270, n. 1, (a.)

*Gigno*, pr., 234, n. 8.

*Gl, il, and thl*, in syllabication, 18, 3.

*Glorior*, with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, n. 1, and (8.)

Glyconic verse, 304, 2; 316, IV.

*Gn*, initial, 12, n.

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 213, n. 1; cf. n. 4, (1.)

*-go*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive of, 63, n. 1.

Golden age, of Roman literature, 329, 2.

Government defined, 203, 7.

Grammatical subject, 202, 2; cases of, 202, n. 4; predicate, 203, 2; figures, 322.

*Gratia*, w. gen., 247, n. 2; its place, 279, n.; *gratias ago*, constr., 273, n. 6.

*Gratum mihi est, quod*, 278, n. 6.

*Gratulor*, constr., 278, n. 7.

Grave accent, 5, 2, and 4, 2; 15, n. 8  
*Gravidus* and *gravis*, w. gen. or ab.  
218, n. 5, (3.)

Greek nouns, gender of, 34, n. 1; terminations of in 1st decl., 44; in 2d decl., 54, terminations of in 3d decl., 55, n.; acc. of in 3d decl., 80; declension of, in do., 86

Greek or limiting acc., 234, n. 2.

*Greex*, gender of, 65, 2; genitive of 78, 2, (3.)

*Grus*, gender of, 80; genitive of, 79, n. 3

Guilt and innocence, adjectives of, with gen., 217, n. 1.

## II.

*H*, its nature, 2, 6; its place in syllabication, 18, 1; before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1; in prosody, 283, I., (b.)

*Habeo*, with two accs., 230, n. 1; *habens* in *numeri* or in *loco*, 230, n. 4; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; w. participle perf. pass., 274, n. 4; w. participle in *dux*, 274, n. 7, (a.); *habeo, non habeo, or nihil habeo, quod*, w. subj., 264, n. 8; *haberi*, w. predicate nom., 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); 271, n. 2, and n. 4.

*Habito*, w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1; w. abl. of, price, 252, n. 1.

*Hac* in answer to *qua?* 191, n. 1, (c.)

*Hactenus*, adv. of place and time, 191, n. 1, (g.)

*Hadria*, gender of, 42, 2.\*

*Hæc*, for *hæ*, 134, n. 1.

*Haud*, signification and use, 191, n. 8; *haud multum abest quin*, 262, n. 7; *haud scio an*, 198, 11, n. (e.)

*Hebes*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 3; defective, 115, 2.

*Hei mihi*, 223, 3.

Hellenism, 323, n. (2.)

*Henn*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, n. 1.

Hemistich, 304.

Hemiolina, 304, 5.

Hendiadys, 323, 2, (3.)

*Hepar*, genit. of, 71; abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.)

Hephthemimeris, 304, 5.

*Heres*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 73, n. 1.

Heroic caesura, 310, 4 and 5.

*Heros*, genitive, 75, 2; acc., 80, n.; dat. plur., 84; acc. plur., 85, n. 2; declined, 86

Heteroclitie nouns, 93.

Heterogeneous nouns, 34, n. 2; 92.

Heterosis, 323, 8, (2.)

Hexameter verse, 310; Priapean, 310, II.

Hiatus, 279, 13.

*Hibernus*, pr., 284, n. 5, n. 2.

*Hic*, pron., declined, 134; distinguished from *ille*, 207, n. 23; *hic—hic*, for *hic—ille*, 207, n. 23, (b.); related in time like *tunc* and *tunc*.

*Hic*, adv. of place, *hic, hinc, huc*, etc., referring to the place of the speaker, 191, n. 1, (c.); w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); adv. of time, 191, n. 1, (g.)

Him, her, etc., how expressed in Latin, 207, n. 20.

Hippocratic trimeter, 314, n.; tetrameter, 314, iv.

Historical present, 145, i., 3; perfect, 145, iv., n.; for the pluperfect, 259, n. 1, (d.); infinitive, 209, n. 5; tenses, 258.

*Hoc*, pleonastic, 207, n. 21 and 22; *hoc* w. partitive gen., 212, n. 8, n. 1; *hōc* with comparatives, 256, n. 16.

*Hodie*, pr., 285, 2, n. 1.

*Homo*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 69, n. 2; *homo*, *homines*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 2, (2.); 205, n. 7, (1.); 229, n. 4.

Homoeopropheron, 324, 26.

*Honor*, (-as), declined, 57.

Horace, key to the odes of, 321.

Horatian metres, 320.

*Horreo*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Hortor*, w. ad., 225, n. 1; w. *ut*, *ne*, etc., 273, 2; without *ut*, 262, n. 4.

*Hospes*, gender of, 30; formation of nom. sing., 53, i., n. 8; genitive, 73, 2; abl., 112, n. 2; as an adj., 129, 8.

*Hostis*, w. gen. or dat., 222, n. 2, (c.)

'However' w. a relative, how expressed in Latin, 280, iii., (8.)

*Huc*, w. genitive, 212, n. 4, n. 8, (b.);

*hucine rerum*, 212, n. 4, n. 3.

*Humi*, constr., 221, n. 3; *humo*, 254, n. 2; 255, n. 1.

*Huic*, pronunciation of, 9, 5; pr., 306, n. 2.

*Hujus non facio*, 214, n. 1.

*Hujusmodi*, 134, n. 5; w. *qui* and the subj., 264, i, n.

Hypallage, 323, 4, (8.)

Hyperbaton, 323, 4.

Hyperbole, 324, 5.

Hypercatalectic or hypermeter verse, 304, 8, (4.)

Hypothetical sentences, 259, n. 3, (c.), (d.), and n. 4; 260, ii.; in the inf., 268, n. 4—n. 6.

Hysteron proteron, 323, 4, (2.)

## I.

*I*, its sound, 7 and 8; *i* and *j* but one character, 2, 3; *i* for *i* in gen. of 2d decl., 52; *i* changed to *e* in forming certain nouns., 56, i., n. 8; nouns in *i*, gender of, 66; genitive of, 68; genitive of Greek nouns in, 73, n.; dat. of 3d decl. in, 79; abl. sing. in, 82; 113; in gen. and dat. sing. of 5th decl., 90, n. 2; *i* ending the former part of a compound noun or adj., 103, n. 1; 181, n.; *i* in dat. sing. of nine adjs. in *us* and *er*, 177; in 1st person sing. of the perf. act., 147, 3; *i*, the characteristic vowel of the 4th conj., 149, 2; cf. 150, 5; *i* or *e* for the Greek *υ*, 233, n. 6, (1.); increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; *i* final, quantity of, 285, n. 4.; 296.

-*ia*, abstracts in, 101, 3; in nom., app. and voc. plur., 83; 85.

-*iacus*, adjs. in, 128, i, (d.)

Iambic metre, 314; 303; tetrameter, 314, vi.; trimeter, 314, i.; catalectic, 314, iv.; dimeter, 314, vi.; hypermeter, 314, vii.; accephalous, 314, viii.; catalectic, 314, ix.; ambico-dactylic metre, 318, n.

-*ianus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (1.)

-*ias*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)

*Ibi*, ellipsis of before *ubi*, 208, (8.), (a.)

-*icis*, genitives in, 78, 2, (2.) and (3.) 74, n. 2.

-*icius*, adjs. in, 128, 2; -*icius* or -*itius* verbal adjs. in, 129, 5.

Ictus, 308, 3.

-*iculus*, a, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, n. 1.

-*icus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.), and 2, (a.), and 6, (i.)

*Id*, before a relative pron., 206, (13.); w. gen., 212, n. 3; *id temporis*, *atatis*, *id*

*genus*, etc., 234, ii., n. 8; 253, n. 3; *id ago*, constr., 278, n. 1; 207, n. 22; *id quod* instead of *quod*, 206, (13.), (b.); as acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.)

*Idem*, declined, 134, n. 6; how used, 207, n. 27; w. gen., 212, n. 3; w. dat., 222, n. 7; 207, n. 27, (d.); supplying the place of *item*, *etiam*, or *tamen*, 207, n. 27; *idem*

*qui*, ac, *aque*, *ut*, *cum*, etc., 207, n. 27, (a.); 222, n. 7; *idem—idem*, 'at once,' 207, n. 27, (c.); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Ides*, 323, 2.

-*ides*, and -*iades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.); pr., 291, 4.

Idiotism, 323, 6.

-*idis*, genitives in, 73, n. 1; 74, n. 2.

*Idoneus*, *qui*, 264, 9; 270, n. 1.

-*idus*, adjs. in, 129, 2.

-*iei*, in 5th decl., quantity of the *e*, 233, i., n. 2.

-*ies*, advs. in, 192, ii., 3.

*Igitur*, 198, 6; its place, 279, 3, (b.) equivalent to 'I say,' 278, n. 10.

*Ignarus*, w. genitive, 212, n. 1; 275, iii, n. 1, (2.)

-*i* in genitive contracted, 52; how accented, 14, n.

-*ile*, derivative nouns in, 100, 9.

-*ilis*, adjs. in, 129, 4; 128, 4.

*Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

*Ilacrimo*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 4.

Illative conjunctions, 198, 6.

*Ille*, declined, 134; its uses, 207, n. 20—26; w. *quidem*, redundant, 207, n. 21;

its relation to time, 207, n. 23, (c.); as a pron. of the 3d pers., 207, n. 20; relation of *hic* and *ille*, 207, n. 23; *ille*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, n.

*Illic*, pron., how declined, 134, n. 3; *illic*, *illuc*, *illinc*, advs., their reference, 191, n. 1, (c.)

-*illimus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

*Illiusmodi*, 124, 5.

-*illo*, verbs in, 187, ii., 4.

*Illud*, w. genitive, 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); pleonastic, 207, n. 22; as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Illudo*, w. dat., 224, 4.

-*illus*, a, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, n. 3.

-*im*, in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80; *im hoc eum*, 134, n. 1; -*im*, *is*, etc., in pres. subj., 162, 1; adverbs in, 192, i. and ii.

*Imbecillus*, pr., 284, 2, n. 2.

*Imbuo*, constr., 231, n. 4.

Imitative verbs, 187, 8.

*Immemor*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl., 112, n. 3 gen. plur., 114, n. 2.

*Immo*, 191, n. 3.  
*Immediatus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
*Immunis*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
 cf. 261, n.  
*-ionum*, deriv. nouns in, 100, 6;—and  
*-ionia*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Impatiens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
*Impavidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (8.)  
*Impedio*, w. quin, 262, n. 7; w. *quom-*  
*inus*, 263, n. 11; w. inf., 262, n. 11, n.  
*Impello*, 278, n. 4.  
 Imperative, 143, 3; its tenses, 145, n. 3;  
 how used, 267, (1.), (2.); irregular, 162, 4  
 and 5; subj. for imperative 267, n. 2; sing.  
 for plur., 269, n. 2; used as a noun, 205,  
 n. 8.  
 Imperfect tense, 145, n.; w. *oportet*, etc.,  
 259, n. 3; the imperf. indic. for plup. subj.,  
 259, n. 4.  
*Imperitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); of  
 gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (2.)  
*Impero*, constr., 278, n. 4; 262, n. 4; w.  
 dat. and acc., 223, n. 2, (1.)  
 Impersonal verbs, 184; subject of, 184, 2;  
 list of in 2d conj., 169; 184, n. 1; in 1st,  
 8d, and 4th conj., 184, n. 1; constr. w. gen.,  
 215, 1; 219; w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.); w.  
 acc., 229, n. 6 and 7.  
*Imperio*, 249, I., and n. 8; 225, n. 1, (b.)  
*Impetro*, ut, 278, n. 2.  
*Implo*, 249, n. 1; 220, 3.  
*Impugno*, 241, n. 5.  
*Impos* and *impotens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1,  
 (8.)  
*Imprimis*, 193, II., 2.  
*Inprudens*, *inprovidus*, w. genit., 213,  
 n. 1.  
*Impubes*, genitive, 112, 1; abl., 113, n. 2;  
 115, 1, (a.)  
*Impulsus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*-in*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., n. 1 and 2;  
 in acc. sing., 79.  
*In*, prep., constr., 235, (2.); signification  
 and use, 195, n. 14; in composition, 196, 7;  
 in with abl. instead of predicate acc., 230,  
 n. 4; constr. of verbs compd. with, 224;  
 w. abl. after verbs of placing, holding, re-  
 garding, assembling, etc., 241, n. 5; ellipsis  
 of with some ablatives of place, 254 and ss.;  
 with ablatives of time, 253, n. 1, and n. 5;  
 with names of towns, 254, n. 2 and n. 8.  
*Inanis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
*Invasum*, 193, II., 4.  
*Incedo*, 233, (3.), n.; 210, n. 3, (2.)  
 Inceptive verbs, 187, II., 2; list of, 173.  
*Incertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; *incertum*  
 est an, 198, 11, n. (c.); 265, n. 3.  
 Inchoatives, see inceptive verbs.  
*Incidit ut*, 262, n. 3.  
*Incito*, constr., 225, n. 1; *incitatus*, w. abl.  
 of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*Incipio*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Inclino*, constr., 223, n. 4, 1; 225, IV.  
*Incommodo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.)  
 Increment of nouns, 286; sing. num.,  
 287; plur. num., 288; of verbs, 289.  
*Incrementum*, 324, 22.  
*Increpo* and *increpito*, w. gen., 217, n. 1.  
*Incumbo*, w. dat., 224, 4; w. ad, 224, n. 4.  
*Incusio*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.

*Inde*, ellipsis of before *unde*, 208, (8.), (a.)  
*inde loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 84; 94;—adjectives,  
 115, 4.  
 Indefinite adjectives, 104; 139, 5, n.;—  
 pronouns, 188;—adverbs, 191, n. 4.  
 Indicative mood, 143, 1; its tenses, 145;  
 how used, 259; tenses used one for another,  
 259, n. 1—4; indic. of the preterites with  
*oportet*, etc., 259, n. 3; in inserted clauses,  
 266, 2, n. 8 and 5; 266, 1, n. 1.  
*Indico*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Indigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.); w. genit.  
 220, 3.  
*Indignor*, constr., 273, 5, n. 6.  
*Indignus*, w. abl., 244; w. genit., 244,  
 n. 2; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. su-  
 pine in w, 276, III., n. 1.  
*Indigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.)  
 Indirect questions, subj. in, 265;—indirect  
 reference, 266, 3;—indirect discourse,  
 266, 1, n. and 2.  
*Induco*, *id animum inducere*, 233, (1.);  
 pass. w. acc., 234, n. 1; *inductus*, w. abl.  
 of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*Indulgeo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Induo*, w. dat. and acc., 224, 4; w. abl.  
 and acc., 249, I., n. 1; of, 224, n. 1, (b.);  
*induo* and *exuo*, constr. in pass., 234, n. 1.  
*-ine* or *-ione*, fem. patronymical in, 100, 1, (b.)  
*Ineo*, 183, n. 3; *inire consilia*, w. inf.,  
 270, n. 1, (c.); 134, III.  
*Iners*, abl. of, 113, n. 3, and n. 1.  
*Inexpertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Infamo*, w. genit. of crime, 217, n. 1.  
*Infero*, 224, 4, and n. 4.  
*Inferus*, comparison of, 125, 4;—*inferior*  
 w. dat., abl., or *quam*, 256, n. 10; *inferius*  
 and *imus*, 205, n. 17.  
 Infinitive, 143, 4; as a noun, 26, n.; 269;  
 its gender, 34, 4; 205, n. 8; its cases, 269,  
 (b.); as an acc., 229, n. 5; 270; as a verb,  
 269, (a.); its tenses, 145, n. 4; old inf. pres.  
 pass. in *-er*, 162, 6;—inf. as logical subj.,  
 202, n. 2; 269; how modified, 203, II., 5;  
 with subject nom., 209, n. 5; for the genitive,  
 213, n. 4; its subject, 239; w. dat. in-  
 stead of acc., 227, n.; construction and  
 meaning of its tenses, 268; inf. as subject  
 of inf., 269, n. 3; as predicate nom., 269,  
 n. 4; *esse*, etc., with *licet* and a predicate  
 noun or adj., case of such predicate, 269,  
 n. 5; poetically after what verbs, 271, n. 3;  
 depending on a verb, 270; 229, n. 5; on an  
 adj. or noun, 270, n. 1; 275, II., n. 1, n. 1;  
 absolute, 270, n. 2; ellipsis of, 270, n. 3;  
 inf. without a subject after what verbs  
 used, 271; with a subject, after what verbs,  
 272; 273; how translated, 272, n. 3; used  
 like a noun, 273, n. 9; its place, 279, 11;  
 inf. pres. for inf. perfect, 263, n. 1; inf.  
 perf. for present, 263, n. 2; pres. for future,  
 263, n. 3; poet. to denote a purpose, 274,  
 n. 7, (b.)  
*Infinitum est*, the indic. for the subj.,  
 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*Infirmus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
*Infit*, 183, 14, 190, n.  
 Inflection, 25; parts of speech inflected;  
 24, 4.

- ingens*, abl. of, 113, n. 3.  
*inimicus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. genit., 222, n. 2, (c.)  
*-itis*, genitives in, 69, n. 1 and 2.  
*Initio*, "at first," 253, n.  
*Innitor*, 224, n. 4. See also *nitior*.  
*Innocens* and *innocens*, w. genit. 213, n. 1.  
*Insatiables*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)  
*Inscius*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Inscribo*, *insculoo*, and *insero*, constr., 211, n. 5.  
*Insimulo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.  
*Insolens* and *insolitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inops*, abl. of, 113, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, n. 1; cf. n. 4, (1.); w. abl., 250, n. 1, (1.)  
*Inquam*, 183, 5; ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; its position, 279, 6.  
 Inserted clauses, 266.  
*Insinua*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Insons*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inspingo*, 249, 1, n. 1 and n. 3.  
*Instar*, a diptote, 94.  
*Instituto*, 278, n. 4; 230, n. 1; 231, n. 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Instrument*, abl. of, 247, and n. 5; w. verbs of teaching, 231, n. 3, (c.)  
*Instruo*, 231, n. 4.  
*Insumere tempus*, 275, n. 2.  
*Invenio*, w. dat. or abl. of the thing, 245, n. 8; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Invenio*, 213, n. 1, (3.); 222, n. 2, (a.); 275, III., (2.); 270, n. 1; 275, III., n. 1, (2.)  
*Insuper*, w. acc. or abl., 235, n. 3.  
*Integer*, w. genit., 213; *integrum est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Intelligo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *intelligitur*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
 Intention denoted by participle in *rus* with *sic*, 162, 14; 274, n. 6.  
*Intentus*, w. acc. *nihil*, 232, (3.); *intentum esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.)  
*Inter*, use of, 235, 1, n. 2; in composition, 196, 1, 8;—w. *se* or *ipse*, 208, (5.); w. gerunds, 275, III., n. 3; instead of partitive gen., 212, n. 8, n. 4; construction of its compounds, 224; repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, 277, II., 4.  
*Intercedo*, w. *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262, n. 11.  
*Interchulo* and *interlicio*, 251, n. and n. 2.  
*Interdico*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Interdix* or *die*, 253, n. 1.  
*Interea loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
 Interest, Roman computation of, 327.  
*Interest*, w. genit., 219; w. *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; subject cf. 219, n. 4; degree of interest how expressed, 219, n. 5.  
*Interior*, comparison of, 126, 1; *intimus*, 206, n. 17.  
 Interjections, 199; w. nom., 209, n. 13; w. dat., 223, (3.); w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240; *O*, *heu*, etc., not elided, 305.  
*Intermitto*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Interpres*, gender of, 30; n. 2; genit. of, 13, 3.  
*Interitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1 and 2.  
 Interrogative particles, 198, 1;—adjs. 104, 14; 121, 5; 139, 5, 8;—pronouns, 137, in indirect questions, 137, n.; 265, n. 2;—sentences, 200, 3.  
*Interrogo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; constr. in pass., 234, 1; w. genit. of the crime, 217, n. 1.  
*Intersum*, w. dat., 224, 5.  
*Intus*, w. acc., 333, 1, (b.)  
*Intra*, how used, 195, n. 3; 253, n. 4, (b.)  
 Intransitive verb, 141, II.; used impersonally in pass. w. dat., 223, n. 1, (c.)  
*-inus*, adjs. in, 123, 1, 2, and 6.  
*Intrado*, 233, (3.), n.  
 Invariable adjs., 122; specified, 127, 7.  
*Invenio*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *invenitur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Invideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (c.); 220, 1  
*invidetur mihi*, 223, n. 2, n. (c.)  
*Inventus*, w. dat. of the person, 226, n. 3, *invidia Minerva*, 257, n. 7.  
 Involuntary agent of pass. verb, 243, II., and n.  
*-io*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 1; personal appellatives in, 100, 4, (b.); verbals in, 102, 7; verbs in 3d conj., 159.  
 Ionic metre, 817; 363;—*a majore*, 317, 1;—*a minore*, 317, II.  
*-ior*, *-ius*, in terminational comparatives, 124, 1.  
*Ipsa*, declined, 135; how used, 135, n. 2; 207, n. 23; used reflexively, 208, (4.); 207, n. 23, (c.); w. *inter*, 208, (5.); *et ipse*, 207, n. 27, (b.); *ipse*, with the inf., 273, n. 9, (a.); *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*, 191, n. 7.  
*Ipsus* and *ipsissimus*, 135, n. 2.  
*Irascor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.)  
*Iri*, w. supine in *um*, 276, II., n. 3.  
 Iron age of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
 Irony, 324, 4.  
 Irregular nouns, 92;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 178—182.  
*-is*, nouns in, gender of, 62; 63; genitive of, 74;—*is* or *-is* instead of *-es* in acc. plur. of 3d decl., 85, n. 1; abl. of adjs. in *is* used as nouns, 82, n. 4;—used as proper names, 82, n. 4, (b.);—*is* for *-us* in genitive of 4th decl., 89, 2; fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.); ellipsis of in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7, (c.)  
*Is*, pron., declined, 134; how used, 207, n. 26; referring to a clause, 208, (13.); *is* and *ille* with *quidem* used pleonastically, 207, n. 21; *is* for *talis*, 207, n. 26, (b.); 264, 1, n.; *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, 207, n. 26, (c.); ellipsis of *is*, 207, n. 26, (d.); *is-qui*, 264, 1, n.  
 Islands, gender of, 29; constr. of names of, 237, n. 5, (b.)  
*-issimus*, *a*, *um*, the terminational superlative, 124, 2.  
*-isso*, verbs in, 137, II., 5.  
*Iste*, how declined, 134; how used, 207, n. 23, 25; *iste qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Istic*, pron., declined, 134, n. 3.  
*Istic*, adv., *istinc*, *istuc*, their reference, 191, n. 1, (c.)  
*Istiusmodi*, 134, n. 5.  
*-it*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., n. 5; in 3d root of 4th conj., 175, of certain verbs of 3d conj., 171, n. 7.

*Da*, 191, *n* 5; 277, *n* 12, (*a*.); *ita non*, 277, *n* 14.

*Haque*, its meaning, 198, 6, *n*.; its place, 279, 8, (*b*.)

*Ier*, declined, 57; 71, 2; with *sum* and acc. of place, 237, *n* 1; increments of, 236, 2.

*-ter* and *-ter*, advs. in, 122, II. and IV.  
*-itas*, *-ia*, *-itia*, *-ities*, *-itudo*, and *-itus*, abstracts in, 101, 1.

*-itis*, genitive in, 78; 78, 1; 112, 1.

*-ite*, frequentatives in, 187, II., 1.

*-itius* or *-icius*, adjs. in, 129, 5.

*Itum*, sup., in prosody, 284, *n* 1, (2.)

*-ius*, advs. in, 192, I. and II.; adjs. in, 129, 7.

*-ium*, verbals in, 102, 2; *-ium* or *-itium*, nouns in, 100, 5.

*-ius*, genitives in, place of English accent, 15; in what adjs., 107; quantity of the *i*, 258, I., *n* 4:—adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and 5; voc. sing. of patris and possessives in, 52.

*-io*, in 2d roots of verbs, 175; 171, *n* 3.

*-iote*, adjs. in, 129, 7.

## J.

*J*, vowel before, in prosody, 283, IV., *n* 1.  
*Jaco*, 210, *n* 3, (2.); 233, (3.), *n*.

*Jam*, with a negative, 191, *n* 6; *jamdu-* dum, ib.

*Jecur*, genitive of, 71, 8; increments of, 286, 2.

*Jejunus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, *n* 5, (3.)

*Jesus*, decl. of, 58.

*Jocus*, plur. *joci* and *joca*, 92, 2.

*Jubar*, abl. of, 82, *n* 1, (*b*.)

*Jubeo*, constr., 223, (2.); 278; 2, (*d*.); 272, *n* 6; 262, *n* 4; ellipsis of *jubeo valere*, 238, *n* 2; *jubeor*, w. inf., 271, *n* 1.

*Jucundus*, constr., 276, III., *n* 1 and 4; *jucundum est*, w. *quod*, 273, 6, *n* 6.

*Judico*, w. two accs., 230, *n* 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, *n* 1; in pass., 210, *n* 3, (3.), (*c*.); *judicari* w. predicate nominative, 271, *n* 2.

*Jugerum*, 98, 1; 94.

*Jugum*, quantity of its compds., 233, IV., *n* 1.

*Jungo*, constr., 229, *n* 4, 1.

*Junctus* and *conjunctus*, constr., 222, *n* 6, (*c*.)

*Jupiter*, genitive of, 71; declined, 85.

*Jure aliquid facere*, without *cum*, 247, 2.

*Jure*, its compds., 189, *n* 3:—*juratus*, with *re* +ve meaning, 163, 16:—*juro*, poet. w. inf., 271, *n* 3.

*Jusjurandum*, declined, 91.

*Justum erat*, indic. for subj., 259, *n* 3; *justum est* with inf. as subject, 269, *n* 2; *justo* after comparatives, 256, *n* 9; its place, 279, *n* 1.

*Juvat*, w. acc., 229, *n* 7.

*Juvenalis*, abl. of, 82, *n* 4, (*b*.)

*Juventus*, abl. of, 82, *n* 4, (*b*.); 112, *n* 2; comparison of, 126, 4; 115, 1, (*a*.); for *in juventute*, 253, *n* 6.

*Juxta* as an adv., 195, *n* 4; *juxta ac* or *aque*, 198, 8, *n*.

## K.

*K*, its use, 2, 4.

Key to the Odes of Horace, 321.

Knowing, verbs of, their construction, 270

## L.

*L*, roots of nouns in, 53, II.; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70;—final, quantity of, 290, 2.

*Laboro*, constr., 273, *n* 1; poet. w. inf., 271, *n* 3.

Labials, 3, 1.

*Lac*, gender of, 66, *n*.; genitive of, 70.

*Lacesso*, constr., 225, *n* 1.

*Lator*, w. abl., 247, 1, (2.); acc., 233, (3.)

*Latus*, w. abl. or gen., 213, *n* 5, (4.); cf. *n* 4, (1.)

*Lampas*, declined, 86.

*Lapis*, declined, 57.

*Lar*, pr., 284, *n* 1.

*Largus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, *n* 5, (3.); cf. *n* 4, (1.)

*Lars*, genitive of, 71.

*Lascus*, w. genit., 213, *n* 2.

*Lateo*, w. dat. or acc., 223, *n* 2, *n*., (*b*.), and (1.), (*a*.)

Latin grammar, its divisions, 1.

*Latinis*, for *ludis Latinis*, 258, *n* 1.

*Latus*, *altus*, and *longus*, w. acc. of space, 236.

*Lato* and *laxo*, acil. *se*, 229, *n* 4, 1; *laxo*, w. abl. of price, 252, *n* 1.

*Lazo*, w. abl., 251, *n*.

Leading clause, subject, and verb, 201, 13.

*Lego* (*ere*), its form in the compds., 189, *n* 2; constr., 230, *n* 1.

*Lenio*, constr., 229, *n* 4, 1.

*-lentus*, adjs. in, 128, 4.

Letters, 2; division of, 3; sounds of, 7 numeral, 118, 7; capital, 2, 2; silent, 12, *n*. terminal in 3d decl., 55.

*Leve*, w. abl., 251, *n*.; w. gen. poet. 220, 2.

*Lex*, gender, 65, 2; genitive, 78, 2, (2.);—*legem dare*, constr., 273, *n* 4;—*lege*, abl. of manner, 247, 2.

*Liber*, w. abl. or gen., 213, *n* 5, (4.); cf. 220, 2; and 251, *n*.; w. genit., 213, *n* 5, (4.); cf. *n* 4, (1.)

*Libero*, w. abl., 251, *n*.; poetically, w. genit., 230, 2.

*Liberalis*, w. genit., 213, *n* 5, (1.)

*Libram* and *libras*, 236, *n* 7.

*Libro*, abl. w. adj. without prep., 254, *n* 2.

*Licentia*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, III., *n* 1, (1.)

*Liceo*, w. genit. of price, 214, *n* 3; w. abl., 252, *n* 1.

*Licet*, w. dat., 223, *n* 2; w. subj. the acc. with the inf., or the inf. alone, 273, 4; 262, *n* 4; w. inf. as subject, 269, *n* 1; case of the predicate after *licet esse*, etc., 269, *n* 5; w. indicative instead of subj., 259, *n* 3, (*a*.)—*licet*, conj. w. subj., 263, 2.

Limiting acc., 284, *n*.;—abl., 260 and *-imus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

Linguals and Liquids, 3, 1.

*Liquidus*, pr., 234, n. 5., n. 8.  
*lis*, adj., in, comparison, 125, 2.  
*Literas dare, scribere* or *mittere*, 225, III., n. 4; ellipsis of, 229, n. 4, 2; *litteras* or *litteris*, after verbs of teaching, 231, n. 3, (c.)  
*Litotes*, 324, 9.  
*Litum*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)  
*Loading*, verbs of, w. abl., 249, 1.  
*Locuples*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl., 113, n. 2; gen. plur., 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Locus*, plur. *loci* and *loca*, 92, I., 2; *loco* and *locis*, abl. of place without a preposition, 254, n. 2; *loco*, w. gen. for predicate noun., 210, n. 3; for predicate acc., 230, n. 1; *loci* and *locorum*, 212, n. 4, n. 2 and n. 1; *locus* in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2; *loco*, w. gen. of price, 241, n. 5; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. participles in *us*, 274, n. 7; w. genitive of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)  
*Logical subject*, 202, 3;—predicate, 203, 3.  
*Long syllable*, 282, 2.  
*Longe*, w. comparatives and superlatives, 127, 8; 256, n.; w. acc. of space, 236, n. 1; *longe gentium*, 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); *longi* s without *quam*, 255, n. 6.  
*Longitudine*, w. genit. of measure, 211, n. 6, (6.)  
*Longus*, w. acc. of space, 236; *longum est*, the indicative instead of the subjunctive, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-ls*, genitive of nouns in, 77, 2, (2.)  
*Ludis*, for in *tempore ludorum*, 258, n. 1; 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Luo*, w. abl., 252, n. 1.

## M.

*M*, roots of nouns ending in, 56, I.; before *d* changed to *n*, 134, n. 1; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, n. 6; final, quantity of, 239, 3; elided, 305, 2.  
*-ma*, Greek nouns in, genitive plur. of, 84, n. 2.  
*Mactus*, 115, 5; *marte*, w. abl., 247, 1, n. 2; w. genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Magis* and *maxime*, use of in forming comparatives and superlatives, 127, 1; pleonastic with *malle*, etc., 256, n. 13.  
*Magnus*, compared, 125, 5; w. supine in *u*, 275, III., n. 1; *magnam partem*, 234, II., n. 3; *magni parvi*, etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, n. 1; *magno parvo*, etc., w. verbs of buying, etc., 252, n. 8.  
*Male*, constr. of its compounds *malefacio*, *w. u. edico*, etc., 225, I.; *male*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3; *male, bene*, or *prudenter facio*; *mile* or *bone fit*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.)  
*Malu*, conjugated, 178, 3; constr., 273, 4; 262, n. 4; *mallem*, meaning of, 260 II., n. 2; constr. w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n. 16, (8.)  
*Milux*, compared, 125, 5.  
*Minus*, constr., 223, n. 2 and (1.), (b.); 173, n. 4; 274, n. 7, (a.); 253, n. 4.  
*Mina*, 94; 192, 3.  
*Munco*, 210, n. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, n. 1.  
*Manifestus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.

*Manner*, advs. of, 191, I., I., abl. of, 247, with *cum*, 247, 2; w. *de* or *ex*, 247, n. 3.  
*Manus*, gender of, 83; ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; *manum injicere*, 233, (1.)  
*Mare*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7.  
*Mas*, gender of, 62, n. 1; genitive, 72, n. 1; genit. plur., 83, II., 3, n.; used to distinguish the sex of epicenes, 83, n.  
*Masculine nouns* of 3d decl., 53; exceptions in, 59—61;—masculine caesura, 310, n. 1.  
*Materfamilias*, declined, 91.  
*Materia*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)  
*Material nouns*, 26, 6;—adjs., 104, 6.  
*Matur*, scil. *se*, 229, n. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Me* and *mi* for *mihi*, 183, n. 1.  
*Mea, tua*, etc., w. *refer* and *interest*, 219, n. 1 and 2.  
*Means*, abl. of, 247; when a person, 247, n. 4; w. passive verbs, 248.  
*Measure* or *metre*, 303; Roman measures of length, etc., 327.  
*Medeor*, w. dat., 223, n. (b.); its gerundive, 275, II., n. 1.  
*Medior*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Meditor*, constr., 273, n. 1.  
*Medius*, how translated, 205, n. 17; w. genit., 213; w. *inter*, 212, n. 4, (2.); w. abl., 213, n. 4, (b.); its place, 279, 7, (b.)  
*Mel*, genitive of, 70, n.; 56, II., n. 6; abl., 82, n. 5, (b.); 84.  
*Melas*, genitive of, 72, n. 2.  
*Melius* *fruit* and *erat* instead of subj., 259, n. 3; *melius est*, w. dat., 223, 1; *melius erit*, w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2.  
*Melos*, nom. plur. of, 83, 1; 94.  
*Merne* and *mepte*, intensive, 183, n. 2.  
*Menni*, 183, 3; constr., 216; w. present inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *memento*, post. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Memor*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); w. subj., 213, n. 4.  
*Memoro*, constr., 272, n. 6.  
*-men*, nouns in, gender of, 61, 4, and 66; genitive, 71, 1; *-men* or *-mentum*, verbals in, 102, 4.  
*Mens*; in *mentem venit*, constr., 216, n. 3.  
*Mercor*, w. abl. of price, 252, n.  
*-met*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139, n. 1.  
*Metalepsis*, 324, 6.  
*Metaphor*, 324, 1.  
*Metaplasma*, 322, 1.  
*Metathesis*, 322, 9.  
*Meto*, 171, n. 2.  
*Metonymy*, 324, 2.  
*Metre*, 303; how divided, 303, 3; different kinds, 310—317.  
*Metres*, compound, 318; Horatian, 320.  
*-metros*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.  
*Metuo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Meus*, voc. sing. masc., 105, n. 8; 139, 1; used reflexively, 189, n. 2; how declined, 139; *meum est*, 211, n. 8, (3.), (a.)  
*Mi*, for *mihi*, 183, n. 1.  
*Middle voice* in Greek, 248, n. 1, (2.)

**Mile, Roman, 327.**  
*Miles*, declined, 57; gender, 30; 61, 2; genitive, 73, 2; used collectively, 209, n. 11, (1.), (b.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7.  
**Military expressions without *cum*, 249, III., n.**  
*Militia*, construed like names of towns, 221, n. 3.  
*Mille*, how used, 118, 6; ellipsis of, 327, n. 5.  
*Million*, how expressed, 118, 5, (a.); a million sesterces, 327, n. 4.  
*Min'* for *minime*, 133, n. 1.  
*mino*, in old Imperatives, 162, 5.  
*Minor* and compds. w. acc. and dat., 223, (1.) (b.)  
*Misistiro*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; and (1.), (b.)  
*Minus* and *minimum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; *minus*, for *non*, 277, I., n. 14; *minus* without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
*Mirror*, conjugated, 161; w. genit. poet., 220, 1; constr., 273, n. 6.  
*Mirum est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3; *mirum quam*, *quantum*, etc., 264, n. 4.  
*Misceo*, how construed, 245, II., 2, and n. 1; 224, n. 3.  
*Misereor*, *miseresco*, *miseret*, *miseritum est*, and *miserescit*, w. gen. of the thing, 215; *miseret*, etc., w. acc. of the person, 215, n. 3; 229, n. 6; and w. acc. of the thing, 215, n. 2; w. acc. of degree, 215, n. 3.  
*Mittis*, declined, 109.  
*Mitto*, w. *ad* or *in*, 225; w. two dat., 227; 273, 2, (c.); w. participle in *dus*, 274, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 3; w. *quod*, 273; *missum facio*, 274, n. 4.  
*Mn*, initial, 12, 2, n.  
*Mobilis*, pr., 284, n. 5, n. 1.  
*Moderor*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Modi* annexed to pronouns, 184, n. 5; its use, 211, n. 6, (5.)  
*Modicus*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)  
 Modified subject, 202, 6; itself modified, 202, III., n. 1;—predicate, 203, 5.  
 Modify or limit, in what sense used, 202, 4, n.  
*Modo* as abl. of manner, 247, 2.  
*Modo*, conditional conj., 198, 5; w. subj., 263, 2; *modo*, adv., 193, II., 3; *modo ne*, 243, 2, n. 1; *modo—modo*, 277, n. 8.  
*Modus*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)  
*Mollis*, 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Moleste, ægre* or *graviter fero*, w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Moneo*, conjugated, 157; constr., 218, and n. 1, 2; 273, n. 1; without *ut*, 262, n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 4, (c.); in pass., 274, 1.  
**Money, Roman, 327, pp. 370—372.**  
**Monoclon**, 319, 2.  
**Monometer**, 304, 2; 313, 1.  
**Monoptotes**, 94.  
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 294, (a.); 399, 1; their place, 279, 8.  
*Mons*, gender of, 64, 1.  
**Months, Roman, 320, 2; names of, 326; division of, 326, 1; gender of names of, 28; 115, 3; abl. of names in *er* and *is*, 82, n. 2, a.)**

**Moods, 143.**

*Mora*, in prosody, 282, 2.  
*Mos* or *moris est*, constr., 265, n. 2; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.); *more* as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.  
 Motion or tendency, verbs of, constr., 225, IV.; 237, n. 8.  
*Motum*, pr., 284, n. 5, n. 1.  
 Mountains, gender of names of, 28, 3.  
*Moveo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 261, n.; *motus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
 -*ms*, nouns in, genitive of, 77, 2, (1.)  
 -Multiplicatives, 121, 1.  
*Multo, (are)*, constr., 217, n. 5.  
*Multus*, compared, 126, 5; *multi et*, how used, 278, n. 5; *multo*, w. comparatives, etc., 127, 3; 256, n. 18; so *multum*, *ib.*, n.; *multum*, w. genitive, 212, n. 3, n. 1; as acc. of degree, 212, (2.); *multus* instead of an adverb, 206, n. 15.  
*Mus*, gender of, 30; 67, 4; genitive, 73, n. 3; genit. plur., 88, II., 3.  
*Munificus*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)  
 Mutes, division of, 3, 1; a mute and a liquid in prosody, 288, IV., n. 2.  
*Mutilus*, w. abl., 213, n. 5, (5.)  
*Muto*, constr., 252, n. 5; 229, n. 4, 1.

# N.

**N**, roots of nouns in, 56, n.; nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 70; 71; final, quantity of, 299, n.; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, n. 6.  
 -*nactis*, genitive of Greek names in, 73, 2, (1.)  
*Nam* and *enim*, 196, 7, n., (a.); place of, 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)  
 Names of persons, their order, 279, 9, (b.); of nations instead of those of countries, 256, n. 3; 237, n. 5.  
*Narro*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; *narror*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Nascor*, w. abl., 246, n. 1; *nascitur*, w. subj., 262, n. 3, n. 2.  
*Nato*, 232, (2.), n. 1; constr. of compds., 233, (3.), n.  
*Natura fert*, constr., 262, n. 3, n. 2.  
*Naturale est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Natus*, w. abl., 246; *natus*, 'old,' w. acc., 236, n. 3; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Natu*, 94; 250, 1; 126, 4.  
*Nauti habere*, 214, n. 1.  
 -*ne*, enclitic conjunction, 196, 11; quantity of, 295, n.; as an interrogative particle, 198, 11, n., (c.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)  
*Ne*, adv., the primitive negative particle, 191, III., n. 3, p. 153; w. *quidem*, *ib.*, 279, 3, (d.); w. subjunctives used as imperatives, *ib.*; in wishes, asseverations and concessions, *ib.*; 230, n. 6, (b.) with the imperative, 267, n. 1; *ne multa*, *ne plura*, etc., 229, n. 3, 2;—in intentional clauses, 262, n. 5; *ne non*, for *ut*, 262, n. 4; ellipsis of, 262, n. 6; *ne*, for *nedum*, 262, n. 5.  
*Nec* or *neque*, 198, 1; *nec non* or *neque non*, *ib.*; *nec—nec*, with the singular, 209, n. 12, (5.), (a.); *neque*, for *et ne*, after *ut* and *ac*, 262, n. 6, n. 4;—*nec ipse*, 207, n. 37,

(c.); *nec* *is*, 207, R. 26, (c.); *necne* or *annon*, 266, R. 2; *necdum*, 277, I., R. 16; its place, 279, 8, (a.)

*Necess.* defective adj., 115, 5; *necesses est* *ut*, etc., 262, R. 3, N. 2; without *ut*, 262, N. 4; *necesses* *inf.* the indic. for the subj., 259, R. 3; w. *inf.* as subject, 269, R. 2; w. *predicate* dat., 269, R. 5; 273, 4.

*Necessity*, how expressed, 162, 15.

*Necessario*, after comparatives, 256, R. 9.

*Nedum*, w. subj., 262, R. 5; without a verb, *ib.*

*Nefas*, gender of, 62, R. 2; 94; w. supine *tn* *u*, 276, III., R. 2.

Negatives, two, their force, 277, R. 8-6; negative joined to the conjunction, as, *nec quisquam*, *nec ullus*, etc., instead of *et nemo*, *et nullus*, etc., 278, R. 9.

*Negligens*, constr., 213, R. 4, (2.)

*Nego*, instead of *non dico*, 279, 15, (b.); w. acc. and *inf.*, 272, N. 1, and R. 6; *negor*, w. *inf.*, 271, N. 1.

*Negotium*, ellipsis of, 211, R. 8, N.

*Nemo*, 94 and 95; for *nullus*, 207, R. 31; *nemo est qui*, 264, R. 2; *nemo non*, 'every one', 277, R. 5, (c.)

*Nempe*, 191, R. 4; 198, 7, R., (a.)

*Neoterism*, 225, 8.

*Nequa* and *neque*, 188, 2.

*Nequam*, indeclinable, 115, 4; compared, 125, 5.

*Neque*, see *nec*; for *et non*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque-neque*, or *nec-nec*, *neque-nec*, *nec-neque*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque-et*, *ib.*; *neque* w. general negatives, 279, 15, (b.); *neque non*, 277, R. 3; *neque quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam*, etc., 278, R. 9.

*Nequeo*, how conjugated, 182, N.; w. *inf.*, 271, N. 4.

*Ne quis* or *nequis*, how declined, 188, 2; *ne quis*, instead of *ne quisquam*, 207, R. 31; 278, R. 9.

*Nerio*, genitive of, 69, R. 2.

*Nescio* *an*, 198, 11, R., (c.); 265, R. 3; *nescio quis*, 265, R. 4; *nescio quomodo*, *ib.*; w. acc. and *inf.*, 272, N. 1.

*Nescius*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)

*-neus* and *-nus*, adjs. in 128, 1, (b.)

Neuter, nouns, 34; not found in 1st and 5th decls., 40, 9; of 2d decl., 46; 54; of 3d decl., 66; excs. in 66; 67; adjs. used adverbally, 205, R. 10, adjs. and adj. prona, w. genit., 212, R. 3; acc. of denoting degree w. another acc. after transitive verbs, 231, R. 5; verbs, 141; form of, 142, 1; neuter passives, 142, 2; neuter verbs with cognate, etc., subjects, 234, III.; w. cognate acc., 232, (1.); w. acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.); w. abl. of agent, 248, R. 2; used impersonally, 184, 2; in the passive voice, 142, R. 2; participles of, 162, 18; neuters of possessive pronouns and adjs. instead of the genitive of their personal pronouns, or of a corresponding noun, 211, R. 3, (3.), (a.) and (b.)

Neutral passive verbs, 142, 3.

*Neve* or *neu*, 198, 8; after *ut* and *ne*, 262, N. 4.

*Ni* or *nisi*, 198, 5, R., (b.); *nisi*, 'except', 261, R. 6; 277, R. 16; *nisi quod*, *ib.*; *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps', *ib.*

*Nihil*, *nihilum*, 94; w. genitive, 212, R. 1; instead of *non*, 277, R. 2, (b.); 232 (3.); *nihil aliud quam* or *nisi*, 277, R. 16; *nihil*, acc. w. *astimo* and *moror*, 214, R. 2 *nihil* w. *facio*, 214; as acc. of degree, 215, N. 3; 232, (3.); *nihil est quod*, etc., 264, 7, N. 2; *nihil abest*, *quin*, 262, N. 7; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco quam*, w. subj., 273, N. 1; *nihilum*, 277, I., R. 16.

*Nimius*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (8.)

*Nimio*, w. comparatives, 256, R. 16; as abl. of price, 252, R. 3.

*-nis*, nouns in, gender of, 63, 1.

*Nitor*, w. abl., 245, II.; w. *in* or *ad*, 245 II., R. 2; w. *inf.* or subj., 273, 1, N. 1.

*Niz*, 56, R. 2; genit. sing., 78, (3.); genit. plur., 83, II., 8.

*No*, constr. of compds. of 233, (3.), N.

*Noctu* or *nocte*, 253, N. 1.

*Nolo*, conjugated, 173, 2; constr., 273, 4; *noli* w. *inf.*, paraphrasing the imperative, 267, N. and R. 3; *nollem*, meaning of, 260, II., R. 2.

*Nomen est*; constr., 226, R. 1; 211, R. 2, N.; *nomine*, without a prep. before the genitive following verbs of accusing, 217, R. 2, (b.); its place, 279, 9, (b.)

Nominative, 37; construction of, 209; 210; ellipsis of, 209, R. 1 and 2; wanting, 209, R. 3; w. *inf.*, 209, R. 5; after interjections, 209, R. 13; formation in 3d decl. from the root, 56; plural, 3d decl., 33; of adjs. of 3d decl., 114. See Subject-nominative and Predicate-nominative.

*Nomino*, 230; pass., 210, R. 3, (8.)

*Non*, 191, R. 3; ellipsis of, after *non modo*, etc., followed by *ne quidem*, 277, R. 6; *non quod*, *non quod*, *non quin*, 262, R. 9; *non est quod*, *cur*, *quare*, or *quomobrem*, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 3; *non* before a negative word, 277, R. 3; before *ne quidem*, 277, R. 6; position of, 279, 15, (b.); *non*, rare with the imperative, 267, R. 1; difference between *non* and *haud*, 191, R. 3; *non nemo*, *non nulli*, *non nihil*, *non numquam*, different from *nemo non*, etc., 277, R. 5, (c.); *non nihil*, to some extent, 232, (3.); *nonne*, 198, 11, R., (c.); *non modo—sed etiam*, and *non modo—sed*, equivalent to *non diram—sed*, 277, R. 10; *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, *non procul*, *non abest*, *quin*, 262, 2, N. 7; *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*, instead of *non quin*; *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, for *non quod*, 262, R. 9; *non priusquam*, *non nisi*, w. abl. absolute, 267, N. 4; *nonum*, 277, I., R. 16; *non* in the second member of adversative sentences without *et* or *vero*, 278, R. 11; *non nisi*, separated, 279, 3, (d.)

*Nonna*, 'the Nones', 826, 2.

*Nonnullus*, pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.)

*Nos*, for *ego*, R. 7.

*Nosco*, 171, R. 6.

*Noster*, how declined, 139, 3.

*Nostras*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Nostrum*, how formed, 133, 3; different use of *nostrum* and *nostri*, 212, R. 2, N. 2.

'Not' and 'nor,' how expressed with the imperative, 267, R. 1; with subj., 260, R. 6, (b.)



**Nouns**, 26–108; proper, common, abstract, collective, and material, 26; gender of, 27–34; number of, 35; cases of, 36, 37; declension of, 38–40; nouns of 3d decl., mode of declining, 55; compound, declension of, 91; irregular, 92; variable, 92; defective, in case, 94; in number, 95, 96; sing. and plur. having different meanings, 97; redundant, 99; verbal, 102; derivation of, 100–102; composition of, 103; how modified, 201, III., 1; used as adjs., 205, 1; extent given to the term noun, 24, 1.

*Novum est ut*, 262, 1. 3, 1. 2.

*Nox*, declined, 57; genitive of, 78, 2, (4.); genit. plur., 88, II., 3.

*Noxius*, w. genit. of the crime, 213, 1. 1, (3.); 217, 1. 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, 1. 1, (a.) —ns, participles in, abl. of, 113, 2; when used as nouns, 82, 1. 4; nouns in, genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4; genit. sing. of, 77, 2, (2.) and 1. 1; participles and participles in, construction of, 213, 1. 1 and 3.

*Nubilo*, scil. *calo*, 257, 9, (1.)

*Nubo*, w. dat., 228; quantity of *u* in compds. of, 285, 2, 1. 3.

*Nulo*, w. abl., 251, 1.

*Nudus*, w. abl. or genit., 218, 1. 5, (4.); 250, 1. 1, (1.); w. acc., 218, 1. 4, (3.)

*Nullus*, how declined, 107; a pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.); for *non*, 205, 1. 1; refers to more than two, 212, 1. 2, 1. 1, (b.) *nullus est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 7, 1. 2; *nullus non*, 277, 1. 5, (c.); *nullius* and *nullo*, instead of *neminis* and *neminis*, 207, 1. 81, (c.); *nullusdum*, 277, 1., 1. 16.

*Num*, with its compounds, meaning of, 198, 11, 1. 1, (b.); *num—an*, used only in direct questions, 265, 1. 2.

**Number**, 26, 7; of nouns, 85; of verbs, 146; of the verb when belonging to two or more subjects, 209, 1. 12; when belonging to a collective noun, 209, 1. 11.

**Numbers**, cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; distributive, 119, 120; w. genit. plur., 212, 1. 2, (4.)

**Numerals**, adjs., 104, 105; classes of, 117; placed in the relative clause, 206, (7.), (b.); w. genit. plur., 212, 1. 2, (4.); letters, 118, 7; adverbs, 119, 192, 3; multiplicative, 121; proportional, temporal, and interrogative, 121.

*Nunnius*, 327, 1. 3, (b.)

*Numquam non*, and *non numquam*, 277, 1. 4, (c.)

*Nunquid*, *num quis*, or *numqui*, etc., how declined, 187, 3; *numquis est qui*, 264, 7, 1. 2; *numqua* and *numquæ*, 137, 1. 4; *numquid*, as an interrogative particle, 198, 11.

*Nunquidnam*, 137, 4.

*Nunc*, use of, 277, 1. 15; *nunc—nunc*, 277, 1. 8; *nunc* and *etiamnunc*, w. imperfect and perfect, 259, 1. 1, (b.)

*Nuncupo*, w. two accs., 230, 1. 1; *nuncupor*, 210, 1. 3, (3.)

*Nundinae*, 326, 2, (11.)

*Nuntio*, 273, 2, (c.); 272, 1. 1; pass. w. inf., 271, 1. 1; *nuntiatum*, constr., 271, 1. 2.

*Nuper*, mode and *moz*, 191, 1. 6.

*Nusquam*, w. genit., 212, 1. 4, 1. 2, (b); *Nux*, pr., 284, 8, 5, 1. 2.

—nz, nouns in, genitive of, 65, 6, 7.

## O.

**O**, sound of, 7, 8; changed to *u* in forming certain nominatives from the root, 56, 1. 1, 1. 4, and II., 1. 4; nouns in, gender of, 68, 59; genitive of, 69; Greek nouns in, gender of, 59, 1. 3; genitive of, 69, 1. 3; amplificatives in, 100, 4, (a.); verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); adverbs in, 192; increment in, of 3d decl., 287, 3; of plur., 288; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 285, 1. 4; 297; sometimes used for *u* after *v*, 322, 8; 53; 178, 1, 1.

*O*, interj. w. nom., 209, 1. 15; w. acc., 288, 2; w. voc., 240, 1. 1; *O si*, w. subj., 263, 1.

*Ob*, government of, 195, 4; 275, III., 1. 3; in composition, 196, 1., 9; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 223, 1. 1, (b.)

*Obedio*, how formed, 189, 1. 3.

*Obequito*, constr., 233, (3.)

*Obro*, constr., 233, (3.), 1. 1; pass., 234, III.

**Object**, of an active verb, 223; the dative of the remote object, 223, 1.

**Objective** genitive, 211, 1. 2; after adjs., 218; dat. for objective genitive, 211, 1. 5; —propositions after what, 273, 1. 8.

**Oblique** cases, 87; their place, 279, 10 and 2.

*Obliviscor*, w. genitive or acc., 216; w. acc. and inf., 272, 1. 1.

*Obnoxius*, w. dat., 222, 1. 1, (b.)

*Obruo*, w. abl., 249, 1., 1. 1.

*Obsecro*, w. two accs., 231, 1. 1.

*Obsequor*, *obtempero*, and *obtrecto*, w. dat., 223, 1. 2.

*Obserco*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, 1. 3.

*Obses*, gender of, 30; genitive of, 73, 1. 1

*Obscuro*, w. abl. of price, 252, 1. 1.

*Obsto*, and *obstisto*, *quominus*, etc., 262, 1. 11.

*Obtemperatio*, w. dat., 222, 1. 8.

*Obtrector*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)

*Obruius*, w. dat., 222, 1. 1, (b.)

*Obviam*, w. dat., 223, 1.

*Occasio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., 1. 1, (1.)

*Occumbo*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 224, 1. 5.

*Occurro*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 223, 1. 1.

*occurrit ut*, 262, 1. 3, 1. 1.

*Ocio*, comparison of, 126, 1.

—*ois*, genitive in, 78, (4.); 112, 2.

*Octonarius*, 304, 2; —*tambic*, 314, III.

*Odi*, 183, 1.

—*odis*, genitives in, 76, 1. 5; 75, 1. 1

—*odus*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.

**Œ**, how pronounced, 9; in nom. plur. 2d decl., 54, 2.

*Œlipus*, genitive of, 76, 1. 5.

*Œia*, gender of, 42.

*Officio*, w. *quominus*, etc., 262, 1. 11.

*Ohe*, pr., 233, 1., 1. 5; 295, 1. 5.

*Oi*, how pronounced, 9, 1.

—*ois*, genitives in, 75, 1. 2; words in, pr 233, 1., 1. 6, (3.)

Old, how expressed in Latin, 236, n. 3.  
*Oleo* and *redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Ollus*, for *ille*, whence *olli*, masc. plur. for *illi*, 134, n. 1.  
*-olus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, A. 2.  
*-om*, for *-um*, 58.  
Omission of a letter or syllable, see syn-  
cope—of a word, see ellipsis.  
*Omnes*, w. genitive plur., 212, n. 2, n. 6;  
*omnium*, w. superlatives, 127, 4, n. 2;  
*omnia*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*-on*, Greek nouns in, 54, 1. *-on* for *-orum*,  
54, 4; *-on*, roots in, of 3d decl., 56, II., n. 1;  
nouns in, of 3d decl., 58 and 61, 5; genit.  
plur. in, of Greek nouns, 83, II., 6; *-os* and  
*-on*, nouns in, of 2d decl., changed to *-us*  
and *-um*, 54, 1.  
*Onustus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Operam dare*, w. ut, 273, n. 1; w. dat. of  
gruud, 276, III., n. 2, (1.); w. acc. id, 232,  
(3.);—*operâ meâ*, equivalent to *per me*, 247,  
n. 4.  
*Opinio est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;  
*opinionis* after comparatives, 266, n. 9; its  
place, 279, n. 1.  
*Opinor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Oportet*, w. inf. as its subject, 269, n. 2;  
w. inf., acc. with the inf., or the subj., 273,  
n. 5; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Oportebat*, *oportuit*, the indic. instead of  
the subj., 259, n. 3, (a.)  
*Oppido*, w. adjs., 127, 2.  
*Oppidum*, in apposition to names of  
towns, 237, n. 2, (b.)  
*Oppileo*, w. abl., 249, I., n. 1.  
*Optabilis erat*, the indic. instead of the  
subj., 259, n. 3.  
*Optime*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Opto*, 271, n. 4; 273, 4; *opto*, w. subj.,  
without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Opulentus* w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Opus*, work, declined, 57; *opus*, need,  
w. genit. and acc., 211, n. 11; w. abl. of  
the thing, 243; as subject or predicate of  
*est*, 243, n. 2; 210, n. 5; w. perfect par-  
ticiples, 243, n. 1; w. supine in w, 276, III.,  
n. 2; *opus est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*-or*, nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genit.  
of, 70; 71; verbals in, 102, 1; 102, 6.  
*Oratio obliqua*, 266, 1, n., and 2; 273, 3;  
tenses in, 266, n. 4.  
*Orbo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Orbus*, w. abl., 250, 2, (1.); or genit., 213,  
n. 5, (4.)  
Order, advs. of, 191, 1.  
Ordinal numbers, 119, 120; in expressions  
of time, 236, n. 2.  
Origin, participles denoting, w. abl., 246;  
from a country expressed by a patril, 246,  
n. 3.  
*-oris*, genitives in, 76; 112, 2; *-oris*, genit.  
in, 76.  
*-orium*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Oriundus*, constr., 246.  
*Oro*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. ut, ne, or  
inf., 273, 2, n. 4; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
Orthoëpy, 6—23.  
Orthography, 2—5; figures of, 322.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 246.  
*-os*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 54, 1; of 3d

decl., gender of 58 and 61, 3; genit. of, 75;  
Greek genitives in, 68, 1; final in plural  
accs., sound of, n. 3; quantity of, 300.  
*Os*, (*oris*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75;  
wants genit. plur., 94.  
*Os*, (*ossis*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of 75  
n. 1.  
*Ossa*, gender of, 42, 1.  
*Ostendo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*-osus*, adjs. in, 123, 4.  
*-otis*, genit. in, 75; 112, 2.  
'Ought' or 'should,' expressed by indic.  
of *debeo*, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-ox*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (4.)  
Oxymoron, 324, 26.

P.

P, roots of nouns ending in, 56, I.: when  
inserted after *m* in 2d and 3d roots of verbs,  
171, 3.  
*Pace* or in *pace*, 263, n. 1; 267, n. 3, (2.)  
Palatal, 3, 1.  
*Palleo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Pan*, acc. of, 80, n.  
*Panthus*, voc. of, 54, 5.  
*Par*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); 113, n. 3; su-  
perlative of, 126, 2; w. dat. or genit., 222,  
n. 2, (a.); w. cum and the abl., 222, n. 6;  
*par erat*, indic. instead of subj., 269, n. 3,  
(a.); pr., 284, n. 1; *par ac*, 198, 3.  
Parabola, 324, 30.  
Paradigms, of nouns, 1st decl., 41; 2d  
decl., 46; 3d decl., 57; 4th decl., 87; 5th  
decl., 90;—of adjs. of 1st and 2d decl., 106  
—107; 3d decl., 108—111;—of verbs, *sum*,  
153; 1st conj., 155, 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d  
conj., 158, 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent.  
161; periphrastic, conj., 162; defective, 183;  
impersonal, 184.  
Paragoge, 322, 6.  
*Paratus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)  
*Parco*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n., (a.); *parci-*  
*tur mihi*, lb., (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Parcus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.);  
w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.)  
Paregmenon, 324, 24.  
Pareleon, 323, 2, (1.)  
Parenthesis, 324, 4, (6.)  
*Pariter* ac, 198, 3.  
*Pareo*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
Paromiac verse, 304, 2.  
Paronomasia, 324, 25.  
*Pario*, compds. of, 163, n. 4.  
Parsing, 231, III.  
*Pars*, acc. of, 79, 4; abl. of, 82, n. 5, (a.);  
ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; its use in fractional  
expressions, 121, 6; *magnum* and *maxi-*  
*mum partem*, 234, II., n. 3; *multis partibus*,  
256, n. 16, (8.)  
*Part*, acc. of, 234, II.  
*Particeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; genit. plur.  
of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)—w. genit., 213,  
n. 1, (3.)  
Participial adjs., 130;—of perfect tenses,  
meaning of, with tenses of *sum*, 162, 12, (2.);  
w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
Participles, 25 and 148, 1; in *us*, how de-  
clined, 105, n. 2; in *as*, do., 111; abl. sing.  
of, 113, 2; participles of active verbs, 148

- 1, (2.); of neuter verbs, 148, 1, (3.); 163, 16; of deponent verbs, 162, 17; of neuter passive verbs, 162, 18; in *-rus*, genit. plur. of, 163, 19; pres. and perf. compounded with *se*, 162, 21; when they become adjs. or nouns, 162, 22; cases of in compd. tenses, 162, 12, 18; sometimes with *esse* indeclinable, 162, 13, (1.); in *-rus* with *sum*, force of, 162, 14; how modified, 202, II., (3.); agreement of, 206; agreement with a predicate nom. instead of the subject, 206, n. 5; gender when used impersonally, 206, n. 18; perfect denoting origin, with *abl.*, 246; in *abl.* absolute, 256;—passive of naming, etc., with predicate *abl.*, 257, n. 11; their government, 274; their time how determined, 274, 2, and 3; perfect in circumlocution, for *abl.* of cause, 247, 1, n. 2, (b.); with *habeo*, etc., 274, 2, n. 4; for a verbal noun, 274, 2, n. 6; for clauses, 274, 3.
- Participio*, poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.
- Particulae*, 190, 1.
- Partiri*, 79, 4; *partim*, w. genit., 212, n. 4; *partim*—*partim*, w. genit. or *ex*, 277, n. 8.
- Partitive nouns, 212, n. 1;—adjs., 104, 9;—partitives with plur. verbs, 209, n. 11; 211, n. 1; w. genit. plur., 212; ellipsis of, 212, n. 2, n. 3; w. acc. or *abl.*, 212, n. 2, n. 4; genit. sing. after neuter adjs. and pronouns, 212, n. 3.
- Parts of speech, 24, 2 and 3.
- Parum*, its meaning, 191, III.; compared, 194, 4; w. genit., 212, n. 4.
- Parumper*, its meaning, 191, II.
- Parvus*, compared, 126, 5; *parvi*, w. verbs of valuing, 214, n. 1, (a.), (1.); *parvo*, with comparatives, 256, n. 16; after *extimo*, 214, n. 2, n. 2; as *abl.* of price, 252, n. 3.
- Pasco*, 171, n. 6.
- Passive voice, 141, 2; construction of, 234, passive voice with a reflexive pronoun understood as the agent equivalent to the middle voice in Greek, 248, n. 1, (2.); with acc. of the thing 234, 1.
- Pateo*, w. two dat., 227, n. 1.
- Pater*, declined, 57.
- Pater-familias*, etc., how declined, 43, 2.
- Pathetic or emotive word, 279, 2, (a.)
- Patrior*, 273, 4; 262, n. 4; *patriens*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (2.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.
- Patrial nouns, 100, 2; in *o*, genitive of, 69, n.;—adjs., 104, 10; 123, 6, (a.); ellipsis of their substantive, 205, n. 7; pronouns, 189, 4.
- Patrocinor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2.
- Patronymics, 100, 1; in *-us*, genit. plur. in *um* instead of *-orum*, 43, 2; in *as* and *is* used as adjs., 206, n. 11; quantity of their penult, 291, 4 and 5.
- Pauca*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)
- Paulisper*, its meaning, 191, II.
- Paulo*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; *paulum abest quin*, 272, n. 7.
- Pausper*, *abl.* of, 113, n. 2; defective, 116, 1, (a.); w. genit. or *abl.*, 213, n. 5, (2.)
- Precidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.
- Paper est ne*, etc., 262, n. 8.
- Pecus*, (*-autis*), genit. of, 67, n. 3.
- Peculiaris*, 222, n. 2, (a.)
- Pedes*, gender of, 51, 2; genit. of, 3, 2 for *pedites*, 209, n. 11, (1.), (b.)
- Pesero*, pr., 236, 2, n. 1.
- Pelagus*, gender of, 51; acc. plur. of, 54, 5; 84.
- Pello*, 171, n. 1, (b.); 261, n.
- Pendo*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. *abl.* of price, 252, n. 1.
- Pensi* and *pihi habere*, 214, n. 1.
- Pentameter verse, 304, 2; 311; 312, IX., n.
- Penthemimeris, 304, 5.
- Peunt, 13; quantity of, 291; of proper names, 238.
- Per*, its uses, 196, n. 9; 247, 1, n. 1; w. the means when a person, 247, 3, n. 4; in adjurations, 279, 10, (c.); in composition, 196, 1, 10; *per* compounded with adjectives strengthens their meaning, 127, 2.
- Perceiving, verbs of, their construction, 272.
- Percepis*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *perceptum habeo*, instead of *percepi*, 274, n. 4.
- Perconter*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1.
- Perennis*, *abl.* of, 113, n. 1.
- Perdo*, w. *capitis*, 217, n. 3; *perditum ira*, for *perdere*, 276, II., n. 2.
- Perduim*, for *perdam*, 162, 1.
- Perfect tenses, 145, IV.; definite and indefinite, 145, IV., n.; old form in *sim*, 162, 9; quantity of dissyllabic perfects, 284, n. 1.
- perfect participles translated actively, 162, 16; both actively and passively, 162, 17, (a.);—of neuter verbs, 162, 18; of impersonal verbs, 184, n. 2; the perf. subj., 260, II., n. 1, (3.); in the connection of tenses, 258; signification of perf. definite, 269, n. 1, (2.), (a.); of perf. indefinite, *ib.*, (b.)—(d.); perf. subj., signification of, 260, II., n. 1, (3.), and p. 4 and 6; in the protasis, 261, 2 and n. 2 and 3; 263, n.; perf. subj. for imperative, 267, n. 2; perf. inf., how used, 268, n. 1, (a.); perf. participle, 274, 2 and n.; supplies the place of a pres. pass. participle, 274, n. 3, (a.); perf. part. of a preceding verb used to express the completion of an action, *ib.*, (b.); w. *habeo*, 274, n. 4; w. *do*, *reddo*, *curo*, etc., *ib.*; supplies the place of a verbal noun, 274, n. 5; used in circumlocution for *abl.* of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.); neuter perf. pass. participle used as the subject of a verb, 274, n. 5, (b.)
- Perficis* *ut*, 273, n. 2.
- Perge*, constr., 226, IV.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.
- Perhibeo*, 230, n. 1; 272, n. 1, and a 6; *perhibeor*, 210, n. 3, (3.); w. inf., 271, n. 1
- Periclitor*, *capitis* or *capite*, 217, n. 3.
- Period, 280.
- Perinde*, 191, III.;—*ac* or *atque*, 196, 3, n.
- Periphrasis, 323, 2, (4.)
- Periphrastic conjugations, 162, 14 and 15
- Peritus*, 213, n. 1, and n. 4; 278, (2.)
- 270, n. 1; w. *ad*, 213, n. 4, (2.); 225, III., n. 1, (2.)
- Permisceo*, 245, II., 2, and n. 1 and 2.
- Permittle*, 73, 4; w. part. fut. pass., 274, n. 7; w. subj. without *ut*, 262, n. 4.
- Permuto*, 262, n. 5.
- Pernox*, genit. of, 112, 2.
- Perovus*, 183, 1, n.

*Perpello*, 278, n. 4.  
*Perpes*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; 115, 2.  
*Persevero*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
 Personal pronouns, 182, 4; ellipsis of as subject-nominatives, 209, n. 1; expressed with infinitive, 272, n. 4;—personal terminations of verbs, 147, 8.  
 Personification, 324, 34.  
 Person of a noun or pronoun, 85, 2; 132, 4; of a verb, 147; used in the imperative, 147, 2; 1st and 2d persons used indefinitely, 249, n. 7; of verbs with nominatives of different persons, 209, n. 12.  
*Perspectum habeo*, instead of *perspezi*, 254, n. 4.  
*Persuadeo*, w. dat., 223, n., (b.); *hoc persuadetur mihi*, 223, n., (c.);—*persuasum mihi habeo*, 274, n. 4.  
*Pertinax est*, constr., 229, n. 6; 215, (1.) and n. 2.  
*Pertinax*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 4.  
*Peto*, constr., 230, n. 2; 231, n. 4; *peto ut*, 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4.  
*Pes* and compds., genit. of, 73, n. 1; 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; pr., 234, n. 1; 300, n. 2, (b.).  
*Ph*, in syllabication, 18, 2; when silent, 12, n.  
 Phalæcian verse, 304, 2; pentameter, 312, x.  
*Piger*, declined, 106; constr., 222, n. 4, (2.).  
*Piget*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6; participle and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Pili habere*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
 Place, advs. of, 191, i.; 192, iii.; genit. of, 221; acc. of, 237; dat. of, 237, n. 3; place where, abl. of, 254;—whence, abl. of, 255; through which, 255, 2; place of a foot in verse, 309, n.  
 Plants, gender of their names, 29.  
*Plaudo*, change of *au* in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
 Plenty or want, advs. of, w. abl., 250.  
*Plenus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.); 250, 2, (1.).  
 Pleonasm, 323, 2.  
*Plur*, advs. in, abl. of, 113, n. 3; how declined, 121, 1.  
*Plurique*, w. genit. plur., 212, n. 2, (1.).  
 Pluperfect tense, 145, v.; old form in *sem*, 162, 9; for the historical perfect, 259, n. 1, (3.).  
 Plural number, 35, 1; when wanting, 95; noun only plur., 93; plur. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 45, 2; do. of 2d decl., 54, 2;—nouns used for singular, 98; *nos* for *ego*, 109, n. 7, (b.); of verbs with collective nouns, 203, n. 11; the plur. of abstract nouns, 96, n.; plur. nouns in apposition to two or more nouns in the singular, 204, n. 5.  
*Plurimum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3; *plurimi* and *plurimo* after verbs of buying, etc., 214, n. 1, (1.), and n. 3, n. 2; *plurimo*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Plus*, declined, 110; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; (a.); with numerals, etc., with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6; *plus* for *magis*, 277, n. 12; *plure*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Poëma*, declined, 57.  
 Poems, gender of names of, 29.

*Pomus*, w. genit., 215; w. subj., 215, n. w. acc., 229, n. 6; participles of, 184, n. 3; w. *quod*, 278, n. 6.  
*Poëms*, declined, 56.  
 Poetical arrangement of words, 279, 2, (a.); 16, n. 4.  
*Politianus*, advs. in, 123, 6, (g.).  
*Pollens*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.).  
*Pollicor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Polypoton, 324, 23.  
 Polysyndeton, 323, 2, (2.).  
*Pondo*, indeclinable, 94; *pondo libram* or *libras*, 211, n. 6, (4.); 236, n. 7.  
*Pono*, 171, n. 2; 230, n. 2; 241, n. 5; pr., 234, n. 2, (c.); 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Posco*, w. two accs., 231; 230, n. 2; w. ut, etc., 273, n. 4; in pass., 234, i.  
 Position in prosody, 233, iv.  
 Positive degree, 122, 4.  
 Possessive, advs., 104; pronouns, 139; to what equivalent, 132, 6; how used, 207, n. 36; 211, n. 3; ellipsis of when reflexive, 207, n. 36; used for subjective and possessive genit., 211, n. 3, (b.), and n. 3, (3.), (a.); for objective genit., 211, n. 2, (c.); so possessive adjectives, 211, n. 4, and n. 3, (3.), (b.); *mea*, *tua*, etc., after *refert* and *interest*, 219, n. 1.  
*Possideo*, w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Possum*, conjugated, 154, n. 7; with superlatives, 127, 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1; *poterai*, the indie. for the subj., 259, n. 3; *possum* for *possem*, 259, n. 4, (2.).  
*Post*, *postquam*, etc., how pronounced, 8, n. 4; *post*, its case, 195, 4; *post* in composition, 196, 11; 197, 14; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; with concrete official titles, 233, n. 3; w. acc. and abl. of time, 233, n. 1; ellipsis of, 235, n. 3; w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n. 16, (3.).  
*Postea loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Postera*, defective, 115, 5; compared, 126, 4; derivation, 130, v.  
*Posterior* and *postremus*, instead of *posterius* and *postremum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Postquam* and *postquamque*, w. historical perfect instead of pluperfect, 259, n. 1, (2.), (d.).  
*Postulo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. acc. and genit., 217, n. 1; w. *de* or the simple abl., 217, n. 2; w. subj., without *ut*, 232, n. 4.  
*Potens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; (3.); w. *is* or *ad* and acc., 212, n. 4, (2.).  
*Potior*, w. abl., 245, i.; w. acc., 245, i., n.; w. genit., 220, (4.); *potiusdus*, 162, 20; 273, n., n. 1.  
*Potius*, defective, 115, 5.  
*Potius*, compared, 194, 4; used pleonastically, 256, n. 13.  
*Potus*, translated actively, 162, 16.  
*Præ*, in composition w. advs., 127, 2; w. verbs, 197; before advs., 127, 6; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; *præ*, with comparatives, 127, 6; 256, n. 13, (b.).  
*Præbeo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1.  
*Præcedo*, constr., 233, (3.), and n. 234, n. 5.  
*Præcello*, *præce*, etc., 224, 8, and n. 5.

- Præcepta*, abl. of, 113, n. 2, and n. 1.  
*Præcipio*, constr., 223, (1.), (b.).  
*Præcipit*, 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Præcipue*, *præsertim*, etc., 193, II. 2.  
*Præcurro*, constr., 224, 8, and n. 4.  
*Prædium*, ellipsis of, 255, n. 8.  
*Prædixit*, w. abl., 244.  
*Prænesti*, gender of, 63, n., and 29, n.  
*Prænomen*, its place, 279, 9, (b.).  
*Præpes*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; genit. plur., 114, n. 2.  
*Præscribo*, w. ut, etc., 273, 2, n. 4.  
*Præsens*, declined, 111; abl. of, 112, n. 2.  
*Præses*, gender of, 80; 61, 2; genit. of, 73, n. 1.  
*Præsto*, 223, (3.), and n.; 230, n. 1; 224, 8, and n. 5; 256, n. 16, (3.);—*præsto*, adv., w. dat., 228, 1;—*præsto sunt*, qui, w. subj., 264, 6, n. 1.  
*Præstolor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n.; w. acc., 223, (1.), (a.).  
*Præter*, w. adjs., 127, 6; w. comparatives, 256, n. 13, (b.); as an adverb, 191, III.  
*Prætereo*, w. quod, 273, 5, (1.).  
*Præterit*, constr. of, 229, n. 7.  
*Præterquam* quod, 277, n. 16.  
*Præterveho*, 223, (2.).  
*Prætorior*, w. dat., 224, 8 and n. 5.  
*Præcor*, w. two accs., 231; w. ut, 278, n. 4; ut omitted, 263, n. 4.  
 Predicate, 201; 203;—predicate-nominative, 210; differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, n. 2; instead of dat. of the end, 227, n. 4; after what verbs, 210, n. 8 and 4; pred. adjs., 210, n. 1; after *esse*, *haberi*, *judicari*, *videri*, etc., 271, n. 2;—predicate-accusative, 210, (b.); dative, 210, (c.); abl., 210, (d.); 257, n. 11.  
 Prepositions, 195—197; in composition, 196; with nouns, 103; with adjs., 131, 11—13; with verbs, 196; change of in composition, 103, n. 2; 131, n.; 196, (a.); inseparable, 196, (b.); w. acc., 195, 4; 235; w. abl., 195, 6; 241; w. acc. and abl., 195, 6; 235, (2.).—(b.); need as adverbs, 195, n. 4; how modified, 202, II., n. 2; verbs compounded with, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233; w. abl., 224; compds. of *ut*, *con*, and *in*, with acc., 224, n. 4; repeated after compds., 224, n. 4; 233, n. 2; how interchanged, ib.; compds. of *ad*, *ante*, etc., with neuter verbs of motion, 224, n. 5; 233, n. 1; repetition of prepositions, 233, n. 2; 277, II., 8 and 4; prepositions of one syllable, pr., 235, 2, n. 1, and n. 5; ellipsis of, 232, (2.); 235, n. 11; ellipsis of their case, 235, n. 10; their place, 279, 10; quantity of *di*, *se* and *red*, 235, n. 2 and 18; put after their case, 279, 10, n., (f.); repeated, 277, II., 4.  
 Present tense, 145, I.; a principal tense, 258, A.; indicative pres. for historical perf., 259, n. 1, (a.); for the fut., 259, n. 1, (b.); for imperf. or perf. w. *dum*, 259, n. 1, (c.); subj. pres., use of, 260, II., n. 1, (1.); used to soften an assertion, 260, II., n. 4; to express a wish, command, etc., 260, n. 6; 267, n. 2; imperative pres., how used, 145, n. 3; 267, (1.); infinitive pres., how used, 268, n. 1, (a.), and n. 3; 272, n. 4 and 5; participle pres., how declined, 111, n.; what it denotes, 274, 2 and n.; denoting something about to be done, 274, n. 1; also a purpose, 274, n. 2, (a.); and a state or condition, 274, n. 2, (b.); present pass. participle, how supplied, 274, n. 9.  
 Preterites, 145, n. 2; 258, n.; preterites of the indicative used for the pluperfect subjunctive, 259, n. 4, (1.).  
 Preteritive verbs, 183, I.  
*Pretii* and *pretio*, 214, n. 2, n. 3; ellipsis of, 252, n. 3.  
 Priapean verse, 310, II.  
 Price, ablative of, 252; genitive of *tanti*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
*Pridie*, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 6; w. acc., 238, 1.  
*Primus*, *medius*, etc., how translated, 205, n. 17; their place, 279, 7; *prior*, *præmus*, for *prius*, *primum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Principes*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); used instead of an adverb of time, 205, n. 15.  
 Principal parts of a verb, 151, 4;—propositions, 201, 5;—parts of a proposition, 202, 5; tenses, 255, A.  
*Principio*, abl. of time, 253, n.  
*Prisquam*, with what mood, 263, 3.  
*Privo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Pro*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; w. abl. for predicate nom., 210, n. 8; for predicate acc., 230, n. 4; in composition, quantity of, 255, n. 5, and n. 7; *pro nihilo* *duco*, etc., 214, n. 2, n. 2; *pro eo* and *proinde* ac, 198, 8, n.  
*Proclivis*, 222, n. 4, (2.); 276, III., n. 1.  
*Procul*, w. abl., 195, n. 3; 241, n. 2.  
*Prodigis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.) w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.).  
*Prodo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6.  
*Proditor*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Profriscor*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1.  
*Prohibeo*, 251, n. 2; w. *quominus*, 222, n. 11; 273, 4; w. genit., 220, 2; w. abl., 251, n. w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 6.  
*Proinde*, adv., 191, III.; *proinde* ac, 198, 3, n.  
*Prolepsis*, 223, 1, (b.) and (4.).  
*Promitto*, constr., 272, n. 4; 217, n. 3, (c.).  
 Pronouns, 132—139, simple, 132, 2; neuter w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
 Pronominal adjs., 139, 5.  
 Pronunciation of Latin, 6.  
*Pronus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.).  
*Prope* est, w. ut and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
 Proper nouns, 26, 2; found only in 1st, 2d, and 3d decls., 40, 9.  
*Propero*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Propinquo*, w. n. 2.  
*Propinquus*, v. the dat. or genit., 224, n. 2, (a.).  
*Propter*, how compared, 126, 1; *propius* and *proximus* w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. acc., 222, n. 5; 233, 1; instead of *propius*, *proxime*, 205, n. 15; *proximum* est, w. ut and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Proptus* and *proxima*, constr., 233, 1 and n.

Proportional, *adj.*, 121, 2.  
 Proposition, 201, 1; analysis of, 281.  
*Proprius*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Prorumpo*, constr., 228, n. 4, 1.  
*Prosodiac* verse, 304, 2.  
*Prosody*, 282—321; figures of, 305—307.  
*Prosopopœia*, 324, 84.  
*Prosper* and *prosperus*, 105, n.; w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.)  
*Prosthesis*, 322, 1.  
*Prosto*, w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.  
*Prosum*, 154, n. 6.  
*Provido*, constr., 228, (1.), (a.)  
 Protasis and apodosis, 281; import of the different tenses in the protasis and apodosis, 261, 1 and 2.  
*Providus*, w. genit., 218, n. 1, (8.)  
*Prudens*, w. genit., 228, n. 1, (8.)  
*Ps*, initial, 12, n.; —*ps*, nouns in, genit. of, 77, 2, (1.)  
*psc*, enclitic, 135, n. 3.  
*Pt*, initial, 12, n.  
*pte*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139.  
*Pubes* and *impubes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Pudet*, w. genit., 215; w. inf., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6; w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2; w. sup. in, n. 276, III., n. 2; participle in *du*s, and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Puer*, instead of *in pueritia*, 253, n. 6.  
*Pueritia*, how used in the abl., 253, n. 1.  
*Pugnâ*, for *in pugna*, 253, n. 1; *pugnam pugnare*, 232, (1.)  
*Pugnatur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)  
*Pulchre*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
 Punctuation, 5.  
*Punio*, constr., 217, n. 5.  
 Punishment, constr. of words denoting, 217, n. 3.  
*Purgo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1; 220, 2; w. abl., 251, n.  
 Purpose, denoted by *ut*, etc., with the subj., 262; by participles, 274, 2, n. 2, 6 and 7; by inf., 271; 273, n. 4, (b.); by gerund, 275, III., n. 2, and (1.), (2.); by supine in *-um*, 276, II.  
*Purus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); cf. 251, n.  
*pus*, Greek nouns in, genit. of, 76, n. 5.  
*Puto*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. two accs., 230, n. 1, and n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *putares*, 260, II., n. 2; *putor*, 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 1.

## Q.

*Qu* before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1  
*Quâ*, adverbial correlative, 191, n. 1.  
*Quâ—quâ*, for *et—et*, 277, n. 8.  
*Quæro*, constr., 231, n. 4; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 8.  
*Quæso*, 183, 7; constr., 262, n. 4.  
*Qualis*, 139, 5, (8.); w. comparatives, 256, n. 10, (b.)  
*Qualisqualis* or *qualiscumque*, 139, 5; 207, n. 29.  
*Qualis—talis*, 206, (16.)  
*Quam*, w. comparatives, 256; w. the superlative, with or without *possum*, 127, 4;

ellipsis of *after plus, minus, amplius*, etc., 256, n. 6 and 7; *quam qui* and superlative *after tam*, 206, (21.); *quam pro*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 11; *quam non*, 277, n. 14; *quam* and a verb *after ante* and *post*, 253, n. 1, n. 3; *quam qui*, w. comparatives and the subjunctive, 264, 4.  
*Quamquam*, peculiar use of, 198, 4, n.; constr., 263, 2, (4.); used to connect an abl. absolute, 257, n. 10.  
*Quamvis*, constr., 263, 2, and (2.), (3.)  
*Quando*, *quando—quidem*, 198, 7, n., (b.)  
 Quantity, *adj.* of, 104, 4; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing, 214; adverbs of, w. genit., 212, n. 4.  
 Quantity, in prosody, 13, 1; marks of, 5, 1; general rules of, 13; 233; special rules of, 284; of penults, 291; of antepenults, 292; of penults of proper names, 293; of final syllables, 294—301; of final vowels, 294—296; of final consonants, 299; of derivative words, 284; of compound words, 285; of increments, 286—290; of Greek words, 283, n. 6.  
*Quantus*, pronom. *adj.*, 139, 5, (3.); *quantus* for *quam*, with *posse* and superlatives, 127, n. 1; constr., 206, (16.); *quanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; *quantum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; in acc. of degree, 231, n. 5; 232, (3.); 256, n. 16, n.; *quantum possum*, w. indicative, 264, 3 *fin.*; *quantus—tantus*, 206, (16.)  
*Quantuscumque*, *quantuscumque*, *quantuluscumque*, 139, 5, (3.); w. indicative, 259, n. 4, (3.); *quantiscumque*, 207, n. 29.  
*Quasi*, w. subj., 263, 2.  
*Quatio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; how changed in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
*que*, its use, 196, 1, n., (a.); *que—et*, *et—que*, *que—que*, 196, n., (c.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)  
*Quis* and *quis*, for *quibus*, 136, n. 2.  
*Queo*, how conjugated, 182, n.; w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Queror*, w. acc., 232, n. 1; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Qui*, declined, 136; *qui* in abl., 136, n. 1; 187, n. 2; interrogative, 137; difference between *qui* and *quis*, 137, 1; person of *qui*, 209, n. 6; w. subj., 264; when translated like a demonstrative, 206, (17.); with *sum* instead of *pro*, 206, (18.); *quicum*, whom used, 136, n. 1 *fin.*; *qui vero*, *qui autem*, 280, III., (8.); *ex quo*, for *postquam*, 253, n. 4.  
*Quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam*, 198, 7, n., (b.)  
*Quicque* and *quicumque*, 138, 3, (a.)  
*Quicquid*, 136, n. 4; acc. of degree, 232, (8.)  
*Quicumque*, how declined, 136, 3; how used, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 259, n. 4, (8.); for *omnis*, *quivis*, or *quilibet*, 207, n. 29.  
*Quid*, 137; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232, (8.); *quid?* why? 235, n. 11; *quid sibi vult?* 228, n., (b.); *quid est quod?* w. subj., 264, 7, n. 2; *quid est cur?* etc., 264, 7, n. 3; *quid aliud quam?* 209, n. 4; *quid?* *quid vero?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* *quid multa?* *quid plura?* 229, n. 3, 2.

*Quidam*, how declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 33.  
*Quidem*, its meaning, 191, n. 4; its place, 279, 3, (d.).  
*Quilibet*, how declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 34.  
*Quis* and compds., gender, 61, 1; genit., 78, 4; 96.  
*Quis*, 198, 8; w. subj., 262, n. 10; for a relative with *non*, *ib.*, 1 and n. 6; for *ut non*, *ib.*, 2; after *non dubito*, etc., *quis*? why not? w. indic., *ib.*, n. 9.  
*Quippe*, 198, 7, n., (b.); *quippe qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.).  
*Quippiam*, 138, 3, (a.).  
*Quisq.*, 138, n. 4.  
*Quis*, genit. sing., 74, n. 4; genit. plur., 83 n., 5.  
*Quis*, declined, 137; difference of *quis* and *qui*, 137, 1; between *quis* and *uter*, 212, n. 2, n. 1; *quis est qui*? w. subj., 264, 8, (2.); between *quis* and *aliquis*, 207, n. 30, (b.).  
*Quisnam*, *quinam*, how declined, 137, 2.  
*Quispiam*, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, n. 30; *quippiam*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Quisquam*, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, n. 31; *quicquam* and *quidquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 3; acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232, (3.).  
*Quisque*, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, n. 35; with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (4.); its place, 279, 14; w. a superlative, 207, n. 35, (b.); in apposition, 204, n. 10.  
*Quisquis*, declined, 138, 4; its use, 207, n. 29; difference between *quisquis* and *quicumque*, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 269, n. 4, (3.).  
*Quir*, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, n. 34.  
*Quo*, the correlative adv., 191, n. 1; *quo*, w. a comparative, 256, n. 16, (2.); for *ut eo*, w. subj., 262, n. 9; as adv. of place, w. genitive, 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); *quo mihi hanc rem*, 209, n. 4; 228, n. 5; *quo secius*, 232, n. 11, n.; *quo ne*, 232, n. 5.  
*Quoad*, w. subj., 263, 4; w. *ejus*, 212, n. 4, n. 5.  
*Quocum*, *quacum*, etc., instead of *cum* *quo*, etc., 241, n. 1.  
*Quod*, causal conj., 198, 7; construction of, 273, 5; refers to past time, 273, (6.); w. subj. of *dico*, *puto*, etc., 293, 3, n.; *quod sciam*, etc., 264, 3; *quod*, referring to a preceding statement, 208, (14); 273, 6, (a.); w. genit., 212, n. 3; before *si*, *nisi*, etc., 203, (14); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.).  
*Quojus* and *quoi*, for *cujus* and *cui*, 186, n. 2.  
*Quoque* and *etiam*, difference between, 135, 1, n., (d.); place of *quoque*, 279, 3, (d.).  
*Quis*, indecl., 115, 4; interrogative, 121, 5; 139, 5, (8.); constr., 206, (16); *quot sunt, qui*? 264, 7, n. 2; *quotquot*, w. indic., 269, n. 4, (3.).  
*Quoteni* and *quotus*, interrogative, 121, 5.  
*Quoties*, interrog. adv., 121, 5.  
*Quotisque*, its meaning, 207, n. 35, (a.).  
*Quem*, correlative of *item*, 191, n. 7; instead of *perquam*, 263, n. 4; — conj., 198, 10; constr., 263, 5, and n. 1—4.

R.

*R*, before *s* in roots of nouns, 16, n. 1; nouns in *r*, genitive of, 70, 7; changed to *s* before *s* and *t*, 171, 3; *r* final, quantity of, 299, 2.  
*Rapio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Rarum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Rastrum*, plur. *rastri* or *rastra*, 92, 5.  
*Ratio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, 111, n. 1, (1.); *ratione*, as abl. of manner, without *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Ratum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 2; *ratum* pr., 284, n. 1, (2.).  
*-re* in 2d person sing. of passive voice, 162, 3.  
*Re* or *red*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.); 197, 18; quantity of, 285, n. 3, (a.).  
*Reapse*, 135, n. 8.  
*Recens*, abl. of, 118, n. 3 and n. 1; also adverb, 192, 4, (b.).  
*Receptio*, constr., 233, n. 2, n.  
*Recingor*, w. acc., 234, n. 1.  
*Recordor*, w. genit. or acc., 216; w. pres. inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Reste*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Reckoning*, Roman mode of, 326, 237.  
*Rectum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Recuso quin*, and *quominus*, 262, n. 7 and n. 11; w. *ne*, 271, n. 1; w. inf., *ib.*, n., and 271, n. 1.  
*Reddo*, w. two aces., 220, n. 1; pass. 210, n. 3, (3), (b.); w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Redolen*, w. acc., 232, (2.).  
*Redundant nouns*, 99; adjs., 116; 1/9, n.; 111, n.; verbs, 185.  
*Redundo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.).  
*Reduplication*, 163, n.; of compound verbs, 163, n. 1; of verbs of 1st conj., 166, n. 2; of 2d conj., 168, n. 2; of 3d conj., 171, n. 1, (b.); quantity of, 284, n. 2.  
*Refaro*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Refert* and *interest*, w. genit., 214; 219; w. the adj. pronouns *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; w. *ad*, etc., 219, n. 3; *refert*, pr., 236, n. 3.  
*Refertus*, w. genit. or abl., 218, n. 5, (3.).  
*Reflexive pronouns*, 132, 4; 139, n. 2; how used, 208; for demonstratives, 208, (6.); ellipsis of, 229, n. 4; in oratio obliqua, 266, n. 3.  
*Reformido*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Regno*, w. genit., 220, 4.  
*Regnum*, declined, 46.  
*Rego*, conjugated, 168.  
*Relative adjs.*, 104, 13; 139, n.; government of, 213, n. 1; 222, 3; adverbs, w. subj., expressing a purpose, 264, 5, n. 2; use indefinitely, w. subj., 264, n. 3.  
*Relative pronouns*, 133; agreement of, 206, n. 19; ellipsis of, 206, (5.); in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6.), (a.); referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9.);—to a proposition, 206, (13.); agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11); number and gender of, when referring to two or more nouns, 206, (15);—relative clauses used as circumlocutions and to express the English 'so called,' 206, (19); relative adverbs for relative pronouns, 206, (20); the relative adjs. *quot*, *quantus*, etc., construction of.

206, (16); *qui* with *sum*, instead of *pro*, 206, (18); person of, 209, n. 6; 206, R. 19;—*w.* subj., 264; their place, 279, 18; 280, III., (2.); relatives as connectives, 280, III., (1.); 198, II.

Resolving, verbs of, 273, 1, (a.)

*Relinquo*, *w.* two datives, 227, R. 1; *w.* part. in *dus*, 274, R. 7; *relinquitur*, *w.* *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Reliqua*, acc., 224, II., R. 8; *reliquum est* *ut*, 262, R. 3.

*Reminiscor*, constr., 216.

*Remitto*, 229, R. 4, 1.

Removing, verbs of, *w.* abl., 261.

*Remunoror*, *w.* abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*Renuncio*, *w.* two accs., 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (8.), (b.)

Repeated words, their place, 279, 4.

*Reperis*, abl. of, 113, R. 3.

*Reperio*, *w.* two accs., 230, N. 1;—*reperi-*  
*rior*, 210, R. 3, (8.), (c.); 271, R. 2;—*reperi-*  
*untur*, *qui*, *w.* subj., 264, 6.

*Repo*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (8.), N.

*Repono*, 241, R. 5.

*Reposco*, *w.* two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Repugno*, with *quominus* or *ne*, 262, R. 11.

*Rex*, declined, 30; use of, 206, R. 7, (2.), N. 1.

*Reses*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; defective, 115, 2.

*Resipio*, *w.* acc., 232, (2.)

Responsive, case of, 204, R. 11.

*Respublica*, declined, 91.

*Restat*, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Retē*, abl. of, 82, R. 1, (b.)

*Retracto*, constr., 223, R. 4, 1.

*Reus*, *w.* genit., 213, R. 1, (8.); *reum agere*  
or *facere*, *w.* genit., 213, R. 1.

Rhetoric, figures of, 324.

*Rhus*, genit. of, 76, R. 8; acc. of, 80, II.

Rhythm, 303, (1.)

*Rideo*, *w.* acc., 232, N. 1.

*-rinus*, *-ritus*, quantity of, 290, R., (1.), 4.

*-rimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.

*Ritu*, as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 28.

*-riz*, verbals in, 102, 6, (a.) See *tor* and *iriz*.

*Rogo*, *w.* two accs., 231, R. 1; *w.* *ut*, 273, R. 4; 274, R. 7; without *ut*, 262, R. 4; conjunct. in pass., 234, I.

Roman day, 326, 1;—hour, *ib.*;—month, 326, 2;—names of the months, 326, 2, (1);—calendar table of, 326, 2, (6), p. 369;—week, 326, 2, (10); names of the days of the week, *ib.*;—year, how designated, 326, 2, (11);—money, weights and measures, 327;—tables of weights, etc., 327, pp. 370—373;—coins, 327, p. 371;—interest, how computed, *ib.*

Root or crude form of words inflected, what and how found, 40, 10; formation of nominative sing. from in 3d decl., 56, I. and II.

Roots of verbs, 150; general, 150, 1; special, 150, 2; second and third, how formed, 150, 3 and 4; third, how determined when there is no supine, 151, N.; first, its derivatives, 151, 1; irregularities in

tenses formed from, 162, 1—6; second, *do*, 151, 2; irregularities in tenses formed from, 162, 7—10; third, *do*, 151, 3; second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164—168; 2d conj., 167—170; 3d conj., 171—174; 4th conj., 175—177; second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.

*-rs*, nouns in, genitive sing. of, 77, 2, (2.); genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4.

*Rudis*, 213, R. 1, and R. 4, (2.); 275, II., R. 1, (2.)

*Rupes*, declined, 57.

*Rus*, construed like names of towns, in acc., 237, R. 4; in abl., 254; 255; cf. 32, R. 5, (b.); *rure*, not *ruri* with an adj., 255, R. 1.

*-rus*, participle in, how declined, 105, R. 2; its signification, 162, 14; 274, 2, R. 6; with *sim* and *essen* serving as future subjunctives, 162, R. 3; with *esse* and *fuisse*, 162, 14, R. 3; 268, R. 4; genitive plur. of, 162, 19; denotes intention, 274, R. 6; used for an English clause connected by 'since, when,' etc., *ib.*; as an apodosis, *ib.*

*Rutum*, pr., 284, R. 1, (2.)

## S.

*S*, sound of, 11; added to some roots of nouns of 3d decl., 56, I.; added to roots of verbs ending in a consonant, 171; used instead of *t* in the 3d root of some verbs, 171, R. 5; inserted in some verbals, 102, 5, (b.); *s* preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 63; 64; genit. of, 77; final, elided, 305, 2.

*Sacer*, *w.* genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Sacerdos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3.

*Sepe*, comparison of, 194, 5.

*Sai*, 82, R. 1, (b.), and 63, R., 96, 9; pr., 284, N. 1.

*Salio*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

*Saltem*, 193, II., 8.

*Saluto*, *w.* two accs., 230, N. 1; *salutor*, *w.* two nominatives, 210, R. 3, (8.)

*Salve*, 183, 9.

*Sammis*, genit. sing., 74, R. 4; genit. plur., 83, II., 5.

*Sapio*, *w.* acc., 232, (2.)

*Sapphic verse*, 304, 2; 315, II.

*Sat*, indecl., 115, 4; *satis*, *w.* genit., 212, R. 4; *satis esse*, *w.* dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1); *satis habeo*, and *satis mihi est*, *w.* perf. infin., 263, R. 2; *satis erat*, indie. instead of subj., 259, R. 3; degrees of comparison, 126, 4.

*Satago*, *w.* genit., 215, (2.)

*Satelles*, gender of, 30; 61, 2.

*Satiatus*, *w.* abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (3.)

*Satido*, *w.* *damni infecti*, 217, R. 3, (c.) *w.* dat., 225, I.

*Satisfacio*, *w.* dat., 225, I.

*Satum*, pr., 284, R. 1, 2.

*Saturnalibus*, for *Iudis Saturnalibus*, 253 N. 1.

*Satur*, how declined, 105, R. 1; *w.* genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (8.)

*Saturo*, *w.* abl., 249, I., R. 1; *w.* genit. poet., 220, 3.



- Satus*, w. abl., 246.  
 Saying, verbs of, constr., 272; ellipsis of, 270, n. 2, (b.) and 3; implied, 273, 3, (b.); used in the passive, 272, n. 6.  
*Scando*, compds. of, 233, (3.), n.  
 Scanning, 304, 6.  
*Scateo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.), n. 1; with genit. post., 220, 3.  
 Scason, 314, 11.  
*Scidi*, pr., 234, n. 1, (1.)  
*Scilicet*, 198, 7, n., (a.)  
*Scio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *scito*, 162, 4.  
*Scitor* and *sciscitor*, constr., 231, n. 4.  
*-scio*, verbs in, 187, 11, 2; drop *sc* in 2d and 3d root before *t*, 171, n. 6.  
*Scribo*, 273, 2, (c.); w. two accs., 220, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; in pass. w. predicate nominative, 210, n. 3, (3); *scribit*, w. pres. inf. instead of perf., 223, n. 1, (a.)  
*Se*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.)  
*Se*, w. inter., 208, 5. See *swi*.  
*Secerno*, 251, n., and n. 2, n.  
*Secus*, for *secus*, 88, 1; 94; 211, n. 6, (4.); 230, n. 6; adv., 191, 111.; w. acc., 195, n. 3.  
*Sed*, 198, 9, n., (a.); its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sed, sed quod, sed quia*, 262, n. 9; *sed, sed tamen*, 273, n. 10; *sed et*, 198, 1, (d.)  
*Sedeo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, 3, n.  
*Sedile*, declined, 57.  
*Sedo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*-sem*, old termination of plup. indie. active, 162, 9.  
 Semi-deponent verbs, 142, 2.  
*Senarius*, 304, 2; Iambic, 314.  
*Senex*, its degrees of comparison, 126, 4; gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1; for in *senectute*, 253, n. 6.  
 Sentences, 200; analysis of, 281.  
 Sentiments of another, in dependent clauses, 266, 3.  
*Sentio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Separating, verbs of, w. abl., 251.  
*Sepuro*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sequitur*, constr. 262, n. 8, n. 1.  
*-sere*, future infin. in, 162, 10.  
*Sereno*, scil. *calo*, 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Sermo*, declined, 57.  
*Serpens*, gender of, 64, 3.  
*Sese*, intensive, 133, n. 2.  
*Servitutum servire*, 232, (1.)  
*Sextertius*, its value, 327, n. 2, (b.); how denoted, ib.; mode of reckoning, ib.; *sesquertium*, ib., n. 5-7.  
*Seu*, or *sive*, 198, 2, n., (c.)  
 Ships, gender of their names, 29.  
 Short syllable, 252, 2.  
 Showing, verbs of, constr., 272, n. 6.  
*Si*, how pronounced, 11, n. 1.  
*-si* or *-sin*, Greek datives in, 84.  
*Si*, conj., 198, 5; *si* for *num*, 198, 11, n., (a.); *si minus*, *sin minus* or *sin aliter*, 198, 5, n., (b.); 277, n. 14; ellipsis of in the protasis, 261, n. 1; *si* with the imperfect subj., instead of the pluperfect, 261, n. 5; *si nihil aliud*, 209, n. 4; *si quisquam* and *si ullus*, 207, n. 30, (b.); *si non*, 262, n. 5.
- Sibi suo*, 223, n., (a.)  
*Sic*, 191, n. 5; 277, n. 12, (a.); *phonas* tically, 207, n. 22.  
*Sicuti*, w. subj., 263, 2, (1.)  
 Significant word, in a proposition, 273, 2, (c.)  
*Siem*, *sies*, etc., 154, n. 4.  
*Silentio praterire* or *facere aliquid*, with *out cum*, 247, 2.  
*Sileo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1; pres., 234, 111.  
 Silver age of Roman literature, 239, 3.  
*-sim*, old termination of perfect indie active, 162, 9.  
 Similar constructions, 273, n. 1 and 2.  
 Simile, 324, 30.  
*Similis*, w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.) w. dat. in imitation of the Greek, 222, n. 7; *similes*, w. inter., 223, n. 4, (4.); w. *ac* and *atque*, 222, n. 7, *fin*.  
 Simple, subject, 202, 2;—predicate, 203, 2;—sentences, 201, 10.  
*Simul*, w. abl., 196, n. 3; 241, n. 2; *simul—simul*, 277, n. 8.  
*Sin*, 198, 6; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sin minus*, 277, n. 14.  
 Singular number, 35, 1; sing. for plur., 209, n. 11, 1, (b.)  
*Singularis est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Singuli*, 119.  
*Sine*, 273, 4; 262, n. 4.  
*Siquidem*, 198, 7, n., (b.)  
*Siquis*, how declined, 183, 2; *siquis* and *siquid*, how used, 183, 2, (a.) and (b.); 207, n. 29; *si quis est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Sis* for *si vis*, 183, n. 3.  
*Sisto*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Situm*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)  
*Sive* or *seu*, 198, 2, n.; 278, n. 3; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sive—sive*, w. verb in the indie., 259, n. 4, (3.)  
*-so*, *-sim*, *-sem*, old verbal terminations, 162, 9.  
*Socius*, w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Sodes*, for *si audes*, 183, n. 3.  
 Solecism, 325, 2.  
*Soleo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Solitus*, 274, n. 3; *solito*, after comparatives, 256, n. 3; its place, 279, n. 1.  
*Solum*, *solummodo*, 193, 11, 3.  
*Solus*, how declined, 107; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Solutus*, w. genit., 213; w. abl., 251, n.; *solutum*, pr., 234, n. 3.  
*Solveo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sons*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Sospes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.)  
 Sotadic verse, 304, 2; 317, 1.  
 Sounds of the letters, 7-12; of the vowels, 7 and 8; of the diphthongs, 9; of the consonants, 10-12.  
 Space, acc. and abl. of, 236; ellipsis of, 236, n. 3.  
*Spatium*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, 111., n. 1, (1); *spatio* as abl. of space, 236, n. 4.  
*Specto*, constr., 226, n. 1.  
*Specus*, 83, 1.  
*Spero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Spes est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.

*spes*, w. genit. of gerunda, 275, II., n. 1, (1.); *spe*, after comparatives, 266, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.

*Spolio*, w. abl., 261, n.

*Spondale*, verse, 310; tetrameter, 312.

*Spondeo*, 163, n.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.

*Stanza*, 219, 4.

*Statim*, 193, II., 1.

*Statuo*, 241, n. 5; 278, n. 1; 271, n. 3; 272, n. 1; *statutum habeo*, 274, n. 4.

*Statum*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)

*Sterilis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2); w. *ad*, 213, n. 4, (2.)

*Steti* and *stiti*, pr., 234, n. 1, (1.)

'*Stil*,' w. comparatives, how expressed in Latin, 266, n. 9, (b.)

*Stipulor*, 217, n. 3, (c.)

*Sto*, 163, n.; w. genit. of price, 214, n. 3; w. pred. nom., 210, n. 3, (2.); w. abl., 245, II., 5, and n. 2; *stat per me*, construction of, 262, n. 11; compds. of, 233, (8.), n.

*Strophe*, 319, 4.

*Studeo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; with gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.); with the inf. with or without an accusative, 271, n. 4; w. *ut*, 273, 4, (a.); w. acc. *id*, 232, (3.)

*Studiosus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; 275, III., n. 1, (2.)

*Studium*, w. genit. of gerunda, 275, II., n. 1, (1.)

*Styl*, gender of, 23, n.

*Suadro*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4.

*Sub*, in composition, force of, 122; government of, 235, (2); constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, n. 1, (b.)

Subject of a verb, 140; of a proposition, 201; 202; simple, complex, and compound, 202; its place in a sentence, 279, 2; subject of a dependent clause made the object of the leading verb, 229, n. 5, (a.)

Subject-nominative, 209; ellipsis of, 209, n. 1 and 2; when wanting, 209, n. 3; w. inf., 209, n. 5; 239, n. 1; two or more in the singular with a plural verb, 209, n. 12; (2.)

Subject-accusative, 239; ellipsis of, 239, n. 1-3; considered also as the accusative of the object after verbs of saying, showing, and believing, 272, n. 6.

Subjective genitive, 211, n. 2; possessive pronoun used instead of, 211, n. 3.

*Subjectus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (b.)

Subjunctive, 143, 2; its tenses, 145, n. 2; how used, 260-266, and 273; various use of its tenses, 260; how translated, 260, I. and II., n. 1; for imperative, 260, n. 6; in impersonal verbs, 184, n. 2; in conditional clauses, 261; after particles, 262 and 263; after *qui*, 264; after relative advs., 264, n. 2; indefinite subj., 264, 12 and n.; in indirect questions, 265; in inserted clauses, 266; in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2; after what verbs used, 273; after adjectives, 213, n. 4; exchanged for acc. w. inf., 273, 3, (b.); subjunctive in doubtful questions, 260, n. 5; in repeated actions after relative pronouns and adverbs, 204, 12

*Subito*, 193, n. 1.

Subordinate conjunctions, 193, II.;—propositions, 201, 6 and 7.

Substantive, 23-103; substantive pronouns, 132, 133; their gender, 132, 8; declined, 133; as subject nominative, ellipsis of, 209, n. 1; dat. of, redundant, 223, n.; substantive verb, 153; substantive clauses, 201, 7 and 8; 229, n. 5; 231, n. 2, (b.); substantive clause instead of the abl. after *opus est*, 243, n. 1; and after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, n. 2, (b.)

*Subter*, constr., 235, (4.)

Subtractive expressions in numerals, 113, 4; 120, 2, 3, and 5.

*Succenseo*, 223, n. 2; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.

*Sufficio*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.)

*Sui*, signification of, 132, 4; declined., 133; use of, 208; 266, n. 3; 275, II., n. 1, (4.)

*Sulcis* for *si vultis*, 183, n. 3.

*Sum*, why called an auxiliary, 153; why substantive, lb.; why the copula, 140, 4; conjugated, 153; compds. of, 154, n. 5—n. 7; w. a genit. of quality, 211, n. 6, (7); in expressions denoting part, property, duty, etc., 211, n. 8, (8); 275, n. 1, (5); denoting degree of estimation, 214; w. dat., 226; with two datives, 227; how translated, 227, n. 3; w. abl. denoting in regard to, 250, n. 3; w. an abl. of place, manner, etc., in the predicate, 210, n. 3, (1); w. dat. of gerund, 275, n. 2, (1); w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. genit. of value, 214; *sunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6; *sunt quidam*, *nonnulli*, etc., 264, 6, n. 4; ellipsis of as copula, 209, n. 4 *fin.*; of *esse* and *fuisse*, 270, n. 3; *sum* w. predicate nom., etc., 210, n. 3, (1); *esse* w. predicate nom., 271, n. 2, and n. 4.

*Sumo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 2; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.

*Supellex*, genitive of, 73, 2, (2); abl. of, 82, n. 5, (a.)

*Super*, constr., 235, (3); of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, n. 1, (b.)

*Superfluo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2), n. 1.

*Superjacio*, constr., 233, (1.)

Superlative degree, 122, 6; particular use of, 122, n. 4; formation of, 124; by *maxime*, 127, 1; superlative with *quisque*, 207, n. 35; w. partitive genit., 212, n. 2, and n. 4, n. 7; place of, 236, (7), (b.)

*Supero*, w. abl., 256, n. 16, (3.)

*Supersedeo*, w. abl., 242.

*Superstes*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 112 n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.); w. genit. *et* dat., 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Supersum*, w. dat., 224, 11; *superest* *ut*, etc., 262, n. 3, n. 1.

*Superus*, its degrees of comparison, 125, 4; *supremus* or *summus*, 205, n. 17; *sumum* used adverbially, 205, n. 10; 234, II., n. 3.

Supines, 25 and 143, 3; few in number, 162, 11; in *um*, by what cases followed, 276, 1; on what verbs dependent, 276, II., w. *eo*, 276, II., n. 2 and 3; supines in *u* after what adjs., 276, III., and n. 1; after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., n. 2; c' two syllables, quantity of, 284, n. 1.

*Supra*, w. acc., 196; w. adjs., 127, 6; 256, a. 13 (b.)

*Suppedito*, w. two dat., 227, a. 1; 229, a. 4, 1; w. abl., 250, 2, a. 1.

*Supplex*, genit. plur. of, 114, a. 2; 115, 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, a. 1, (b.)

Supposition or concession denoted by the tenses of the subj., 280, a. 8.

*Surripio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, a. 2.

*Sus*, gender of, 80; 87, a. 4; genit. of, 76, a. 3; dat. and abl. plur., 84, a. 1.

*Suscipio*, w. participle in *dus*, 274, a. 7.

*Suspensus* and *suspectus*, w. genit., 212, a. 1.

*Susus*, use of, 139, a. 2; 208; referring to a word in the predicate, 208, (7); for *hujus* when a noun is omitted, 208, (7.); when two nouns are united by *cum*, 208, (7), (c.); denoting fit, etc., 208, (8.)

Syllabic caesura, 810, n. 1.

Syllabication, 17—23.

Syllables, number of, in Latin words, 17; pure and impure, 80; quantity of first and middle, 284; of penultimate, 291; of antepenultimate, 292; of final, 294.

Syllepsis, 823, 1, (b.) and (3.)

Symploce, 824, 15.

Synæresis, 306, 1.

Synalopha, 306, 1.

Synapheia, 307, 3.

Synchysis, 824, 4.

Syncope, 822, 4; in genit. plur. of 1st decl., 43, 2; of 2d decl., 53; in cases of *bas* and *sus*, 83, a. 1 and 84, a. 1; of *e* in oblique cases of nouns in *er* of 2d decl., 48; of 3d decl., 71, a. 1; in perfect, etc., of verbs, 162, 7; see Omission.

Synecdoche, 234, II.; 823, 1, (5.); 824, 8.

Synesis or synthesis, 823, 3, (4.)

Synonymia, 824, 29.

Synopsis of Horatian metres, 320.

Syntax, 1; 200—281.

Systole, 307, 1.

Syzygy, 303, 4.

## T.

*T*, sound of, 12; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, a. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and a. 5; nouns in, gender of, 66; genit. of, 18; final, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Tacco*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.

*Tædet*, w. genit., 215; w. acc. 229, a. 6.

*Tactio* w. acc., 233, a. 2, n.

*Talma*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Talis*, demonstr. adj., 139, 5, (3.); *talis* followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and (16); *talis* ac, 198, 3, a.; *talis—qualis*, 206, (16.)

*Tam*, 191, a. 5; *tam—quam*, 277, a. 11; *tam* with an adj. before *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.

*Tamen*, how used, 198, 4, a.

*Tametsi*, 198, 4; constr., 263, 2, (4.)

*Tamquam*, w. subj., 263, 2; used like *quidam*, 207, a. 33, (b.) *fin.*; w. abl. absolute, 267, n. 4.

*Tandem*, 191, a. 6.

*Tantum*, adv., 198, II., 3.

*Tantum*, demonstrative, 139, 5, (2.); followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and 6; *tantum—quantus*, 206, (16); *tanti*, *quant.* etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, a. 1, (1.); *tantum*, w. genit. plur. and plur. verb, 209, a. 11, (3.); *tantum*, w. genit., 212, a. 3, n. 1; *tanti* after *reperi* and *interest*, 219, a. 5; *tantum*, acc. of degree, 231, a. 5; 232, (3.); 256, a. 16, n.; *tante*, w. comparatives, 256, a. 16, (2.)

*Tantopere*, 191, a. 5.

*Tardo*, 229, a. 4, 1.

Tautology, 325, 4.

*Tazo*, constr., 217, a. 5; w. abl. of price, 262, a. 1.

*-te*, enclitic, 133, a. 2.

*Tempe*, 83, 1, and 94.

*Tempere*, 223, a. 2, and (1), (a.); *temporare mihi non possum*, *quis*, 262, n. 7.

Temporal adjs., 104, 6; classes of, 121, 3;—conjunctions, 198, 10.

*Tempus*, ellipsis of, 205, a. 7; *tempus est*, w. inf., 270, a. 1; *tempus impendere*, 275, III., a. 2; *tempus consumere*, *ib.*; *temporis aeternum* and *eternum*, 212, a. 4, n. 4; w. *id*, *hoc*, or *idem*, 234, II., a. 3; *tempore* or *in tempore*, 263, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., a. 1, (1.)

*Tenax*, w. genitive, 213, a. 1, (1.)

*Tendo*, constr., 226, IV.; 229, a. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, a. 1.

*Teneo*, w. perf. pass. participle, 274, a. 4 *fin.*; *teneri*, perf. pass. part., 263, a. 1, (b.)

Tenses, 144; division of, 144, 2 and 3; of the subj., 145, a. 2; of the imperative, 145, a. 3; of the infinitive, 145, a. 4; connection of, 258; principal and historical, 258, A. and S.; of indic. mood, used one for another, 259; future for imperative, 259, a. 1, (4); the preterites of the indic. for the pluperfect subj. in the apodosis of a conditional clause, 259, a. 4; of subj. mood, their use, 260, I., a. 1, and II., a. 1; in protasis and apodosis, 261; of inf. mood, use of, 268; tenses used in epistolary style, 145, II., 3; 269, a. 1, (2.), (c.)

*Tento*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Tenus*, w. genit., 221, III.; w. abl., 241, a. 1; place of, 279, 10; 241, a. 1.

*-ter*, nouns in, 48, 1; 71.

*Teres*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; defective, 115, 2; its degrees, 126, 4.

Terminational comparative, and superlative, 124; adjs. without such comparison, 126, 5.

Terminations of inflected words, 40; of nouns, table of, 39; of 1st decl., 41 and 44; of 2d decl., 46; of 3d decl., 55; of 4th decl., 87; of 5th decl., 90; masculine and feminine affixed to the same root, 32, 3; of degrees of comparison in adjs., 124, 125; in adverbs, 194, 2; personal, of verbs, 147, 3; verbal, 150; table of verbal, 152.

*Terra*, as genit. of place, 221, a. 3, (4); *terrâ marique*, 264, a. 2; *terrarum*, 212, a. 4, n. 2.

*Terreo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 3.

- Terrencius*, 327, p. 371; *terrencii habere*, 114, n. 1.  
*Tete*, intensive, 133, n. 2.  
 Tetrameter, 304, 2; *a priori*, 312, iv.; *a posteriore*, 312, v.; *melurus*, 312, xi.; catalectic, 312, xii.  
 Tetraptotes, 94.  
 Tetrastrophon, 319, 3.  
*Th*, in syllabication, 18, 2.  
 'That,' sign of what moods, 278; instead of a repeated subet., how expressed in Latin, 207, n. 26, (c.)  
 Thesis, in prosody, 308.  
 Thinking, verbs of, their constr., 272.  
 Thousands, how expressed in Latin, 118, 5, (a.)  
*Th*, how pronounced, 12.  
*Tiaras*, 45, 8.  
*Tibi*, its pronunciation, 7, n. 1; 19, n.  
*Tigris*, genit. of, 76, 2; acc. of, 80, n. 2; abl. of, 82, n. 2, (b.)  
 Time, advs. of, 191, ii.; conj., 198, 10; acc. of, 236; abl. of, 253; with *de* or *sub*, 253, n. 4; with *intra* lb.; with *in*, 253, n. 5; expressed by *id* with a genit., 253, n. 3; by the abl. absolute, 257; the concrete noun instead of the abstract title, 257, n. 7; mode of reckoning, 326; table of, 326, 6.  
*Timeo*, 223, n. 2, (1.); w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Timidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Tiryns*, genit. of, 77, n. 2.  
*-tis*, genit. in, 77, 2; 71, 2.  
 Titles, place of, 279, 9, (a.)  
 'Too' or 'rather,' how expressed in Latin, 122, n. 3; 256, n. 9.  
*-tor* and *-trix*, verbals in, 102, 6; used as adjs., 129, 8.  
*Tot*, indecl., 115, 4; correlative of *quot*, 121, 5; 206, (18); syncope of, before *quot*, 206, (16.)  
*Totidem*, indecl., 115, 4.  
*Toties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
*Totus*, how declined, 107; *toto*, *totid*, abl. without *in*, 254, n. 2; *totus*, instead of an adverb, 206, n. 15.  
 Towns, gender of names of, 29, 2; constr.; see Place.  
*-tr*, roots of nouns in 56, ii., n. 8.  
*Transitio*, w. dat., 222, n. 8.  
*Trado*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; w. part. fut. pass., 274, n. 7, (a.); *traditur*, constr., 271, n. 2; *traditor*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Tranquillo*, scil. *mari*, 257, n. 9, (1.)  
*Trans*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 233, 1; in passive, 234, n. 1, (b.)  
*Trajicio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 233, (1.)  
 Transitive verbs, 141; w. acc., 229; ellipsis of, 229, n. 2.  
 Trees, gender of names of, 29  
*Tres*, how declined, 109.  
*Trepidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Tribo*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1; w. two accs., 230, n. 2; w. part. perf. pass., 274, n. 7, (a.)  
 Tricolon, 319, 2; tricolon tristrophon and tetrastrophon, 319, 6.  
*Tricorpor*, abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1.  
*Triaspis*, abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
*Trihemimeris*, 304, 5.  
 Trimeter, 304, 2; catalectic, 312, vii.  
*Tripes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
 Triptotes, 94.  
 Tristrophon, 319, 3.  
 Trochae or feminine caesura, 310, n. 1; — metre, 315 and 303; tetrameter catalectic, 315, 1; dimeter catalectic, 315, iv.; trochaeic pentameter or Phaecean, 315, iii.  
 Tropes, 324.  
*-trum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*Truncus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Tu*, declined, 133; in nom. with adj. in voc., 206, n. 15, (c.); used indefinitely, 209, n. 7; when expressed, 209, n. 1; *tui*, feminine, with masc. or neuter gerundive, 276, iii., n. 1, (4.)  
*Tum* and *quum*, 191, n. 7; *tum—tum*, 277, n. 8; *tum* and *tunc*, difference between, lb.; *tum maxime*, lb.; *tum temporis*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Tunus*, as abl. of time, 252, n. 1.  
*Tunc* and *nunc*, 191, n. 7; *tunc temporis*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Tumidus* and *turgidus*, w. abl., 213, n. 5, (5.)  
*Turris*, declined, 57.  
*-tus*, adjs. in, 128, 7; nouns in, of 3d decl., 76, n. 2; 102, 7.  
*Tuus*, how declined, 139; used reflexively, 139 n. 1; *tua* after *refer* and *interest*, 219, n. 1.

## U.

- U*, sound of, 7 and 8; *u* and *v*, 2, 3; *u* is genit. and voc. of Greek nouns, 54; root of nouns of 3d decl. ending in, 56, i.; dat. in, 89; neuters of 4th decl. in, 87; dat. in of 4th decl., 89, 3; in 2d root of verbs, 167 and 171, n. 2; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 296; 286, n. 4; *u* and *itu* in 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
*Ua*, *ue*, etc., pronunciation of, 9, 4 and 5; quantity of, 233, ii., n. 3.  
*Uber*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
*-ubus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 89, 5.  
*Ubi*, genit., 213, n. 4, n. 2; w. indie. perf. instead of pluperf., 259, n. 1, (d.); *ubiubi*, 191, n. 1.  
*-ucis*, genitives in, 78, (5); 112, 2.  
*-udis*, genitives in, 78, n. 1.  
*-uis*, genitives in, 76, n. 8.  
*-uleus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3 c. 1.  
*Ullus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (1), (a); how declined, 107; how used, 207, n. 81.  
*Uterior*, its degrees, 126, 1; *ultimus* for *ultimum*, 206, n. 15; how translated, 206, n. 17.  
*Ultrix*, gender of, 125, 1, (b.)  
*Utra*, prep., 195, 4; adv., 191, i.  
*Utrum* *ire* for *ulcisci*, 276, ii., n. 2.  
*-ulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*-ulus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3; 123, 5.  
*-um*, genit. plur. in instead of *arum*, 43; instead of *orum*, 53; nouns ending in, 43;

in genit. plur. 8d decl., 88; 114;—adv. in, 122, II., 4. (b.)

*Uncia*, 327, p. 872.

*Undus*, participles in, 162, 20.

*Unde domo*, 265, n. 1.

*Unquam*, 191, II.; *unquam, usquam, usque, uspiam*, 191, n. 6.

*unus*, in genit. of Greek nouns, 76, n. 6.

*Unus*, declined, 107; when used in plur., 118, n. 2; added to superlatives, 127, n. 2; *unus et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, n. 12; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum, tantum*, etc., 206, n. 15. (b.); *unum*, as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Unusquisque*, how declined, 188, 4.

*-ur*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genit. of, 70, 71.

*-urn*, verbals in, 102, 7, n. 2.

*Urbs*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2. (b.)

*-urio*, verbs in, 187, II., t.

*-uris*, genitives in, 76, n. 8.

*-us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46; exceptions in, 49—61; voc. sing. of, 46, n. and 52; of 3d decl., gender of, 66; 67; genitive of, 76; Greek genit. in, 69, n. 3; nouns in of 4th decl., 87—89; participles in, how declined, 105, n. 2; verbals in, 102, 7; final, quantity of, 301.

*Usitatum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.

*Uspiam, usquam, usque*, 191, n. 6; *usquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 2; *usque*, w. acc., 196, n. 8; 235, n. 9.

*Unus*, w. abl., 243; *unus venit*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1. (1.)

*Ut* or *ut*, a conj., 198, 8; *ut non* and *ut ne*, ib.; w. subj., 262; its correlatives, 262, n. 1; ellipsis of, 262, n. 4; its meaning after *metuo*, etc., 262, n. 7; *ut non*, 262, n. 6 and n. 6, 2; *ut—ita* or *sic*, 277, n. 12. (b.); *ut*, 'as', ellipsis of, 277, n. 17; *ut*, 'even if', and *ut non*, w. subj., 262, n. 2; *ut* with certain impersonal verbs and subj., 262, n. 3; in questions expressing indignation, 270, n. 2, (a.); *ut*, *ut primum*, etc., with the historical perf., indic., instead of the pluperf., 259, n. 1. (d.); its place, 279, 8. (b.); *ut* after *est* with a predicate adj., 262, n. 3, n. 4; *ut credo*, *ut puto*, etc., in interposed clauses, 277, I., n. 17; *ut*, 'because', 277, I., n. 12. (b.); *ut qui*, 264, 8, 2; *ut si*, w. subj., 263, 2; *ut ita dicam*, 207, n. 83. (b.) *fin.*; *ut*, 'as if', w. abl. absolute, 267, n. 4; *utut*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3); ellipsis of *ut* when *ne* precedes and *et*, etc., follow, 278, n. 6. (c.)

*Utrunque*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (8.)

*Uter*, how declined, 107; w. dual genit., 212, n. 2, n. 1.

*Utrumque*, how declined, 107.

*Uterlibet, uterque, and utrovis*, their meaning and declension, 107; 139, 5, (1), (b.); *uterque*, use of, 207, n. 32; *uterque*, w. plur. verb, 209, n. 11. (4.)

*Utilis*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; 275, III., n. 2; w. acc., 222, n. 4. (1.); *utile est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3; *utilis*, w. inf. poetically, 270, n. 1. (b.); 275, n. 2; *utilius fuit*, indic. instead of subj., 269, n. 3; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 1.

*Utinam* and *ut*, w. subj., 262, 1.

*-utus*, genitives in, 76, n. 2; 112, 2.

*Utor*, w. abl., 245; w. acc., 245, I., n. 1; w. two ablatives, 245, n.; *utor, fruor, etc.*, their gerundives, 275, II., n. 1.

*Utpote qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)

*Utrique*, how used, 107, n. 32, (c.)

*Utrum* and *utrumne*, 166, 11.

*-utus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.

*-us*, adjectives in, 129, 3.

*-uz*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (5.)

*Uzor*, ellipsis of, 211, n. 7.

## V.

*V*, changed to *u*, 163, 2; sometimes dropped in forming the 2d root of verbs of the 3d conj., 171, n. 4.

*Vaco*, 250, 2, n. 1.

*Vacuus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.) cf. 251, n.

*Vado*, constr., 225, IV.; 232, n. 1; 233, (3), n. 1.

*Vae*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2.

*Valde*, 127, 2.

*Valco*, w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1; 252; w. acc., 252, n. 4; *valere* or *vale dico*, w. dat., 225, I., n.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Validus*, 213, n. 5, (4.)

*Valuing*, verbs of, 214, n. 2; w. genit., 214; w. abl., 252, n. 1.

*Vapulo*, 142, n. 3.

*Variable nouns*, 92; adjs., 122.

*Vas*, genit. of, 72, n. 1; gender of, 62, n. 1, and n. 2; 93, 2.

*-ve*, 198, 2, and n. 1, p. 76; place of, 279 3, (c.)

*Vehor*, compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Vel*, 198, 2; difference between *vel* and *aut*, 198, n.; *vel* w. superlative degree, 127, 4; w. comparatives, 256, n. 9, (b.)

*Velim*, w. subj. without *ut*, 260, n. 4; 262, n. 4.

*Vellem*, how used, 260, n. 2.

*Velox*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)

*Velut, velut si, veluti*, w. subj., 263, 2; *velut*, 'as if', w. abl. absolute, 267, n. 4.

*Venalis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vendo*, w. abl., 252; w. genit., 214, n. 3, n. 1.

*Veneo*, 142, n. 3; 252; 214, n. 3, n. 1.

*Venio*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1; w. *ad* or *in*, 226, IV.; w. dat., 225, n. 2; *venit mihi in mentem*, constr., 211, n. 8, (5); 218, n. 3.

*Venitus*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)

*Verbal terminations*, 152; nouns, 102; w. acc., 233, n. 2, n.; of place, 237, n. 1; w. dat., 222, n. 8; w. abl. of place, 255; w. genit. of personal pronouns, 211, n. 3, (a.); verbal adjs., 129.

*Verbs*, 140—189; subject of, 140, 1; active or transitive, 141, I.; neuter or intransitive, 141, II.; neuter passive, 142, 2; neutral passive, 142, 8; deponent, 142, 4; common, 142, 4, (b.); principal parts of, 151, 4; neuter, participles of, 162, 16; inceptive, 173; desiderative, 187, II., 8; 176, n.; irregular, 178—182; defective, 183; re-

dundant, 185; verbs spelled alike, or having the same perfect or supine, 186; derivation of, 187; imitative, 187, 8; frequentative, 187, II., 1; inceptive, 187, II., 2; desiderative, 187, II., 3; diminutive, 187, II., 4; intensive, 187, II., 5; 187, II., 1, (c.); composition of, 188; changes in composition, 189; compounds from simples not in use, 189, N. 4; agreement of, 209, (b.); ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; person of with *qui*, 209, R. 6; agreeing with predicate nominative, 209, R. 9; with collective nouns, 209, R. 11; plural with two or more nominatives, 209, R. 12; after *uterque*, etc., 209, R. 11, (4); after a nominative with *cum* and the abl., 209, R. 12, (6); after nominatives connected by *aut*, 209, R. 12, (5); their place in a sentence, 279, 2; in a period, 280.

*Vere* and *vero*, 192, 4, N. 1.

*Vereor*, w. genit. poet., 220, 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 7; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Verissime est ut*, 262, R. 8, N. 8; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.

*Veritum est*, w. acc., 229, R. 6.

*Vero*, use of in answers, 192, 4, N. 1; 198, 8, R. 1, (a.); ellipsis of, 278, R. 11; its place, 279, 3, (c.)

*Versee*, 304; combinations of in poems, 319.

Verification, 302.

*Versus*, w. acc., 195, R. 8; 235, R. 9; place of, 279, 10, (f.)

*Verto*, constr., 225, IV.; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; 229, R. 4, 1.

*Verum est*, *ut*, 262, R. 8, N. 8; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; *verum*, conj., 192, 9; its place, 279, 8; *verum* and *verum-tamen*, 'I say,' 278, R. 10; *verum enimvero*, 198, 9, R. 1, (a.); *vero* after comparatives, 256, R. 9.

*Vescor*, with abl., 245, I.; with acc., 245, I., R.

*Vespere*, or *-ri*, 253, N. 1.

*Vester*, how declined, 189, 1; *vestrum*, 189, 3; used after participles, 212, R. 2, N. 2.

*Vestio*, 229, R. 4, 1.

*Veto*, 278, 2, (d.); 262, R. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 6.

*Vetus*, declension of, 112, 2; its superlative, 125, 1; 126, 3.

*Via*, abl. of place without *in*, 254, R. 3.

*Vicent* for *vice*, 247, 1, N. 8.

*Vicinia*, genit. of place, 221, R. 3, (4.); 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Vicinus*, w. dat. or genit., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Victrix*, 115, 1, (b.); how declined as an adj., 129, 8.

*Videlicet* and *scilicet*, 198, 7, R., (a.); pr., 235, R. 4, N. 2.

*Video*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 8; *videres*, 260, R. 2; *video* for *curo*, w. *ut*, 273, N. 1; *videor*, constr., 371, R. 2; 272, R. 6.

*Viduus*, constr., 213, R. 5, (4); 250, 2, (1.)

*Vigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1.

*Vigil*, abl. of, 118, R. 8; genit. plur. of, 114, R. 2; 115, 1, (a.)

*Vigilia*, 326, 1, (2.)

*Vigilias*, *vigilare*, 232.

*Vilis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vir*, how declined, 48, 2.

*Virgilius*, voc. of 52; accent of, 14, R.

*Virgo*, declined, 57.

*Virus*, gender of, 51.

*Vis*, declined, 85; acc. sing. of, 79, 2, abl. sing., 82, R. 2; genit. plur., 83, II., 8, 94; *vi* and *per vim*, difference between, 247, 3, R. 4; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III, R. 1, (1.)

*Vitabundus*, w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.

*Vitam vivere*, 232, (1.)

*Vitio creati magistratus*, 247, 2.

*Vivo*, w. abl., 245, II., 4; w. pred. nom., 210, R. 8, (2); *tertia vivitur etas*, 234, III.

*Vix*, with part. fut. pass., 274, R. 12; *vixitum*, 271, I., R. 16.

Vocative, 37; sing., its form, 40, 3; plur., 40, 4; ellipsis of, 240, R. 2.

*Voco*, constr., 225, R. 1; 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.)

Voices, 141.

*Volucer*, in genit. plur., 108, R. 2.

*Volo*, (are), compds. of, 233, (3), N.

*Volo*, conjugated, 178, 1; w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2; w. perf. part., and ellipsis of *esse*, 269, R. 3; its construction, 271, R. 4, and N. 4; 273, 4; 262, R. 4; *volens*, w. dat. of person, 226, R. 3; *volo bene* and *male alicui*, 225, I., N.; *volo*, w. reflexive pron., 228, N., (b.)

Voluntary agent of pass. verbs, 248, I.; ellipsis of, 141, R. 2; 248, I., R. 1; when expressed by *per* and acc., 247, R. 4; of neuter verbs, 248, R. 2; dative of voluntary agent, 225, II. and III.

*Voluntum*, pr., 284, R. 3.

*Vos*, see *tu*, 133.

*Voti* and *votorum damnati*, 217, R. 3.

Vowels, 3, 1; sounds of, 7 and 8; vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, 6, and 283, IV., R. 2; before another vowel, quantity of, 13, 3, and 283, I.; in Greek words, 283, R. 6; before two consonants, 13, 5, and 283, IV.; ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 285, R. 4.

*Vulgus*, gender of, 51; 56.

*Vultus*, gender of, 57.

## W.

*W*, not used in Latin, 2, 4.

Weight, acc. of, 236, R. 7; weights, Roman, 327.

Willingness, verbs of, constr., 273, 4

Winds, gender of names of, 28.

Wishing, verbs of, constr., 271, R. 4.

Words, division of, 17-23; arrangement of, 279; gender of as mere words, 31, 3.

Writers in different ages, 329.

## X

*X*, sound of, 12; its equivalents, 3, 2; 56, R. 2; 171, 1; in syllabication, 18, 4; nouns in, gender of, 52 and 65; genitive of, 73, 2.

Y. found only in Greek words, 2, 5; sound of, 7, a. 2; d. a. 5; nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 69; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; final, quantity of, 296; 286, a. 4.

-ychis, in genitive 78, 2. (6.)

-yris, genitives in, 78, 2. (6.)

-yris, genitives in, 77, 1.

Y, how pronounced, 9, 1; abl. in, 82, 6.

-yris, genitives in, 173, 2. (6.)

-yas, Greek genitive in, 71, 2.

-ys, nouns in, gender of, 62, 63, a.; genitive of, 77; acc. of, 80, 11.; abl. of, 82, a. 6 final, quantity of, 301.

-yz, nouns in, gender of, 66, 6.

## Z.

Z, found only in words derived from the Greek, 2, 5; its equivalents, 3, 2. Zeugma 323, 1 (b.) and 2.)

# Andrews' Series of Latin School Books.

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,

51 WASHINGTON STREET, BOSTON.

THE LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS prepared by Prof. E. A. ANDREWS, exclusive of his Latin-English Lexicon, founded on the Latin-German Lexicon of Dr. Freund, constitute two distinct series, adapted to different and distinct purposes. The basis of the First Series is Andrews' First Latin Book; of the Second, Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

## FIRST SERIES.

This Series is designed expressly for those who commence the study of Latin at a very early age, and for such as intend to pursue it to a limited extent only, or merely as subsidiary to the acquisition of a good English education. It consists of the following works, viz.:—

**1. Andrews' First Latin Book; or Progressive Lessons in Reading and Writing Latin.** This small volume contains most of the leading principles and grammatical forms of the Latin language, and, by the logical precision of its rules and definitions, is admirably fitted to serve as an introduction to the study of general grammar. The work is divided into lessons of convenient length, which are so arranged that the student will, in all cases, be prepared to enter upon the study of each successive lesson, by possessing a thorough knowledge of those which preceded it. The lessons generally consist of three parts:—1st. The statement of important principles in the form of rules or definitions, or the exhibition of orthographical or etymological forms; 2d. Exercises, designed to illustrate such principles or forms; and 3d. Questions, intended to assist the student in preparing his lesson. In addition to the grammatical lessons contained in this volume, a few pages of Reading Lessons are annexed, and these are followed by a Dictionary comprising all the Latin words contained in the work. This book is adapted to the use of all schools above the grade of primary schools, including also Academies and Female Seminaries. It is prepared in such a manner that it can be used with little difficulty by any intelligent parent or teacher, with no previous knowledge of the language.

**2. The Latin Reader, with a Dictionary and Notes,** containing explanations of difficult idioms, and numerous references to the Lessons contained in the First Latin Book.

**3. The Viri Romæ, with a Dictionary and Notes,** referring, like those of the Reader, to the First Latin Book. This series of three small volumes, if faithfully studied according to the directions contained in them, will not only render the student a very tolerable proficient in the principles of the Latin language and in the knowledge of its roots, from which so many words of his English language are derived, but will constitute the best preparation for a thorough study of the English grammar.

## SECOND SERIES.

**NOTE.**—The "Latin Reader" and the "Viri Romæ," in this series, are the same as in the first series.

This Series is designed more especially for those who are intending to become thoroughly acquainted with the Latin language, and with the principal classical authors of that language. It consists of the following works:—

**1. Latin Lessons.** This small volume is designed for the younger classes of Latin students, who intend ultimately to take up the larger Grammar, but to whom that work would, at first, appear too formidable. It contains the prominent principles of Latin grammar, expressed in the same language as in the larger Grammar, and likewise Reading and Writing Lessons, with a Dictionary of the Latin words and phrases occurring in the Lessons.



**2. Latin Grammar.** Revised, with Corrections and Additions. A Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By Professors E. A. ANDREWS and S. STODDARD. This work, which for many years has been the text-book in the department of Latin Grammar, claims the merit of having first introduced into the schools of this country the subject of grammatical analysis, which now occupies a conspicuous place in so many grammars of the English language. More than twenty years have elapsed since the first publication of this Grammar, and it is hardly necessary to say that its merits—placing it in a practical view, preëminently above every other Latin Grammar—have been so fully appreciated that it has been adopted as a Text Book in nearly every College and Seminary in the country. The present edition has not only been *thoroughly revised and corrected (two years of continuous labor having been devoted to its careful revision and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it aims to occupy)*, but it contains at least one third more matter than the previous editions. To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals, and of the more recent German grammars, was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end particular attention was directed:—1st. *To the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language*; 2d. *To a clear exposition of its inflectional changes*; 3d. *To a proper basis of its syntax*; and 4th. *To greater precision in rules and definitions.*

**3. Questions on the Grammar.** This little volume is intended to aid the student in preparing his lessons, and the teacher in conducting his recitations.

**4. A Synopsis of Latin Grammar,** comprising the Latin Paradigms, and the Principal Rules of Latin Etymology and Syntax. The few pages composing this work contain those portions of the Grammar to which the student has occasion to refer most frequently in the preparation of his daily lessons.

**5. Latin Reader.** The Reader, by means of two separate and distinct sets of notes, is equally adapted for use in connection either with the First Latin Book or the Latin Grammar.

**6. Viri Romæ.** This volume, like the Reader, is furnished with notes and references, both to the First Latin Book and to the Latin Grammar. The principal difference in the two sets of notes found in each of these volumes consists in the somewhat greater fullness of those which belong to the smaller series.

**7. Latin Exercises.** This work contains exercises in every department of the Latin Grammar, and is so arranged that it may be studied in connection with the Grammar through every stage of the preparatory course. It is designed to prepare the way for original composition in the Latin language, both in prose and verse.

**8. A Key to Latin Exercises.** This Key, in which the exercises in the preceding volume are fully corrected, is intended for the use of teachers only.

**9. Cæsar's Commentaries** on the Gallic War, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this edition of Cæsar has been formed by reference to the best German editions. The Notes are principally grammatical. The Dictionary, which, like all the others in the series, was prepared with great labor, contains the usual significations of the words, together with an explanation of all such phrases as might otherwise perplex the student.

**10. Sallust.** Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Cataline, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this work, which was based upon that of Curtius, has been modified by reference to the best modern editions especially by those of Kritz and Gerlach; and its orthography is, in

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

general, conformed to that of Pottier and Planche. The Dictionaries of Cæsar and Sallust connected with this series are original works, and, in connection with the Notes in each volume, furnish a very complete and satisfactory apparatus for the study of these two authors.

**11. Ovid.** Selections from the *Metamorphoses* and *Heroides* of Ovid, with Notes, Grammatical References, and Exercises in Scanning. These selections from Ovid are designed as an introduction to Latin poetry. They are accompanied with numerous brief notes explanatory of difficult phrases, of obscure historical or mythological allusions, and especially of grammatical difficulties. To these are added such Exercises in Scanning as serve fully to introduce the student to a knowledge of Latin prosody, and especially of the structure and laws of hexameter and pentameter verse.

**12. Virgil.** The *Eclogues* and *Georgics* of Virgil, with Notes and a Metrical Key. The text of this edition is, in general, that of Heyne as revised by Wagner. Particular attention has been given to the orthography and punctuation. The orthography has been made to conform to the standard of prevalent usage, discarding the forms *is* for *es*, in the terminations of some accusatives plural, *cum* for *quum*, and the like, as they tend to embarrass the learner, while they give but a very imperfect idea of the peculiarities of the author's orthography, as will be seen by examination of the *Orthographia Virgiliana*, at the end of this edition. The notes are very numerous, and in their preparation the editor has drawn freely from the best commentaries on Virgil, both German and English, including those of Heyne, Wagner, Forbiger, Ladewig, Martyn, Keightley, Bryce, Conington and others. The notes contain many references to the Grammar, which will be found useful.

In announcing the Revised Edition of **ANDREWS AND STODDARD'S LATIN GRAMMAR**, the Publishers believe it to be quite unnecessary to speak of the merits of the work. The fact that in the space of about *Twenty Years, SIXTY-FIVE EDITIONS*, numbering above **Two Hundred Thousand Copies**, have been required for the purpose of meeting the steadily increasing demand for the work, sufficiently evinces the estimation in which it has been held. In preparing this Revised and Enlarged Edition, every portion of the original work has been reconsidered in the light of the experience of twenty years spent by the present editor in studies connected with this department of education, and with the aid of numerous publications in the same department, which, during this period, have issued from the European press. The results of this labor are apparent on almost every page, in new modifications of the old materials, and especially in such additional information in regard to its various topics as the present advanced state of classical education in this country seemed obviously to demand. The publishers commend this new edition to the attention of Teachers throughout the country, and express the hope that in its present form it will be deemed worthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received.

The following are extracts from a few of the many letters the Publishers have received from teachers from all parts of the country in commendation of this work:—

The revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar is without doubt the best published in America. I have no doubt that the time is near at hand when this series of works will, by all lovers of the classics, be considered as the 'National Series.' The pronunciation is now by the same class considered the American Standard. I will nil with joy the day when every college and school in our country shall have adopted Prof Andrews' series as the foundation of true classic knowledge. As such I consider it, and for that reason have I used it since I first knew its existence.—*Martin Armstrong, Holmwood Seminary, Romney, Va.*

Allow me to say, after a careful examination, that, in my judgment, it is the best manual of Latin Grammar to be found in the English language. In revising it the author has preserved the happy medium between saying too much and too little, so desirable for a Latin text-book for this country. In philosophical arrangement, simplicity of expression, and for brevity and fulness, it must entitle the author to the first rank in American classical scholarship. I shall use it in my classes, and recommend it to all teachers of Latin in this country.—*N. E. Cobleigh, Professor of Ancient Languages and Literature, in Lawrence University, Appleton, Wis.*

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

I have reason to believe that the improvements, introduced into the last edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar by my respected and lamented friend Dr. Andrews, a little before his death, add very decidedly to the value of a work, which has done more to give the knowledge of that language to the youth of this country than any, perhaps than all others.—*Theodore W. Woolsey, President of Yale College, New Haven.*

No book, probably, has done more to improve classical training in American schools than Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar. Its use is almost universal; and where it has not itself been adopted as a manual, it has made grammars of similar excellence necessary. The last edition, the sixty-fifth, was carefully revised by the lamented Dr. Andrews, not long before his death, by whom it was greatly enlarged by the incorporation of much valuable information, derived mainly from the last edition of the Latin Grammar of Professor Zumpt. It will therefore be found to be much improved as a repository of the principles and facts of the Latin language.—*Thomas A. Thacher, Professor of Latin in Yale College, New Haven.*

It is unnecessary to commend a Latin Grammar, which has been for twenty years in common use in our Colleges, and has generally superseded all others. The Revised Edition contains the results of the labors of Dr. Andrews, during all that time, on various Latin Classics, and on his great Latin Lexicon; and cannot, therefore, but be greatly improved.—*Edward Robinson, D. D., LL. D., Prof. of Biblical Literature in Union Theol. Seminary, New York City.*

I regard Andrews' and Stoddard's new Latin Grammar, as an exceedingly valuable work. It evidently contains the results of the Author's careful and long continued investigation, and from its fulness, clearness, and accuracy, will undoubtedly become the Standard Latin Grammar of this Continent. In Western New York, we have for a long time been using the earlier editions, and they have rapidly won upon the public regard. This new edition will give it a stronger claim upon our favor. It must rapidly supersede all others. I can unhesitatingly recommend the New Grammar as the best in use.—*Lewis H. Clark, Principal of Sodus Academy, Wayne Co., N. Y.*

I have looked over the new edition of the Grammar with great interest. It is now eighteen years since I introduced it into this college, and I have never felt inclined to change it for any other. The revision, without changing its general character, has added greatly to its fulness and completeness. It is now fully equal to Zumpt's in these respects, and far superior to it in adaptation to the class room. There is no other school grammar that can pretend to compare with it. I have introduced the new edition here and have no idea I shall ever wish to substitute another. The services of Prof. Andrews in the cause of classical learning in the United States cannot be over estimated.—*M. Sturgus, Professor in Hanover College, Indiana.*

I am willing to say that I am decidedly in favor of Andrews' Latin Series.—*Geo. Gass, Galesville University, Wisconsin.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar I consider decidedly the best Latin Grammar ever published.—*Ransom Norton, North Livermore, Maine.*

Such a work as Andrews and Stoddard's Revised Latin Grammar needs no recommendation. It speaks for itself.—*A. A. Keen, Professor of Greek and Latin, Tufts College, Medford, Ms.*

I have examined the revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and think it a complete success. I see it has all of Zumpt's merits and none of his defects, and welcome its advent with great pleasure.—*James M. Whiton, Hopkins Grammar School, New Haven, Conn.*

I have examined Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and say, without hesitation, that the principles of the Latin language can be more easily and systematically acquired from it than any work I have ever seen. The arrangement and simplicity of its terms are such as to make it easily comprehended by the beginner, while, at the same time, its copiousness is sufficient for the most advanced student. The author has evidently noted and profited by the defects in this respect of most of the Latin Grammars now in use.—*C. W. Field, Mauch Chunk, Pa.*

The superior merits of the original work are too well known and appreciated to need any commendation from me. I have had some means of knowing how great pains and labor Dr. Andrews has bestowed upon this final revision and improvement of the work, and, therefore, was not unprepared to find its acknowledged excellence materially increased, and I do not hesitate to say, that its value has been greatly enhanced, and that it has been brought as near as practicable to the present state of philological science.—*John D. Philbrick, Superintendent of Public Schools, city of Boston.*

I have looked the Grammar through with much care and a great degree of satisfaction, and I unhesitatingly pronounce it superior to any Latin Grammar in method and manner of discussion, and happily adapted to the wants of both teachers and pupils.—*J. W. Simonds, Principal of New England Christian Institute, Andover, N. H.*

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

We have lately introduced the Revised Edition, and regard it as a great improvement upon former editions. We shall use it exclusively in future.—*E. Flint, Jr., Principal of Lee High School.*

After a due examination, I am happy to state that the Author has admirably accomplished the objects which he aimed at in making this last revision. He has added much that is in the highest degree valuable without materially changing the arrangement of the original work. The work appears to me well adapted to the daily use of our Classical Schools, and I shall hereafter direct my classes to use it.—*C. L. Cushman, Principal of Peabody High School, South Danvers, Ms.*

The Revised Grammar seems to me greatly improved and to be every thing a scholar could wish.—*Z. B. Sturgis, Charlestown, Indiana.*

I have subjected the Revised Edition to the test of actual use in the recitation room, and am persuaded that in its present form it decidedly surpasses every other Latin Grammar in point of adaptation to the wants of students in our Academies, High Schools and Colleges.—*William S. Palmer, Central High School, Cleveland, Ohio.*

I think Andrews' Series of Latin Works the most systematic and best arranged course I have ever seen,—and believe if our pupils would use them altogether, we should find them much better scholars. I shall use them wholly in my school.—*A. C. Stockin, Principal of Monmouth Academy, Maine.*

The examination of the Revised Edition has afforded me very great pleasure, and leads me to express the deep and sincere conviction that it is the most complete Grammar of the Latin language with which I am acquainted, and best adapted for ready consultation upon any subject connected with the study of Latin Authors. The paper, the typography, and the binding,—the whole style of publication—are such as to commend the good taste and judgment of the Publishers.—*J. R. Boyd, Principal of Maplewood Young Ladies Institute, Pittsfield, Mass.*

I find the Revised Edition to be just what is needed for a Latin Grammar,—clear, comprehensive, yet concise, in the subject matter. I shall introduce it as a permanent textbook.—*B. F. Dake, Principal of Clyde High School, Wayne Co., N. Y.*

I have carefully examined your Revised Edition throughout, particularly the Corrections and Additions. It now appears to me all that can be desired. It seems like parting with a familiar friend to lay aside the *old* edition, with its many excellencies, and adopt the *new*, but I shall cheerfully make the sacrifice for the greater benefit that will accrue to those commencing the study of Latin from time to time.—*J. H. Graham, Principal of Northfield Institution, Vermont.*

I thought before that the *old* edition was entitled to the appellation of "*The Latin Grammar*," but I perceive its value has been much increased by the numerous emendations and additions of Prof. Andrews. The Grammar is now fitted to be a complete hand-book for the Latin scholar during his whole course.—*E. W. Johnson, Canton Academy, Canton, N. Y.*

I unhesitatingly pronounce the Revised Edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar the best Grammar of the Latin Language, and shall certainly use my influence in its behalf.—*H. E. J. Clute, Edinboro', Pa.*

After a thorough examination, I have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best Latin Grammar for the purposes of the recitation room that I have ever examined. In its present form it ought certainly to displace a large majority of the Grammars in common use. Its rules of Syntax are expressed with accuracy and precision, and are in fact, what all rules ought to be, reliable guides to the learner.—*James W. Andrews, Principal of Hopewell Academy, Penn.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, in the arrangement and adaptation to the learner, has excelled all others, and the revised edition is certainly a great improvement, and I do believe is better adapted to the wants of the student than any other. The whole seems to be critically revised and corrected. Prof. Andrews was truly the student's benefactor.—*M. L. Severance, North Troy, Vermont*

It gives me great pleasure to bear my testimony to the superior merits of the Latin Grammar edited by Professor Andrews and Mr. Stoddard. I express most cheerfully, unhesitatingly, and decidedly, my preference of this Grammar to that of Adam, which has, for so long a time, kept almost undisputed sway in our schools.—*Dr. C. Beck, Cambridge.*

I know of no Grammar published in this country, which promises to answer so well the purposes of elementary classical instruction, and shall be glad to see it introduced into our best schools.—*Charles K. Dillaway, Boston.*

Your new Latin Grammar appears to me much better suited to the use of students than any other grammar I am acquainted with.—*Prof. Wm. M. Holland, Hartford, Ct.*

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS

I have adopted the Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard in the school under my charge, believing it better adapted, upon the whole, for elementary instruction than any similar work which I have examined. It combines the improvements of the recent German works on the subject with the best features of that old favorite of the schools, Dr Adam's Latin Grammar.—*Henry Drisler, Professor of Latin in Columbia College.*

A careful review of the Revised Edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, shows that this favorite text-book still continues to deserve the affections and confidence of Teachers and Pupils, incorporating as it does the results of Prof. Andrews' own constant study for many years with the investigations of English and German Philologists. No other Grammar is now so well fitted to meet the wants of the country as the rapid demand for it will show beyond doubt.—*A. S. Hartwell, University of St. Louis.*

This Grammar of the Latin Language, now universally pronounced *the very best*, is greatly improved by the corrections, revisions and additions of this revised edition. We do not believe a text-book was ever written which introduced so great an improvement in the method of teaching Latin, as this has done. We wish the revised edition the greatest success, which we are sure it merits.—*Rhode Island Schoolmaster.*

I have examined your revised edition with considerable care, and do not hesitate to pronounce it a great improvement upon the old editions, and as near perfection as we are likely to have. I have no doubt it will come into general use.—*A. Williams, Professor of Latin, Jefferson College, Canonsburg, Pa.*

I have been much interested in the Revised Edition. The improvement is very striking, and I shall no longer think of giving it up and putting Zumpt in its place. I am much pleased with the great improvement in the typography. You have given to our schools a book fifty per cent better in every respect, and I trust you will have your reward in largely increased sales.—*William J. Rolfe, Master of Oliver High School, Lawrence, Ma.*

I can with much pleasure say that your Grammar seems to me much better adapted to the present condition and wants of our schools than any one with which I am acquainted, and to supply that which has long been wanted—a good Latin Grammar for common use.—*F. Gardner, Principal of Boston Latin School.*

The Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard is deserving, in my opinion, of the approbation which so many of our ablest teachers have bestowed upon it. It is believed that, of all the grammars before the public, this has greatly the advantage, in regard both to the excellence of its arrangement, and the accuracy and copiousness of its information.—*H. B. Hackett, Prof. of Biblical Literature in Newton Theological Seminary.*

The universal favor with which this Grammar is received was not unexpected. It will bear a thorough and discriminating examination. In the use of well-defined and expressive terms, especially in the syntax, we know of no Latin or Greek grammar which is to be compared to this.—*American Quarterly Register.*

These works will furnish a series of elementary publications for the study of Latin together in advance of any thing which has hitherto appeared, either in this country or in England.—*American Biblical Repository.*

I cheerfully and decidedly bear testimony to the superior excellence of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar to any manual of the kind with which I am acquainted. Every part bears the impress of a careful compiler. The principles of syntax are happily developed in the rules, whilst those relating to the moods and tenses supply an important deficiency in our former grammars. The rules of prosody are also clearly and fully exhibited.—*Rev. Lyman Coleman, Manchester, Vt.*

This work bears evident marks of great care and skill, and ripe and accurate scholarship in the authors. We cordially commend it to the student and teacher.—*Biblical Repository.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar is what I expected it would be—an excellent book. We cannot hesitate a moment in laying aside the books now in use, and introducing this.—*Rev. J. Penney, D. D., New York.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar bears throughout evidence of original and thorough investigation and sound criticism. It is, in my apprehension, so far as simplicity is concerned, on the one hand, and philosophical views and sound scholarship on the other, far preferable to other grammars; a work at the same time highly creditable to its authors and to our country.—*Professor A. Packard, Bowdoin College, Maine.*

I do not hesitate to pronounce Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar superior to any other with which I am acquainted. I have never seen, anywhere, a greater amount of valuable matter compressed within limits equally narrow.—*Hon. John Hall, Principal of Ellington School, Conn.*

We have no hesitation in pronouncing this Grammar decidedly superior to any now in use.—*Boston Recorder*

## Dr. Robinson's Gesenius.

**Robinson's Hebrew Lexicon.** Sixth Edition, Revised and Stereotyped. A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament, including the Biblical Chaldee. Translated from the Latin of William Gesenius, late Professor of Theology in the University of Halle-Wittenberg. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, New York. A new edition, with corrections and large additions, partly furnished by the author in manuscript, and partly condensed from his larger Thesaurus, as compiled by Roediger. These corrections and additions were made by Dr. Gesenius, during an interval of several years, while carrying his Thesaurus through the press, and were transcribed and furnished by him expressly for this edition. They will be found to be very numerous, every page having been materially corrected and enlarged, and a large number of articles having been re-written. It is printed on a new type, the face and cut of which is very beautiful, and has been highly commended and approved.

Dr. Robinson had already been trained to the business of lexicographical labor, when he began the translation of the present work. He is, in an uncommon degree, master of his own native tongue. He has diligence, patience, perseverance—yea, the iron diligence of Gesenius himself. For aught that I have yet been able to discover, all that can reasonably be expected or desired, has been done by the translator; not only as to rendering the work into English, but as to the manner and the accuracy of printing. The work will speak for itself, on the first opening. It does honor, in its appearance, to editor, printers, and publishers. I have only to add my hearty wish, that its beautiful white pages may be consulted and turned over, until they become thoroughly worn with the hands of the purchasers.—*Prof. Stuart, in the Biblical Repository.*

There is no lexicon in English that can be put on a level with Robinson's. I recommend the present as the best Lexicon of the Hebrew and Biblical Chaldee which an English scholar can have.—*Rev. Dr. Samuel Davidson, of London.*

Gesenius' Lexicon is known wherever Hebrew is studied. On the merits of this work criticism has long ago pronounced its verdict of approval.—*London Jewish Chronicle.*

This is a very beautiful and complete edition of the best Hebrew Lexicon ever yet produced. Gesenius, as a Hebrew philologist, is unequalled.—*London Clerical Journal.*

This is decidedly the most complete edition of Gesenius' Manual Hebrew Lexicon.—*London Journal of Sacred Literature.*

## Robinson's Harmony of the Gospels, in Greek.

**A Harmony of the Four Gospels,** in Greek, according to the text of Hahn. Newly arranged, with Explanatory Notes, by EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, New York. Revised Edition.

This work of Dr. Robinson confines itself to the legitimate sphere of a Harmony of the Gospels; and we do not hesitate to say that in this sphere it will be found to be all that a Harmony need or can be. The original text is printed with accuracy and elegance. It is a feast to the eyes to look upon a page of so much beauty. Its arrangement is distinguished for simplicity and convenience. No one will ever be able to comprehend the relations of the Gospels to each other, or acquire an exact knowledge of their contents, unless he studies them with the aid of a Harmony. The present work furnishes in this respect just the facility which is needed; and we trust that among its other effects, it will serve to direct attention more strongly to the importance of this mode of study.—*Prof. Hackett of Newton Theological Seminary.*

## Palmer's Arithmetic.

**Arithmetic,** Oral and Written, practically applied by means of Suggestive Questions. By THOMAS H. PALMER, Author of the *Prize Essay on Education*, entitled the "Teacher's Manual," "The Moral Instructor," etc.

## Robinson's Harmony of the Gospels, in English.

**A Harmony of the Four Gospels**, in English, according to the common version; newly arranged, with Explanatory Notes. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D.

The object of this work is to obtain a full and consecutive account of all the facts of our Lord's life and ministry. In order to do this, the four gospel narratives have been so brought together, as to present as nearly as possible the true chronological order, and where the same transaction is described by more than one writer, the different accounts are placed side by side, so as to fill out and supply each other. Such an arrangement affords the only full and perfect survey of all the testimony relating to any and every portion of our Lord's history. The evangelists are thus made their own best interpreters; and it is shown how wonderfully they are supplementary to each other in minute as well as in important particulars, and in this way is brought out fully and clearly the fundamental characteristics of their testimony, unity in diversity. To Bible classes, Sabbath schools, and all who love and seek the truth in their closets and in their families, this work will be found a useful assistant.

I have used "Robinson's English Harmony" in teaching a Bible Class. The result, in my own mind, is a conviction of the great merits of this work, and its adaptation to impart the highest life and interest to Bible Class exercises, and generally to the diligent study of the Gospel. It is much to be desired that every one accustomed to searching the Scriptures should have this invaluable aid.—*Rev. Dr. Skinner, New York.*

## Robinson's Dictionary of the Bible.

**Robinson's Bible Dictionary.** A Dictionary for the use of Schools and Young Persons. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D. Illustrated with Engravings on wood, and Maps of Canaan, Judea, Asia Minor, and the Peninsula of Mount Sinai, Idumea, etc.

## Elements of Astronomy.

**The Elements of Astronomy;** or The World as it is and as it Appears. By the author of "Theory of Teaching," "Edward's First Lessons in Grammar," etc. Revised in manuscript by George P. Bond, Esq., of the Cambridge Observatory, to whom the author is also indebted for superintending its passage through the press.

## Scott's Family Bible.

**Scott's Family Bible.** Boston Stereotype Edition. 6 vols. royal 8vo., containing all the Notes, Practical Observations, Marginal References, and Critical Remarks, as in the most approved London edition, with a line engraved likeness of the Author, Family Record, etc.

This Edition is the only one that has, or can have, the benefit of the final Additions and Emendations of the Author. The extent of these may be judged from the fact that upwards of *Four Hundred Pages of letter-press were added*; and as they consist chiefly of Critical Remarks, their importance to the Biblical student is at once apparent. The Preface to the entire work contains an elaborate and compendious view of the evidences that the Holy Scriptures were given by inspiration of God. Prefixed to each Book, both in the Old and New Testament, is an Introduction, or statement of its purport and intent. There are also copious Marginal References, with various Tables, a Chronological Index, and a copious Topical Index.

 Orders solicited.













**This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building**

[illegible]

PLATE 26

